EPA 10/2.030 – (ARC: 38334)

This document has been prepared in compliance with conditions of the “Final Report and Decision of the Board of Inquiry into the New Zealand Transport Agency Waterview Connection Proposal, Volume 2, Conditions of Consent”. Schedule B of Volume 2 identifies the Conditions relevant to this Consent by the code and number as referenced throughout this document. In the event of dispute, Schedule B of Volume 2 shall take precedence over this Consent.

Type: Coastal Consent

Description: Activities within the CMA:

For on-going use of CMA by the State highway for transport purposes and associated construction activities including conveyance of spoil [Sectors 2 and 4].

Duration: 35 years

Code: RC = Standard Resource Consent Conditions
CEMP = Construction Environmental Management Plan Conditions
Pl = Public Information Conditions
C = Coastal Conditions
M = Marine Ecology Conditions

GENERAL CONDITIONS

1) RC.1 Except as modified by the conditions below, the works shall be undertaken in general accordance with the information provided by the New Zealand Transport Agency (NZTA), in the resource consent applications and the supporting documents (as detailed in Condition DC.1), and in the supplementary information provided in evidence by the NZTA.

2) RC.1A The NZTA shall implement the conditions of these consents in accordance with Schedule B, which sets out the Conditions that are to be applied to each consent including the duration of each consent.

3) RC.2 The Conditions of these consents may be reviewed by the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council, pursuant to Section 128 of the Resource Management Act 1991 (the Act), by the giving of notice pursuant to Section 129 of the Act, on the one year anniversary of the commencement of the consents and every year thereafter in order:

(a) To deal with any adverse effect on the environment which may arise from the exercise of the consent and which it is appropriate to deal with at a later stage; or
(b) To deal with any other adverse effect on the environment on which the exercise of the consent may have an influence.

4) RC.4 Any Management Plans submitted to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council for approval or certification may be submitted in stages to reflect any proposed staging of the physical works. Plans submitted shall clearly show the integration with adjacent stages and interrelated activities.

5) RC.5 In the event of any dispute, disagreement or inaction arising as to any Auckland Council Manager certification/ approvals required by the consent conditions, or as to the
implementation of or monitoring required by the conditions, matters shall be referred in the first instance to the NZTA Regional State Highway Manager and to the Resource Consents Manager, Auckland Council to determine a process of resolution.

If a resolution cannot be agreed, then the matter may be referred to an independent appropriately qualified expert, agreeable to both parties, setting out the details of the matter to be referred for determination and the reasons the parties do not agree.

The independent appropriately qualified expert shall be appointed within 10 working days of the NZTA or Auckland Council giving notice of their intention to seek expert determination. The expert shall, as soon as possible, issue his or her decision on the matter. In making the decision, the expert shall be entitled to seek further information and hear from the parties as he or she sees fit.

Advice note: The dispute resolution process provided for in this condition does not prejudice any party’s right to take enforcement action in relation to the implementation of the designation conditions. However, the dispute resolution process will be applied before any formal enforcement action is taken by the Council except in urgent situations.

6) RC.6 Pursuant to Section 36(1)(d) of the RMA, the requiring authority is required to pay to Auckland Council any administrative charge for the carrying out by the local authority of its functions in relation to the administration, monitoring, and supervision of designation conditions.

7) RC.7 The servants of agents of Auckland Council shall be permitted to have access to relevant parts of the Project at all reasonable times for the purpose of carrying out inspections, investigations, tests, measurements and/or to take samples.

PRE-CONSTRUCTION CONDITIONS

8) RC.3 Within 3 months of the resource consents commencing for the Project (or at least 1 month prior to any Auckland Council approvals or certifications required by these Conditions, whichever is the earlier), the NZTA shall update and finalise to the satisfaction of the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council all drawings and Plans cited in Schedule A, together with a full set of the information and documentation referred to in Condition DC.1 and provide these to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council. At the same time the NZTA shall prepare to the satisfaction of Auckland Council, a document for each resource consent which sets out the resource consent and have attached to it in text format a comprehensive set of the conditions imposed by the Board of Inquiry in its Final Decision as summarised in Schedule B, inclusive of any standard conditions and advice notes.

In particular (but not limited to), the following Plans will need to be amended in light of the Final Conditions:

(a) F.2 Operational Scheme Plans (refer Schedule A, Row 3) require amendment detailing the amended location of the ventilation stacks and southern ventilation buildings;

(b) F.5 Construction Scheme Plans (refer Schedule A, Row 4) require amendment to detail changes to construction footprint for the amended location of ventilation stacks and southern ventilation buildings and reconfiguration of Construction Yard 1);

(c) F.6 Construction Yard Plans 101 and 107 (refer Schedule A, Row 7), detailing amendments to the Construction Yard 1 in light of the reconfiguration of this Yard and for Construction Yard 7 in light of the relocation of the northern ventilation stack (refer Schedule A, Row 34);
(d) F.8 Plans of Structures and Architectural Features (refer Schedule A, Row 9),
detailing the amended location of the Northern Ventilation Stack and the design and
location of the Southern Ventilation Building and Stack;

(e) The CNVMP (including flow diagram and the supplementary evidence produced by
Ms Wilkening) (refer Schedule A, Rows 36, 37 and 39);

(f) Update to the areas of the Open Space Restoration Plans (Schedule A, Row 30) to:
   (i) Extend these areas in geographic extent to provide for the works identified in the
       Management Plan notations identified in the OS Conditions (in particular OS.5
       and OS.6). (e.g. these areas will (as relevant) include Eric Armishaw Park,
       Howlett Reserve and Waterview Esplanade Reserve); and
   (ii) Exclude the operational area of designation required for the northern ventilation
       stack (as identified through the OPW process (refer Condition DC.8); and

(g) Schedule A, Row 28 the Plan detailing proposed open space impacts and
replacements needs to be updated to recolour the two land parcels on Hendon Avenue
(which are excluded from the replacement calculations) to ‘brown’ to confirm they are
part of the operational impact and will not be returned as open space.

9) **CEMP.1**
Except where provided for in Condition CEMP.1A below, the NZTA shall update and finalise
the draft Construction Environmental Management Plan (CEMP) including all the
Management Plans which form part of the CEMP and are included as appendices,
submitted with this application to ensure compliance with the consent and designation
conditions imposed by the Board of Inquiry. The CEMP shall be provided to the Major
Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council for review at least 20 working days prior to
the commencement of works to certify compliance and consistency with the conditions.
Construction shall not commence until certification is obtained.

Advice note: For clarity the CEMP will be updated and finalised in accordance with the
conditions. Any amendments will be limited to reflecting the requirements of the conditions,
specifying personnel, and completing the Environmental Risk Register.

Advice Note: Particular care must be taken with development and operation of Construction
Yard 7. When the CEMP is being updated and finalised, consideration must be given to the
contents of the draft SSCEMP prepared for Construction Yard 7 (Row 41, Schedule A)
recognising changes required by inclusion of the ventilation stack in this yard.

10) **CEMP.1A**
In the case of the trial embankment, where works will commence well in advance of the
main construction works for the Causeway, the NZTA will provide to the Major Infrastructure
Team Manager, Auckland Council, a site-specific CEMP for review and approval at least
20 working days prior to commencement of the trial embankment works.

11) **CEMP.1B**
For the purposes of staging works, as some works may commence well in advance of
others, the NZTA may provide staged or site specific CEMPs for those works to the Major
Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council. The NZTA shall consult with the Team
Manager about the need and timing for any other site-specific or staged CEMPs and shall
provide any required site-specific or staged CEMPs to the Major Infrastructure Team
Manager, Auckland Council for review at least 20 working days prior to commencement of
such the specific stage (including enabling) or site works.

12) **CEMP.2**
The certification process of the CEMP (and its appendices) shall confirm that the CEMP
gives effect to the relevant conditions, as well as those matters in CEMP.6, and that it
includes details of:
   (a) Staff and contractors’ responsibilities;
   (b) Training requirements for employees, sub-contractors and visitors;
(c) Environmental incident and emergency management;
(d) Communication and interface procedures (in accordance with the Communication Plan required under Condition PI.2);
(e) Environmental complaints management (including the procedures required under Condition PI.4);
(f) Compliance monitoring;
(g) Reporting (including detail on the frequency of reporting to the Auckland Council);
(h) Environmental auditing; and
(i) Corrective action.

13) CEMP.3 The management of key environmental effects associated with the construction phase of the Project is detailed within environmental management plans that are included in the CEMP as appendices. This suite of management plans as shown on Figure CEMP.A comprises:

(a) Construction Noise and Vibration Management Plan (CNVMP);
(b) Construction Air Quality Management Plan (CAQMP);
(c) Erosion and Sediment Control Plan (ESCP);
(d) Temporary Stormwater Management Plan (TSMP);
(e) Ecological Management Plan (ECOMP);
(f) Groundwater Management Plan (GWMP);
(g) Settlement Effects Management Plan (SEMP);
(h) Contaminated Soils Management Plan (CSMP);
(i) Hazardous Substances Management Plan (HSMP);
(j) Archaeological Site Management Plan (ASMP);
(k) Construction Traffic Management Plan (CTMP);
(l) Concrete Batching and Crushing Plant Management Plan (CBCPMP);
(m) Electrical Infrastructure Site Development and Construction Management Plan (EISDCMP) (to be prepared in accordance with Condition CEMP.15);
(n) Waste Management Plan (to be prepared in accordance with Condition CEMP.10) ;
and
(o) Temporary Construction Lighting Management Plan (to be prepared in accordance with Condition L.2).

14) CEMP.6 The finalised CEMP shall include specific details on demolition, construction and management of all works associated with the Project. The certification process of the CEMP shall confirm that the CEMP includes details of the following:

(a) details of the site or Project manager and the community liaison person, including their contact details (phone, facsimile, postal address, email address);
(b) The location of large notice boards that clearly identify the NZTA and the Project name, together with the name, telephone, email address and address for service of the site or Project manager and the community liaison person;
(c) An outline construction programme of the work indicating in particular likely time periods for road closures and anticipated traffic diversion effects;
(d) The hours of work, which should reflect the need to ensure that residents enjoy reasonable freedom from noisy or intrusive construction activity in their neighbourhood at night, on Sundays and during public holidays;
(e) Measures to be adopted to maintain the land affected by the works in a tidy condition in
(f) Location of worker’s offices and conveniences (e.g. portaloos);
(g) Procedures of controlling sediment run-off, dust and the removal of soil, debris and
demolition and construction materials from public roads or places. Dust mitigation
measures should include use of water sprays to control dust nuisance on dry or windy
days;
(h) Methods to stabilise ingress and egress points to construction sites, to the standard
required by ARC Technical Publication 90 (Nov 2007);

15) CEMP.10 The NZTA shall finalise and implement the Hazardous Substances Management Plan
(HSMP), through the CEMP (as per Condition CEMP.1), submitted with this application,
prior to works commencing on site. The certification process of the CEMP shall confirm that
the HSMP clearly identifies the requirements for proper storage, handling, transport and
disposal of hazardous substances during the construction phase of the Project and confirm
that there shall be no storage of explosives on the Project site.

16) CEMP.11 The NZTA shall develop and implement a Waste Management Plan in accordance with the
waste management principles, controls and methods set out in the CEMP. The Plan shall
be provided to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council and be
implemented throughout the entire construction period.

17) CEMP.15 The NZTA will be responsible for all service relocations required for construction of the
Project. The NZTA shall liaise with the providers of infrastructure service networks
(including, but not limited to water, gas, stormwater, wastewater, power and
telecommunications), and private property owners with on-site services to develop
methodologies and timing for necessary services relocation required for the Project, with the
objective of minimising disruption to the operation of these service networks and on-site
services.

Advice note:
(a) It is noted that if separate consents are required for relocations for any services of
network utility operators or landowners, such consents will be obtained before
construction commences in the relevant area, and any effects of those relocations
would be considered at that time. The same applies to any alteration of consents if
required.

(b) Network infrastructure owned and operated by Watercare Services is located within the
designations. An operating agreement will be developed by the NZTA and Watercare
Services which will include appropriate notification and access protocols where works
are to be undertaken by either network operator on or adjacent to Watercare Services
infrastructure within the designations.

18) PI.1 A community liaison person shall be appointed by the NZTA for the duration of the
construction phase of the Project to be the main and readily accessible point of contact for
persons affected by the Project. The liaison person’s name and contact details shall be
made available in the CEMP and on site signage by the NZTA. This person must be
reasonably available for on-going consultation on all matters of concern to affected parties
arising from the Project.

19) PI.2 The NZTA shall prepare and implement a Communications Plan that sets out procedures
detailing how the public, Ministry of Social Development, Housing New Zealand Corporation
and other organisations representing the particular demographic characteristics of the
community (including but not limited to Primary Health Organisations, general practitioners,
youth, education organisations, aged care groups and groups representing ethnic and
migrant communities) will be communicated with throughout the construction and monitoring periods (as prescribed in the designation and consent conditions).

In preparing the Communications Plan, the NZTA will liaise with Auckland Council to access its community liaison databases. The Communications Plan will include details of:

(a) the site or Project manager and the community liaison person, including their contact details (phone, facsimile, postal address, email address);

(b) in accordance with these Conditions, the database of the key construction activities and monitoring requirements that are the subject of the Communications Plan;

(c) the database of stakeholders and residents who will be communicated with;

(d) communication methods, an assessment of how these methods reach the different audience/stakeholder groups (including those methods set out in Condition CEMP.6), and detail on when each of these methods will be used (e.g. regular communication or event specific methods);

(e) the appointed specialist in Environmental and Occupational Medicine, including contact details (as per Condition SO.13);

(f) any stakeholder specific communication plans required; and

(g) monitoring and review procedures for the Communications Plan.

The Communications Plan shall be written in accordance with the external communication procedures set out in the CEMP and provided at least 20 working days prior to construction commencing, to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council, Working Liaison Group and the Community Liaison Group(s) established by Condition PI.5. The structure of the communication groups set out in these conditions is attached as Figure PI.A.

20) PI.5 The NZTA shall establish Community Liaison Group(s) at least two months prior to construction commencing in each of the following key construction areas:

(a) Te Atatu (including the SH16 Causeway)

(b) Waterview (including works to St Lukes on SH16 and on the Waterview Estuary and Causeway Bridges)

(c) Owairaka

and hold regular meetings (at least three monthly) throughout the construction period and up to 24 months following construction completion relevant to these areas (or less if the members of the Group agree), so that on-going monitoring information can continue to be disseminated.

The Community Liaison Group(s) shall be open to all interested parties within the Project area including, but not limited to the following groups:

(a) Auckland Council and Auckland Transport;

(b) Educational facilities within the Project area (including schools, kindergartens, childcare facilities and Unitec Institute of Technology);

(c) Relevant community/ environmental groups (including but not limited to Friends of Oakley Creek, Star Mills Preservation Group, Cycle Action Auckland and representatives from those organisations identified in the Communications Plan (as required by Condition PI.2) and local residents;

(d) Department of Conservation;

(e) Local Boards;

(f) Iwi groups with Mana Whenua;

(g) Public transport providers; and

(h) Housing New Zealand Corporation.
Advice note: The purpose of the Community Liaison Group(s) is to provide a regular forum through which information about the Project can be provided to the community, and an opportunity for concerns or issues to be raised.

21) C.1 The NZTA shall provide to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council plans and drawings (including dimensioned, cross sections, elevations and site plans of all areas of proposed reclamation (including associated permanent and temporary CMA occupation), permanent structures and temporary structures) at least 20 working days before the proposed date of commencement of the construction of the reclamation, bridge piers or temporary structure.

22) M.1 The NZTA shall finalise and implement through the CEMP, the ECOMP submitted with this application. The ECOMP shall be revised to accurately reflect the conditions of this consent and changes to the details of construction processes prior to construction commencing. The ECOMP shall include, but not be limited to, details of:

(a) Monitoring of marine habitats and ecological values;
(b) Trigger event criteria for undertaking additional monitoring;
(c) Procedures for responding to accidental discharges to the marine environment;
(d) Complaints investigation, monitoring and reporting; and
(e) The identification of staff and contractors’ responsibilities.

CONSTRUCTION CONDITIONS

23) CEMP.4 The CEMP shall be implemented and maintained throughout the entire construction period.

24) CEMP.5 A copy of the CEMP shall be held on each construction site at all times and be available for inspection on request by the Auckland Council.

25) CEMP.8 All storage of material and equipment associated with the construction works shall take place within the boundaries of the designation.

26) CEMP.12 The CEMP shall be reviewed by the NZTA at least annually or as a result of a material change to the Project. The review shall take into consideration:

(a) Compliance with designation and consent conditions;
(b) Any changes to construction methods;
(c) Key changes to roles and responsibilities within the Project;
(d) Changes in industry best practice standards;
(e) Changes in legal or other requirements;
(f) Results of inspections, monitoring, incidents, corrective actions, internal or external assessments; and
(g) Public complaints.

A summary of the review process undertaken shall be kept by the NZTA, provided annually to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council and made available (with any related data) to the Auckland Council upon request.

27) CEMP.13 Following the review process (as described in Condition CEMP.12), the CEMP may require updating. Any material change proposed to the CEMP (including appended Management Plans) shall be submitted for approval to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council at least 10 working days prior to the proposed changes taking effect.

Advice Note: Material change will include amendment to any base information informing the CEMP or any process, procedure or method of the CEMP (such as the environmental constraints map, compliance monitoring process, complaints procedure or mitigation /
remedial methods identified) which has the potential to increase adverse effects on a particular value. For clarity changes to personnel and contact schedules do not constitute a material change.

28) PI.3 At least 15 working days prior to the commencement of construction, and at 15 working day intervals thereafter, or as required depending on the scale of works and effects on the community, advertisements will be placed in the relevant local newspapers and community noticeboards (as identified in Condition CEMP.6(b)) detailing the nature of the forthcoming works, the location of the forthcoming works and hours of operation. All advertisements will include reference to a 24 hour toll free complaints telephone number. Where relevant, advertisements will also include but not be limited to details of:

(a) Any traffic disruptions or controls or changes to property access, pedestrian/ cycle routes and bus stops; and

(b) Any other construction activities, including night time works, blasting, and structure-borne noise, as identified in the conditions.

29) PI.4 The NZTA shall manage, investigate and resolve (as appropriate) all complaints for the duration of the construction works in accordance with the environmental complaints section of the CEMP. The implementation strategy for complaints includes:

(a) A 24 hour toll free telephone number and email address, which shall be provided to all potentially affected residents and businesses. The number shall be available and answered at all times during the entire duration of the works for the receipt and management of any complaints. A sign containing the contact details shall be located at each site specific work activity;

(b) The NZTA shall maintain a record of all complaints made to this number, email or any site office, including the full details of the complainant and the nature of the complaint;

(c) Upon receiving a complaint, within 10 days of complaint receipt, a formal written response will be provided to the complainant and Auckland Council;

(d) The NZTA shall undertake corrective action where necessary to resolve any problem identified. All action taken and relevant information shall be documented. For the avoidance of doubt, ‘where necessary’ refers to where the works are not being carried out in accordance with conditions of this designation;

(e) Where issues and complaints about effects cannot be resolved through the CEMP complaints management process, a meeting shall be held between the NZTA, the complainant and the Auckland Council representative(s) to discuss the complaint and ways in which the issue may be resolved. If parties cannot agree on a resolution, an independent qualified mediator will be appointed, agreeable to all parties and at the shared cost of all parties, to undertake mediation of the dispute or concerns; and

(f) All information collected in Conditions PI.4 (b), (c) and (d) shall be detailed in a Construction Compliance Report (including the means by which the complaint was addressed, whether resolution was reached and how the response was carried out) prepared by the NZTA. This Report shall be submitted to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council on a quarterly basis commencing at the beginning of the works and for the entire duration of construction.

30) PI.6 The Community Liaison Group(s) shall be provided opportunities to review and comment on the following (amongst other things):

(a) The Outline Plan of Works detailing designs for the northern and southern ventilation buildings and stacks (the outcomes of this consultation will be reported in accordance with the processes required in DC.8(n) and DC.9(k);

(b) The Open Space Restoration Plans (as required by Condition OS.3);
(c) Finalisation and amendment to Urban Design and Landscape Plans (UDL Plans) (as required by Condition LV.1);

(d) The Oakley Inlet Heritage Plan (as required by Conditions OS.5(b)(i) and ARCH.6);

(e) The detail of the Oakley Creek restoration (as required by Condition STW.20);

(f) Publicly available results of environmental monitoring as required by the designation and/or these Consents (e.g. air quality monitoring); and

(g) The finalisation of the STEM assessment required by CEMP.6(o) and a schedule of trees that are required to be removed for consideration of timber use in heritage projects as required by Condition SO.7.

Advice Note: Attention is drawn to the Vegetation conditions concerning identification and protection of Significant Vegetation and Valued Vegetation.

(h) Detailed design features of the Te Atatu underpass (e.g. lighting and architectural treatment).

31) C.2 Construction shall be undertaken in accordance with the construction methodology detailed in the application, specifically Technical Report G.23 Coastal Works and Technical Report G.22 Erosion and Sediment Control Plan. The construction methodology shall include:

(a) The use of temporary coffer dams to create dry working areas;

(b) Realignment of sections of existing low-tide channels in Oakley inlet and Waterview Estuary that will be directly affected by the reclamation works;

(c) Removal of mangroves to provide construction and ground-treatment access, placement of temporary coffer dams and to facilitate natural channel migration in the Whau River side drainage channel (east of Rosebank Domain);

(d) Installation or removal works to be undertaken at the best practicable time to minimise potential sediment disturbance.

32) C.6 The NZTA shall maintain the site in good order and shall remedy all damage and disturbance caused by vehicle traffic, plant and equipment to the foreshore during construction, to the satisfaction of the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council.

33) M.10 The NZTA shall maintain the coastal marine area free of any gross litter, rubbish and debris during construction.

POST-CONSTRUCTION CONDITIONS

34) C.8 The NZTA shall ensure the removal of all equipment, erosion and sediment control measures, surplus sediment and construction materials from the CMA within 20 working days following the completion of the construction works, to the satisfaction of the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council.

MONITORING

35) M.2 The NZTA shall engage a suitably qualified ecologist to undertake a marine habitat monitoring programme, as described in Conditions M.3 to M.6.

36) M.3 The marine benthic habitat monitoring programme shall be undertaken every 6 months:

(a) At least 12 months prior to construction commencing, to allow for two baseline surveys to be undertaken;

(b) During construction; and

(c) For a maximum of 3 years following completion of the Project, or for a lesser time if the
37) M.4 The marine benthic habitat monitoring programme shall be undertaken in accordance with the details set out in the ECOMP and include:
(a) Sampling of the marine invertebrate community composition (collection of sediment cores to a depth of approximately 15cm);
(b) Sampling of the sediment surface (top 2cm) for sediment grain size; and
(c) Sampling of the sediment surface (top 2cm) for sediment quality (analysis of the concentration of copper, lead, zinc and polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons).

38) M.5 The marine benthic habitat monitoring shall be undertaken within sampling grids (50m x 30m) broadly established at the following locations:
(a) Two locations within Oakley Inlet;
(b) Four locations within Waterview Estuary; and
(c) Four locations north of the Causeway.
Specific locations and experimental design shall be detailed in the ECOMP, and the design of the monitoring programme will be based on the *Estuarine Environmental Assessment and Monitoring: A National Protocol* (Cawthron 2002).

39) M.6 The NZTA shall undertake additional marine habitat monitoring in the event of a 'trigger event' for marine ecology habitats. For the purposes of this consent, a 'trigger event' for marine ecology habitats is defined in the ECOMP.

40) M.7 The NZTA shall review the marine habitat monitoring results (pursuant to Conditions M.3 to M.6) and in the event that potential adverse effects are identified, the NZTA shall develop and implement appropriate contingency plans and/or remedial measures.

**REPORTING**

41) M.8 The marine benthic habitat monitoring results shall be compiled by the NZTA, and a report provided to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council every 6 months.
**EPA 10/2.031 – (ARC: 38335)**

This document has been prepared in compliance with conditions of the "Final Report and Decision of the Board of Inquiry into the New Zealand Transport Agency Waterview Connection Proposal, Volume 2, Conditions of Consent". Schedule B of Volume 2 identifies the Conditions relevant to this Consent by the code and number as referenced throughout this document. In the event of dispute, Schedule B of Volume 2 shall take precedence over this Consent.

**Type:** Coastal Consent

**Description:** Erection of Temporary Structures in the CMA (Sectors 1, 2, 4 & 5):

This consent relates to the erection of temporary (construction) structures within the CMA including piers, ramps, bridges, conveyor structures, temporary staging platforms, temporary bird roost, stormwater discharge outfalls and other consequential activities such as disturbance and/or vegetation removal. In GMA, CPA 2 and Mooring Management Area – Henderson Creek, Whau River and Pt Chevalier.

**Duration:** 10 years

**Code:**

- RC = Standard Resource Consent Conditions
- CEMP = Construction Environmental Management Plan Conditions
- PI = Public Information Conditions
- LV = Landscape and Visual Conditions
- V = Vegetation Conditions
- A = Avian Conditions
- ARCH = Archaeology Conditions
- C = Coastal Conditions
- M = Marine Ecology Conditions

**GENERAL CONDITIONS**

1) **RC.1** Except as modified by the conditions below, the works shall be undertaken in general accordance with the information provided by the New Zealand Transport Agency (NZTA), in the resource consent applications and the supporting documents (as detailed in Condition DC.1), and in the supplementary information provided in evidence by the NZTA.

2) **RC.1A** The NZTA shall implement the conditions of these consents in accordance with Schedule B, which sets out the Conditions that are to be applied to each consent including the duration of each consent.

3) **RC.2** The Conditions of these consents may be reviewed by the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council, pursuant to Section 128 of the Resource Management Act 1991 (the Act), by the giving of notice pursuant to Section 129 of the Act, on the one year anniversary of the commencement of the consents and every year thereafter in order:
   
   (a) To deal with any adverse effect on the environment which may arise from the exercise
(b) To deal with any other adverse effect on the environment on which the exercise of the consent may have an influence.

4) RC.4 Any Management Plans submitted to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council for approval or certification may be submitted in stages to reflect any proposed staging of the physical works. Plans submitted shall clearly show the integration with adjacent stages and interrelated activities.

5) RC.5 In the event of any dispute, disagreement or inaction arising as to any Auckland Council Manager certification/approvals required by the consent conditions, or as to the implementation of or monitoring required by the conditions, matters shall be referred in the first instance to the NZTA Regional State Highway Manager and to the Resource Consents Manager, Auckland Council to determine a process of resolution.

If a resolution cannot be agreed, then the matter may be referred to an independent appropriately qualified expert, agreeable to both parties, setting out the details of the matter to be referred for determination and the reasons the parties do not agree.

The independent appropriately qualified expert shall be appointed within 10 working days of the NZTA or Auckland Council giving notice of their intention to seek expert determination. The expert shall, as soon as possible, issue his or her decision on the matter. In making the decision, the expert shall be entitled to seek further information and hear from the parties as he or she sees fit.

Advice note: The dispute resolution process provided for in this condition does not prejudice any party’s right to take enforcement action in relation to the implementation of the designation conditions. However, the dispute resolution process will be applied before any formal enforcement action is taken by the Council except in urgent situations.

6) RC.6 Pursuant to Section 36(1)(d) of the RMA, the requiring authority is required to pay to Auckland Council any administrative charge for the carrying out by the local authority of its functions in relation to the administration, monitoring, and supervision of designation conditions.

7) RC.7 The servants of agents of Auckland Council shall be permitted to have access to relevant parts of the Project at all reasonable times for the purpose of carrying out inspections, investigations, tests, measurements and/or to take samples.

8) V.18 The NZTA shall implement the approved Traherne Island Weed and Pest Management Plan. Every 5 years, a suitably qualified and experienced ecologist engaged by NZTA shall review the plan in consultation with the Department of Conservation. The plan shall then be submitted to the Auckland Council for approval.

9) A.6 Animal pest control shall be undertaken by the NZTA on Traherne Island (northern and southern sides) and on the Coastal Marine Area (CMA) frontage of SH16 from Traherne Island North to Whau Creek, and on the southern side of SH16 from Traherne Island South to Whau River (in accordance with Condition V.17).
PRE-CONSTRUCTION CONDITIONS

10) RC.3 Within 3 months of the resource consents commencing for the Project (or at least 1 month prior to any Auckland Council approvals or certifications required by these Conditions, whichever is the earlier), the NZTA shall update and finalise to the satisfaction of the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council all drawings and Plans cited in Schedule A, together with a full set of the information and documentation referred to in Condition DC.1 and provide these to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council. At the same time the NZTA shall prepare to the satisfaction of Auckland Council, a document for each resource consent which sets out the resource consent and have attached to it in text format a comprehensive set of the conditions imposed by the Board of Inquiry in its Final Decision as summarised in Schedule B, inclusive of any standard conditions and advice notes.

In particular (but not limited to), the following Plans will need to be amended in light of the Final Conditions:

(a) F.2 Operational Scheme Plans (refer Schedule A, Row 3) require amendment detailing the amended location of the ventilation stacks and southern ventilation buildings;
(b) F.5 Construction Scheme Plans (refer Schedule A, Row 4) require amendment to detail changes to construction footprint for the amended location of ventilation stacks and southern ventilation buildings and reconfiguration of Construction Yard 1);
(c) F.6 Construction Yard Plans 101 and 107 (refer Schedule A, Row 7), detailing amendments to the Construction Yard 1 in light of the reconfiguration of this Yard and for Construction Yard 7 in light of the relocation of the northern ventilation stack (refer Schedule A, Row 34);
(d) F.8 Plans of Structures and Architectural Features (refer Schedule A, Row 9), detailing the amended location of the Northern Ventilation Stack and the design and location of the Southern Ventilation Building and Stack;
(e) The CNVMP (including flow diagram and the supplementary evidence produced by Ms Wilkening) (refer Schedule A, Rows 36, 37 and 39);
(f) Update to the areas of the Open Space Restoration Plans (Schedule A, Row 30) to:
   (i) Extend these areas in geographic extent to provide for the works identified in the Management Plan notations identified in the OS Conditions (in particular OS.5 and OS.6). (e.g. these areas will (as relevant) include Eric Armishaw Park, Howlett Reserve and Waterview Esplanade Reserve); and
   (ii) Exclude the operational area of designation required for the northern ventilation stack (as identified through the OPW process (refer Condition DC.8); and
(g) Schedule A, Row 28 the Plan detailing proposed open space impacts and replacements needs to be updated to recolour the two land parcels on Hendon Avenue (which are excluded from the replacement calculations) to ‘brown’ to confirm they are part of the operational impact and will not be returned as open space.

11) CEMP.1 Except where provided for in Condition CEMP.1A below, the NZTA shall update and finalise the draft Construction Environmental Management Plan (CEMP) including all the Management Plans which form part of the CEMP and are included as appendices, submitted with this application to ensure compliance with the consent and designation conditions imposed by the Board of Inquiry. The CEMP shall be provided to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council for review at least 20 working days prior to the commencement of works to certify compliance and consistency with the conditions.
Construction shall not commence until certification is obtained.

Advice note: For clarity the CEMP will be updated and finalised in accordance with the conditions. Any amendments will be limited to reflecting the requirements of the conditions, specifying personnel, and completing the Environmental Risk Register.

Advice Note: Particular care must be taken with development and operation of Construction Yard 7. When the CEMP is being updated and finalised, consideration must be given to the contents of the draft SSCEMP prepared for Construction Yard 7 (Row 41, Schedule A) recognising changes required by inclusion of the ventilation stack in this yard.

12) CEMP.1A  
In the case of the trial embankment, where works will commence well in advance of the main construction works for the Causeway, the NZTA will provide to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council, a site-specific CEMP for review and approval at least 20 working days prior to commencement of the trial embankment works.

13) CEMP.1B  
For the purposes of staging works, as some works may commence well in advance of others, the NZTA may provide staged or site specific CEMPs for those works to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council. The NZTA shall consult with the Team Manager about the need and timing for any other site-specific or staged CEMPs and shall provide any required site-specific or staged CEMPs to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council for review at least 20 working days prior to commencement of such the specific stage (including enabling) or site works.

14) CEMP.2  
The certification process of the CEMP (and its appendices) shall confirm that the CEMP gives effect to the relevant conditions, as well as those matters in CEMP.6, and that it includes details of:

(a) Staff and contractors’ responsibilities;
(b) Training requirements for employees, sub-contractors and visitors;
(c) Environmental incident and emergency management;
(d) Communication and interface procedures (in accordance with the Communication Plan required under Condition PI.2);
(e) Environmental complaints management (including the procedures required under Condition PI.4);
(f) Compliance monitoring;
(g) Reporting (including detail on the frequency of reporting to the Auckland Council);
(h) Environmental auditing; and
(i) Corrective action.

15) CEMP.3  
The management of key environmental effects associated with the construction phase of the Project is detailed within environmental management plans that are included in the CEMP as appendices. This suite of management plans as shown on Figure CEMP.A comprises:

(a) Construction Noise and Vibration Management Plan (CNVMP);
(b) Construction Air Quality Management Plan (CAQMP);
(c) Erosion and Sediment Control Plan (ESCP);
(d) Temporary Stormwater Management Plan (TSMP);
(e) Ecological Management Plan (ECOMP);
(f) Groundwater Management Plan (GWMP);
(g) Settlement Effects Management Plan (SEMP);
(h) Contaminated Soils Management Plan (CSMP);
(i) Hazardous Substances Management Plan (HSMP);
(j) Archaeological Site Management Plan (ASMP);
(k) Construction Traffic Management Plan (CTMP);
(l) Concrete Batching and Crushing Plant Management Plan (CBCPMP);
(m) Electrical Infrastructure Site Development and Construction Management Plan (EISDCMP) (to be prepared in accordance with Condition CEMP.15);
(n) Waste Management Plan (to be prepared in accordance with Condition CEMP.10);
(o) Temporary Construction Lighting Management Plan (to be prepared in accordance with Condition L.2).

16) CEMP.6 The finalised CEMP shall include specific details on demolition, construction and management of all works associated with the Project. The certification process of the CEMP shall confirm that the CEMP includes details of the following:

(a) Details of the site or Project manager and the community liaison person, including their contact details (phone, facsimile, postal address, email address);
(b) The location of large notice boards that clearly identify the NZTA and the Project name, together with the name, telephone, email address and address for service of the site or Project manager and the community liaison person;
(c) An outline construction programme of the work indicating in particular likely time periods for road closures and anticipated traffic diversion effects;
(d) The hours of work, which should reflect the need to ensure that residents enjoy reasonable freedom from noisy or intrusive construction activity in their neighbourhood at night, on Sundays and during public holidays;
(e) Measures to be adopted to maintain the land affected by the works in a tidy condition in terms of disposal/storage of rubbish, storage and unloading of building materials and similar construction activities;
(f) Location of worker’s offices and conveniences (e.g. portaloos);
(g) Procedures of controlling sediment run-off, dust and the removal of soil, debris and demolition and construction materials from public roads or places. Dust mitigation measures should include use of water sprays to control dust nuisance on dry or windy days;
(h) Methods to stabilise ingress and egress points to construction sites, to the standard required by ARC Technical Publication 90 (Nov 2007);

17) CEMP.10 The NZTA shall finalise and implement the Hazardous Substances Management Plan (HSMP), through the CEMP (as per Condition CEMP.1), submitted with this application, prior to works commencing on site. The certification process of the CEMP shall confirm that the HSMP clearly identifies the requirements for proper storage, handling, transport and disposal of hazardous substances during the construction phase of the Project and confirm that there shall be no storage of explosives on the Project site.

18) CEMP.11 The NZTA shall develop and implement a Waste Management Plan in accordance with the waste management principles, controls and methods set out in the CEMP. The Plan shall be provided to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council and be implemented throughout the entire construction period.

19) CEMP.15 The NZTA will be responsible for all service relocations required for construction of the Project. The NZTA shall liaise with the providers of infrastructure service networks (including, but not limited to water, gas, stormwater, wastewater, power and telecommunications), and private property owners with on-site services to develop
methodologies and timing for necessary services relocation required for the Project, with the objective of minimising disruption to the operation of these service networks and on-site services.

Advice note:

(a) It is noted that if separate consents are required for relocations for any services of network utility operators or landowners, such consents will be obtained before construction commences in the relevant area, and any effects of those relocations would be considered at that time. The same applies to any alteration of consents if required.

(b) Network infrastructure owned and operated by Watercare Services is located within the designations. An operating agreement will be developed by the NZTA and Watercare Services which will include appropriate notification and access protocols where works are to be undertaken by either network operator or adjacent to Watercare Services infrastructure within the designations.

20) PI.1 A community liaison person shall be appointed by the NZTA for the duration of the construction phase of the Project to be the main and readily accessible point of contact for persons affected by the Project. The liaison person’s name and contact details shall be made available in the CEMP and on site signage by the NZTA. This person must be reasonably available for on-going consultation on all matters of concern to affected parties arising from the Project.

21) PI.2 The NZTA shall prepare and implement a Communications Plan that sets out procedures detailing how the public, Ministry of Social Development, Housing New Zealand Corporation and other organisations representing the particular demographic characteristics of the community (including but not limited to Primary Health Organisations, general practitioners, youth, education organisations, aged care groups and groups representing ethnic and migrant communities) will be communicated with throughout the construction and monitoring periods (as prescribed in the designation and consent conditions).

In preparing the Communications Plan, the NZTA will liaise with Auckland Council to access its community liaison databases. The Communications Plan will includes details of:

(a) The site or Project manager and the community liaison person, including their contact details (phone, facsimile, postal address, email address);
(b) In accordance with these Conditions, the database of the key construction activities and monitoring requirements that are the subject of the Communications Plan;
(c) The database of stakeholders and residents who will be communicated with;
(d) Communication methods, an assessment of how these methods reach the different audience/stakeholder groups (including those methods set out in Condition CEMP.6), and detail on when each of these methods will be used (e.g. regular communication or event specific methods);
(e) The appointed specialist in Environmental and Occupational Medicine, including contact details (as per Condition SO.13);
(f) Any stakeholder specific communication plans required; and
(g) Monitoring and review procedures for the Communications Plan.

The Communications Plan shall be written in accordance with the external communication procedures set out in the CEMP and provided at least 20 working days prior to construction commencing, to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council, Working Liaison Group and the Community Liaison Group(s) established by Condition PI.5. The structure of the communication groups set out in these conditions is attached as Figure PI.A.
22) PI.5 The NZTA shall establish Community Liaison Group(s) at least two months prior to construction commencing in each of the following key construction areas:
(a) Te Atatu (including the SH16 Causeway)
(b) Waterview (including works to St Lukes on SH16 and on the Waterview Estuary and Causeway Bridges)
(c) Owairaka
and hold regular meetings (at least three monthly) throughout the construction period and up to 24 months following construction completion relevant to these areas (or less if the members of the Group agree), so that on-going monitoring information can continue to be disseminated.

The Community Liaison Group(s) shall be open to all interested parties within the Project area including, but not limited to the following groups:
(a) Auckland Council and Auckland Transport;
(b) Educational facilities within the Project area (including schools, kindergartens, childcare facilities and Unitec Institute of Technology);
(c) Relevant community/ environmental groups (including but not limited to Friends of Oakley Creek, Star Mills Preservation Group, Cycle Action Auckland and representatives from those organisations identified in the Communications Plan (as required by Condition PI.2) and local residents;
(d) Department of Conservation;
(e) Local Boards;
(f) Iwi groups with Mana Whenua;
(g) Public transport providers; and
(h) Housing New Zealand Corporation.

Advice note: The purpose of the Community Liaison Group(s) is to provide a regular forum through which information about the Project can be provided to the community, and an opportunity for concerns or issues to be raised.

23) V.2 The NZTA shall employ a suitably experienced botanist ('nominated botanist') for the duration of the works to monitor, supervise and direct all works affecting or otherwise in close proximity to the Significant Vegetation and Valued Vegetation identified in the ECOMP.

24) V.11 Prior to commencement of works adjacent to Traherne Island, the NZTA shall employ a suitably qualified and experienced plant translocation expert to uplift and protect all areas of *Mimulus repens* on Traherne Island that will be affected by the work. The *Mimulus repens* shall be relocated to suitable and safe habitat away from the works area, or otherwise held and protected for the duration of the works in the vicinity of their original location and be replanted back at that location (or in close proximity to it) upon completion of the works. The location of the recipient sites will be determined in consultation with the Department of Conservation and in general accordance with the Traherne Island Natural Heritage Restoration Plan (2009 – 2014). Trials shall be undertaken to identify appropriate recipient sites, with these trial sites being monitored for a period of no less than 5 years, or until their failure. Where possible, recipient sites shall be located in currently weed-free areas. Where recipient sites may potentially be affected by weeds, they shall be subject to an on-going weed management plan. Should translocation attempts fail at all trial sites then the NZTA, in consultation with DOC, shall determine an alternative appropriate form of mitigation.

25) V.17 Prior to commencement of works adjacent to or on Traherne Island, the NZTA shall employ a suitably qualified and experienced ecologist for the preparation of a Traherne Island
Weed and Pest Management Plan. The Plan shall be prepared in consultation with the Department of Conservation and be submitted to the Auckland Council for approval at least 20 working days prior to construction commencing.

26) A.1 The NZTA shall finalise, and implement through the CEMP, ECOMP submitted with this application to include the matters set out in Conditions A.2 to A.6.

27) ARCH. Advice Note Any archaeological sites within the area affected by the Project shall not be modified or disturbed in any way unless written authorisation has been obtained from the NZ Historic Places Trust.

28) C.1 The NZTA shall provide to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council plans and drawings (including dimensioned, cross sections, elevations and site plans of all areas of proposed reclamation (including associated permanent and temporary CMA occupation), permanent structures and temporary structures) at least 20 working days before the proposed date of commencement of the construction of the reclamation, bridge piers or temporary structure.

29) M.1 The NZTA shall finalise and implement through the CEMP, the ECOMP submitted with this application. The ECOMP shall be revised to accurately reflect the conditions of this consent and changes to the details of construction processes prior to construction commencing. The ECOMP shall include, but not be limited to, details of:

(a) Monitoring of marine habitats and ecological values;
(b) Trigger event criteria for undertaking additional monitoring;
(c) Procedures for responding to accidental discharges to the marine environment;
(d) Complaints investigation, monitoring and reporting; and
(e) The identification of staff and contractors’ responsibilities.

**CONSTRUCTION CONDITIONS**

30) CEMP.4 The CEMP shall be implemented and maintained throughout the entire construction period.

31) CEMP.5 A copy of the CEMP shall be held on each construction site at all times and be available for inspection on request by the Auckland Council.

32) CEMP.8 All storage of material and equipment associated with the construction works shall take place within the boundaries of the designation.

33) CEMP.12 The CEMP shall be reviewed by the NZTA at least annually or as a result of a material change to the Project. The review shall take into consideration:

(a) Compliance with designation and consent conditions;
(b) Any changes to construction methods;
(c) Key changes to roles and responsibilities within the Project;
(d) Changes in industry best practice standards;
(e) Changes in legal or other requirements;
(f) Results of inspections, monitoring, incidents, corrective actions, internal or external assessments; and
(g) Public complaints.

A summary of the review process undertaken shall be kept by the NZTA, provided annually to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council and made available (with any related data) to the Auckland Council upon request.

34) CEMP.13 Following the review process (as described in Condition CEMP.12), the CEMP may require
Any material change proposed to the CEMP (including appended Management Plans) shall be submitted for approval to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council at least 10 working days prior to the proposed changes taking effect.

Advice Note: Material change will include amendment to any base information informing the CEMP or any process, procedure or method of the CEMP (such as the environmental constraints map, compliance monitoring process, complaints procedure or mitigation / remedial methods identified) which has the potential to increase adverse effects on a particular value. For clarity changes to personnel and contact schedules do not constitute a material change.

35) PI.3

At least 15 working days prior to the commencement of construction, and at 15 working day intervals thereafter, or as required depending on the scale of works and effects on the community, advertisements will be placed in the relevant local newspapers and community noticeboards (as identified in Condition CEMP.6(b)) detailing the nature of the forthcoming works, the location of the forthcoming works and hours of operation. All advertisements will include reference to a 24 hour toll free complaints telephone number. Where relevant, advertisements will also include but not be limited to details of:

(a) Any traffic disruptions or controls or changes to property access, pedestrian/ cycle routes and bus stops; and

(b) Any other construction activities, including night time works, blasting, and structure-borne noise, as identified in the conditions.

36) PI.4

The NZTA shall manage, investigate and resolve (as appropriate) all complaints for the duration of the construction works in accordance with the environmental complaints section of the CEMP. The implementation strategy for complaints includes:

(a) A 24 hour toll free telephone number and email address, which shall be provided to all potentially affected residents and businesses. The number shall be available and answered at all times during the entire duration of the works for the receipt and management of any complaints. A sign containing the contact details shall be located at each site specific work activity;

(b) The NZTA shall maintain a record of all complaints made to this number, email or any site office, including the full details of the complainant and the nature of the complaint;

(c) Upon receiving a complaint, within 10 days of complaint receipt, a formal written response will be provided to the complainant and Auckland Council;

(d) The NZTA shall undertake corrective action where necessary to resolve any problem identified. All action taken and relevant information shall be documented. For the avoidance of doubt, ‘where necessary’ refers to where the works are not being carried out in accordance with conditions of this designation;

(e) Where issues and complaints about effects cannot be resolved through the CEMP complaints management process, a meeting shall be held between the NZTA, the complainant and the Auckland Council representative(s) to discuss the complaint and ways in which the issue may be resolved. If parties cannot agree on a resolution, an independent qualified mediator will be appointed, agreeable to all parties and at the shared cost of all parties, to undertake mediation of the dispute or concerns; and

(f) All information collected in Conditions PI.4 (b), (c) and (d) shall be detailed in a Construction Compliance Report (including the means by which the complaint was addressed, whether resolution was reached and how the response was carried out) prepared by the NZTA. This Report shall be submitted to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council on a quarterly basis commencing at the beginning of the works and for the entire duration of construction.
37) **PI.6** The Community Liaison Group(s) shall be provided opportunities to review and comment on the following (amongst other things):

(a) The Outline Plan of Works detailing designs for the northern and southern ventilation buildings and stacks (the outcomes of this consultation will be reported in accordance with the processes required in DC.8(n) and DC.9(k));

(b) The Open Space Restoration Plans (as required by Condition OS.3);

(c) Finalisation and amendment to Urban Design and Landscape Plans (UDL Plans) (as required by Condition LV.1);

(d) The Oakley Inlet Heritage Plan (as required by Conditions OS.5(b)(i) and ARCH.6);

(e) The detail of the Oakley Creek restoration (as required by Condition STW.20);

(f) Publicly available results of environmental monitoring as required by the designation and/or these Consents (e.g. air quality monitoring); and

(g) The finalisation of the STEM assessment required by CEMP.6(o) and a schedule of trees that are required to be removed for consideration of timber use in heritage projects as required by Condition SO.7.

*Advice Note: Attention is drawn to the Vegetation conditions concerning identification and protection of Significant Vegetation and Valued Vegetation.*

(h) Detailed design features of the Te Atatu underpass (e.g. lighting and architectural treatment).

38) **LV.7** The NZTA shall ensure that the Temporary Embankments constructed for the Causeway are located on the seaward side of SH16 between the motorway end of Rosebank Road and the bridge over the Waterview Inlet.

39) **A.2** The NZTA shall provide temporary high tide roosting structure(s) adjacent to the Causeway during construction, in accordance with the ECOMP, to the satisfaction of the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council. The temporary bird roosts shall be sized in accordance with the ECOMP, and located within the Waterview Estuary adjacent to the southern side of the causeway and in the vicinity of the existing Causeway bridge.

40) **A.5** Vegetation clearance at Traherne Island shall occur outside the bird breeding season of September to December. Elsewhere, vegetation clearance shall occur outside the bird breeding season of September to December where practicable.

41) **ARCH.3** If any archaeological sites, including human remains are exposed during site works, then the following procedures shall apply:

(a) Immediately it becomes apparent that a possible archaeological or traditional site has been exposed, all site works in the immediate vicinity shall cease;

(b) The site supervisor shall immediately secure the area in a way that ensures that any artefacts or remains are untouched and notify the Project archaeologist;

(c) The Project archaeologist shall inspect the site to assess the relevance of the find, and then the Auckland Council shall be advised of the significance;

(d) If the site is confirmed to be an archaeological site by the Project archaeologist, the site supervisor shall then notify tangata whenua, the New Zealand Historic Places Trust, and the Auckland Council that an archaeological site has been exposed so that appropriate action can be taken;

(e) In the case of human remains, the NZ Police shall be notified.

42) **C.2** Construction shall be undertaken in accordance with the construction methodology detailed in the application, specifically Technical Report G.23 *Coastal Works* and Technical Report G.22 *Erosion and Sediment Control Plan*. The construction methodology shall include:
(a) The use of temporary coffer dams to create dry working areas;
(b) Realignment of sections of existing low-tide channels in Oakley inlet and Waterview Estuary that will be directly affected by the reclamation works;
(c) Removal of mangroves to provide construction and ground-treatment access, placement of temporary coffer dams and to facilitate natural channel migration in the Whau River side drainage channel (east of Rosebank Domain);
(d) Installation or removal works to be undertaken at the best practicable time to minimise potential sediment disturbance.

43) C.3 The NZTA shall notify the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council in writing of the proposed commencement date of the reclamation, structures and/or channel realignment works at least 10 working days prior to the proposed start date.

44) C.6 The NZTA shall maintain the site in good order and shall remedy all damage and disturbance caused by vehicle traffic, plant and equipment to the foreshore during construction, to the satisfaction of the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council.

45) C.7 Removal or pruning of vegetation in the CMA shall be limited to the areas of permanent and temporary occupation as shown on the Waterview Connection Project Assessment of Environmental Effects Plan Set F.12 and F.13 submitted with the application (ref Schedule A, rows 13 and 14). Removal of mangroves shall be implemented in accordance with the principles detailed in the Ecological Management Plan.

46) C.11 (a) Provision for navigation of vessels beneath the Whau River Bridges during construction shall be maintained to the satisfaction of the Auckland Harbour Master;
(b) Following construction, provision for the navigation of vessels beneath the Whau River Bridges be provided by the navigation channels and headspace clearance identified on the Plan Whau River Motorway and Pedestrian Bridges Elevation Plan 221 in F.8 (refer Schedule A, Row 9);
(c) For purposes of safe navigation, the NZTA shall identify an appropriate pier to mark on the Whau River Bridges, in consultation with the Te Atatu Boating Club and to the satisfaction of the Auckland Harbour Master. This pier shall be surveyed and marked with height graduations advising available minimum headspace under the Bridges for different stages of the tide with an appropriate safety margin.

47) M.10 The NZTA shall maintain the coastal marine area free of any gross litter, rubbish and debris during construction.

48) M.11 Prior to excavation of sediment from the marine habitat remediation zone (MHRZ), mangrove vegetation will be removed from the sediment and disposed of at an appropriate offsite facility. The excavated sediment shall be stockpiled within an adjacent dry working area. When the sediment is returned to the MHRZ it will be levelled out to tie in with the existing mudflat. Where a routine marine benthic habitat monitoring site is within an area of MHRZ, additional monitoring of the depth of sediment overlying the improved ground/mudcrete will also be undertaken.
POST-CONSTRUCTION CONDITIONS

49) C.4 The NZTA shall notify the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council in writing within 10 working days of the completion of each discrete area of reclamation, structures and/or channel realignment works.

50) C.8 The NZTA shall ensure the removal of all equipment, erosion and sediment control measures, surplus sediment and construction materials from the CMA within 20 working days following the completion of the construction works, to the satisfaction of the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council.

MONITORING

51) A.3 The NZTA shall employ a suitably qualified ecologist to undertake monitoring of the roosting areas located at:
   (a) The existing high tide roost in Harbourview-Orangihina Park; and
   (b) The temporary construction roosting structure(s) pursuant to Condition A.2.

Monitoring shall be undertaken on a monthly basis, with a monitoring report prepared on a quarterly basis. The monitoring report shall be made available to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council and Department of Conservation upon request.

52) A.4 Should the monitoring results indicate that the roosting sites have been abandoned, consultation shall be undertaken with the Department of Conservation and the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council to determine the need for and type of further management strategies (if any) required.

53) C.16 On the northern side of the Causeway, from just before the commencement of construction in the CMA for each section of works, until 6 months after completion of each section, the NZTA shall undertake every two (2) months or after a severe wave-storm, intertidal beach profile surveys down to the spring low-tide mark along offshore-directed transects (one off the centre of the construction section and one either side at 20 m away from the ends of the construction site) and photographs documenting the physical state of the seabed around the perimeter of the cofferdam. The monitoring information shall be made available to the Auckland Council. If the monitoring identifies that excessive erosion or accretion has occurred from corner or end effects of the construction section, as confirmed by a coastal processes expert, further seabed erosion control measures or a sediment by-passing method (for accretion) to reduce localised effects seaward of the temporary occupation or permanent occupation designation (whichever applies) shall be implemented as soon as practicable. Details of the proposed measures or methods shall be made available to Auckland Council prior to implementation.

54) M.2 The NZTA shall engage a suitably qualified ecologist to undertake a marine habitat monitoring programme, as described in Conditions M.3 to M.6.

55) M.3 The marine benthic habitat monitoring programme shall be undertaken every 6 months:
   (a) At least 12 months prior to construction commencing, to allow for two baseline surveys to be undertaken;
   (b) During construction; and
   (c) For a maximum of 3 years following completion of the Project, or for a lesser time if the monitoring indicates no significant effects, as agreed with the Major Infrastructure
56) **M.4** The marine benthic habitat monitoring programme shall be undertaken in accordance with the details set out in the ECOMP and include:

(a) Sampling of the marine invertebrate community composition (collection of sediment cores to a depth of approximately 15cm);

(b) Sampling of the sediment surface (top 2cm) for sediment grain size; and

(c) Sampling of the sediment surface (top 2cm) for sediment quality (analysis of the concentration of copper, lead, zinc and polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons).

57) **M.5** The marine benthic habitat monitoring shall be undertaken within sampling grids (50m x 30m) broadly established at the following locations:

(a) Two locations within Oakley Inlet;

(b) Four locations within Waterview Estuary; and

(c) Four locations north of the Causeway.

Specific locations and experimental design shall be detailed in the ECOMP, and the design of the monitoring programme will be based on the *Estuarine Environmental Assessment and Monitoring: A National Protocol* (Cawthron 2002).

58) **M.6** The NZTA shall undertake additional marine habitat monitoring in the event of a ‘trigger event’ for marine ecology habitats. For the purposes of this consent, a ‘trigger event’ for marine ecology habitats is defined in the ECOMP.

59) **M.7** The NZTA shall review the marine habitat monitoring results (pursuant to Conditions M.3 to M.6) and in the event that potential adverse effects are identified, the NZTA shall develop and implement appropriate contingency plans and/or remedial measures.

**REPORTING**

60) **M.8** The marine benthic habitat monitoring results shall be compiled by the NZTA, and a report provided to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council every 6 months.
EPA 10/2.032 – (ARC: 38336)

This document has been prepared in compliance with conditions of the "Final Report and Decision of the Board of Inquiry into the New Zealand Transport Agency Waterview Connection Proposal, Volume 2, Conditions of Consent". Schedule B of Volume 2 identifies the Conditions relevant to this Consent by the code and number as referenced throughout this document. In the event of dispute, Schedule B of Volume 2 shall take precedence over this Consent.

Type: Coastal Consent

Description: Erection of Permanent Structures in the CMA (Sectors 1, 2, 4 and 5):

This consent relates to the construction of permanent (operational phase) structures within the CMA including piers, ramps, bridges, stormwater discharge outfalls and other consequential activities such as disturbance and/or vegetation removal. In GMA, CPA 2 and Mooring Management Area – Henderson Creek, Whau River and Pt Chevalier.

Duration: 10 years

Code:

RC = Standard Resource Consent Conditions

CEMP = Construction Environmental Management Plan Conditions

PI = Public Information Conditions

LV = Landscape and Visual Conditions

V = Vegetation Conditions

A = Avian Conditions

ARCH = Archaeology Conditions

C = Coastal Conditions

M = Marine Ecology Conditions

GENERAL CONDITIONS

1) RC.1 Except as modified by the conditions below, the works shall be undertaken in general accordance with the information provided by the New Zealand Transport Agency (NZTA), in the resource consent applications and the supporting documents (as detailed in Condition DC.1), and in the supplementary information provided in evidence by the NZTA.

2) RC.1A The NZTA shall implement the conditions of these consents in accordance with Schedule B, which sets out the Conditions that are to be applied to each consent including the duration of each consent.

3) RC.2 The Conditions of these consents may be reviewed by the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council, pursuant to Section 128 of the Resource Management Act 1991 (the Act), by the giving of notice pursuant to Section 129 of the Act, on the one year anniversary of the commencement of the consents and every year thereafter in order:

(a) To deal with any adverse effect on the environment which may arise from the exercise
To deal with any other adverse effect on the environment on which the exercise of the consent may have an influence.

4) RC.4 Any Management Plans submitted to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council for approval or certification may be submitted in stages to reflect any proposed staging of the physical works. Plans submitted shall clearly show the integration with adjacent stages and interrelated activities.

5) RC.5 In the event of any dispute, disagreement or inaction arising as to any Auckland Council Manager certification/ approvals required by the consent conditions, or as to the implementation of or monitoring required by the conditions, matters shall be referred in the first instance to the NZTA Regional State Highway Manager and to the Resource Consents Manager, Auckland Council to determine a process of resolution.

If a resolution cannot be agreed, then the matter may be referred to an independent appropriately qualified expert, agreeable to both parties, setting out the details of the matter to be referred for determination and the reasons the parties do not agree.

The independent appropriately qualified expert shall be appointed within 10 working days of the NZTA or Auckland Council giving notice of their intention to seek expert determination. The expert shall, as soon as possible, issue his or her decision on the matter. In making the decision, the expert shall be entitled to seek further information and hear from the parties as he or she sees fit.

Advice note: The dispute resolution process provided for in this condition does not prejudice any party’s right to take enforcement action in relation to the implementation of the designation conditions. However, the dispute resolution process will be applied before any formal enforcement action is taken by the Council except in urgent situations.

6) RC.6 Pursuant to Section 36(1)(d) of the RMA, the requiring authority is required to pay to Auckland Council any administrative charge for the carrying out by the local authority of its functions in relation to the administration, monitoring, and supervision of designation conditions.

7) RC.7 The servants of agents of Auckland Council shall be permitted to have access to relevant parts of the Project at all reasonable times for the purpose of carrying out inspections, investigations, tests, measurements and/or to take samples.

8) V.18 The NZTA shall implement the approved Traherne Island Weed and Pest Management Plan. Every 5 years, a suitably qualified and experienced ecologist engaged by NZTA shall review the plan in consultation with the Department of Conservation. The plan shall then be submitted to the Auckland Council for approval.

9) A.6 Animal pest control shall be undertaken by the NZTA on Traherne Island (northern and southern sides) and on the Coastal Marine Area (CMA) frontage of SH16 from Traherne Island North to Whau Creek, and on the southern side of SH16 from Traherne Island South to Whau River (in accordance with Condition V.17).

PRE-CONSTRUCTION CONDITIONS

10) RC.3 Within 3 months of the resource consents commencing for the Project (or at least 1 month prior to any Auckland Council approvals or certifications required by these Conditions, whichever is the earlier), the NZTA shall update and finalise to the satisfaction of the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council all drawings and Plans cited in Schedule A, together with a full set of the information and documentation referred to in Condition DC.1
and provide these to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council. At the same time the NZTA shall prepare to the satisfaction of Auckland Council, a document for each resource consent which sets out the resource consent and have attached to it in text format a comprehensive set of the conditions imposed by the Board of Inquiry in its Final Decision as summarised in Schedule B, inclusive of any standard conditions and advice notes.

In particular (but not limited to), the following Plans will need to be amended in light of the Final Conditions:

(a) F.2 Operational Scheme Plans (refer Schedule A, Row 3) require amendment detailing the amended location of the ventilation stacks and southern ventilation buildings;

(b) F.5 Construction Scheme Plans (refer Schedule A, Row 4) require amendment to detail changes to construction footprint for the amended location of ventilation stacks and southern ventilation buildings and reconfiguration of Construction Yard 1;

(c) F.6 Construction Yard Plans 101 and 107 (refer Schedule A, Row 7), detailing amendments to the Construction Yard 1 in light of the reconfiguration of this Yard and for Construction Yard 7 in light of the relocation of the northern ventilation stack (refer Schedule A, Row 34);

(d) F.8 Plans of Structures and Architectural Features (refer Schedule A, Row 9), detailing the amended location of the Northern Ventilation Stack and the design and location of the Southern Ventilation Building and Stack;

(e) The CNVMP (including flow diagram and the supplementary evidence produced by Ms Wilkening) (refer Schedule A, Rows 36, 37 and 39);

(f) Update to the areas of the Open Space Restoration Plans (Schedule A, Row 30) to:
   (i) Extend these areas in geographic extent to provide for the works identified in the Management Plan notations identified in the OS Conditions (in particular OS.5 and OS.6). (e.g. these areas will (as relevant) include Eric Armishaw Park, Howlett Reserve and Waterview Esplanade Reserve); and
   (ii) Exclude the operational area of designation required for the northern ventilation stack (as identified through the OPW process (refer Condition DC.8); and

(g) Schedule A, Row 28 the Plan detailing proposed open space impacts and replacements needs to be updated to recolour the two land parcels on Hendon Avenue (which are excluded from the replacement calculations) to ‘brown’ to confirm they are part of the operational impact and will not be returned as open space.

11) CEMP.1 Except where provided for in Condition CEMP.1A below, the NZTA shall update and finalise the draft Construction Environmental Management Plan (CEMP) including all the Management Plans which form part of the CEMP and are included as appendices, submitted with this application to ensure compliance with the consent and designation conditions imposed by the Board of Inquiry. The CEMP shall be provided to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council for review at least 20 working days prior to the commencement of works to certify compliance and consistency with the conditions. Construction shall not commence until certification is obtained.

Advice note: For clarity the CEMP will be updated and finalised in accordance with the conditions. Any amendments will be limited to reflecting the requirements of the conditions, specifying personnel, and completing the Environmental Risk Register.

Advice Note: Particular care must be taken with development and operation of Construction Yard 7. When the CEMP is being updated and finalised, consideration must be given to the contents of the draft SSCEMP prepared for Construction Yard 7 (Row 41, Schedule A) recognising changes required by inclusion of the ventilation stack in this yard.

12) CEMP.1B For the purposes of staging works, as some works may commence well in advance of others,
the NZTA may provide staged or site specific CEMPs for those works to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council. The NZTA shall consult with the Team Manager about the need and timing for any other site-specific or staged CEMPs and shall provide any required site-specific or staged CEMPs to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council for review at least 20 working days prior to commencement of such the specific stage (including enabling) or site works.

13) CEMP.2 The certification process of the CEMP (and its appendices) shall confirm that the CEMP gives effect to the relevant conditions, as well as those matters in CEMP.6, and that it includes details of:
   (a) Staff and contractors’ responsibilities;
   (b) Training requirements for employees, sub-contractors and visitors;
   (c) Environmental incident and emergency management;
   (d) Communication and interface procedures (in accordance with the Communication Plan required under Condition PI.2);
   (e) Environmental complaints management (including the procedures required under Condition PI.4);
   (f) Compliance monitoring;
   (g) Reporting (including detail on the frequency of reporting to the Auckland Council);
   (h) Environmental auditing; and
   (i) Corrective action.

14) CEMP.3 The management of key environmental effects associated with the construction phase of the Project is detailed within environmental management plans that are included in the CEMP as appendices. This suite of management plans as shown on Figure CEMP.A comprises:
   (a) Construction Noise and Vibration Management Plan (CNVMP);
   (b) Construction Air Quality Management Plan (CAQMP);
   (c) Erosion and Sediment Control Plan (ESCP);
   (d) Temporary Stormwater Management Plan (TSMP);
   (e) Ecological Management Plan (ECOMP);
   (f) Groundwater Management Plan (GWMP);
   (g) Settlement Effects Management Plan (SEMP);
   (h) Contaminated Soils Management Plan (CSMP);
   (i) Hazardous Substances Management Plan (HSMP);
   (j) Archaeological Site Management Plan (ASMP);
   (k) Construction Traffic Management Plan (CTMP);
   (l) Concrete Batching and Crushing Plant Management Plan (CBCPMP);
   (m) Electrical Infrastructure Site Development and Construction Management Plan (EISDCMP) (to be prepared in accordance with Condition CEMP.15);
   (n) Waste Management Plan (to be prepared in accordance with Condition CEMP.10) ; and
   (o) Temporary Construction Lighting Management Plan (to be prepared in accordance with Condition L.2).

15) CEMP.6 The finalised CEMP shall include specific details on demolition, construction and management of all works associated with the Project. The certification process of the CEMP shall confirm that the CEMP includes details of the following:
   (a) Details of the site or Project manager and the community liaison person, including their
(b) The location of large notice boards that clearly identify the NZTA and the Project name, together with the name, telephone, email address and address for service of the site or Project manager and the community liaison person;

(c) An outline construction programme of the work indicating in particular likely time periods for road closures and anticipated traffic diversion effects;

(d) The hours of work, which should reflect the need to ensure that residents enjoy reasonable freedom from noisy or intrusive construction activity in their neighbourhood at night, on Sundays and during public holidays;

(e) Measures to be adopted to maintain the land affected by the works in a tidy condition in terms of disposal/stORAGE of rubbish, storage and unloading of building materials and similar construction activities;

(f) Location of worker’s offices and conveniences (e.g., portaloos);

(g) Procedures of controlling sediment run-off, dust and the removal of soil, debris and demolition and construction materials from public roads or places. Dust mitigation measures should include use of water sprays to control dust nuisance on dry or windy days;

(h) Methods to stabilise ingress and egress points to construction sites, to the standard required by ARC Technical Publication 90 (Nov 2007);

16) CEMP.10 The NZTA shall finalise and implement the Hazardous Substances Management Plan (HSMP), through the CEMP (as per Condition CEMP.1), submitted with this application, prior to works commencing on site. The certification process of the CEMP shall confirm that the HSMP clearly identifies the requirements for proper storage, handling, transport and disposal of hazardous substances during the construction phase of the Project and confirm that there shall be no storage of explosives on the Project site.

17) CEMP.11 The NZTA shall develop and implement a Waste Management Plan in accordance with the waste management principles, controls and methods set out in the CEMP. The Plan shall be provided to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council and be implemented throughout the entire construction period.

18) CEMP.15 The NZTA will be responsible for all service relocations required for construction of the Project. The NZTA shall liaise with the providers of infrastructure service networks (including, but not limited to water, gas, stormwater, wastewater, power and telecommunications), and private property owners with on-site services to develop methodologies and timing for necessary services relocation required for the Project, with the objective of minimising disruption to the operation of these service networks and on-site services.

Advice note:

(a) It is noted that if separate consents are required for relocations for any services of network utility operators or landowners, such consents will be obtained before construction commences in the relevant area, and any effects of those relocations would be considered at that time. The same applies to any alteration of consents if required.

(b) Network infrastructure owned and operated by Watercare Services is located within the designations. An operating agreement will be developed by the NZTA and Watercare Services which will include appropriate notification and access protocols where works are to be undertaken by either network operator on or adjacent to Watercare Services infrastructure within the designations.
19) PI.1 A community liaison person shall be appointed by the NZTA for the duration of the construction phase of the Project to be the main and readily accessible point of contact for persons affected by the Project. The liaison person’s name and contact details shall be made available in the CEMP and on site signage by the NZTA. This person must be reasonably available for on-going consultation on all matters of concern to affected parties arising from the Project.

20) PI.2 The NZTA shall prepare and implement a Communications Plan that sets out procedures detailing how the public, Ministry of Social Development, Housing New Zealand Corporation and other organisations representing the particular demographic characteristics of the community (including but not limited to Primary Health Organisations, general practitioners, youth, education organisations, aged care groups and groups representing ethnic and migrant communities) will be communicated with throughout the construction and monitoring periods (as prescribed in the designation and consent conditions).

In preparing the Communications Plan, the NZTA will liaise with Auckland Council to access its community liaison databases. The Communications Plan will include details of:

(a) The site or Project manager and the community liaison person, including their contact details (phone, facsimile, postal address, email address);

(b) In accordance with these Conditions, the database of the key construction activities and monitoring requirements that are the subject of the Communications Plan;

(c) The database of stakeholders and residents who will be communicated with;

(d) Communication methods, an assessment of how these methods reach the different audience/stakeholder groups (including those methods set out in Condition CEMP.6), and detail on when each of these methods will be used (e.g. regular communication or event specific methods);

(e) The appointed specialist in Environmental and Occupational Medicine, including contact details (as per Condition SO.13);

(f) Any stakeholder specific communication plans required; and

(g) Monitoring and review procedures for the Communications Plan.

The Communications Plan shall be written in accordance with the external communication procedures set out in the CEMP and provided at least 20 working days prior to construction commencing, to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council, Working Liaison Group and the Community Liaison Group(s) established by Condition PI.5. The structure of the communication groups set out in these conditions is attached as Figure PI.A.

21) PI.5 The NZTA shall establish Community Liaison Group(s) at least two months prior to construction commencing in each of the following key construction areas:

(a) Te Atatu (including the SH16 Causeway)

(b) Waterview (including works to St Lukes on SH16 and on the Waterview Estuary and Causeway Bridges)

(c) Owairaka

and hold regular meetings (at least three monthly) throughout the construction period and up to 24 months following construction completion relevant to these areas (or less if the members of the Group agree), so that on-going monitoring information can continue to be disseminated.

The Community Liaison Group(s) shall be open to all interested parties within the Project area including, but not limited to the following groups:

(a) Auckland Council and Auckland Transport;

(b) Educational facilities within the Project area (including schools, kindergartens, childcare
(c) Relevant community/environmental groups (including but not limited to Friends of Oakley Creek, Star Mills Preservation Group, Cycle Action Auckland and representatives from those organisations identified in the Communications Plan (as required by Condition PI.2) and local residents;

(d) Department of Conservation;

(e) Local Boards;

(f) Iwi groups with Mana Whenua;

(g) Public transport providers; and

(h) Housing New Zealand Corporation.

Advice note: The purpose of the Community Liaison Group(s) is to provide a regular forum through which information about the Project can be provided to the community, and an opportunity for concerns or issues to be raised.

22) V.11 Prior to commencement of works adjacent to Traherne Island, the NZTA shall employ a suitably qualified and experienced plant translocation expert to uplift and protect all areas of *Mimulus repens* on Traherne Island that will be affected by the work. The *Mimulus repens* shall be relocated to suitable and safe habitat away from the works area, or otherwise held and protected for the duration of the works in the vicinity of their original location and be replanted back at that location (or in close proximity to it) upon completion of the works. The location of the recipient sites will be determined in consultation with the Department of Conservation and in general accordance with the Traherne Island Natural Heritage Restoration Plan (2009 – 2014). Trials shall be undertaken to identify appropriate recipient sites, with these trial sites being monitored for a period of no less than 5 years, or until their failure. Where possible, recipient sites shall be located in currently weed-free areas. Where recipient sites may potentially be affected by weeds, they shall be subject to an on-going weed management plan. Should translocation attempts fail at all trial sites then the NZTA, in consultation with DOC, shall determine an alternative appropriate form of mitigation.

23) V.17 Prior to commencement of works adjacent to or on Traherne Island, the NZTA shall employ a suitably qualified and experienced ecologist for the preparation of a Traherne Island Weed and Pest Management Plan. The Plan shall be prepared in consultation with the Department of Conservation and be submitted to the Auckland Council for approval at least 20 working days prior to construction commencing.

24) A.1 The NZTA shall finalise, and implement through the CEMP, ECOMP submitted with this application to include the matters set out in Conditions A.2 to A.6.

25) ARCH Any archaeological sites within the area affected by the Project shall not be modified or disturbed in any way unless written authorisation has been obtained from the NZ Historic Places Trust.

26) C.1 The NZTA shall provide to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council plans and drawings (including dimensioned, cross sections, elevations and site plans of all areas of proposed reclamation (including associated permanent and temporary CMA occupation), permanent structures and temporary structures) at least 20 working days before the proposed date of commencement of the construction of the reclamation, bridge piers or temporary structure.

27) M.1 The NZTA shall finalise and implement through the CEMP, the ECOMP submitted with this application. The ECOMP shall be revised to accurately reflect the conditions of this consent and changes to the details of construction processes prior to construction commencing. The ECOMP shall include, but not be limited to, details of:
(a) Monitoring of marine habitats and ecological values;
(b) Trigger event criteria for undertaking additional monitoring;
(c) Procedures for responding to accidental discharges to the marine environment;
(d) Complaints investigation, monitoring and reporting; and
(e) The identification of staff and contractors’ responsibilities.

CONSTRUCTION CONDITIONS

28) CEMP.4 The CEMP shall be implemented and maintained throughout the entire construction period.

29) CEMP.5 A copy of the CEMP shall be held on each construction site at all times and be available for inspection on request by the Auckland Council.

30) CEMP.8 All storage of material and equipment associated with the construction works shall take place within the boundaries of the designation.

31) CEMP.12 The CEMP shall be reviewed by the NZTA at least annually or as a result of a material change to the Project. The review shall take into consideration:
   (a) Compliance with designation and consent conditions;
   (b) Any changes to construction methods;
   (c) Key changes to roles and responsibilities within the Project;
   (d) Changes in industry best practice standards;
   (e) Changes in legal or other requirements;
   (f) Results of inspections, monitoring, incidents, corrective actions, internal or external assessments; and
   (g) Public complaints.

A summary of the review process undertaken shall be kept by the NZTA, provided annually to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council and made available (with any related data) to the Auckland Council upon request.

32) CEMP.13 Following the review process (as described in Condition CEMP.12), the CEMP may require updating. Any material change proposed to the CEMP (including appended Management Plans) shall be submitted for approval to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council at least 10 working days prior to the proposed changes taking effect.’

Advice Note: Material change will include amendment to any base information informing the CEMP or any process, procedure or method of the CEMP (such as the environmental constraints map, compliance monitoring process, complaints procedure or mitigation / remedial methods identified) which has the potential to increase adverse effects on a particular value. For clarity changes to personnel and contact schedules do not constitute a material change.

33) PI.3 At least 15 working days prior to the commencement of construction, and at 15 working day intervals thereafter, or as required depending on the scale of works and effects on the community, advertisements will be placed in the relevant local newspapers and community noticeboards (as identified in Condition CEMP.6(b)) detailing the nature of the forthcoming works, the location of the forthcoming works and hours of operation. All advertisements will include reference to a 24 hour toll free complaints telephone number. Where relevant, advertisements will also include but not be limited to details of:

   (a) Any traffic disruptions or controls or changes to property access, pedestrian/ cycle routes and bus stops; and
(b) Any other construction activities, including night time works, blasting, and structure-borne noise, as identified in the conditions.

34) PI.4 The NZTA shall manage, investigate and resolve (as appropriate) all complaints for the duration of the construction works in accordance with the environmental complaints section of the CEMP. The implementation strategy for complaints includes:

(a) A 24 hour toll free telephone number and email address, which shall be provided to all potentially affected residents and businesses. The number shall be available and answered at all times during the entire duration of the works for the receipt and management of any complaints. A sign containing the contact details shall be located at each site specific work activity;

(b) The NZTA shall maintain a record of all complaints made to this number, email or any site office, including the full details of the complainant and the nature of the complaint;

(c) Upon receiving a complaint, within 10 days of complaint receipt, a formal written response will be provided to the complainant and Auckland Council;

(d) The NZTA shall undertake corrective action where necessary to resolve any problem identified. All action taken and relevant information shall be documented. For the avoidance of doubt, ‘where necessary’ refers to where the works are not being carried out in accordance with conditions of this designation;

(e) Where issues and complaints about effects cannot be resolved through the CEMP complaints management process, a meeting shall be held between the NZTA, the complainant and the Auckland Council representative(s) to discuss the complaint and ways in which the issue may be resolved. If parties cannot agree on a resolution, an independent qualified mediator will be appointed, agreeable to all parties and at the shared cost of all parties, to undertake mediation of the dispute or concerns; and

(f) All information collected in Conditions PI.4 (b), (c) and (d) shall be detailed in a Construction Compliance Report (including the means by which the complaint was addressed, whether resolution was reached and how the response was carried out) prepared by the NZTA. This Report shall be submitted to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council on a quarterly basis commencing at the beginning of the works and for the entire duration of construction.

35) PI.6 The Community Liaison Group(s) shall be provided opportunities to review and comment on the following (amongst other things):

(a) The Outline Plan of Works detailing designs for the northern and southern ventilation buildings and stacks (the outcomes of this consultation will be reported in accordance with the processes required in DC.8(n) and DC.9(k);

(b) The Open Space Restoration Plans (as required by Condition OS.3);

(c) Finalisation and amendment to Urban Design and Landscape Plans (UDL Plans) (as required by Condition LV.1);

(d) The Oakley Inlet Heritage Plan (as required by Conditions OS.5(b)(i) and ARCH.6);

(e) The detail of the Oakley Creek restoration (as required by Condition STW.20);

(f) Publicly available results of environmental monitoring as required by the designation and/or these Consents (e.g. air quality monitoring); and

(g) The finalisation of the STEM assessment required by CEMP.6(o) and a schedule of trees that are required to be removed for consideration of timber use in heritage projects as required by Condition SO.7.

Advice Note: Attention is drawn to the Vegetation conditions concerning identification and protection of Significant Vegetation and Valued Vegetation.
36) LV.7 The NZTA shall ensure that the Temporary Embankments constructed for the Causeway are located on the seaward side of SH16 between the motorway end of Rosebank Road and the bridge over the Waterview Inlet.

37) A.2 The NZTA shall provide temporary high tide roosting structure(s) adjacent to the Causeway during construction, in accordance with the ECOMP, to the satisfaction of the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council. The temporary bird roosts shall be sized in accordance with the ECOMP, and located within the Waterview Estuary adjacent to the southern side of the causeway and in the vicinity of the existing Causeway bridge.

38) A.5 Vegetation clearance at Traherne Island shall occur outside the bird breeding season of September to December. Elsewhere, vegetation clearance shall occur outside the bird breeding season of September to December where practicable.

39) ARCH.3 If any archaeological sites, including human remains are exposed during site works, then the following procedures shall apply:

(a) Immediately it becomes apparent that a possible archaeological or traditional site has been exposed, all site works in the immediate vicinity shall cease;
(b) The site supervisor shall immediately secure the area in a way that ensures that any artefacts or remains are untouched and notify the Project archaeologist;
(c) The Project archaeologist shall inspect the site to assess the relevance of the find, and then the Auckland Council shall be advised of the significance;
(d) If the site is confirmed to be an archaeological site by the Project archaeologist, the site supervisor shall then notify tangata whenua, the New Zealand Historic Places Trust, and the Auckland Council that an archaeological site has been exposed so that appropriate action can be taken;
(e) In the case of human remains, the NZ Police shall be notified.

40) C.2 Construction shall be undertaken in accordance with the construction methodology detailed in the application, specifically Technical Report G.23 Coastal Works and Technical Report G.22 Erosion and Sediment Control Plan. The construction methodology shall include:

(a) The use of temporary coffer dams to create dry working areas;
(b) Realignment of sections of existing low-tide channels in Oakley inlet and Waterview Estuary that will be directly affected by the reclamation works;
(c) Removal of mangroves to provide construction and ground-treatment access, placement of temporary coffer dams and to facilitate natural channel migration in the Whau River side drainage channel (east of Rosebank Domain);
(d) Installation or removal works to be undertaken at the best practicable time to minimise potential sediment disturbance.

41) C.3 The NZTA shall notify the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council in writing of the proposed commencement date of the reclamation, structures and/or channel realignment works at least 10 working days prior to the proposed start date.

42) C.6 The NZTA shall maintain the site in good order and shall remedy all damage and disturbance caused by vehicle traffic, plant and equipment to the foreshore during construction, to the satisfaction of the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council.

43) C.7 Removal or pruning of vegetation in the CMA shall be limited to the areas of permanent and
temporary occupation as shown on the Waterview Connection Project Assessment of Environmental Effects Plan Set F.12 and F.13 submitted with the application (ref Schedule A, rows 13 and 14). Removal of mangroves shall be implemented in accordance with the principles detailed in the Ecological Management Plan.

44) C.11 (a) Provision for navigation of vessels beneath the Whau River Bridges during construction shall be maintained to the satisfaction of the Auckland Harbour Master;

(b) Following construction, provision for the navigation of vessels beneath the Whau River Bridges be provided by the navigation channels and headspace clearance identified on the Plan Whau River Motorway and Pedestrian Bridges Elevation Plan 221 in F.8 (refer Schedule A, Row 9);

(c) For purposes of safe navigation, the NZTA shall identify an appropriate pier to mark on the Whau River Bridges, in consultation with the Te Atatu Boating Club and to the satisfaction of the Auckland Harbour Master. This pier shall be surveyed and marked with height graduations advising available minimum headspace under the Bridges for different stages of the tide with an appropriate safety margin.

45) M.10 The NZTA shall maintain the coastal marine area free of any gross litter, rubbish and debris during construction.

46) M.11 Prior to excavation of sediment from the marine habitat remediation zone (MHRZ), mangrove vegetation will be removed from the sediment and disposed of at an appropriate offsite facility. The excavated sediment shall be stockpiled within an adjacent dry working area. When the sediment is returned to the MHRZ it will be levelled out to tie in with the existing mudflat. Where a routine marine benthic habitat monitoring site is within an area of MHRZ, additional monitoring of the depth of sediment overlying the improved ground/mudcrete will also be undertaken.

POST-CONSTRUCTION / OPERATIONS CONDITIONS

47) V.15 Planting along and within the rock revetment of the widened SH16 causeway shall be undertaken by the NZTA at locations in general accordance with the Urban Design and Landscape Plans and planting schedules (Refer Schedule A, Row 17), as identified in those plans under the label "Rock Armour with Saltwater Revetment Planting". The planting treatments will be in accordance with the concepts of the ECOMP, Appendix I 'Conceptual Rock Revetment Planting Designs'.

48) C.4 The NZTA shall notify the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council in writing within 10 working days of the completion of each discrete area of reclamation, structures and/or channel realignment works.

49) C.5 The NZTA shall supply to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council and LINZ Hydrographic Services and LINZ Topographic Services Land Information New Zealand, PO Box 5501, Wellington 6145), a complete set of "as built” plans, final topographic and bathymetric data, and appropriate certification confirming that the new relocations, structures and channel realignment works have been built in accordance with sound engineering practice, within three months of the completion of the reclamation works.

50) C.8 The NZTA shall ensure the removal of all equipment, erosion and sediment control measures, surplus sediment and construction materials from the CMA within 20 working days following the completion of the construction works, to the satisfaction of the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council.

MONITORING
51) **A.3** The NZTA shall employ a suitably qualified ecologist to undertake monitoring of the roosting areas located at:

(a) The existing high tide roost in Harbourview-Orangihina Park; and

(b) The temporary construction roosting structure(s) pursuant to Condition A.2.

Monitoring shall be undertaken on a monthly basis, with a monitoring report prepared on a quarterly basis. The monitoring report shall be made available to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council and Department of Conservation upon request.

52) **A.4** Should the monitoring results indicate that the roosting sites have been abandoned, consultation shall be undertaken with the Department of Conservation and the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council to determine the need for and type of further management strategies (if any) required.

53) **C.15** Within a month of the closure of the Rosebank culvert under SH16 (adjacent to the Rosebank Westbound Off-ramp), the NZTA shall undertake a single tidal salinity survey on a high spring tide (High Water at or above 3.4 m at Port of Auckland) without significant prior rainfall, to confirm and document that tidal flushing of brackish waters occurs in the boardwalk area presently serviced by the culvert. Salinity, water depth and the length of time either side of high water that the area is effectively inundated shall be monitored at one site near the eastern end of the boardwalk section of the shared cycleway [WGS-84 Map ref: -36.87057° N, 174.67408° E]. The monitoring information shall be made available to the Auckland Council.

54) **C.16** On the northern side of the Causeway, from just before the commencement of construction in the CMA for each section of works, until 6 months after completion of each section, the NZTA shall undertake every two (2) months or after a severe wave-storm, intertidal beach profile surveys down to the spring low-tide mark along offshore-directed transects (one off the centre of the construction section and one either side at 20 m away from the ends of the construction site) and photographs documenting the physical state of the seabed around the perimeter of the cofferdam. The monitoring information shall be made available to the Auckland Council. If the monitoring identifies that excessive erosion or accretion has occurred from corner or end effects of the construction section, as confirmed by a coastal processes expert, further seabed erosion control measures or a sediment by-passing method (for accretion) to reduce localised effects seaward of the temporary occupation or permanent occupation designation (whichever applies) shall be implemented as soon as practicable. Details of the proposed measures or methods shall be made available to Auckland Council prior to implementation.

55) **M.2** The NZTA shall engage a suitably qualified ecologist to undertake a marine habitat monitoring programme, as described in Conditions M.3 to M.6.

56) **M.3** The marine benthic habitat monitoring programme shall be undertaken every 6 months:

(a) At least 12 months prior to construction commencing, to allow for two baseline surveys to be undertaken;

(b) During construction; and

(c) For a maximum of 3 years following completion of the Project, or for a lesser time if the monitoring indicates no significant effects, as agreed with the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council.

57) **M.4** The marine benthic habitat monitoring programme shall be undertaken in accordance with the details set out in the ECOMP and include:

(a) Sampling of the marine invertebrate community composition (collection of sediment cores to a depth of approximately 15cm);
(b) Sampling of the sediment surface (top 2cm) for sediment grain size; and
(c) Sampling of the sediment surface (top 2cm) for sediment quality (analysis of the concentration of copper, lead, zinc and polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons).

58) M.5 The marine benthic habitat monitoring shall be undertaken within sampling grids (50m x 30m) broadly established at the following locations:
   (a) Two locations within Oakley Inlet;
   (b) Four locations within Waterview Estuary; and
   (c) Four locations north of the Causeway.
Specific locations and experimental design shall be detailed in the ECOMP, and the design of the monitoring programme will be based on the *Estuarine Environmental Assessment and Monitoring: A National Protocol* (Cawthron 2002).

59) M.6 The NZTA shall undertake additional marine habitat monitoring in the event of a ‘trigger event’ for marine ecology habitats. For the purposes of this consent, a ‘trigger event’ for marine ecology habitats is defined in the ECOMP.

60) M.7 The NZTA shall review the marine habitat monitoring results (pursuant to Conditions M.3 to M.6) and in the event that potential adverse effects are identified, the NZTA shall develop and implement appropriate contingency plans and/or remedial measures.

**REPORTING**

61) M.8 The marine benthic habitat monitoring results shall be compiled by the NZTA, and a report provided to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council every 6 months.
This document has been prepared in compliance with conditions of the “Final Report and Decision of the Board of Inquiry into the New Zealand Transport Agency Waterview Connection Proposal, Volume 2, Conditions of Consent”. Schedule B of Volume 2 identifies the Conditions relevant to this Consent by the code and number as referenced throughout this document. In the event of dispute, Schedule B of Volume 2 shall take precedence over this Consent.

Type: Coastal Consent

Description: Erection of Permanent Structures in the CMA (Sectors 3 and 4):

This consent relates to the erection of temporary (construction) structures within the CMA including piers, ramps, bridges, conveyor structures, temporary staging platforms, stormwater discharge outfalls and other consequential activities such as disturbance and/or vegetation removal. In CPA 1 – Waterview Estuary.

Duration: 10 years

Code:
RC = Standard Resource Consent Conditions
CEMP = Construction Environmental Management Plan Conditions
PI = Public Information Conditions
LV = Landscape and Visual Conditions
V = Vegetation Conditions
A = Avian Conditions
ARCH = Archaeology Conditions
C = Coastal Conditions
M = Marine Ecology Conditions

GENERAL CONDITIONS

1) RC.1 Except as modified by the conditions below, the works shall be undertaken in general accordance with the information provided by the New Zealand Transport Agency (NZTA), in the resource consent applications and the supporting documents (as detailed in Condition DC.1), and in the supplementary information provided in evidence by the NZTA.

2) RC.1A The NZTA shall implement the conditions of these consents in accordance with Schedule B, which sets out the Conditions that are to be applied to each consent including the duration of each consent.

3) RC.2 The Conditions of these consents may be reviewed by the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council, pursuant to Section 128 of the Resource Management Act 1991 (the Act), by the giving of notice pursuant to Section 129 of the Act, on the one year anniversary of the commencement of the consents and every year thereafter in order:

(a) To deal with any adverse effect on the environment which may arise from the exercise of the consent and which it is appropriate to deal with at a later stage; or
(b) To deal with any other adverse effect on the environment on which the exercise of the consent may have an influence.

4) **RC.4** Any Management Plans submitted to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council for approval or certification may be submitted in stages to reflect any proposed staging of the physical works. Plans submitted shall clearly show the integration with adjacent stages and interrelated activities.

5) **RC.5** In the event of any dispute, disagreement or inaction arising as to any Auckland Council Manager certification/ approvals required by the consent conditions, or as to the implementation of or monitoring required by the conditions, matters shall be referred in the first instance to the NZTA Regional State Highway Manager and to the Resource Consents Manager, Auckland Council to determine a process of resolution.

If a resolution cannot be agreed, then the matter may be referred to an independent appropriately qualified expert, agreeable to both parties, setting out the details of the matter to be referred for determination and the reasons the parties do not agree.

The independent appropriately qualified expert shall be appointed within 10 working days of the NZTA or Auckland Council giving notice of their intention to seek expert determination. The expert shall, as soon as possible, issue his or her decision on the matter. In making the decision, the expert shall be entitled to seek further information and hear from the parties as he or she sees fit.

Advice note: The dispute resolution process provided for in this condition does not prejudice any party’s right to take enforcement action in relation to the implementation of the designation conditions. However, the dispute resolution process will be applied before any formal enforcement action is taken by the Council except in urgent situations.

6) **RC.6** Pursuant to Section 36(1)(d) of the RMA, the requiring authority is required to pay to Auckland Council any administrative charge for the carrying out by the local authority of its functions in relation to the administration, monitoring, and supervision of designation conditions.

7) **RC.7** The servants of agents of Auckland Council shall be permitted to have access to relevant parts of the Project at all reasonable times for the purpose of carrying out inspections, investigations, tests, measurements and/or to take samples.

8) **V.18** The NZTA shall implement the approved Traherne Island Weed and Pest Management Plan. Every 5 years, a suitably qualified and experienced ecologist engaged by NZTA shall review the plan in consultation with the Department of Conservation. The plan shall then be submitted to the Auckland Council for approval.

9) **A.6** Animal pest control shall be undertaken by the NZTA on Traherne Island (northern and southern sides) and on the Coastal Marine Area (CMA) frontage of SH16 from Traherne Island North to Whau Creek, and on the southern side of SH16 from Traherne Island South to Whau River (in accordance with Condition V.17).

**PRE-CONSTRUCTION CONDITIONS**

10) **RC.3** Within 3 months of the resource consents commencing for the Project (or at least 1 month prior to any Auckland Council approvals or certifications required by these Conditions, whichever is the earlier), the NZTA shall update and finalise to the satisfaction of the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council all drawings and Plans cited in Schedule A, together with a full set of the information and documentation referred to in Condition DC.1 and provide these to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council. At the same time the NZTA shall prepare to the satisfaction of Auckland Council, a document
for each resource consent which sets out the resource consent and have attached to it in text format a comprehensive set of the conditions imposed by the Board of Inquiry in its Final Decision as summarised in Schedule B, inclusive of any standard conditions and advice notes.

In particular (but not limited to), the following Plans will need to be amended in light of the Final Conditions:

(a) F.2 Operational Scheme Plans (refer Schedule A, Row 3) require amendment detailing the amended location of the ventilation stacks and southern ventilation buildings;

(b) F.5 Construction Scheme Plans (refer Schedule A, Row 4) require amendment to detail changes to construction footprint for the amended location of ventilation stacks and southern ventilation buildings and reconfiguration of Construction Yard 1;

(c) F.6 Construction Yard Plans 101 and 107 (refer Schedule A, Row 7), detailing amendments to the Construction Yard 1 in light of the reconfiguration of this Yard and for Construction Yard 7 in light of the relocation of the northern ventilation stack (refer Schedule A, Row 34);

(d) F.8 Plans of Structures and Architectural Features (refer Schedule A, Row 9), detailing the amended location of the Northern Ventilation Stack and the design and location of the Southern Ventilation Building and Stack;

(e) The CNVMP (including flow diagram and the supplementary evidence produced by Ms Wilkening) (refer Schedule A, Rows 36, 37 and 39);

(f) Update to the areas of the Open Space Restoration Plans (Schedule A, Row 30) to:
   (i) Extend these areas in geographic extent to provide for the works identified in the Management Plan notations identified in the OS Conditions (in particular OS.5 and OS.6). (e.g. these areas will (as relevant) include Eric Armishaw Park, Howlett Reserve and Waterview Esplanade Reserve); and
   (ii) Exclude the operational area of designation required for the northern ventilation stack (as identified through the OPW process (refer Condition DC.8); and

(g) Schedule A, Row 28 the Plan detailing proposed open space impacts and replacements needs to be updated to recolour the two land parcels on Hendon Avenue (which are excluded from the replacement calculations) to ‘brown’ to confirm they are part of the operational impact and will not be returned as open space.

11) CEMP.1 Except where provided for in Condition CEMP.1A below, the NZTA shall update and finalise the draft Construction Environmental Management Plan (CEMP) including all the Management Plans which form part of the CEMP and are included as appendices, submitted with this application to ensure compliance with the consent and designation conditions imposed by the Board of Inquiry. The CEMP shall be provided to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council for review at least 20 working days prior to the commencement of works to certify compliance and consistency with the conditions. Construction shall not commence until certification is obtained.

Advice note: For clarity the CEMP will be updated and finalised in accordance with the conditions. Any amendments will be limited to reflecting the requirements of the conditions, specifying personnel, and completing the Environmental Risk Register.

Advice Note: Particular care must be taken with development and operation of Construction Yard 7. When the CEMP is being updated and finalised, consideration must be given to the contents of the draft SSCEMP prepared for Construction Yard 7 (Row 41, Schedule A) recognising changes required by inclusion of the ventilation stack in this yard.

12) CEMP.1A In the case of the trial embankment, where works will commence well in advance of the
main construction works for the Causeway, the NZTA will provide to the Major Infrastructure 
Team Manager, Auckland Council, a site-specific CEMP for review and approval at least 
20 working days prior to commencement of the trial embankment works.

13) CEMP.1B For the purposes of staging works, as some works may commence well in advance of 
others, the NZTA may provide staged or site specific CEMPs for those works to the Major 
Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council. The NZTA shall consult with the Team 
Manager about the need and timing for any other site-specific or staged CEMPs and shall 
provide any required site-specific or staged CEMPs to the Major Infrastructure Team 
Manager, Auckland Council for review at least 20 working days prior to commencement of 
such the specific stage (including enabling) or site works.

14) CEMP.2 The certification process of the CEMP (and its appendices) shall confirm that the CEMP 
gives effect to the relevant conditions, as well as those matters in CEMP.6, and that it 
includes details of:
(a) Staff and contractors’ responsibilities;
(b) Training requirements for employees, sub-contractors and visitors;
(c) Environmental incident and emergency management;
(d) Communication and interface procedures (in accordance with the Communication Plan 
required under Condition PI.2);
(e) Environmental complaints management (including the procedures required under 
Condition PI.4);
(f) Compliance monitoring;
(g) Reporting (including detail on the frequency of reporting to the Auckland Council);
(h) Environmental auditing; and
(i) Corrective action.

15) CEMP.3 The management of key environmental effects associated with the construction phase of 
the Project is detailed within environmental management plans that are included in the 
CEMP as appendices. This suite of management plans as shown on Figure CEMP.A 
comprises:
(a) Construction Noise and Vibration Management Plan (CNVMP);
(b) Construction Air Quality Management Plan (CAQMP);
(c) Erosion and Sediment Control Plan (ESCP);
(d) Temporary Stormwater Management Plan (TSMP);
(e) Ecological Management Plan (ECOMP);
(f) Groundwater Management Plan (GWMP);
(g) Settlement Effects Management Plan (SEMP);
(h) Contaminated Soils Management Plan (CSMP);
(i) Hazardous Substances Management Plan (HSMP);
(j) Archaeological Site Management Plan (ASMP);
(k) Construction Traffic Management Plan (CTMP);
(l) Concrete Batching and Crushing Plant Management Plan (CBCPMP);
(m) Electrical Infrastructure Site Development and Construction Management Plan 
(EISDCMP) (to be prepared in accordance with Condition CEMP.15);
(n) Waste Management Plan (to be prepared in accordance with Condition CEMP.10) ; 
and
(o) Temporary Construction Lighting Management Plan (to be prepared in accordance with
16) CEMP.6 The finalised CEMP shall include specific details on demolition, construction and management of all works associated with the Project. The certification process of the CEMP shall confirm that the CEMP includes details of the following:

(a) Details of the site or Project manager and the community liaison person, including their contact details (phone, facsimile, postal address, email address);

(b) The location of large notice boards that clearly identify the NZTA and the Project name, together with the name, telephone, email address and address for service of the site or Project manager and the community liaison person;

(c) An outline construction programme of the work indicating in particular likely time periods for road closures and anticipated traffic diversion effects;

(d) The hours of work, which should reflect the need to ensure that residents enjoy reasonable freedom from noisy or intrusive construction activity in their neighbourhood at night, on Sundays and during public holidays;

(e) Measures to be adopted to maintain the land affected by the works in a tidy condition in terms of disposal/ storage of rubbish, storage and unloading of building materials and similar construction activities;

(f) Location of worker’s offices and conveniences (e.g. portaloos);

(g) Procedures of controlling sediment run-off, dust and the removal of soil, debris and demolition and construction materials from public roads or places. Dust mitigation measures should include use of water sprays to control dust nuisance on dry or windy days;

(h) Methods to stabilise ingress and egress points to construction sites, to the standard required by ARC Technical Publication 90 (Nov 2007);

17) CEMP.10 The NZTA shall finalise and implement the Hazardous Substances Management Plan (HSMP), through the CEMP (as per Condition CEMP.1), submitted with this application, prior to works commencing on site. The certification process of the CEMP shall confirm that the HSMP clearly identifies the requirements for proper storage, handling, transport and disposal of hazardous substances during the construction phase of the Project and confirm that there shall be no storage of explosives on the Project site.

18) CEMP.11 The NZTA shall develop and implement a Waste Management Plan in accordance with the waste management principles, controls and methods set out in the CEMP. The Plan shall be provided to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council and be implemented throughout the entire construction period.

19) CEMP.15 The NZTA will be responsible for all service relocations required for construction of the Project. The NZTA shall liaise with the providers of infrastructure service networks (including, but not limited to water, gas, stormwater, wastewater, power and telecommunications), and private property owners with on-site services to develop methodologies and timing for necessary services relocation required for the Project, with the objective of minimising disruption to the operation of these service networks and on-site services.

Advice note:

(a) It is noted that if separate consents are required for relocations for any services of network utility operators or landowners, such consents will be obtained before construction commences in the relevant area, and any effects of those relocations would be considered at that time. The same applies to any alteration of consents if required.
(b) Network infrastructure owned and operated by Watercare Services is located within the designations. An operating agreement will be developed by the NZTA and Watercare Services which will include appropriate notification and access protocols where works are to be undertaken by either network operator or on or adjacent to Watercare Services infrastructure within the designations.

20) PI.1 A community liaison person shall be appointed by the NZTA for the duration of the construction phase of the Project to be the main and readily accessible point of contact for persons affected by the Project. The liaison person’s name and contact details shall be made available in the CEMP and on site signage by the NZTA. This person must be reasonably available for on-going consultation on all matters of concern to affected parties arising from the Project.

21) PI.2 The NZTA shall prepare and implement a Communications Plan that sets out procedures detailing how the public, Ministry of Social Development, Housing New Zealand Corporation and other organisations representing the particular demographic characteristics of the community (including but not limited to Primary Health Organisations, general practitioners, youth, education organisations, aged care groups and groups representing ethnic and migrant communities) will be communicated with throughout the construction and monitoring periods (as prescribed in the designation and consent conditions).

In preparing the Communications Plan, the NZTA will liaise with Auckland Council to access its community liaison databases. The Communications Plan will include details of:

(a) The site or Project manager and the community liaison person, including their contact details (phone, facsimile, postal address, email address);

(b) In accordance with these Conditions, the database of the key construction activities and monitoring requirements that are the subject of the Communications Plan;

(c) The database of stakeholders and residents who will be communicated with;

(d) Communication methods, an assessment of how these methods reach the different audience/stakeholder groups (including those methods set out in Condition CEMP.6), and detail on when each of these methods will be used (e.g. regular communication or event specific methods);

(e) The appointed specialist in Environmental and Occupational Medicine, including contact details (as per Condition SO.13);

(f) Any stakeholder specific communication plans required; and

(g) Monitoring and review procedures for the Communications Plan.

The Communications Plan shall be written in accordance with the external communication procedures set out in the CEMP and provided at least 20 working days prior to construction commencing, to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council, Working Liaison Group and the Community Liaison Group(s) established by Condition PI.5. The structure of the communication groups set out in these conditions is attached as Figure PI.A.

22) PI.5 The NZTA shall establish Community Liaison Group(s) at least two months prior to construction commencing in each of the following key construction areas:

(a) Te Atatu (including the SH16 Causeway)

(b) Waterview (including works to St Lukes on SH16 and on the Waterview Estuary and Causeway Bridges)

(c) Owairaka

and hold regular meetings (at least three monthly) throughout the construction period and up to 24 months following construction completion relevant to these areas (or less if the members of the Group agree), so that on-going monitoring information can continue to be
The Community Liaison Group(s) shall be open to all interested parties within the Project area including, but not limited to the following groups:

(a) Auckland Council and Auckland Transport;
(b) Educational facilities within the Project area (including schools, kindergartens, childcare facilities and Unitec Institute of Technology);
(c) Relevant community/environmental groups (including but not limited to Friends of Oakley Creek, Star Mills Preservation Group, Cycle Action Auckland and representatives from those organisations identified in the Communications Plan (as required by Condition P1.2) and local residents;
(d) Department of Conservation;
(e) Local Boards;
(f) Iwi groups with Mana Whenua;
(g) Public transport providers; and
(h) Housing New Zealand Corporation.

Advice note: The purpose of the Community Liaison Group(s) is to provide a regular forum through which information about the Project can be provided to the community, and an opportunity for concerns or issues to be raised.

23) V.2 The NZTA shall employ a suitably experienced botanist (‘nominated botanist’) for the duration of the works to monitor, supervise and direct all works affecting or otherwise in close proximity to the Significant Vegetation and Valued Vegetation identified in the ECOMP.

24) V.11 Prior to commencement of works adjacent to Traherne Island, the NZTA shall employ a suitably qualified and experienced plant translocation expert to uplift and protect all areas of *Mimulus repens* on Traherne Island that will be affected by the work. The *Mimulus repens* shall be relocated to suitable and safe habitat away from the works area, or otherwise held and protected for the duration of the works in the vicinity of their original location and be replanted back at that location (or in close proximity to it) upon completion of the works. The location of the recipient sites will be determined in consultation with the Department of Conservation and in general accordance with the Traherne Island Natural Heritage Restoration Plan (2009 – 2014). Trials shall be undertaken to identify appropriate recipient sites, with these trial sites being monitored for a period of no less than 5 years, or until their failure. Where possible, recipient sites shall be located in currently weed-free areas. Where recipient sites may potentially be affected by weeds, they shall be subject to an on-going weed management plan. Should translocation attempts fail at all trial sites then the NZTA, in consultation with DOC, shall determine an alternative appropriate form of mitigation.

25) V.17 Prior to commencement of works adjacent to or on Traherne Island, the NZTA shall employ a suitably qualified and experienced ecologist for the preparation of a Traherne Island Weed and Pest Management Plan. The Plan shall be prepared in consultation with the Department of Conservation and be submitted to the Auckland Council for approval at least 20 working days prior to construction commencing.

26) A.1 The NZTA shall finalise, and implement through the CEMP, ECOMP submitted with this application to include the matters set out in Conditions A.2 to A.6.

27) ARCH.2 The NZTA shall employ at its expense a qualified archaeologist (the Project archaeologist) who shall be on site to monitor all initial earthworks, including surface stripping of the site, for all specific areas identified in the ASMP to establish whether any sub-surface archaeological features are present. This includes, but is not limited to, the following areas:
(a) All unmodified areas in the vicinity of Rosebank Road;
(b) All works in the vicinity of the “Oakley Inlet Heritage Area”, located adjacent to the Great North Road Interchange;
(c) Works in the vicinity of two midden sites (recorded R11/2214 and R11/2215) within Great North Road Interchange, and all previously unmodified areas near the banks of the Oakley Inlet;
(d) Any ground disturbance works in Construction Yard 7 within Oakley Creek Reserve.

28) ARCH. Advice Note
Any archaeological sites within the area affected by the Project shall not be modified or disturbed in any way unless written authorisation has been obtained from the NZ Historic Places Trust.

29) C.1 The NZTA shall provide to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council plans and drawings (including dimensioned, cross sections, elevations and site plans of all areas of proposed reclamation (including associated permanent and temporary CMA occupation), permanent structures and temporary structures) at least 20 working days before the proposed date of commencement of the construction of the reclamation, bridge piers or temporary structure.

30) M.1 The NZTA shall finalise and implement through the CEMP, the ECOMP submitted with this application. The ECOMP shall be revised to accurately reflect the conditions of this consent and changes to the details of construction processes prior to construction commencing. The ECOMP shall include, but not be limited to, details of:
(a) Monitoring of marine habitats and ecological values;
(b) Trigger event criteria for undertaking additional monitoring;
(c) Procedures for responding to accidental discharges to the marine environment;
(d) Complaints investigation, monitoring and reporting; and
(e) The identification of staff and contractors’ responsibilities.

CONSTRUCTION CONDITIONS

31) CEMP.4 The CEMP shall be implemented and maintained throughout the entire construction period.
32) CEMP.5 A copy of the CEMP shall be held on each construction site at all times and be available for inspection on request by the Auckland Council.
33) CEMP.8 All storage of material and equipment associated with the construction works shall take place within the boundaries of the designation.
34) CEMP.12 The CEMP shall be reviewed by the NZTA at least annually or as a result of a material change to the Project. The review shall take into consideration:
(a) Compliance with designation and consent conditions;
(b) Any changes to construction methods;
(c) Key changes to roles and responsibilities within the Project;
(d) Changes in industry best practice standards;
(e) Changes in legal or other requirements;
(f) Results of inspections, monitoring, incidents, corrective actions, internal or external assessments; and
(g) Public complaints.
A summary of the review process undertaken shall be kept by the NZTA, provided annually to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council and made available (with any
related data) to the Auckland Council upon request.

35) CEMP.13 Following the review process (as described in Condition CEMP.12), the CEMP may require updating. Any material change proposed to the CEMP (including appended Management Plans) shall be submitted for approval to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council at least 10 working days prior to the proposed changes taking effect.

Advisory Note: Material change will include amendment to any base information informing the CEMP or any process, procedure or method of the CEMP (such as the environmental constraints map, compliance monitoring process, complaints procedure or mitigation / remedial methods identified) which has the potential to increase adverse effects on a particular value. For clarity changes to personnel and contact schedules do not constitute a material change.

36) PI.3 At least 15 working days prior to the commencement of construction, and at 15 working day intervals thereafter, or as required depending on the scale of works and effects on the community, advertisements will be placed in the relevant local newspapers and community noticeboards (as identified in Condition CEMP.6(b)) detailing the nature of the forthcoming works, the location of the forthcoming works and hours of operation. All advertisements will include reference to a 24 hour toll free complaints telephone number. Where relevant, advertisements will also include but not be limited to details of:

(a) Any traffic disruptions or controls or changes to property access, pedestrian/ cycle routes and bus stops; and

(b) Any other construction activities, including night time works, blasting, and structure-borne noise, as identified in the conditions.

37) PI.4 The NZTA shall manage, investigate and resolve (as appropriate) all complaints for the duration of the construction works in accordance with the environmental complaints section of the CEMP. The implementation strategy for complaints includes:

(a) A 24 hour toll free telephone number and email address, which shall be provided to all potentially affected residents and businesses. The number shall be available and answered at all times during the entire duration of the works for the receipt and management of any complaints. A sign containing the contact details shall be located at each site specific work activity;

(b) The NZTA shall maintain a record of all complaints made to this number, email or any site office, including the full details of the complainant and the nature of the complaint;

(c) Upon receiving a complaint, within 10 days of complaint receipt, a formal written response will be provided to the complainant and Auckland Council;

(d) The NZTA shall undertake corrective action where necessary to resolve any problem identified. All action taken and relevant information shall be documented. For the avoidance of doubt, ‘where necessary’ refers to where the works are not being carried out in accordance with conditions of this designation;

(e) Where issues and complaints about effects cannot be resolved through the CEMP complaints management process, a meeting shall be held between the NZTA, the complainant and the Auckland Council representative(s) to discuss the complaint and ways in which the issue may be resolved. If parties cannot agree on a resolution, an independent qualified mediator will be appointed, agreeable to all parties and at the shared cost of all parties, to undertake mediation of the dispute or concerns; and

(f) All information collected in Conditions PI.4 (b), (c) and (d) shall be detailed in a Construction Compliance Report (including the means by which the complaint was addressed, whether resolution was reached and how the response was carried out) prepared by the NZTA. This Report shall be submitted to the Major Infrastructure Team.
38) PI.6 The Community Liaison Group(s) shall be provided opportunities to review and comment on the following (amongst other things):
(a) The Outline Plan of Works detailing designs for the northern and southern ventilation buildings and stacks (the outcomes of this consultation will be reported in accordance with the processes required in DC.8(n) and DC.9(k);
(b) The Open Space Restoration Plans (as required by Condition OS.3);
(c) Finalisation and amendment to Urban Design and Landscape Plans (UDL Plans) (as required by Condition LV.1);
(d) The Oakley Inlet Heritage Plan (as required by Conditions OS.5(b)(i) and ARCH.6);
(e) The detail of the Oakley Creek restoration (as required by Condition STW.20);
(f) Publicly available results of environmental monitoring as required by the designation and/or these Consents (e.g. air quality monitoring); and
(g) The finalisation of the STEM assessment required by CEMP.6(o) and a schedule of trees that are required to be removed for consideration of timber use in heritage projects as required by Condition SO.7.

Advice Note: Attention is drawn to the Vegetation conditions concerning identification and protection of Significant Vegetation and Valued Vegetation.

(h) Detailed design features of the Te Atatu underpass (e.g. lighting and architectural treatment).

39) LV.7 The NZTA shall ensure that the Temporary Embankments constructed for the Causeway are located on the seaward side of SH16 between the motorway end of Rosebank Road and the bridge over the Waterview Inlet.

40) A.2 The NZTA shall provide temporary high tide roosting structure(s) adjacent to the Causeway during construction, in accordance with the ECOMP, to the satisfaction of the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council. The temporary bird roosts shall be sized in accordance with the ECOMP, and located within the Waterview Estuary adjacent to the southern side of the causeway and in the vicinity of the existing Causeway bridge.

41) A.5 Vegetation clearance at Traherne Island shall occur outside the bird breeding season of September to December. Elsewhere, vegetation clearance shall occur outside the bird breeding season of September to December where practicable.

42) ARCH.3 If any archaeological sites, including human remains are exposed during site works, then the following procedures shall apply:
(a) Immediately it becomes apparent that a possible archaeological or traditional site has been exposed, all site works in the immediate vicinity shall cease;
(b) The site supervisor shall immediately secure the area in a way that ensures that any artefacts or remains are untouched and notify the Project archaeologist;
(c) The Project archaeologist shall inspect the site to assess the relevance of the find, and then the Auckland Council shall be advised of the significance;
(d) If the site is confirmed to be an archaeological site by the Project archaeologist, the site supervisor shall then notify tangata whenua, the New Zealand Historic Places Trust, and the Auckland Council that an archaeological site has been exposed so that appropriate action can be taken;
(e) In the case of human remains, the NZ Police shall be notified.

43) C.2 Construction shall be undertaken in accordance with the construction methodology detailed
in the application, specifically Technical Report G.23 Coastal Works and Technical Report G.22 Erosion and Sediment Control Plan. The construction methodology shall include:

(a) The use of temporary coffer dams to create dry working areas;
(b) Realignment of sections of existing low-tide channels in Oakley inlet and Waterview Estuary that will be directly affected by the reclamation works;
(c) Removal of mangroves to provide construction and ground-treatment access, placement of temporary coffer dams and to facilitate natural channel migration in the Whau River side drainage channel (east of Rosebank Domain);
(d) Installation or removal works to be undertaken at the best practicable time to minimise potential sediment disturbance.

44) C.3 The NZTA shall notify the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council in writing of the proposed commencement date of the reclamation, structures and/or channel realignment works at least 10 working days prior to the proposed start date.

45) C.6 The NZTA shall maintain the site in good order and shall remedy all damage and disturbance caused by vehicle traffic, plant and equipment to the foreshore during construction, to the satisfaction of the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council.

46) C.7 Removal or pruning of vegetation in the CMA shall be limited to the areas of permanent and temporary occupation as shown on the Waterview Connection Project Assessment of Environmental Effects Plan Set F.12 and F.13 submitted with the application (ref Schedule A, rows 13 and 14). Removal of mangroves shall be implemented in accordance with the principles detailed in the Ecological Management Plan.

47) M.10 The NZTA shall maintain the coastal marine area free of any gross litter, rubbish and debris during construction.

48) M.11 Prior to excavation of sediment from the marine habitat remediation zone (MHRZ), mangrove vegetation will be removed from the sediment and disposed of at an appropriate offsite facility. The excavated sediment shall be stockpiled within an adjacent dry working area. When the sediment is returned to the MHRZ it will be levelled out to tie in with the existing mudflat. Where a routine marine benthic habitat monitoring site is within an area of MHRZ, additional monitoring of the depth of sediment overlying the improved ground/mudcrete will also be undertaken.

POST-CONSTRUCTION / OPERATIONS CONDITIONS

49) C.4 The NZTA shall notify the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council in writing within 10 working days of the completion of each discrete area of reclamation, structures and/or channel realignment works.

50) C.8 The NZTA shall ensure the removal of all equipment, erosion and sediment control measures, surplus sediment and construction materials from the CMA within 20 working days following the completion of the construction works, to the satisfaction of the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council.

MONITORING

51) A.3 The NZTA shall employ a suitably qualified ecologist to undertake monitoring of the roosting areas located at:

(a) The existing high tide roost in Harbourview-Orangihina Park; and
(b) The temporary construction roosting structure(s) pursuant to Condition A.2.

Monitoring shall be undertaken on a monthly basis, with a monitoring report prepared on a quarterly basis. The monitoring report shall be made available to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council and Department of Conservation upon request.

52) A.4 Should the monitoring results indicate that the roosting sites have been abandoned, consultation shall be undertaken with the Department of Conservation and the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council to determine the need for and type of further management strategies (if any) required.

53) C.16 On the northern side of the Causeway, from just before the commencement of construction in the CMA for each section of works, until 6 months after completion of each section, the NZTA shall undertake every two (2) months or after a severe wave-storm, intertidal beach profile surveys down to the spring low-tide mark along offshore-directed transects (one off the centre of the construction section and one either side at 20 m away from the ends of the construction site) and photographs documenting the physical state of the seabed around the perimeter of the cofferdam. The monitoring information shall be made available to the Auckland Council. If the monitoring identifies that excessive erosion or accretion has occurred from corner or end effects of the construction section, as confirmed by a coastal processes expert, further seabed erosion control measures or a sediment by-passing method (for accretion) to reduce localised effects seaward of the temporary occupation or permanent occupation designation (whichever applies) shall be implemented as soon as practicable. Details of the proposed measures or methods shall be made available to Auckland Council prior to implementation.

54) M.2 The NZTA shall engage a suitably qualified ecologist to undertake a marine habitat monitoring programme, as described in Conditions M.3 to M.6.

55) M.3 The marine benthic habitat monitoring programme shall be undertaken every 6 months:

(a) At least 12 months prior to construction commencing, to allow for two baseline surveys to be undertaken;

(b) During construction; and

(c) For a maximum of 3 years following completion of the Project, or for a lesser time if the monitoring indicates no significant effects, as agreed with the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council.

56) M.4 The marine benthic habitat monitoring programme shall be undertaken in accordance with the details set out in the ECOMP and include:

(a) Sampling of the marine invertebrate community composition (collection of sediment cores to a depth of approximately 15cm);

(b) Sampling of the sediment surface (top 2cm) for sediment grain size; and

(c) Sampling of the sediment surface (top 2cm) for sediment quality (analysis of the concentration of copper, lead, zinc and polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons).

57) M.5 The marine benthic habitat monitoring shall be undertaken within sampling grids (50m x 30m) broadly established at the following locations:

(a) Two locations within Oakley Inlet;

(b) Four locations within Waterview Estuary; and

(c) Four locations north of the Causeway.

Specific locations and experimental design shall be detailed in the ECOMP, and the design of the monitoring programme will be based on the *Estuarine Environmental Assessment and Monitoring: A National Protocol* (Cawthron 2002).
58) M.6 The NZTA shall undertake additional marine habitat monitoring in the event of a ‘trigger event’ for marine ecology habitats. For the purposes of this consent, a ‘trigger event’ for marine ecology habitats is defined in the ECOMP.

59) M.7 The NZTA shall review the marine habitat monitoring results (pursuant to Conditions M.3 to M.6) and in the event that potential adverse effects are identified, the NZTA shall develop and implement appropriate contingency plans and/or remedial measures.

REPORTING

60) M.8 The marine benthic habitat monitoring results shall be compiled by the NZTA, and a report provided to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council every 6 months.
This document has been prepared in compliance with conditions of the "Final Report and Decision of the Board of Inquiry into the New Zealand Transport Agency Waterview Connection Proposal, Volume 2, Conditions of Consent". Schedule B of Volume 2 identifies the Conditions relevant to this Consent by the code and number as referenced throughout this document. In the event of dispute, Schedule B of Volume 2 shall take precedence over this Consent.

**Type:** Coastal Consent

**Description:** Erection of Permanent Structures in the CMA (Sectors 3 and 4):

This consent relates to the construction of permanent (operational phase) structures within the CMA including piers, ramps, stormwater discharge outfalls and other consequential activities such as disturbance and/or vegetation removal. In CPA 1 – Waterview Estuary.

**Duration:** 10 years

**Code:**
- RC = Standard Resource Consent Conditions
- CEMP = Construction Environmental Management Plan Conditions
- PI = Public Information Conditions
- CNV = Noise and Vibration Conditions - Construction
- V = Vegetation Conditions
- A = Avian Conditions
- ARCH = Archaeology Conditions
- C = Coastal Conditions
- M = Marine Ecology Conditions

**GENERAL CONDITIONS**

1) **RC.1** Except as modified by the conditions below, the works shall be undertaken in general accordance with the information provided by the New Zealand Transport Agency (NZTA), in the resource consent applications and the supporting documents (as detailed in Condition DC.1), and in the supplementary information provided in evidence by the NZTA.

2) **RC.1A** The NZTA shall implement the conditions of these consents in accordance with Schedule B, which sets out the Conditions that are to be applied to each consent including the duration of each consent.

3) **RC.2** The Conditions of these consents may be reviewed by the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council, pursuant to Section 128 of the Resource Management Act 1991 (the Act), by the giving of notice pursuant to Section 129 of the Act, on the one year anniversary of the commencement of the consents and every year thereafter in order:

(a) To deal with any adverse effect on the environment which may arise from the exercise of the consent and which it is appropriate to deal with at a later stage; or
(b) To deal with any other adverse effect on the environment on which the exercise of the consent may have an influence.

4) RC.4 Any Management Plans submitted to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council for approval or certification may be submitted in stages to reflect any proposed staging of the physical works. Plans submitted shall clearly show the integration with adjacent stages and interrelated activities.

5) RC.5 In the event of any dispute, disagreement or inaction arising as to any Auckland Council Manager certification/ approvals required by the consent conditions, or as to the implementation of or monitoring required by the conditions, matters shall be referred in the first instance to the NZTA Regional State Highway Manager and to the Resource Consents Manager, Auckland Council to determine a process of resolution.

If a resolution cannot be agreed, then the matter may be referred to an independent appropriately qualified expert, agreeable to both parties, setting out the details of the matter to be referred for determination and the reasons the parties do not agree.

The independent appropriately qualified expert shall be appointed within 10 working days of the NZTA or Auckland Council giving notice of their intention to seek expert determination. The expert shall, as soon as possible, issue his or her decision on the matter. In making the decision, the expert shall be entitled to seek further information and hear from the parties as he or she sees fit.

Advice note: The dispute resolution process provided for in this condition does not prejudice any party’s right to take enforcement action in relation to the implementation of the designation conditions. However, the dispute resolution process will be applied before any formal enforcement action is taken by the Council except in urgent situations.

6) RC.6 Pursuant to Section 36(1)(d) of the RMA, the requiring authority is required to pay to Auckland Council any administrative charge for the carrying out by the local authority of its functions in relation to the administration, monitoring, and supervision of designation conditions.

7) RC.7 The servants of agents of Auckland Council shall be permitted to have access to relevant parts of the Project at all reasonable times for the purpose of carrying out inspections, investigations, tests, measurements and/or to take samples.

8) V.18 The NZTA shall implement the approved Traherne Island Weed and Pest Management Plan. Every 5 years, a suitably qualified and experienced ecologist engaged by NZTA shall review the plan in consultation with the Department of Conservation. The plan shall then be submitted to the Auckland Council for approval.

9) A.6 Animal pest control shall be undertaken by the NZTA on Traherne Island (northern and southern sides) and on the Coastal Marine Area (CMA) frontage of SH16 from Traherne Island North to Whau Creek, and on the southern side of SH16 from Traherne Island South to Whau River (in accordance with Condition V.17).

PRE-CONSTRUCTION CONDITIONS

10) RC.3 Within 3 months of the resource consents commencing for the Project (or at least 1 month prior to any Auckland Council approvals or certifications required by these Conditions, whichever is the earlier), the NZTA shall update and finalise to the satisfaction of the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council all drawings and Plans cited in Schedule A, together with a full set of the information and documentation referred to in Condition DC.1 and provide these to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council. At the same time the NZTA shall prepare to the satisfaction of Auckland Council, a document for each
resource consent which sets out the resource consent and have attached to it in text format a comprehensive set of the conditions imposed by the Board of Inquiry in its Final Decision as summarised in Schedule B, inclusive of any standard conditions and advice notes.

In particular (but not limited to), the following Plans will need to be amended in light of the Final Conditions:

(a) F.2 Operational Scheme Plans (refer Schedule A, Row 3) require amendment detailing the amended location of the ventilation stacks and southern ventilation buildings;

(b) F.5 Construction Scheme Plans (refer Schedule A, Row 4) require amendment to detail changes to construction footprint for the amended location of ventilation stacks and southern ventilation buildings and reconfiguration of Construction Yard 1;

(c) F.6 Construction Yard Plans 101 and 107 (refer Schedule A, Row 7), detailing amendments to the Construction Yard 1 in light of the reconfiguration of this Yard and for Construction Yard 7 in light of the relocation of the northern ventilation stack (refer Schedule A, Row 34);

(d) F.8 Plans of Structures and Architectural Features (refer Schedule A, Row 9), detailing the amended location of the Northern Ventilation Stack and the design and location of the Southern Ventilation Building and Stack;

(e) The CNVMP (including flow diagram and the supplementary evidence produced by Ms Wilkening) (refer Schedule A, Rows 36, 37 and 39);

(f) Update to the areas of the Open Space Restoration Plans (Schedule A, Row 30) to:
   
   (i) Extend these areas in geographic extent to provide for the works identified in the Management Plan notations identified in the OS Conditions (in particular OS.5 and OS.6). (e.g. these areas will (as relevant) include Eric Armishaw Park, Howlett Reserve and Waterview Esplanade Reserve); and
   
   (ii) Exclude the operational area of designation required for the northern ventilation stack (as identified through the OPW process (refer Condition DC.8); and

(g) Schedule A, Row 28 the Plan detailing proposed open space impacts and replacements needs to be updated to recolour the two land parcels on Hendon Avenue (which are excluded from the replacement calculations) to ‘brown’ to confirm they are part of the operational impact and will not be returned as open space.

11) CEMP.1

Except where provided for in Condition CEMP.1A below, the NZTA shall update and finalise the draft Construction Environmental Management Plan (CEMP) including all the Management Plans which form part of the CEMP and are included as appendices, submitted with this application to ensure compliance with the consent and designation conditions imposed by the Board of Inquiry. The CEMP shall be provided to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council for review at least 20 working days prior to the commencement of works to certify compliance and consistency with the conditions. Construction shall not commence until certification is obtained.

Advice note: For clarity the CEMP will be updated and finalised in accordance with the conditions. Any amendments will be limited to reflecting the requirements of the conditions, specifying personnel, and completing the Environmental Risk Register.

Advice Note: Particular care must be taken with development and operation of Construction Yard 7. When the CEMP is being updated and finalised, consideration must be given to the contents of the draft SSCEMP prepared for Construction Yard 7 (Row 41, Schedule A) recognising changes required by inclusion of the ventilation stack in this yard.

12) CEMP.1B

For the purposes of staging works, as some works may commence well in advance of others, the NZTA may provide staged or site specific CEMPs for those works to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council. The NZTA shall consult with the Team
Manager about the need and timing for any other site-specific or staged CEMPs and shall provide any required site-specific or staged CEMPs to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council for review at least 20 working days prior to commencement of such the specific stage (including enabling) or site works.

13) **CEMP.2** The certification process of the CEMP (and its appendices) shall confirm that the CEMP gives effect to the relevant conditions, as well as those matters in CEMP.6, and that it includes details of:
   (a) Staff and contractors’ responsibilities;
   (b) Training requirements for employees, sub-contractors and visitors;
   (c) Environmental incident and emergency management;
   (d) Communication and interface procedures (in accordance with the Communication Plan required under Condition PI.2);
   (e) Environmental complaints management (including the procedures required under Condition PI.4);
   (f) Compliance monitoring;
   (g) Reporting (including detail on the frequency of reporting to the Auckland Council);
   (h) Environmental auditing; and
   (i) Corrective action.

14) **CEMP.3** The management of key environmental effects associated with the construction phase of the Project is detailed within environmental management plans that are included in the CEMP as appendices. This suite of management plans as shown on Figure CEMP.A comprises:
   (a) Construction Noise and Vibration Management Plan (CNVMP);
   (b) Construction Air Quality Management Plan (CAQMP);
   (c) Erosion and Sediment Control Plan (ESCP);
   (d) Temporary Stormwater Management Plan (TSM P);
   (e) Ecological Management Plan (ECOMP);
   (f) Groundwater Management Plan (GWMP);
   (g) Settlement Effects Management Plan (SEMP);
   (h) Contaminated Soils Management Plan (CSMP);
   (i) Hazardous Substances Management Plan (HSMP);
   (j) Archaeological Site Management Plan (ASMP);
   (k) Construction Traffic Management Plan (CTMP);
   (l) Concrete Batching and Crushing Plant Management Plan (CBCPMP);
   (m) Electrical Infrastructure Site Development and Construction Management Plan (EISDCMP) (to be prepared in accordance with Condition CEMP.15);
   (n) Waste Management Plan (to be prepared in accordance with Condition CEMP.10) ; and
   (o) Temporary Construction Lighting Management Plan (to be prepared in accordance with Condition L.2).

15) **CEMP.6** The finalised CEMP shall include specific details on demolition, construction and management of all works associated with the Project. The certification process of the CEMP shall confirm that the CEMP includes details of the following:
   (a) Details of the site or Project manager and the community liaison person, including their contact details (phone, facsimile, postal address, email address);
   (b) The location of large notice boards that clearly identify the NZTA and the Project name,
(c) An outline construction programme of the work indicating in particular likely time periods for road closures and anticipated traffic diversion effects;

(d) The hours of work, which should reflect the need to ensure that residents enjoy reasonable freedom from noisy or intrusive construction activity in their neighbourhood at night, on Sundays and during public holidays;

(e) Measures to be adopted to maintain the land affected by the works in a tidy condition in terms of disposal/ storage of rubbish, storage and unloading of building materials and similar construction activities;

(f) Location of worker’s offices and conveniences (e.g. portaloos);

(g) Procedures of controlling sediment run-off, dust and the removal of soil, debris and demolition and construction materials from public roads or places. Dust mitigation measures should include use of water sprays to control dust nuisance on dry or windy days;

(h) Methods to stabilise ingress and egress points to construction sites, to the standard required by ARC Technical Publication 90 (Nov 2007);

16) CEMP.10 The NZTA shall finalise and implement the Hazardous Substances Management Plan (HSMP), through the CEMP (as per Condition CEMP.1), submitted with this application, prior to works commencing on site. The certification process of the CEMP shall confirm that the HSMP clearly identifies the requirements for proper storage, handling, transport and disposal of hazardous substances during the construction phase of the Project and confirm that there shall be no storage of explosives on the Project site.

17) CEMP.11 The NZTA shall develop and implement a Waste Management Plan in accordance with the waste management principles, controls and methods set out in the CEMP. The Plan shall be provided to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council and be implemented throughout the entire construction period.

18) CEMP.15 The NZTA will be responsible for all service relocations required for construction of the Project. The NZTA shall liaise with the providers of infrastructure service networks (including, but not limited to water, gas, stormwater, wastewater, power and telecommunications), and private property owners with on-site services to develop methodologies and timing for necessary services relocation required for the Project, with the objective of minimising disruption to the operation of these service networks and on-site services.

Advice note:

(a) It is noted that if separate consents are required for relocations for any services of network utility operators or landowners, such consents will be obtained before construction commences in the relevant area, and any effects of those relocations would be considered at that time. The same applies to any alteration of consents if required.

(b) Network infrastructure owned and operated by Watercare Services is located within the designations. An operating agreement will be developed by the NZTA and Watercare Services which will include appropriate notification and access protocols where works are to be undertaken by either network operator on or adjacent to Watercare Services infrastructure within the designations.

19) PI.1 A community liaison person shall be appointed by the NZTA for the duration of the construction phase of the Project to be the main and readily accessible point of contact for persons affected by the Project. The liaison person’s name and contact details shall be
made available in the CEMP and on site signage by the NZTA. This person must be reasonably available for on-going consultation on all matters of concern to affected parties arising from the Project.

20) PI.2 The NZTA shall prepare and implement a Communications Plan that sets out procedures detailing how the public, Ministry of Social Development, Housing New Zealand Corporation and other organisations representing the particular demographic characteristics of the community (including but not limited to Primary Health Organisations, general practitioners, youth, education organisations, aged care groups and groups representing ethnic and migrant communities) will be communicated with throughout the construction and monitoring periods (as prescribed in the designation and consent conditions).

In preparing the Communications Plan, the NZTA will liaise with Auckland Council to access its community liaison databases. The Communications Plan will includes details of:

(a) The site or Project manager and the community liaison person, including their contact details (phone, facsimile, postal address, email address);
(b) In accordance with these Conditions, the database of the key construction activities and monitoring requirements that are the subject of the Communications Plan;
(c) The database of stakeholders and residents who will be communicated with;
(d) Communication methods, an assessment of how these methods reach the different audience/stakeholder groups (including those methods set out in Condition CEMP.6), and detail on when each of these methods will be used (e.g. regular communication or event specific methods);
(e) The appointed specialist in Environmental and Occupational Medicine, including contact details (as per Condition SO.13);
(f) Any stakeholder specific communication plans required; and
(g) Monitoring and review procedures for the Communications Plan.

The Communications Plan shall be written in accordance with the external communication procedures set out in the CEMP and provided at least 20 working days prior to construction commencing, to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council, Working Liaison Group and the Community Liaison Group(s) established by Condition PI.5. The structure of the communication groups set out in these conditions is attached as Figure PI.A.

21) PI.5 The NZTA shall establish Community Liaison Group(s) at least two months prior to construction commencing in each of the following key construction areas:

(a) Te Atatu (including the SH16 Causeway)
(b) Waterview (including works to St Lukes on SH16 and on the Waterview Estuary and Causeway Bridges)
(c) Owairaka

and hold regular meetings (at least three monthly) throughout the construction period and up to 24 months following construction completion relevant to these areas (or less if the members of the Group agree), so that on-going monitoring information can continue to be disseminated.

The Community Liaison Group(s) shall be open to all interested parties within the Project area including, but not limited to the following groups:

(a) Auckland Council and Auckland Transport;
(b) Educational facilities within the Project area (including schools, kindergartens, childcare facilities and Unitec Institute of Technology);
(c) Relevant community/ environmental groups (including but not limited to Friends of Oakley Creek, Star Mills Preservation Group, Cycle Action Auckland and...
(d) Department of Conservation;
(e) Local Boards;
(f) Iwi groups with Mana Whenua;
(g) Public transport providers; and
(h) Housing New Zealand Corporation.

Advice note: The purpose of the Community Liaison Group(s) is to provide a regular forum through which information about the Project can be provided to the community, and an opportunity for concerns or issues to be raised.

22) CNV.1 The NZTA shall finalise and implement through the CEMP, a Construction Noise and Vibration Management Plan (CNVMP) throughout the entire construction period of the Project.

The CNVMP shall describe the measures adopted to meet:
(a) the noise criteria set out in Conditions CNV.2 and 3 below;
(b) the vibration criteria set out in Condition CNV.4 below; or
(c) where (a) or (b) cannot be met, the process that will be followed to appropriately mitigate noise and vibration effects including methods that may be applied outside the designation.

The CNVMP shall be provided to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council at least 20 working days prior to construction activities being undertaken for review and certification that the CNVMP, as a minimum, addresses the following:
(i) Construction noise and vibration criteria (Conditions CNV.2, CNV.3, and CNV.4);
(ii) Hours of operation, including times and days when noisy and/or vibration inducing construction activities would occur;
(iii) Machinery and equipment to be used;
(iv) Vibration testing of equipment to confirm safe distances to buildings prior to construction;
(v) Preparation of building condition surveys of critical dwellings prior to, during and after completion of construction works;
(vi) Roles and responsibilities of personnel on site;
(vii) Construction operator training procedures;
(viii) Methods for monitoring and reporting on construction noise and vibration;
(ix) A hierarchy of mitigation options that will be assessed for the Project noise mitigation, including alternative strategies where full compliance with the relevant noise and/or vibration criteria cannot be achieved;
(x) Management schedules containing site specific information;
(xi) Measures for liaising with and notifying potentially affected receivers of proposed construction activities and the potential for noise and vibration effects, specifically:
  • PPFs located within a horizontal distance of 35 metres of underground excavation works, along the tunnel alignment shall receive prior notification not greater than 7 days (and not less than 24 hours) prior to the commencement of works.
  • Methods for ensuring residents affected by night works (within 100m of the construction site night works, as defined on the maps (refer Schedule A,
- The maps showing PPFs to be notified of night works (refer Schedule A, Row 35, shall be reviewed and included within the CNVMP.

(xii) Methods for receiving and handling complaints about construction noise and vibration;

(xiii) Measures for preventing the occurrence of rogue fly rock, including management of charge weights and face loading procedures, stemming of charge holes and profiling of the face to maintain minimum burden (face cover);

(xiv) Investigations on the practicability of implementing permanent noise mitigation works for construction mitigation (as per Condition CNV.7);

(xv) Investigations of the practicability of implementing Building Modification mitigation, as required in accordance with Conditions ON.6 and ON.11, prior to commencement of construction within 100m of the relevant PPFs (including those on the Unitec site); and

(xvi) The process for developing Site Specific Noise Management Plans (SSNMP), in accordance with the SSNMP Flow Chart (refer Schedule A, Row 36), including templates and a certification process for the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council (in accordance with Condition CNV.13) to confirm the process of SSNMP review of noise mitigation options where, the modelled/predicted levels or subsequent actual levels exceed the criteria in Conditions CNV.2 and/or CNV.4.

23) V.11 Prior to commencement of works adjacent to Traherne Island, the NZTA shall employ a suitably qualified and experienced plant translocation expert to uplift and protect all areas of *Mimulus repens* on Traherne Island that will be affected by the work. The *Mimulus repens* shall be relocated to suitable and safe habitat away from the works area, or otherwise held and protected for the duration of the works in the vicinity of their original location and be replanted back at that location (or in close proximity to it) upon completion of the works. The location of the recipient sites will be determined in consultation with the Department of Conservation and in general accordance with the Traherne Island Natural Heritage Restoration Plan (2009 – 2014). Trials shall be undertaken to identify appropriate recipient sites, with these trial sites being monitored for a period of no less than 5 years, or until their failure. Where possible, recipient sites shall be located in currently weed-free areas. Where recipient sites may potentially be affected by weeds, they shall be subject to an on-going weed management plan. Should translocation attempts fail at all trial sites then the NZTA, in consultation with DOC, shall determine an alternative appropriate form of mitigation.

24) V.17 Prior to commencement of works adjacent to or on Traherne Island, the NZTA shall employ a suitably qualified and experienced ecologist for the preparation of a Traherne Island Weed and Pest Management Plan. The Plan shall be prepared in consultation with the Department of Conservation and be submitted to the Auckland Council for approval at least 20 working days prior to construction commencing.

25) A.1 The NZTA shall finalise, and implement through the CEMP, ECOMP submitted with this application to include the matters set out in Conditions A.2 to A.6.

26) ARCH. Advice Note

Any archaeological sites within the area affected by the Project shall not be modified or disturbed in any way unless written authorisation has been obtained from the NZ Historic Places Trust.

27) C.1 The NZTA shall provide to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council plans and drawings (including dimensioned, cross sections, elevations and site plans of all areas...
of proposed reclamation (including associated permanent and temporary CMA occupation), permanent structures and temporary structures) at least 20 working days before the proposed date of commencement of the construction of the reclamation, bridge piers or temporary structure.

28) M.1 The NZTA shall finalise and implement through the CEMP, the ECOMP submitted with this application. The ECOMP shall be revised to accurately reflect the conditions of this consent and changes to the details of construction processes prior to construction commencing. The ECOMP shall include, but not be limited to, details of:
(a) Monitoring of marine habitats and ecological values;
(b) Trigger event criteria for undertaking additional monitoring;
(c) Procedures for responding to accidental discharges to the marine environment;
(d) Complaints investigation, monitoring and reporting; and
(e) The identification of staff and contractors’ responsibilities.

CONSTRUCTION CONDITIONS

29) CEMP.4 The CEMP shall be implemented and maintained throughout the entire construction period.

30) CEMP.5 A copy of the CEMP shall be held on each construction site at all times and be available for inspection on request by the Auckland Council.

31) CEMP.8 All storage of material and equipment associated with the construction works shall take place within the boundaries of the designation.

32) CEMP.12 The CEMP shall be reviewed by the NZTA at least annually or as a result of a material change to the Project. The review shall take into consideration:
(a) Compliance with designation and consent conditions;
(b) Any changes to construction methods;
(c) Key changes to roles and responsibilities within the Project;
(d) Changes in industry best practice standards;
(e) Changes in legal or other requirements;
(f) Results of inspections, monitoring, incidents, corrective actions, internal or external assessments; and
(g) Public complaints.

A summary of the review process undertaken shall be kept by the NZTA, provided annually to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council and made available (with any related data) to the Auckland Council upon request.

33) CEMP.13 Following the review process (as described in Condition CEMP.12), the CEMP may require updating. Any material change proposed to the CEMP (including appended Management Plans) shall be submitted for approval to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council at least 10 working days prior to the proposed changes taking effect.’

Advice Note: Material change will include amendment to any base information informing the CEMP or any process, procedure or method of the CEMP (such as the environmental constraints map, compliance monitoring process, complaints procedure or mitigation / remedial methods identified) which has the potential to increase adverse effects on a particular value. For clarity changes to personnel and contact schedules do not constitute a material change.

34) PI.3 At least 15 working days prior to the commencement of construction, and at 15 working day intervals thereafter, or as required depending on the scale of works and effects on the
community, advertisements will be placed in the relevant local newspapers and community
noticeboards (as identified in Condition CEMP.6(b)) detailing the nature of the forthcoming
works, the location of the forthcoming works and hours of operation. All advertisements will
include reference to a 24 hour toll free complaints telephone number. Where relevant,
advertisements will also include but not be limited to details of:
(a) Any traffic disruptions or controls or changes to property access, pedestrian/ cycle
routes and bus stops; and
(b) Any other construction activities, including night time works, blasting, and structure-
borne noise, as identified in the conditions.

35) PI.4 The NZTA shall manage, investigate and resolve (as appropriate) all complaints for the
duration of the construction works in accordance with the environmental complaints section
of the CEMP. The implementation strategy for complaints includes:
(a) A 24 hour toll free telephone number and email address, which shall be provided to all
potentially affected residents and businesses. The number shall be available and
answered at all times during the entire duration of the works for the receipt and
management of any complaints. A sign containing the contact details shall be located
at each site specific work activity;
(b) The NZTA shall maintain a record of all complaints made to this number, email or any
site office, including the full details of the complainant and the nature of the complaint;
(c) Upon receiving a complaint, within 10 days of complaint receipt, a formal written
response will be provided to the complainant and Auckland Council;
(d) The NZTA shall undertake corrective action where necessary to resolve any problem
identified. All action taken and relevant information shall be documented. For the
avoidance of doubt, ‘where necessary’ refers to where the works are not being carried
out in accordance with conditions of this designation;
(e) Where issues and complaints about effects cannot be resolved through the CEMP
complaints management process, a meeting shall be held between the NZTA, the
complainant and the Auckland Council representative(s) to discuss the complaint and
ways in which the issue may be resolved. If parties cannot agree on a resolution, an
independent qualified mediator will be appointed, agreeable to all parties and at the
shared cost of all parties, to undertake mediation of the dispute or concerns; and
(f) All information collected in Conditions PI.4 (b), (c) and (d) shall be detailed in a
Construction Compliance Report (including the means by which the complaint was
addressed, whether resolution was reached and how the response was carried out) prepared by the NZTA. This Report shall be submitted to the Major Infrastructure Team
Manager, Auckland Council on a quarterly basis commencing at the beginning of the
works and for the entire duration of construction.

36) PI.6 The Community Liaison Group(s) shall be provided opportunities to review and comment on
the following (amongst other things):
(a) The Outline Plan of Works detailing designs for the northern and southern ventilation
buildings and stacks (the outcomes of this consultation will be reported in accordance
with the processes required in DC.8(n) and DC.9(k);
(b) The Open Space Restoration Plans (as required by Condition OS.3);
(c) Finalisation and amendment to Urban Design and Landscape Plans (UDL Plans) (as
required by Condition LV.1);
(d) The Oakley Inlet Heritage Plan (as required by Conditions OS.5(b)(i) and ARCH.6);
(e) The detail of the Oakley Creek restoration (as required by Condition STW.20);

(f) Publicly available results of environmental monitoring as required by the designation and/or these Consents (e.g. air quality monitoring); and

(g) The finalisation of the STEM assessment required by CEMP.6(o) and a schedule of trees that are required to be removed for consideration of timber use in heritage projects as required by Condition SO.7.

Advice Note: Attention is drawn to the Vegetation conditions concerning identification and protection of Significant Vegetation and Valued Vegetation.

(h) Detailed design features of the Te Atatu underpass (e.g. lighting and architectural treatment).

37) CNV.2 Except where certified by the Council through the SSNMP (in accordance with Condition CNV.13), construction noise (excluding noise from blasting Monday to Saturday inclusive) shall be measured and assessed in accordance with NZS 6803:1999 “Acoustics - Construction Noise” and shall comply with the following criteria:

Note: In Condition CNV.2 (T) means a duration between 15 minutes and 60 minutes, in accordance with NZS6803:1999.

(a) Project Construction Noise Criteria: Residential Receivers

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Time of week</th>
<th>Time period</th>
<th>Project Construction Noise Criteria (Long Term Construction) dB</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Sectors 1 to 7</td>
<td>Sectors 8 and 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Monday - Saturday</td>
<td>0630-0730</td>
<td>60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>0730-1800</td>
<td>70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1800-2000</td>
<td>65</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2000-0630</td>
<td>60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sundays and Public Holidays</td>
<td>0630-0730</td>
<td>45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>0730-1800</td>
<td>60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1800-2000</td>
<td>45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2000-0630</td>
<td>45</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(b) Project Construction Noise Criteria: Commercial and Industrial Receivers

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Time period</th>
<th>Project Construction Noise Criteria (Long Term Construction) dB</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0730-1800</td>
<td>L_Aeq(T)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1800-0730</td>
<td>70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1800-0730</td>
<td>75</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(c) Project Construction Noise Criteria: Internal Structure-borne Noise from tunnelling for Residential Receivers

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Time period</th>
<th>Project Construction Noise Criteria</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Inside</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Time period (School Days)</td>
<td>Project Construction Noise Criteria Inside</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Teaching Hours</td>
<td>45 dB $L_{Aeq(T)}$ or existing, whichever is the higher</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Classrooms, library, offices, teaching, laboratories, manual arts, workshops</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Teaching Hours</td>
<td>40 dB $L_{Aeq(T)}$ or existing, whichever is the higher</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>School hall, lecture theatres</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note: In Condition CNV2(d) “Teaching hours” means:
- Primary schools and Kindergartens: 9am to 3pm
- Unitec: 8am to 9pm

38) CNV.7 Where practicable, permanent (traffic) noise barriers, required in any Sector as Detailed Mitigation Options for operational noise following completion of the Project (in accordance with Conditions ON.3 to ON.5) shall be erected prior to noise generating construction works commencing. Where this is not practicable, temporary noise mitigation measures shall be implemented in accordance with the CNVMP, prior to noise generating construction works commencing.

39) CNV.8 Pile driving or pile removal shall not be undertaken at night (i.e. during the hours of 20:00 – 06:30).

40) CNV.9 The concrete batch plants, rock crushing plants and the loading bays and conveyors for such plants shall be fully enclosed.

41) CNV.13 SSNMPs (required by Condition CNV.1(xvi)) above, shall be submitted to Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council for review and certification at least 7 working days prior to the proposed works commencing. A decision will be provided by the Council within 5 working days of receipt of the SSNMP. Works will not commence until certification is received from the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council. The Council may, at its discretion, waive the requirement for SSNMPs to be submitted to the Council where an SSNMP is required.

If monitoring shows that levels specified in a SSNMP are being exceeded, work generating the exceedance will stop and not recommence until further mitigation is implemented in accordance with an amended SSNMP certified by Council.

Advice note: It is accepted that the criteria of CNV.2 and CNV.4 may not be met at all times, but that the NZTA will take all practical steps to achieve compliance, taking into account the hierarchy of mitigation options outlined in Condition CNV.1 (ix).

42) A.2 The NZTA shall provide temporary high tide roosting structure(s) adjacent to the Causeway during construction, in accordance with the ECOMP, to the satisfaction of the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council. The temporary bird roosts shall be sized in accordance with the ECOMP, and located within the Waterview Estuary adjacent to the southern side of the causeway and in the vicinity of the existing Causeway bridge.
Vegetation clearance at Traherne Island shall occur outside the bird breeding season of September to December. Elsewhere, vegetation clearance shall occur outside the bird breeding season of September to December where practicable.

If any archaeological sites, including human remains are exposed during site works, then the following procedures shall apply:

(a) Immediately it becomes apparent that a possible archaeological or traditional site has been exposed, all site works in the immediate vicinity shall cease;

(b) The site supervisor shall immediately secure the area in a way that ensures that any artefacts or remains are untouched and notify the Project archaeologist;

(c) The Project archaeologist shall inspect the site to assess the relevance of the find, and then the Auckland Council shall be advised of the significance;

(d) If the site is confirmed to be an archaeological site by the Project archaeologist, the site supervisor shall then notify tangata whenua, the New Zealand Historic Places Trust, and the Auckland Council that an archaeological site has been exposed so that appropriate action can be taken;

(e) In the case of human remains, the NZ Police shall be notified.

Construction shall be undertaken in accordance with the construction methodology detailed in the application, specifically Technical Report G.23 Coastal Works and Technical Report G.22 Erosion and Sediment Control Plan. The construction methodology shall include:

(a) The use of temporary coffer dams to create dry working areas;

(b) Realignment of sections of existing low-tide channels in Oakley inlet and Waterview Estuary that will be directly affected by the reclamation works;

(c) Removal of mangroves to provide construction and ground-treatment access, placement of temporary coffer dams and to facilitate natural channel migration in the Whau River side drainage channel (east of Rosebank Domain);

(d) Installation or removal works to be undertaken at the best practicable time to minimise potential sediment disturbance.

The NZTA shall notify the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council in writing of the proposed commencement date of the reclamation, structures and/or channel realignment works at least 10 working days prior to the proposed start date.

The NZTA shall maintain the site in good order and shall remedy all damage and disturbance caused by vehicle traffic, plant and equipment to the foreshore during construction, to the satisfaction of the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council.

Removal or pruning of vegetation in the CMA shall be limited to the areas of permanent and temporary occupation as shown on the Waterview Connection Project Assessment of Environmental Effects Plan Set F.12 and F.13 submitted with the application (ref Schedule A, rows 13 and 14). Removal of mangroves shall be implemented in accordance with the principles detailed in the Ecological Management Plan.

The NZTA shall maintain the coastal marine area free of any gross litter, rubbish and debris during construction.

Prior to excavation of sediment from the marine habitat remediation zone (MHRZ), mangrove vegetation will be removed from the sediment and disposed of at an appropriate offsite facility. The excavated sediment shall be stockpiled within an adjacent dry working area. When the sediment is returned to the MHRZ it will be levelled out to tie in with the existing mudflat. Where a routine marine benthic habitat monitoring site is within an area of
MHRZ, additional monitoring of the depth of sediment overlying the improved ground/mudcrete will also be undertaken.

POST-CONSTRUCTION CONDITIONS

51) V.15 Planting along and within the rock revetment of the widened SH16 causeway shall be undertaken by the NZTA at locations in general accordance with the Urban Design and Landscape Plans and planting schedules (Refer Schedule A, Row 17), as identified in those plans under the label "Rock Armour with Saltwater Revetment Planting". The planting treatments will be in accordance with the concepts of the ECOMP, Appendix I 'Conceptual Rock Revetment Planting Designs'.

52) C.4 The NZTA shall notify the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council in writing within 10 working days of the completion of each discrete area of reclamation, structures and/or channel realignment works.

53) C.5 The NZTA shall supply to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council and LINZ Hydrographic Services and LINZ Topographic Services Land Information New Zealand, PO Box 5501, Wellington 6145), a complete set of "as built" plans, final topographic and bathymetric data, and appropriate certification confirming that the new reclamations, structures and channel realignment works have been built in accordance with sound engineering practice, within three months of the completion of the reclamation works.

54) C.8 The NZTA shall ensure the removal of all equipment, erosion and sediment control measures, surplus sediment and construction materials from the CMA within 20 working days following the completion of the construction works, to the satisfaction of the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council.

MONITORING

55) A.3 The NZTA shall employ a suitably qualified ecologist to undertake monitoring of the roosting areas located at:
(a) The existing high tide roost in Harbourview-Orangihina Park; and
(b) The temporary construction roosting structure(s) pursuant to Condition A.2.
Monitoring shall be undertaken on a monthly basis, with a monitoring report prepared on a quarterly basis. The monitoring report shall be made available to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council and Department of Conservation upon request.

56) A.4 Should the monitoring results indicate that the roosting sites have been abandoned, consultation shall be undertaken with the Department of Conservation and the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council to determine the need for and type of further management strategies (if any) required.

57) C.16 On the northern side of the Causeway, from just before the commencement of construction in the CMA for each section of works, until 6 months after completion of each section, the NZTA shall undertake every two (2) months or after a severe wave-storm, intertidal beach profile surveys down to the spring low-tide mark along offshore-directed transects (one off the centre of the construction section and one either side at 20 m away from the ends of the construction site) and photographs documenting the physical state of the seabed around the perimeter of the cofferdam. The monitoring information shall be made available to the
Auckland Council. If the monitoring identifies that excessive erosion or accretion has occurred from corner or end effects of the construction section, as confirmed by a coastal processes expert, further seabed erosion control measures or a sediment by-passing method (for accretion) to reduce localised effects seaward of the temporary occupation or permanent occupation designation (whichever applies) shall be implemented as soon as practicable. Details of the proposed measures or methods shall be made available to Auckland Council prior to implementation.

58) M.2 The NZTA shall engage a suitably qualified ecologist to undertake a marine habitat monitoring programme, as described in Conditions M.3 to M.6.

59) M.3 The marine benthic habitat monitoring programme shall be undertaken every 6 months:
(a) At least 12 months prior to construction commencing, to allow for two baseline surveys to be undertaken;
(b) During construction; and
(c) For a maximum of 3 years following completion of the Project, or for a lesser time if the monitoring indicates no significant effects, as agreed with the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council.

60) M.4 The marine benthic habitat monitoring programme shall be undertaken in accordance with the details set out in the ECOMP and include:
(a) Sampling of the marine invertebrate community composition (collection of sediment cores to a depth of approximately 15cm);
(b) Sampling of the sediment surface (top 2cm) for sediment grain size; and
(c) Sampling of the sediment surface (top 2cm) for sediment quality (analysis of the concentration of copper, lead, zinc and polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons).

61) M.5 The marine benthic habitat monitoring shall be undertaken within sampling grids (50m x 30m) broadly established at the following locations:
(a) Two locations within Oakley Inlet;
(b) Four locations within Waterview Estuary; and
(c) Four locations north of the Causeway.
Specific locations and experimental design shall be detailed in the ECOMP, and the design of the monitoring programme will be based on the *Estuarine Environmental Assessment and Monitoring: A National Protocol* (Cawthron 2002).

62) M.6 The NZTA shall undertake additional marine habitat monitoring in the event of a ‘trigger event’ for marine ecology habitats. For the purposes of this consent, a ‘trigger event’ for marine ecology habitats is defined in the ECOMP.

63) M.7 The NZTA shall review the marine habitat monitoring results (pursuant to Conditions M.3 to M.6) and in the event that potential adverse effects are identified, the NZTA shall develop and implement appropriate contingency plans and/or remedial measures.

REPORTING

64) M.8 The marine benthic habitat monitoring results shall be compiled by the NZTA, and a report provided to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council every 6 months.
EPA 10/2.035 – (ARC: 38340)

This document has been prepared in compliance with conditions of the “Final Report and Decision of the Board of Inquiry into the New Zealand Transport Agency Waterview Connection Proposal, Volume 2, Conditions of Consent”. Schedule B of Volume 2 identifies the Conditions relevant to this Consent by the code and number as referenced throughout this document. In the event of dispute, Schedule B of Volume 2 shall take precedence over this Consent.

Type: Coastal Consent

Description: Erection of Temporary Structures in the CMA (Sector 5):

This consent relates to the erection of temporary (construction) structures within the CMA including piers for ramps, conveyor structures, temporary staging platforms, stormwater discharge devices and other consequential activities such as disturbance and/or vegetation removal. In CPA 1 – Oakley Creek Inlet.

Duration: 10 years

Code:
- RC = Standard Resource Consent Conditions
- CEMP = Construction Environmental Management Plan Conditions
- PI = Public Information Conditions
- ARCH = Archaeology Conditions
- C = Coastal Conditions
- M = Marine Ecology Conditions

GENERAL CONDITIONS

1) RC.1 Except as modified by the conditions below, the works shall be undertaken in general accordance with the information provided by the New Zealand Transport Agency (NZTA), in the resource consent applications and the supporting documents (as detailed in Condition DC.1), and in the supplementary information provided in evidence by the NZTA.

2) RC.1A The NZTA shall implement the conditions of these consents in accordance with Schedule B, which sets out the Conditions that are to be applied to each consent including the duration of each consent.

3) RC.2 The Conditions of these consents may be reviewed by the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council, pursuant to Section 128 of the Resource Management Act 1991 (the Act), by the giving of notice pursuant to Section 129 of the Act, on the one year anniversary of the commencement of the consents and every year thereafter in order:
   (a) To deal with any adverse effect on the environment which may arise from the exercise of the consent and which it is appropriate to deal with at a later stage; or
   (b) To deal with any other adverse effect on the environment on which the exercise of the consent may have an influence.

4) RC.4 Any Management Plans submitted to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council for approval or certification may be submitted in stages to reflect any proposed staging of the physical works. Plans submitted shall clearly show the integration with adjacent
stages and interrelated activities.

5) RC.5 In the event of any dispute, disagreement or inaction arising as to any Auckland Council Manager certification/approvals required by the consent conditions, or as to the implementation of or monitoring required by the conditions, matters shall be referred in the first instance to the NZTA Regional State Highway Manager and to the Resource Consents Manager, Auckland Council to determine a process of resolution.

If a resolution cannot be agreed, then the matter may be referred to an independent appropriately qualified expert, agreeable to both parties, setting out the details of the matter to be referred for determination and the reasons the parties do not agree.

The independent appropriately qualified expert shall be appointed within 10 working days of the NZTA or Auckland Council giving notice of their intention to seek expert determination. The expert shall, as soon as possible, issue his or her decision on the matter. In making the decision, the expert shall be entitled to seek further information and hear from the parties as he or she sees fit.

Advice note: The dispute resolution process provided for in this condition does not prejudice any party’s right to take enforcement action in relation to the implementation of the designation conditions. However, the dispute resolution process will be applied before any formal enforcement action is taken by the Council except in urgent situations.

6) RC.6 Pursuant to Section 36(1)(d) of the RMA, the requiring authority is required to pay to Auckland Council any administrative charge for the carrying out by the local authority of its functions in relation to the administration, monitoring, and supervision of designation conditions.

7) RC.7 The servants of agents of Auckland Council shall be permitted to have access to relevant parts of the Project at all reasonable times for the purpose of carrying out inspections, investigations, tests, measurements and/or to take samples.

PRE-CONSTRUCTION CONDITIONS

8) RC.3 Within 3 months of the resource consents commencing for the Project (or at least 1 month prior to any Auckland Council approvals or certifications required by these Conditions, whichever is the earlier), the NZTA shall update and finalise to the satisfaction of the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council all drawings and Plans cited in Schedule A, together with a full set of the information and documentation referred to in Condition DC.1 and provide these to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council. At the same time the NZTA shall prepare to the satisfaction of Auckland Council, a document for each resource consent which sets out the resource consent and have attached to it in text format a comprehensive set of the conditions imposed by the Board of Inquiry in its Final Decision as summarised in Schedule B, inclusive of any standard conditions and advice notes.

In particular (but not limited to), the following Plans will need to be amended in light of the Final Conditions:

(a) F.2 Operational Scheme Plans (refer Schedule A, Row 3) require amendment detailing the amended location of the ventilation stacks and southern ventilation buildings;

(b) F.5 Construction Scheme Plans (refer Schedule A, Row 4) require amendment to detail changes to construction footprint for the amended location of ventilation stacks and southern ventilation buildings and reconfiguration of Construction Yard 1);

(c) F.6 Construction Yard Plans 101 and 107 (refer Schedule A, Row 7), detailing
(d) F.8 Plans of Structures and Architectural Features (refer Schedule A, Row 9), detailing the amended location of the Northern Ventilation Stack and the design and location of the Southern Ventilation Building and Stack;

(e) The CNVMP (including flow diagram and the supplementary evidence produced by Ms Wilkening) (refer Schedule A, Rows 36, 37 and 39);

(f) Update to the areas of the Open Space Restoration Plans (Schedule A, Row 30) to:
   (i) Extend these areas in geographic extent to provide for the works identified in the Management Plan notations identified in the OS Conditions (in particular OS.5 and OS.6). (e.g. these areas will (as relevant) include Eric Armishaw Park, Howlett Reserve and Waterview Esplanade Reserve); and
   (ii) Exclude the operational area of designation required for the northern ventilation stack (as identified through the OPW process (refer Condition DC.8); and

(g) Schedule A, Row 28 the Plan detailing proposed open space impacts and replacements needs to be updated to recolour the two land parcels on Hendon Avenue (which are excluded from the replacement calculations) to ‘brown’ to confirm they are part of the operational impact and will not be returned as open space.

9) CEMP.1
Except where provided for in Condition CEMP.1A below, the NZTA shall update and finalise the draft Construction Environmental Management Plan (CEMP) including all the Management Plans which form part of the CEMP and are included as appendices, submitted with this application to ensure compliance with the consent and designation conditions imposed by the Board of Inquiry. The CEMP shall be provided to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council for review at least 20 working days prior to the commencement of works to certify compliance and consistency with the conditions. Construction shall not commence until certification is obtained.

Advice note: For clarity the CEMP will be updated and finalised in accordance with the conditions. Any amendments will be limited to reflecting the requirements of the conditions, specifying personnel, and completing the Environmental Risk Register.

Advice Note: Particular care must be taken with development and operation of Construction Yard 7. When the CEMP is being updated and finalised, consideration must be given to the contents of the draft SSCEMP prepared for Construction Yard 7 (Row 41, Schedule A) recognising changes required by inclusion of the ventilation stack in this yard.

10) CEMP.1B
For the purposes of staging works, as some works may commence well in advance of others, the NZTA may provide staged or site specific CEMPs for those works to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council. The NZTA shall consult with the Team Manager about the need and timing for any other site-specific or staged CEMPs and shall provide any required site-specific or staged CEMPs to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council for review at least 20 working days prior to commencement of such the specific stage (including enabling) or site works.

11) CEMP.2
The certification process of the CEMP (and its appendices) shall confirm that the CEMP gives effect to the relevant conditions, as well as those matters in CEMP.6, and that it includes details of:
   (a) Staff and contractors’ responsibilities;
   (b) Training requirements for employees, sub-contractors and visitors;
   (c) Environmental incident and emergency management;
   (d) Communication and interface procedures (in accordance with the Communication Plan
(e) Environmental complaints management (including the procedures required under Condition PI.4);
(f) Compliance monitoring;
(g) Reporting (including detail on the frequency of reporting to the Auckland Council);
(h) Environmental auditing; and
(i) Corrective action.

12) **CEMP.3** The management of key environmental effects associated with the construction phase of the Project is detailed within environmental management plans that are included in the CEMP as appendices. This suite of management plans as shown on Figure CEMP.A comprises:
(a) Construction Noise and Vibration Management Plan (CNVMP);
(b) Construction Air Quality Management Plan (CAQMP);
(c) Erosion and Sediment Control Plan (ESCP);
(d) Temporary Stormwater Management Plan (TSMP);
(e) Ecological Management Plan (ECOMP);
(f) Groundwater Management Plan (GWMP);
(g) Settlement Effects Management Plan (SEMP);
(h) Contaminated Soils Management Plan (CSMP);
(i) Hazardous Substances Management Plan (HSMP);
(j) Archaeological Site Management Plan (ASMP);
(k) Construction Traffic Management Plan (CTMP);
(l) Concrete Batching and Crushing Plant Management Plan (CBCPMP);
(m) Electrical Infrastructure Site Development and Construction Management Plan (EISDCMP) (to be prepared in accordance with Condition CEMP.15);
(n) Waste Management Plan (to be prepared in accordance with Condition CEMP.10);
and
(o) Temporary Construction Lighting Management Plan (to be prepared in accordance with Condition L.2).

13) **CEMP.6** The finalised CEMP shall include specific details on demolition, construction and management of all works associated with the Project. The certification process of the CEMP shall confirm that the CEMP includes details of the following:
(a) Details of the site or Project manager and the community liaison person, including their contact details (phone, facsimile, postal address, email address);
(b) The location of large notice boards that clearly identify the NZTA and the Project name, together with the name, telephone, email address and address for service of the site or Project manager and the community liaison person;
(c) An outline construction programme of the work indicating in particular likely time periods for road closures and anticipated traffic diversion effects;
(d) The hours of work, which should reflect the need to ensure that residents enjoy reasonable freedom from noisy or intrusive construction activity in their neighbourhood at night, on Sundays and during public holidays;
(e) Measures to be adopted to maintain the land affected by the works in a tidy condition in terms of disposal/storage of rubbish, storage and unloading of building materials and similar construction activities;
(f) Location of worker’s offices and conveniences (e.g. portaloos);

(g) Procedures of controlling sediment run-off, dust and the removal of soil, debris and demolition and construction materials from public roads or places. Dust mitigation measures should include use of water sprays to control dust nuisance on dry or windy days;

(h) Methods to stabilise ingress and egress points to construction sites, to the standard required by ARC Technical Publication 90 (Nov 2007);

14) CEMP.10 The NZTA shall finalise and implement the Hazardous Substances Management Plan (HSMP), through the CEMP (as per Condition CEMP.1), submitted with this application, prior to works commencing on site. The certification process of the CEMP shall confirm that the HSMP clearly identifies the requirements for proper storage, handling, transport and disposal of hazardous substances during the construction phase of the Project and confirm that there shall be no storage of explosives on the Project site.

15) CEMP.11 The NZTA shall develop and implement a Waste Management Plan in accordance with the waste management principles, controls and methods set out in the CEMP. The Plan shall be provided to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council and be implemented throughout the entire construction period.

16) CEMP.15 The NZTA will be responsible for all service relocations required for construction of the Project. The NZTA shall liaise with the providers of infrastructure service networks (including, but not limited to water, gas, stormwater, wastewater, power and telecommunications), and private property owners with on-site services to develop methodologies and timing for necessary services relocation required for the Project, with the objective of minimising disruption to the operation of these service networks and on-site services.

Advice note:

(a) It is noted that if separate consents are required for relocations for any services of network utility operators or landowners, such consents will be obtained before construction commences in the relevant area, and any effects of those relocations would be considered at that time. The same applies to any alteration of consents if required.

(b) Network infrastructure owned and operated by Watercare Services is located within the designations. An operating agreement will be developed by the NZTA and Watercare Services which will include appropriate notification and access protocols where works are to be undertaken by either network operator on or adjacent to Watercare Services infrastructure within the designations.

17) PI.1 A community liaison person shall be appointed by the NZTA for the duration of the construction phase of the Project to be the main and readily accessible point of contact for persons affected by the Project. The liaison person’s name and contact details shall be made available in the CEMP and on site signage by the NZTA. This person must be reasonably available for on-going consultation on all matters of concern to affected parties arising from the Project.

18) PI.2 The NZTA shall prepare and implement a Communications Plan that sets out procedures detailing how the public, Ministry of Social Development, Housing New Zealand Corporation and other organisations representing the particular demographic characteristics of the community (including but not limited to Primary Health Organisations, general practitioners, youth, education organisations, aged care groups and groups representing ethnic and migrant communities) will be communicated with throughout the construction and monitoring periods (as prescribed in the designation and consent.
In preparing the Communications Plan, the NZTA will liaise with Auckland Council to access its community liaison databases. The Communications Plan will include details of:

(a) The site or Project manager and the community liaison person, including their contact details (phone, facsimile, postal address, email address);
(b) In accordance with these Conditions, the database of the key construction activities and monitoring requirements that are the subject of the Communications Plan;
(c) The database of stakeholders and residents who will be communicated with;
(d) Communication methods, an assessment of how these methods reach the different audience/stakeholder groups (including those methods set out in Condition CEMP.6), and detail on when each of these methods will be used (e.g. regular communication or event specific methods);
(e) The appointed specialist in Environmental and Occupational Medicine, including contact details (as per Condition SO.13);
(f) Any stakeholder specific communication plans required; and
(g) Monitoring and review procedures for the Communications Plan.

The Communications Plan shall be written in accordance with the external communication procedures set out in the CEMP and provided at least 20 working days prior to construction commencing, to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council, Working Liaison Group and the Community Liaison Group(s) established by Condition PI.5. The structure of the communication groups set out in these conditions is attached as Figure PI.A.

19) PI.5

The NZTA shall establish Community Liaison Group(s) at least two months prior to construction commencing in each of the following key construction areas:

(a) Te Atatu (including the SH16 Causeway)
(b) Waterview (including works to St Lukes on SH16 and on the Waterview Estuary and Causeway Bridges)
(c) Owairaka

and hold regular meetings (at least three monthly) throughout the construction period and up to 24 months following construction completion relevant to these areas (or less if the members of the Group agree), so that ongoing monitoring information can continue to be disseminated.

The Community Liaison Group(s) shall be open to all interested parties within the Project area including, but not limited to the following groups:

(a) Auckland Council and Auckland Transport;
(b) Educational facilities within the Project area (including schools, kindergartens, childcare facilities and Unitec Institute of Technology);
(c) Relevant community/ environmental groups (including but not limited to Friends of Oakley Creek, Star Mills Preservation Group, Cycle Action Auckland and representatives from those organisations identified in the Communications Plan (as required by Condition PI.2) and local residents;
(d) Department of Conservation;
(e) Local Boards;
(f) Iwi groups with Mana Whenua;
(g) Public transport providers; and
(h) Housing New Zealand Corporation.
Advice note: The purpose of the Community Liaison Group(s) is to provide a regular forum through which information about the Project can be provided to the community, and an opportunity for concerns or issues to be raised.

20) ARCH.2(b) The NZTA shall employ at its expense a qualified archaeologist (the Project archaeologist) who shall be on site to monitor all initial earthworks, including surface stripping of the site, for all specific areas identified in the ASMP to establish whether any sub-surface archaeological features are present. This includes, but is not limited to, all works in the vicinity of the “Oakley Inlet Heritage Area”, located adjacent to the Great North Road Interchange;

21) ARCH.5 In accordance with the ASMP, the following specific measures shall be implemented in the area identified as the “Oakley Inlet Heritage Area” (including recorded sites R11/2191, R11/2202, R11/2203 and R11/2459), located adjacent to the Great North Road Interchange:

(a) In determining the details of construction methodology and site access, the NZTA shall ensure that there is no impact on sites R11/2202, R11/2203 and the main features of site R11/2191 (the basalt walls, boiler, building foundations and platforms). When the details have been determined, a plan will be prepared in consultation with the Project archaeologist that outlines the areas of archaeological value to be fenced off and protected from any adverse effects during the construction process. The Heritage Manager, Environmental Services, Auckland Council shall be consulted in the drafting of the plan and shall certify that the extent and method of fencing will protect the areas of archaeological value prior to commencement of construction works within the area. This plan will be added to the Archaeological Constraints layer in the GIS layers included as an Appendix of the ASMP in the CEMP.

(b) All works in the Oakley Inlet Heritage Area shall be monitored by the Project archaeologist;

(c) Machine access to construction works in this area shall be planned so as to minimise adverse effects on archaeological features;

(d) During and following removal of houses north of Cowley Street and west of Great North Road in the area where the mill workers’ cottages and mill race were once located, investigations shall be undertaken to establish and record any archaeological remains that may have survived;

(e) Remedial or limited restoration works shall be carried out to the basalt walls, wheel pit, boiler and bridge abutment of the mill/tannery/ quarry site (R11/2191), to a specification prepared by a heritage professional, to ensure their long term preservation. The specification shall be prepared in consultation with the Heritage Manager, Environmental Services, Auckland Council;

(f) A vegetation management plan shall be prepared and implemented to remove vegetation that is damaging archaeological features in this area and to protect and enhance features with appropriate vegetation cover. This plan shall form part of the Waterview Reserve Restoration Plan (refer to Conditions ARCH.6 and OS.5) and shall be prepared in consultation with the Heritage Manager, Environmental Services, Auckland Council;

(g) The design and location of any walkways and paths and structures within the Oakley Inlet Heritage Area shall include consideration of historic paths and accessways accessways (excluding the piers associated with the SH16 Interchange).

22) ARCH. Advice Any archaeological sites within the area affected by the Project shall not be modified or disturbed in any way unless written authorisation has been obtained from the NZ Historic
Note: Places Trust.

23) C.1 The NZTA shall provide to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council plans and drawings (including dimensioned, cross sections, elevations and site plans of all areas of proposed reclamation (including associated permanent and temporary CMA occupation), permanent structures and temporary structures) at least 20 working days before the proposed date of commencement of the construction of the reclamation, bridge piers or temporary structure.

24) M.1 The NZTA shall finalise and implement through the CEMP, the ECOMP submitted with this application. The ECOMP shall be revised to accurately reflect the conditions of this consent and changes to the details of construction processes prior to construction commencing. The ECOMP shall include, but not be limited to, details of:
(a) Monitoring of marine habitats and ecological values;
(b) Trigger event criteria for undertaking additional monitoring;
(c) Procedures for responding to accidental discharges to the marine environment;
(d) Complaints investigation, monitoring and reporting; and
(e) The identification of staff and contractors’ responsibilities.

CONSTRUCTION CONDITIONS

25) CEMP.4 The CEMP shall be implemented and maintained throughout the entire construction period.

26) CEMP.5 A copy of the CEMP shall be held on each construction site at all times and be available for inspection on request by the Auckland Council.

27) CEMP.8 All storage of material and equipment associated with the construction works shall take place within the boundaries of the designation.

28) CEMP.12 The CEMP shall be reviewed by the NZTA at least annually or as a result of a material change to the Project. The review shall take into consideration:
Compliance with designation and consent conditions;
Any changes to construction methods;
Key changes to roles and responsibilities within the Project;
Changes in industry best practice standards;
Changes in legal or other requirements;
(f) Results of inspections, monitoring, incidents, corrective actions, internal or external assessments; and
(g) Public complaints.

A summary of the review process undertaken shall be kept by the NZTA, provided annually to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council and made available (with any related data) to the Auckland Council upon request.

29) CEMP.13 Following the review process (as described in Condition CEMP.12), the CEMP may require updating. Any material change proposed to the CEMP (including appended Management Plans) shall be submitted for approval to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council at least 10 working days prior to the proposed changes taking effect.

Advice Note: Material change will include amendment to any base information informing the CEMP or any process, procedure or method of the CEMP (such as the environmental constraints map, compliance monitoring process, complaints procedure or mitigation /
remedial methods identified) which has the potential to increase adverse effects on a particular value. For clarity changes to personnel and contact schedules do not constitute a material change.

30) PI.3 At least 15 working days prior to the commencement of construction, and at 15 working day intervals thereafter, or as required depending on the scale of works and effects on the community, advertisements will be placed in the relevant local newspapers and community noticeboards (as identified in Condition CEMP.6(b)) detailing the nature of the forthcoming works, the location of the forthcoming works and hours of operation. All advertisements will include reference to a 24 hour toll free complaints telephone number. Where relevant, advertisements will also include but not be limited to details of:
   (a) Any traffic disruptions or controls or changes to property access, pedestrian/ cycle routes and bus stops; and
   (b) Any other construction activities, including night time works, blasting, and structure-borne noise, as identified in the conditions.

31) PI.4 The NZTA shall manage, investigate and resolve (as appropriate) all complaints for the duration of the construction works in accordance with the environmental complaints section of the CEMP. The implementation strategy for complaints includes:
   (a) A 24 hour toll free telephone number and email address, which shall be provided to all potentially affected residents and businesses. The number shall be available and answered at all times during the entire duration of the works for the receipt and management of any complaints. A sign containing the contact details shall be located at each site specific work activity;
   (b) The NZTA shall maintain a record of all complaints made to this number, email or any site office, including the full details of the complainant and the nature of the complaint;
   (c) Upon receiving a complaint, within 10 days of complaint receipt, a formal written response will be provided to the complainant and Auckland Council;
   (d) The NZTA shall undertake corrective action where necessary to resolve any problem identified. All action taken and relevant information shall be documented. For the avoidance of doubt, ‘where necessary’ refers to where the works are not being carried out in accordance with conditions of this designation;
   (e) Where issues and complaints about effects cannot be resolved through the CEMP complaints management process, a meeting shall be held between the NZTA, the complainant and the Auckland Council representative(s) to discuss the complaint and ways in which the issue may be resolved. If parties cannot agree on a resolution, an independent qualified mediator will be appointed, agreeable to all parties and at the shared cost of all parties, to undertake mediation of the dispute or concerns; and
   (f) All information collected in Conditions PI.4 (b), (c) and (d) shall be detailed in a Construction Compliance Report (including the means by which the complaint was addressed, whether resolution was reached and how the response was carried out) prepared by the NZTA. This Report shall be submitted to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council on a quarterly basis commencing at the beginning of the works and for the entire duration of construction.

32) PI.6 The Community Liaison Group(s) shall be provided opportunities to review and comment on the following (amongst other things):
   (a) The Outline Plan of Works detailing designs for the northern and southern ventilation buildings and stacks (the outcomes of this consultation will be reported in accordance with the processes required in DC.8(n) and DC.9(k);
   (b) The Open Space Restoration Plans (as required by Condition OS.3);
(c) Finalisation and amendment to Urban Design and Landscape Plans (UDL Plans) (as required by Condition LV.1);
(d) The Oakley Inlet Heritage Plan (as required by Conditions OS.5(b)(i) and ARCH.6);
(e) The detail of the Oakley Creek restoration (as required by Condition STW.20);
(f) Publicly available results of environmental monitoring as required by the designation and/or these Consents (e.g. air quality monitoring); and
(g) The finalisation of the STEM assessment required by CEMP.6(o) and a schedule of trees that are required to be removed for consideration of timber use in heritage projects as required by Condition SO.7.

Advice Note: Attention is drawn to the Vegetation conditions concerning identification and protection of Significant Vegetation and Valued Vegetation.

(h) Detailed design features of the Te Atatu underpass (e.g. lighting and architectural treatment).

33) ARCH.3 If any archaeological sites, including human remains are exposed during site works, then the following procedures shall apply:
(a) Immediately it becomes apparent that a possible archaeological or traditional site has been exposed, all site works in the immediate vicinity shall cease;
(b) The site supervisor shall immediately secure the area in a way that ensures that any artefacts or remains are untouched and notify the Project archaeologist;
(c) The Project archaeologist shall inspect the site to assess the relevance of the find, and then the Auckland Council shall be advised of the significance;
(d) If the site is confirmed to be an archaeological site by the Project archaeologist, the site supervisor shall then notify tangata whenua, the New Zealand Historic Places Trust, and the Auckland Council that an archaeological site has been exposed so that appropriate action can be taken;
(e) In the case of human remains, the NZ Police shall be notified.

34) C.2 Construction shall be undertaken in accordance with the construction methodology detailed in the application, specifically Technical Report G.23 Coastal Works and Technical Report G.22 Erosion and Sediment Control Plan. The construction methodology shall include:
(a) The use of temporary coffer dams to create dry working areas;
(b) Realignment of sections of existing low-tide channels in Oakley inlet and Waterview Estuary that will be directly affected by the reclamation works;
(c) Removal of mangroves to provide construction and ground-treatment access, placement of temporary coffer dams and to facilitate natural channel migration in the Whau River side drainage channel (east of Rosebank Domain);
(d) Installation or removal works to be undertaken at the best practicable time to minimise potential sediment disturbance.

35) C.3 The NZTA shall notify the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council in writing of the proposed commencement date of the reclamation, structures and/or channel realignment works at least 10 working days prior to the proposed start date.

36) C.6 The NZTA shall maintain the site in good order and shall remedy all damage and disturbance caused by vehicle traffic, plant and equipment to the foreshore during construction, to the satisfaction of the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council.

37) C.7 Removal or pruning of vegetation in the CMA shall be limited to the areas of permanent
and temporary occupation as shown on the Waterview Connection Project Assessment of Environmental Effects Plan Set F.12 and F.13 submitted with the application (ref Schedule A, rows 13 and 14). Removal of mangroves shall be implemented in accordance with the principles detailed in the Ecological Management Plan.

38) M.10 The NZTA shall maintain the coastal marine area free of any gross litter, rubbish and debris during construction.

39) M.11 Prior to excavation of sediment from the marine habitat remediation zone (MHRZ), mangrove vegetation will be removed from the sediment and disposed of at an appropriate offsite facility. The excavated sediment shall be stockpiled within an adjacent dry working area. When the sediment is returned to the MHRZ it will be levelled out to tie in with the existing mudflat. Where a routine marine benthic habitat monitoring site is within an area of MHRZ, additional monitoring of the depth of sediment overlying the improved ground/mudcrete will also be undertaken.

**POST-CONSTRUCTION CONDITIONS**

40) C.4 The NZTA shall notify the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council in writing within 10 working days of the completion of each discrete area of reclamation, structures and/or channel realignment works.

41) C.8 The NZTA shall ensure the removal of all equipment, erosion and sediment control measures, surplus sediment and construction materials from the CMA within 20 working days following the completion of the construction works, to the satisfaction of the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council.

**MONITORING**

42) M.2 The NZTA shall engage a suitably qualified ecologist to undertake a marine habitat monitoring programme, as described in Conditions M.3 to M.6.

43) M.3 The marine benthic habitat monitoring programme shall be undertaken every 6 months:
   (a) At least 12 months prior to construction commencing, to allow for two baseline surveys to be undertaken;
   (b) During construction; and
   (c) For a maximum of 3 years following completion of the Project, or for a lesser time if the monitoring indicates no significant effects, as agreed with the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council.

44) M.4 The marine benthic habitat monitoring programme shall be undertaken in accordance with the details set out in the ECOMP and include:
   (a) Sampling of the marine invertebrate community composition (collection of sediment cores to a depth of approximately 15cm);
   (b) Sampling of the sediment surface (top 2cm) for sediment grain size; and
   (c) Sampling of the sediment surface (top 2cm) for sediment quality (analysis of the concentration of copper, lead, zinc and polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons).

45) M.5 The marine benthic habitat monitoring shall be undertaken within sampling grids (50m x 30m) broadly established at the following locations:
   (a) Two locations within Oakley Inlet;
   (b) Four locations within Waterview Estuary; and
(c) Four locations north of the Causeway.
Specific locations and experimental design shall be detailed in the ECOMP, and the design
of the monitoring programme will be based on the *Estuarine Environmental Assessment

46) M.6 The NZTA shall undertake additional marine habitat monitoring in the event of a 'trigger
event' for marine ecology habitats. For the purposes of this consent, a 'trigger event' for
marine ecology habitats is defined in the ECOMP.

47) M.7 The NZTA shall review the marine habitat monitoring results (pursuant to Conditions M.3 to
M.6) and in the event that potential adverse effects are identified, the NZTA shall develop
and implement appropriate contingency plans and/or remedial measures.

**REPORTING**

48) M.8 The marine benthic habitat monitoring results shall be compiled by the NZTA, and a report
provided to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council every 6 months.
EPA 10/2.036 – (ARC: 38341)

This document has been prepared in compliance with conditions of the "Final Report and Decision of the Board of Inquiry into the New Zealand Transport Agency Waterview Connection Proposal, Volume 2, Conditions of Consent". Schedule B of Volume 2 identifies the Conditions relevant to this Consent by the code and number as referenced throughout this document. In the event of dispute, Schedule B of Volume 2 shall take precedence over this Consent.

Type: Coastal Consent

Description: Erection of Permanent Structures in the CMA (Sector 5):

This consent relates to the construction of permanent (operational phase) structures within the CMA including piers, ramps, stormwater discharge devices, heritage bridge and other consequential activities such as disturbance and/or vegetation removal. In CPA 1 – Oakley Creek Inlet.

Duration: 10 years

Code: RC = Standard Resource Consent Conditions
CEMP = Construction Environmental Management Plan Conditions
PI = Public Information Conditions
ARCH = Archaeology Conditions
C = Coastal Conditions
M = Marine Ecology Conditions

GENERAL CONDITIONS

1) RC.1 Except as modified by the conditions below, the works shall be undertaken in general accordance with the information provided by the New Zealand Transport Agency (NZTA), in the resource consent applications and the supporting documents (as detailed in Condition DC.1), and in the supplementary information provided in evidence by the NZTA.

2) RC.1A The NZTA shall implement the conditions of these consents in accordance with Schedule B, which sets out the Conditions that are to be applied to each consent including the duration of each consent.

3) RC.2 The Conditions of these consents may be reviewed by the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council, pursuant to Section 128 of the Resource Management Act 1991 (the Act), by the giving of notice pursuant to Section 129 of the Act, on the one year anniversary of the commencement of the consents and every year thereafter in order:

(a) To deal with any adverse effect on the environment which may arise from the exercise of the consent and which it is appropriate to deal with at a later stage; or

(b) To deal with any other adverse effect on the environment on which the exercise of the consent may have an influence.

4) RC.4 Any Management Plans submitted to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council for approval or certification may be submitted in stages to reflect any proposed staging of the physical works. Plans submitted shall clearly show the integration with adjacent
stages and interrelated activities.

5) RC.5 In the event of any dispute, disagreement or inaction arising as to any Auckland Council Manager certification/approvals required by the consent conditions, or as to the implementation of or monitoring required by the conditions, matters shall be referred in the first instance to the NZTA Regional State Highway Manager and to the Resource Consents Manager, Auckland Council to determine a process of resolution.

If a resolution cannot be agreed, then the matter may be referred to an independent appropriately qualified expert, agreeable to both parties, setting out the details of the matter to be referred for determination and the reasons the parties do not agree.

The independent appropriately qualified expert shall be appointed within 10 working days of the NZTA or Auckland Council giving notice of their intention to seek expert determination. The expert shall, as soon as possible, issue his or her decision on the matter. In making the decision, the expert shall be entitled to seek further information and hear from the parties as he or she sees fit.

Advice note: The dispute resolution process provided for in this condition does not prejudice any party’s right to take enforcement action in relation to the implementation of the designation conditions. However, the dispute resolution process will be applied before any formal enforcement action is taken by the Council except in urgent situations.

6) RC.6 Pursuant to Section 36(1)(d) of the RMA, the requiring authority is required to pay to Auckland Council any administrative charge for the carrying out by the local authority of its functions in relation to the administration, monitoring, and supervision of designation conditions.

7) RC.7 The servants of agents of Auckland Council shall be permitted to have access to relevant parts of the Project at all reasonable times for the purpose of carrying out inspections, investigations, tests, measurements and/or to take samples.

PRE-CONSTRUCTION CONDITIONS

8) RC.3 Within 3 months of the resource consents commencing for the Project (or at least 1 month prior to any Auckland Council approvals or certifications required by these Conditions, whichever is the earlier), the NZTA shall update and finalise to the satisfaction of the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council all drawings and Plans cited in Schedule A, together with a full set of the information and documentation referred to in Condition DC.1 and provide these to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council. At the same time the NZTA shall prepare to the satisfaction of Auckland Council, a document for each resource consent which sets out the resource consent and have attached to it in text format a comprehensive set of the conditions imposed by the Board of Inquiry in its Final Decision as summarised in Schedule B, inclusive of any standard conditions and advice notes.

In particular (but not limited to), the following Plans will need to be amended in light of the Final Conditions:

(a) F.2 Operational Scheme Plans (refer Schedule A, Row 3) require amendment detailing the amended location of the ventilation stacks and southern ventilation buildings;

(b) F.5 Construction Scheme Plans (refer Schedule A, Row 4) require amendment to detail changes to construction footprint for the amended location of ventilation stacks and southern ventilation buildings and reconfiguration of Construction Yard 1);

(c) F.6 Construction Yard Plans 101 and 107 (refer Schedule A, Row 7), detailing
(d) F.8 Plans of Structures and Architectural Features (refer Schedule A, Row 9), detailing the amended location of the Northern Ventilation Stack and the design and location of the Southern Ventilation Building and Stack;

(e) The CNVMP (including flow diagram and the supplementary evidence produced by Ms Wilkening) (refer Schedule A, Rows 36, 37 and 39);

(f) Update to the areas of the Open Space Restoration Plans (Schedule A, Row 30) to:
   (i) Extend these areas in geographic extent to provide for the works identified in the Management Plan notations identified in the OS Conditions (in particular OS.5 and OS.6). (e.g. these areas will (as relevant) include Eric Armishaw Park, Howlett Reserve and Waterview Esplanade Reserve); and
   (ii) Exclude the operational area of designation required for the northern ventilation stack (as identified through the OPW process (refer Condition DC.8); and

(g) Schedule A, Row 28 the Plan detailing proposed open space impacts and replacements needs to be updated to recolour the two land parcels on Hendon Avenue (which are excluded from the replacement calculations) to ‘brown’ to confirm they are part of the operational impact and will not be returned as open space.

9) CEMP.1 Except where provided for in Condition CEMP.1A below, the NZTA shall update and finalise the draft Construction Environmental Management Plan (CEMP) including all the Management Plans which form part of the CEMP and are included as appendices, submitted with this application to ensure compliance with the consent and designation conditions imposed by the Board of Inquiry. The CEMP shall be provided to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council for review at least 20 working days prior to the commencement of works to certify compliance and consistency with the conditions. Construction shall not commence until certification is obtained.

Advice note: For clarity the CEMP will be updated and finalised in accordance with the conditions. Any amendments will be limited to reflecting the requirements of the conditions, specifying personnel, and completing the Environmental Risk Register.

Advice Note: Particular care must be taken with development and operation of Construction Yard 7. When the CEMP is being updated and finalised, consideration must be given to the contents of the draft SSCEMP prepared for Construction Yard 7 (Row 41, Schedule A) recognising changes required by inclusion of the ventilation stack in this yard.

10) CEMP.1B For the purposes of staging works, as some works may commence well in advance of others, the NZTA may provide staged or site specific CEMPs for those works to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council. The NZTA shall consult with the Team Manager about the need and timing for any other site-specific or staged CEMPs and shall provide any required site-specific or staged CEMPs to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council for review at least 20 working days prior to commencement of such the specific stage (including enabling) or site works.

11) CEMP.2 The certification process of the CEMP (and its appendices) shall confirm that the CEMP gives effect to the relevant conditions, as well as those matters in CEMP.6, and that it includes details of:
   (a) Staff and contractors’ responsibilities;
   (b) Training requirements for employees, sub-contractors and visitors;
   (c) Environmental incident and emergency management;
   (d) Communication and interface procedures (in accordance with the Communication Plan
12) CEMP.3 The management of key environmental effects associated with the construction phase of the Project is detailed within environmental management plans that are included in the CEMP as appendices. This suite of management plans as shown on Figure CEMP.A comprises:

(a) Construction Noise and Vibration Management Plan (CNVMP);
(b) Construction Air Quality Management Plan (CAQMP);
(c) Erosion and Sediment Control Plan (ESCP);
(d) Temporary Stormwater Management Plan (TSMP);
(e) Ecological Management Plan (ECOMP);
(f) Groundwater Management Plan (GWMP);
(g) Settlement Effects Management Plan (SEMP);
(h) Contaminated Soils Management Plan (CSMP);
(i) Hazardous Substances Management Plan (HSMP);
(j) Archaeological Site Management Plan (ASMP);
(k) Construction Traffic Management Plan (CTMP);
(l) Concrete Batching and Crushing Plant Management Plan (CBCPMP);
(m) Electrical Infrastructure Site Development and Construction Management Plan (EISDCMMP) (to be prepared in accordance with Condition CEMP.15);
(n) Waste Management Plan (to be prepared in accordance with Condition CEMP.10); and
(o) Temporary Construction Lighting Management Plan (to be prepared in accordance with Condition L.2).

13) CEMP.6 The finalised CEMP shall include specific details on demolition, construction and management of all works associated with the Project. The certification process of the CEMP shall confirm that the CEMP includes details of the following:

(a) details of the site or Project manager and the community liaison person, including their contact details (phone, facsimile, postal address, email address);
(b) The location of large notice boards that clearly identify the NZTA and the Project name, together with the name, telephone, email address and address for service of the site or Project manager and the community liaison person;
(c) An outline construction programme of the work indicating in particular likely time periods for road closures and anticipated traffic diversion effects;
(d) The hours of work, which should reflect the need to ensure that residents enjoy reasonable freedom from noisy or intrusive construction activity in their neighbourhood at night, on Sundays and during public holidays;
(e) Measures to be adopted to maintain the land affected by the works in a tidy condition in terms of disposal/ storage of rubbish, storage and unloading of building materials and similar construction activities;
(f) Location of worker’s offices and conveniences (e.g. portaloos);

(g) Procedures of controlling sediment run-off, dust and the removal of soil, debris and demolition and construction materials from public roads or places. Dust mitigation measures should include use of water sprays to control dust nuisance on dry or windy days;

(h) Methods to stabilise ingress and egress points to construction sites, to the standard required by ARC Technical Publication 90 (Nov 2007);

14) CEMP.10 The NZTA shall finalise and implement the Hazardous Substances Management Plan (HSMP), through the CEMP (as per Condition CEMP.1), submitted with this application, prior to works commencing on site. The certification process of the CEMP shall confirm that the HSMP clearly identifies the requirements for proper storage, handling, transport and disposal of hazardous substances during the construction phase of the Project and confirm that there shall be no storage of explosives on the Project site.

15) CEMP.11 The NZTA shall develop and implement a Waste Management Plan in accordance with the waste management principles, controls and methods set out in the CEMP. The Plan shall be provided to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council and be implemented throughout the entire construction period.

16) CEMP.15 The NZTA will be responsible for all service relocations required for construction of the Project. The NZTA shall liaise with the providers of infrastructure service networks (including, but not limited to water, gas, stormwater, wastewater, power and telecommunications), and private property owners with on-site services to develop methodologies and timing for necessary services relocation required for the Project, with the objective of minimising disruption to the operation of these service networks and on-site services.

Advice note:

(a) It is noted that if separate consents are required for relocations for any services of network utility operators or landowners, such consents will be obtained before construction commences in the relevant area, and any effects of those relocations would be considered at that time. The same applies to any alteration of consents if required.

(b) Network infrastructure owned and operated by Watercare Services is located within the designations. An operating agreement will be developed by the NZTA and Watercare Services which will include appropriate notification and access protocols where works are to be undertaken by either network operator on or adjacent to Watercare Services infrastructure within the designations.

17) PI.1 A community liaison person shall be appointed by the NZTA for the duration of the construction phase of the Project to be the main and readily accessible point of contact for persons affected by the Project. The liaison person’s name and contact details shall be made available in the CEMP and on site signage by the NZTA. This person must be reasonably available for on-going consultation on all matters of concern to affected parties arising from the Project.

18) PI.2 The NZTA shall prepare and implement a Communications Plan that sets out procedures detailing how the public, Ministry of Social Development, Housing New Zealand Corporation and other organisations representing the particular demographic characteristics of the community (including but not limited to Primary Health Organisations, general practitioners, youth, education organisations, aged care groups and groups representing ethnic and migrant communities) will be communicated with throughout the construction and monitoring periods (as prescribed in the designation and consent
In preparing the Communications Plan, the NZTA will liaise with Auckland Council to access its community liaison databases. The Communications Plan will include details of:

(a) The site or Project manager and the community liaison person, including their contact details (phone, facsimile, postal address, email address);

(b) In accordance with these Conditions, the database of the key construction activities and monitoring requirements that are the subject of the Communications Plan;

(c) The database of stakeholders and residents who will be communicated with;

(d) Communication methods, an assessment of how these methods reach the different audience/stakeholder groups (including those methods set out in Condition CEMP.6), and detail on when each of these methods will be used (e.g. regular communication or event specific methods);

(e) The appointed specialist in Environmental and Occupational Medicine, including contact details (as per Condition SO.13);

(f) Any stakeholder specific communication plans required; and

(g) Monitoring and review procedures for the Communications Plan.

The Communications Plan shall be written in accordance with the external communication procedures set out in the CEMP and provided at least 20 working days prior to construction commencing, to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council, Working Liaison Group and the Community Liaison Group(s) established by Condition PI.5. The structure of the communication groups set out in these conditions is attached as Figure PI.A.

19) PI.5 The NZTA shall establish Community Liaison Group(s) at least two months prior to construction commencing in each of the following key construction areas:

(a) Te Atatu (including the SH16 Causeway)

(b) Waterview (including works to St Lukes on SH16 and on the Waterview Estuary and Causeway Bridges)

(c) Owairaka

and hold regular meetings (at least three monthly) throughout the construction period and up to 24 months following construction completion relevant to these areas (or less if the members of the Group agree), so that on-going monitoring information can continue to be disseminated.

The Community Liaison Group(s) shall be open to all interested parties within the Project area including, but not limited to the following groups:

(a) Auckland Council and Auckland Transport;

(b) Educational facilities within the Project area (including schools, kindergartens, childcare facilities and Unitec Institute of Technology);

(c) Relevant community/environmental groups (including but not limited to Friends of Oakley Creek, Star Mills Preservation Group, Cycle Action Auckland and representatives from those organisations identified in the Communications Plan (as required by Condition PI.2) and local residents;

(d) Department of Conservation;

(e) Local Boards;

(f) Iwi groups with Mana Whenua;

(g) Public transport providers; and

(h) Housing New Zealand Corporation.
Advice note: The purpose of the Community Liaison Group(s) is to provide a regular forum through which information about the Project can be provided to the community, and an opportunity for concerns or issues to be raised.

20) ARCH.2(b) The NZTA shall employ at its expense a qualified archaeologist (the Project archaeologist) who shall be on site to monitor all initial earthworks, including surface stripping of the site, for all specific areas identified in the ASMP to establish whether any sub-surface archaeological features are present. This includes, but is not limited to, all works in the vicinity of the “Oakley Inlet Heritage Area”, located adjacent to the Great North Road Interchange;

21) ARCH.5 In accordance with the ASMP, the following specific measures shall be implemented in the area identified as the “Oakley Inlet Heritage Area” (including recorded sites R11/2191, R11/2202, R11/2203 and R11/2459), located adjacent to the Great North Road Interchange:

   (a) In determining the details of construction methodology and site access, the NZTA shall ensure that there is no impact on sites R11/2202, R11/2203 and the main features of site R11/2191 (the basalt walls, boiler, building foundations and platforms). When the details have been determined, a plan will be prepared in consultation with the Project archaeologist that outlines the areas of archaeological value to be fenced off and protected from any adverse effects during the construction process. The Heritage Manager, Environmental Services, Auckland Council shall be consulted in the drafting of the plan and shall certify that the extent and method of fencing will protect the areas of archaeological value prior to commencement of construction works within the area. This plan will be added to the Archaeological Constraints layer in the GIS layers included as an Appendix of the ASMP in the CEMP.

   (b) All works in the Oakley Inlet Heritage Area shall be monitored by the Project archaeologist;

   (c) Machine access to construction works in this area shall be planned so as to minimise adverse effects on archaeological features;

   (d) During and following removal of houses north of Cowley Street and west of Great North Road in the area where the mill workers’ cottages and mill race were once located, investigations shall be undertaken to establish and record any archaeological remains that may have survived;

   (e) Remedial or limited restoration works shall be carried out to the basalt walls, wheel pit, boiler and bridge abutment of the mill/tannery/ quarry site (R11/2191), to a specification prepared by a heritage professional, to ensure their long term preservation. The specification shall be prepared in consultation with the Heritage Manager, Environmental Services, Auckland Council;

   (f) A vegetation management plan shall be prepared and implemented to remove vegetation that is damaging archaeological features in this area and to protect and enhance features with appropriate vegetation cover. This plan shall form part of the Waterview Reserve Restoration Plan (refer to Conditions ARCH.6 and OS.5) and shall be prepared in consultation with the Heritage Manager, Environmental Services, Auckland Council;

   (g) The design and location of any walkways and paths and structures within the Oakley Inlet Heritage Area shall include consideration of historic paths and accessways accessways (excluding the piers associated with the SH16 Interchange).

22) ARCH. Any archaeological sites within the area affected by the Project shall not be modified or disturbed in any way unless written authorisation has been obtained from the NZ Historic
Note  
*Places Trust.*

23) **C.1**  
The NZTA shall provide to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council plans and drawings (including dimensioned, cross sections, elevations and site plans of all areas of proposed reclamation (including associated permanent and temporary CMA occupation), permanent structures and temporary structures) at least 20 working days before the proposed date of commencement of the construction of the reclamation, bridge piers or temporary structure.

24) **M.1**  
The NZTA shall finalise and implement through the CEMP, the ECOMP submitted with this application. The ECOMP shall be revised to accurately reflect the conditions of this consent and changes to the details of construction processes prior to construction commencing. The ECOMP shall include, but not be limited to, details of:

(a) Monitoring of marine habitats and ecological values;
(b) Trigger event criteria for undertaking additional monitoring;
(c) Procedures for responding to accidental discharges to the marine environment;
(d) Complaints investigation, monitoring and reporting; and
(e) The identification of staff and contractors’ responsibilities.

### CONSTRUCTION CONDITIONS

25) **CEMP.4**  
The CEMP shall be implemented and maintained throughout the entire construction period.

26) **CEMP.5**  
A copy of the CEMP shall be held on each construction site at all times and be available for inspection on request by the Auckland Council.

27) **CEMP.8**  
All storage of material and equipment associated with the construction works shall take place within the boundaries of the designation.

28) **CEMP.12**  
The CEMP shall be reviewed by the NZTA at least annually or as a result of a material change to the Project. The review shall take into consideration:

(a) Compliance with designation and consent conditions;
(b) Any changes to construction methods;
(c) Key changes to roles and responsibilities within the Project;
(d) Changes in industry best practice standards;
(e) Changes in legal or other requirements;
(f) Results of inspections, monitoring, incidents, corrective actions, internal or external assessments; and
(g) Public complaints.

A summary of the review process undertaken shall be kept by the NZTA, provided annually to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council and made available (with any related data) to the Auckland Council upon request.

29) **CEMP.13**  
Following the review process (as described in Condition CEMP.12), the CEMP may require updating. Any material change proposed to the CEMP (including appended Management Plans) shall be submitted for approval to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council at least 10 working days prior to the proposed changes taking effect.

*Advice Note: Material change will include amendment to any base information informing the CEMP or any process, procedure or method of the CEMP (such as the environmental constraints map, compliance monitoring process, complaints procedure or mitigation / remedial methods identified) which has the potential to increase adverse effects on a*
particular value. For clarity changes to personnel and contact schedules do not constitute a material change.

30) PI.3 At least 15 working days prior to the commencement of construction, and at 15 working day intervals thereafter, or as required depending on the scale of works and effects on the community, advertisements will be placed in the relevant local newspapers and community noticeboards (as identified in Condition CEMP.6(b)) detailing the nature of the forthcoming works, the location of the forthcoming works and hours of operation. All advertisements will include reference to a 24 hour toll free complaints telephone number. Where relevant, advertisements will also include but not be limited to details of:

(a) Any traffic disruptions or controls or changes to property access, pedestrian/ cycle routes and bus stops; and

(b) Any other construction activities, including night time works, blasting, and structure-borne noise, as identified in the conditions.

31) PI.4 The NZTA shall manage, investigate and resolve (as appropriate) all complaints for the duration of the construction works in accordance with the environmental complaints section of the CEMP. The implementation strategy for complaints includes:

(a) A 24 hour toll free telephone number and email address, which shall be provided to all potentially affected residents and businesses. The number shall be available and answered at all times during the entire duration of the works for the receipt and management of any complaints. A sign containing the contact details shall be located at each site specific work activity;

(b) The NZTA shall maintain a record of all complaints made to this number, email or any site office, including the full details of the complainant and the nature of the complaint;

(c) Upon receiving a complaint, within 10 days of complaint receipt, a formal written response will be provided to the complainant and Auckland Council;

(d) The NZTA shall undertake corrective action where necessary to resolve any problem identified. All action taken and relevant information shall be documented. For the avoidance of doubt, ‘where necessary’ refers to where the works are not being carried out in accordance with conditions of this designation;

(e) Where issues and complaints about effects cannot be resolved through the CEMP complaints management process, a meeting shall be held between the NZTA, the complainant and the Auckland Council representative(s) to discuss the complaint and ways in which the issue may be resolved. If parties cannot agree on a resolution, an independent qualified mediator will be appointed, agreeable to all parties and at the shared cost of all parties, to undertake mediation of the dispute or concerns; and

(f) All information collected in Conditions PI.4 (b), (c) and (d) shall be detailed in a Construction Compliance Report (including the means by which the complaint was addressed, whether resolution was reached and how the response was carried out) prepared by the NZTA. This Report shall be submitted to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council on a quarterly basis commencing at the beginning of the works and for the entire duration of construction.

32) PI.6 The Community Liaison Group(s) shall be provided opportunities to review and comment on the following (amongst other things):

(a) The Outline Plan of Works detailing designs for the northern and southern ventilation buildings and stacks (the outcomes of this consultation will be reported in accordance with the processes required in DC.8(n) and DC.9(k));

(b) The Open Space Restoration Plans (as required by Condition OS.3);

(c) Finalisation and amendment to Urban Design and Landscape Plans (UDL Plans) (as
(d) The Oakley Inlet Heritage Plan (as required by Conditions OS.5(b)(i) and ARCH.6);
(e) The detail of the Oakley Creek restoration (as required by Condition STW.20);
(f) Publicly available results of environmental monitoring as required by the designation and/or these Consents (e.g. air quality monitoring); and
(g) The finalisation of the STEM assessment required by CEMP.6(o) and a schedule of trees that are required to be removed for consideration of timber use in heritage projects as required by Condition SO.7.
   Advice Note: Attention is drawn to the Vegetation conditions concerning identification and protection of Significant Vegetation and Valued Vegetation.
(h) Detailed design features of the Te Atatu underpass (e.g. lighting and architectural treatment).

33) ARCH.3 If any archaeological sites, including human remains are exposed during site works, then the following procedures shall apply:

   (a) Immediately it becomes apparent that a possible archaeological or traditional site has been exposed, all site works in the immediate vicinity shall cease;
   (b) The site supervisor shall immediately secure the area in a way that ensures that any artefacts or remains are untouched and notify the Project archaeologist;
   (c) The Project archaeologist shall inspect the site to assess the relevance of the find, and then the Auckland Council shall be advised of the significance;
   (d) If the site is confirmed to be an archaeological site by the Project archaeologist, the site supervisor shall then notify tangata whenua, the New Zealand Historic Places Trust, and the Auckland Council that an archaeological site has been exposed so that appropriate action can be taken;
   (e) In the case of human remains, the NZ Police shall be notified.

34) C.2 Construction shall be undertaken in accordance with the construction methodology detailed in the application, specifically Technical Report G.23 Coastal Works and Technical Report G.22 Erosion and Sediment Control Plan. The construction methodology shall include:

   (a) The use of temporary coffer dams to create dry working areas;
   (b) Realignment of sections of existing low-tide channels in Oakley inlet and Waterview Estuary that will be directly affected by the reclamation works;
   (c) Removal of mangroves to provide construction and ground-treatment access, placement of temporary coffer dams and to facilitate natural channel migration in the Whau River side drainage channel (east of Rosebank Domain);
   (d) Installation or removal works to be undertaken at the best practicable time to minimise potential sediment disturbance.

35) C.3 The NZTA shall notify the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council in writing of the proposed commencement date of the reclamation, structures and/or channel realignment works at least 10 working days prior to the proposed start date.

36) C.6 The NZTA shall maintain the site in good order and shall remedy all damage and disturbance caused by vehicle traffic, plant and equipment to the foreshore during construction, to the satisfaction of the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council.

37) C.7 Removal or pruning of vegetation in the CMA shall be limited to the areas of permanent and temporary occupation as shown on the Waterview Connection Project Assessment of
Environmental Effects Plan Set F.12 and F.13 submitted with the application (ref Schedule A, rows 13 and 14). Removal of mangroves shall be implemented in accordance with the principles detailed in the Ecological Management Plan.

38) M.10 The NZTA shall maintain the coastal marine area free of any gross litter, rubbish and debris during construction.

39) M.11 Prior to excavation of sediment from the marine habitat remediation zone (MHRZ), mangrove vegetation will be removed from the sediment and disposed of at an appropriate offsite facility. The excavated sediment shall be stockpiled within an adjacent dry working area. When the sediment is returned to the MHRZ it will be levelled out to tie in with the existing mudflat. Where a routine marine benthic habitat monitoring site is within an area of MHRZ, additional monitoring of the depth of sediment overlying the improved ground/mudcrete will also be undertaken.

POST-CONSTRUCTION CONDITIONS

40) C.4 The NZTA shall notify the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council in writing within 10 working days of the completion of each discrete area of reclamations, structures and/or channel realignment works.

41) C.5 The NZTA shall supply to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council and LINZ Hydrographic Services and LINZ Topographic Services Land Information New Zealand, PO Box 5501, Wellington 6145), a complete set of “as built” plans, final topographic and bathymetric data, and appropriate certification confirming that the new reclamations, structures and channel realignment works have been built in accordance with sound engineering practice, within three months of the completion of the reclamations works.

42) C.8 The NZTA shall ensure the removal of all equipment, erosion and sediment control measures, surplus sediment and construction materials from the CMA within 20 working days following the completion of the construction works, to the satisfaction of the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council.

MONITORING

43) M.2 The NZTA shall engage a suitably qualified ecologist to undertake a marine habitat monitoring programme, as described in Conditions M.3 to M.6.

44) M.3 The marine benthic habitat monitoring programme shall be undertaken every 6 months:
(a) At least 12 months prior to construction commencing, to allow for two baseline surveys to be undertaken;
(b) During construction; and
(c) For a maximum of 3 years following completion of the Project, or for a lesser time if the monitoring indicates no significant effects, as agreed with the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council.

45) M.4 The marine benthic habitat monitoring programme shall be undertaken in accordance with the details set out in the ECOMP and include:
(a) Sampling of the marine invertebrate community composition (collection of sediment cores to a depth of approximately 15cm);
(b) Sampling of the sediment surface (top 2cm) for sediment grain size; and
(c) Sampling of the sediment surface (top 2cm) for sediment quality (analysis of the
46) M.5 The marine benthic habitat monitoring shall be undertaken within sampling grids (50m x 30m) broadly established at the following locations:
(a) Two locations within Oakley Inlet;
(b) Four locations within Waterview Estuary; and
(c) Four locations north of the Causeway.
Specific locations and experimental design shall be detailed in the ECOMP, and the design of the monitoring programme will be based on the *Estuarine Environmental Assessment and Monitoring: A National Protocol* (Cawthron 2002).

47) M.6 The NZTA shall undertake additional marine habitat monitoring in the event of a ‘trigger event’ for marine ecology habitats. For the purposes of this consent, a ‘trigger event’ for marine ecology habitats is defined in the ECOMP.

48) M.7 The NZTA shall review the marine habitat monitoring results (pursuant to Conditions M.3 to M.6) and in the event that potential adverse effects are identified, the NZTA shall develop and implement appropriate contingency plans and/or remedial measures.

REPORTING

49) M.8 The marine benthic habitat monitoring results shall be compiled by the NZTA, and a report provided to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council every 6 months.
EPA 10/2.037 – (ARC: 36576)

This document has been prepared in compliance with conditions of the "Final Report and Decision of the Board of Inquiry into the New Zealand Transport Agency Waterview Connection Proposal, Volume 2, Conditions of Consent". Schedule B of Volume 2 identifies the Conditions relevant to this Consent by the code and number as referenced throughout this document. In the event of dispute, Schedule B of Volume 2 shall take precedence over this Consent.

Type: Coastal Consent

Description: Reclamation in the CMA (Sectors 1 (0.11ha) and 2 (approx. 0.4ha)):

This consent relates to the temporary reclamation for access and construction purposes and permanent reclamation associated with motorway widening in CPA 1.

Duration: 10 years

Code: RC = Standard Resource Consent Conditions

CEMP = Construction Environmental Management Plan Conditions

PI = Public Information Conditions

V = Vegetation Conditions

E = Earthworks Conditions

C = Coastal Conditions

M = Marine Ecology Conditions

GENERAL CONDITIONS

1) RC.1 Except as modified by the conditions below, the works shall be undertaken in general accordance with the information provided by the New Zealand Transport Agency (NZTA), in the resource consent applications and the supporting documents (as detailed in Condition DC.1), and in the supplementary information provided in evidence by the NZTA.

2) RC.1A The NZTA shall implement the conditions of these consents in accordance with Schedule B, which sets out the Conditions that are to be applied to each consent including the duration of each consent.

3) RC.2 The Conditions of these consents may be reviewed by the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council, pursuant to Section 128 of the Resource Management Act 1991 (the Act), by the giving of notice pursuant to Section 129 of the Act, on the one year anniversary of the commencement of the consents and every year thereafter in order:

(a) To deal with any adverse effect on the environment which may arise from the exercise of the consent and which it is appropriate to deal with at a later stage; or

(b) To deal with any other adverse effect on the environment on which the exercise of the consent may have an influence.

4) RC.4 Any Management Plans submitted to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council for approval or certification may be submitted in stages to reflect any proposed
staging of the physical works. Plans submitted shall clearly show the integration with adjacent stages and interrelated activities.

5) RC.5 In the event of any dispute, disagreement or inaction arising as to any Auckland Council Manager certification/approvals required by the consent conditions, or as to the implementation of or monitoring required by the conditions, matters shall be referred in the first instance to the NZTA Regional State Highway Manager and to the Resource Consents Manager, Auckland Council to determine a process of resolution.

If a resolution cannot be agreed, then the matter may be referred to an independent appropriately qualified expert, agreeable to both parties, setting out the details of the matter to be referred for determination and the reasons the parties do not agree.

The independent appropriately qualified expert shall be appointed within 10 working days of the NZTA or Auckland Council giving notice of their intention to seek expert determination.

The expert shall, as soon as possible, issue his or her decision on the matter. In making the decision, the expert shall be entitled to seek further information and hear from the parties as he or she sees fit.

Advice note: The dispute resolution process provided for in this condition does not prejudice any party’s right to take enforcement action in relation to the implementation of the designation conditions. However, the dispute resolution process will be applied before any formal enforcement action is taken by the Council except in urgent situations.

6) RC.6 Pursuant to Section 36(1)(d) of the RMA, the requiring authority is required to pay to Auckland Council any administrative charge for the carrying out by the local authority of its functions in relation to the administration, monitoring, and supervision of designation conditions.

7) RC.7 The servants of agents of Auckland Council shall be permitted to have access to relevant parts of the Project at all reasonable times for the purpose of carrying out inspections, investigations, tests, measurements and/or to take samples.

8) V.18 The NZTA shall implement the approved Traherne Island Weed and Pest Management Plan. Every 5 years, a suitably qualified and experienced ecologist engaged by NZTA shall review the plan in consultation with the Department of Conservation. The plan shall then be submitted to the Auckland Council for approval.

9) E.4 A detailed schedule of construction activities shall be prepared and forwarded to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council prior to the commencement of works, and updated at 3 monthly intervals during the works. These schedule shall include details of:

(a) The location, commencement date and expected duration of any major earthworks operations, including but not limited to, the portal excavations and the Great North Road cut and cover operation; and

(b) The proposed construction and methodology, including staging of earthworks.
PRE-CONSTRUCTION CONDITIONS

10) RC.3 Within 3 months of the resource consents commencing for the Project (or at least 1 month prior to any Auckland Council approvals or certifications required by these Conditions, whichever is the earlier), the NZTA shall update and finalise to the satisfaction of the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council all drawings and Plans cited in Schedule A, together with a full set of the information and documentation referred to in Condition DC.1 and provide these to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council. At the same time the NZTA shall prepare to the satisfaction of Auckland Council, a document for each resource consent which sets out the resource consent and have attached to it in text format a comprehensive set of the conditions imposed by the Board of Inquiry in its Final Decision as summarised in Schedule B, inclusive of any standard conditions and advice notes.

In particular (but not limited to), the following Plans will need to be amended in light of the Final Conditions:

(a) F.2 Operational Scheme Plans (refer Schedule A, Row 3) require amendment detailing the amended location of the ventilation stacks and southern ventilation buildings;

(b) F.5 Construction Scheme Plans (refer Schedule A, Row 4) require amendment to detail changes to construction footprint for the amended location of ventilation stacks and southern ventilation buildings and reconfiguration of Construction Yard 1);

(c) F.6 Construction Yard Plans 101 and 107 (refer Schedule A, Row 7), detailing amendments to the Construction Yard 1 in light of the reconfiguration of this Yard and for Construction Yard 7 in light of the relocation of the northern ventilation stack (refer Schedule A, Row 34);

(d) F.8 Plans of Structures and Architectural Features (refer Schedule A, Row 9), detailing the amended location of the Northern Ventilation Stack and the design and location of the Southern Ventilation Building and Stack;

(e) The CNVMP (including flow diagram and the supplementary evidence produced by Ms Wilkening) (refer Schedule A, Rows 36, 37 and 39);

(f) Update to the areas of the Open Space Restoration Plans (Schedule A, Row 30) to:

   (i) Extend these areas in geographic extent to provide for the works identified in the Management Plan notations identified in the OS Conditions (in particular OS.5 and OS.6). (e.g. these areas will (as relevant) include Eric Armishaw Park, Howlett Reserve and Waterview Esplanade Reserve); and

   (ii) Exclude the operational area of designation required for the northern ventilation stack (as identified through the OPW process (refer Condition DC.8); and

(g) Schedule A, Row 28 the Plan detailing proposed open space impacts and replacements needs to be updated to recolour the two land parcels on Hendon Avenue (which are excluded from the replacement calculations) to ‘brown’ to confirm they are part of the operational impact and will not be returned as open space.

11) CEMP.1 Except where provided for in Condition CEMP.1A below, the NZTA shall update and finalise the draft Construction Environmental Management Plan (CEMP) including all the Management Plans which form part of the CEMP and are included as appendices, submitted with this application to ensure compliance with the consent and designation conditions imposed by the Board of Inquiry. The CEMP shall be provided to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council for review at least 20 working days prior to the commencement of works to certify compliance and consistency with the conditions.
Construction shall not commence until certification is obtained.

Advice note: For clarity the CEMP will be updated and finalised in accordance with the conditions. Any amendments will be limited to reflecting the requirements of the conditions, specifying personnel, and completing the Environmental Risk Register.

Advice Note: Particular care must be taken with development and operation of Construction Yard 7. When the CEMP is being updated and finalised, consideration must be given to the contents of the draft SSCEMP prepared for Construction Yard 7 (Row 41, Schedule A) recognising changes required by inclusion of the ventilation stack in this yard.

12) CEMP.1A In the case of the trial embankment, where works will commence well in advance of the main construction works for the Causeway, the NZTA will provide to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council, a site-specific CEMP for review and approval at least 20 working days prior to commencement of the trial embankment works.

13) CEMP.1B For the purposes of staging works, as some works may commence well in advance of others, the NZTA may provide staged or site specific CEMPs for those works to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council. The NZTA shall consult with the Team Manager about the need and timing for any other site-specific or staged CEMPs and shall provide any required site-specific or staged CEMPs to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council for review at least 20 working days prior to commencement of such the specific stage (including enabling) or site works.

14) CEMP.2 The certification process of the CEMP (and its appendices) shall confirm that the CEMP gives effect to the relevant conditions, as well as those matters in CEMP.6, and that it includes details of:

(a) Staff and contractors’ responsibilities;
(b) Training requirements for employees, sub-contractors and visitors;
(c) Environmental incident and emergency management;
(d) Communication and interface procedures (in accordance with the Communication Plan required under Condition PI.2);
(e) Environmental complaints management (including the procedures required under Condition PI.4);
(f) Compliance monitoring;
(g) Reporting (including detail on the frequency of reporting to the Auckland Council);
(h) Environmental auditing; and
(i) Corrective action.

15) CEMP.3 The management of key environmental effects associated with the construction phase of the Project is detailed within environmental management plans that are included in the CEMP as appendices. This suite of management plans as shown on Figure CEMP.A comprises:

(a) Construction Noise and Vibration Management Plan (CNVMP);
(b) Construction Air Quality Management Plan (CAQMP);
(c) Erosion and Sediment Control Plan (ESCP);
(d) Temporary Stormwater Management Plan (TSMP);
(e) Ecological Management Plan (ECOMP);
(f) Groundwater Management Plan (GWMP);
(g) Settlement Effects Management Plan (SEMP);
(h) Contaminated Soils Management Plan (CSMP);
(i) Hazardous Substances Management Plan (HSMP);
(j) Archaeological Site Management Plan (ASMP);
(k) Construction Traffic Management Plan (CTMP);
(l) Concrete Batching and Crushing Plant Management Plan (CBCPMP);
(m) Electrical Infrastructure Site Development and Construction Management Plan (EISDCMP) (to be prepared in accordance with Condition CEMP.15);
(n) Waste Management Plan (to be prepared in accordance with Condition CEMP.10);
and
(o) Temporary Construction Lighting Management Plan (to be prepared in accordance with Condition L.2).

16) CEMP.6 The finalised CEMP shall include specific details on demolition, construction and management of all works associated with the Project. The certification process of the CEMP shall confirm that the CEMP includes details of the following:
(a) details of the site or Project manager and the community liaison person, including their contact details (phone, facsimile, postal address, email address);
(b) The location of large notice boards that clearly identify the NZTA and the Project name, together with the name, telephone, email address and address for service of the site or Project manager and the community liaison person;
(c) An outline construction programme of the work indicating in particular likely time periods for road closures and anticipated traffic diversion effects;
(d) The hours of work, which should reflect the need to ensure that residents enjoy reasonable freedom from noisy or intrusive construction activity in their neighbourhood at night, on Sundays and during public holidays;
(e) Measures to be adopted to maintain the land affected by the works in a tidy condition in terms of disposal/ storage of rubbish, storage and unloading of building materials and similar construction activities;
(f) Location of worker’s offices and conveniences (e.g. portaloos);
(g) Procedures of controlling sediment run-off, dust and the removal of soil, debris and demolition and construction materials from public roads or places. Dust mitigation measures should include use of water sprays to control dust nuisance on dry or windy days;
(h) Methods to stabilise ingress and egress points to construction sites, to the standard required by ARC Technical Publication 90 (Nov 2007);

17) CEMP.10 The NZTA shall finalise and implement the Hazardous Substances Management Plan (HSMP), through the CEMP (as per Condition CEMP.1), submitted with this application, prior to works commencing on site. The certification process of the CEMP shall confirm that the HSMP clearly identifies the requirements for proper storage, handling, transport and disposal of hazardous substances during the construction phase of the Project and confirm that there shall be no storage of explosives on the Project site.

18) CEMP.11 The NZTA shall develop and implement a Waste Management Plan in accordance with the waste management principles, controls and methods set out in the CEMP. The Plan shall be provided to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council and be implemented throughout the entire construction period.

19) CEMP.15 The NZTA will be responsible for all service relocations required for construction of the Project. The NZTA shall liaise with the providers of infrastructure service networks (including, but not limited to water, gas, stormwater, wastewater, power and telecommunications), and private property owners with on-site services to develop...
methodologies and timing for necessary services relocation required for the Project, with the objective of minimising disruption to the operation of these service networks and on-site services.

Advice note:

(a) It is noted that if separate consents are required for relocations for any services of network utility operators or landowners, such consents will be obtained before construction commences in the relevant area, and any effects of those relocations would be considered at that time. The same applies to any alteration of consents if required.

(b) Network infrastructure owned and operated by Watercare Services is located within the designations. An operating agreement will be developed by the NZTA and Watercare Services which will include appropriate notification and access protocols where works are to be undertaken by either network operator on or adjacent to Watercare Services infrastructure within the designations.

20) PI.1 A community liaison person shall be appointed by the NZTA for the duration of the construction phase of the Project to be the main and readily accessible point of contact for persons affected by the Project. The liaison person’s name and contact details shall be made available in the CEMP and on site signage by the NZTA. This person must be reasonably available for on-going consultation on all matters of concern to affected parties arising from the Project.

21) PI.2 The NZTA shall prepare and implement a Communications Plan that sets out procedures detailing how the public, Ministry of Social Development, Housing New Zealand Corporation and other organisations representing the particular demographic characteristics of the community (including but not limited to Primary Health Organisations, general practitioners, youth, education organisations, aged care groups and groups representing ethnic and migrant communities) will be communicated with throughout the construction and monitoring periods (as prescribed in the designation and consent conditions). In preparing the Communications Plan, the NZTA will liaise with Auckland Council to access its community liaison databases. The Communications Plan will include details of:

(a) The site or Project manager and the community liaison person, including their contact details (phone, facsimile, postal address, email address);

(b) In accordance with these Conditions, the database of the key construction activities and monitoring requirements that are the subject of the Communications Plan;

(c) The database of stakeholders and residents who will be communicated with;

(d) Communication methods, an assessment of how these methods reach the different audience/stakeholder groups (including those methods set out in Condition CEMP.6), and detail on when each of these methods will be used (e.g. regular communication or event specific methods);

(e) The appointed specialist in Environmental and Occupational Medicine, including contact details (as per Condition SO.13);

(f) Any stakeholder specific communication plans required; and

(g) Monitoring and review procedures for the Communications Plan.

The Communications Plan shall be written in accordance with the external communication procedures set out in the CEMP and provided at least 20 working days prior to construction commencing, to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council, Working Liaison Group and the Community Liaison Group(s) established by Condition PI.5. The structure of the communication groups set out in these conditions is attached as Figure PI.A.
22) The NZTA shall establish Community Liaison Group(s) at least two months prior to construction commencing in each of the following key construction areas:

(a) Te Atatu (including the SH16 Causeway)

(b) Waterview (including works to St Lukes on SH16 and on the Waterview Estuary and Causeway Bridges)

(c) Owairaka

and hold regular meetings (at least three monthly) throughout the construction period and up to 24 months following construction completion relevant to these areas (or less if the members of the Group agree), so that on-going monitoring information can continue to be disseminated.

The Community Liaison Group(s) shall be open to all interested parties within the Project area including, but not limited to the following groups:

(a) Auckland Council and Auckland Transport;

(b) Educational facilities within the Project area (including schools, kindergartens, childcare facilities and Unitec Institute of Technology);

(c) Relevant community/ environmental groups (including but not limited to Friends of Oakley Creek, Star Mills Preservation Group, Cycle Action Auckland and representatives from those organisations identified in the Communications Plan (as required by Condition PI.2) and local residents;

(d) Department of Conservation;

(e) Local Boards;

(f) Iwi groups with Mana Whenua;

(g) Public transport providers; and

(h) Housing New Zealand Corporation.

Advice note: The purpose of the Community Liaison Group(s) is to provide a regular forum through which information about the Project can be provided to the community, and an opportunity for concerns or issues to be raised.

23) Prior to commencement of works adjacent to or on Traherne Island, the NZTA shall employ a suitably qualified and experienced ecologist for the preparation of a Traherne Island Weed and Pest Management Plan. The Plan shall be prepared in consultation with the Department of Conservation and be submitted to the Auckland Council for approval at least 20 working days prior to construction commencing.

24) The NZTA shall inform the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council in writing at least 10 working days before the start date of the works authorised by this Consent.

25) Prior to commencement of works, in each period between October 1 and April 30 that this Consent is exercised, a pre-construction site meeting between Auckland Council and relevant parties, including the primary contractor, shall be conducted. The approved Contractors Erosion and Sediment Control Plan (CESCP) as per Condition E.5 of this Consent shall be made available and discussed at the pre-construction meeting.

26) Prior to the commencement of works for each specific area and/or activity, a "Contractors Erosion and Sediment Control Plan" (CESCP) shall be prepared. This document shall follow the principles and practices within Technical Report G.22 Erosion and Sediment Control Plan and shall detail any specific variations from that report. The CESCPs shall include, but not be limited to:

(a) Contour information at suitable intervals;

(b) Erosion and sediment controls including specific pond design;
(c) Supporting calculations;
(d) Catchment boundaries for the sediment controls;
(e) Location of the works, and cut and fill operations;
(f) Details of construction methods to be employed, including timing and duration;
(g) A programme for managing exposed area, including progressive stabilisation considerations;
(h) The identification of appropriately qualified and experienced staff to manage the environmental issues onsite;
(i) The identification of staff who have clearly defined roles and responsibilities to monitor compliance with the Consent Conditions and CESCP;
(j) Provision of details of a chain of responsibility for managing environmental issues and details of responsible personnel; and
(k) The establishment of a sediment control team (including representatives from the contractor, Auckland Council and the NZTA) to meet and review erosion and sediment control on a weekly basis.

27) E.6 For each specific area of works, a CESCP shall be submitted a minimum of 20 working days prior to earthworks commencing, for the written approval of the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council, which shall be obtained prior to earthworks commencing. The approved CESCP shall be implemented accordingly.

28) E.7 Any amendments to the CESCPs must be approved by the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council in writing at least 10 working days prior to any amendment being implemented.

29) E.12 All perimeter controls shall be operational before earthworks begin.

30) E.16 Prior to the commissioning of chemical treatments for sediment management purposes (as per Condition E.17), the NZTA shall provide the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council with a Chemical Treatment Plan (CTP), for confirmation by the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council that it will achieve the standards set out in the CESCP required under Condition E.6. The CTP shall follow the principles and chemical treatment details outlined within the Technical Report G.22 Erosion and Sediment Control Plan and shall include as a minimum:

(a) Specific design details of the chemical treatment system;
(b) Monitoring, maintenance (including post-storm) and contingency programme (including a Record Sheet);
(c) Details of optimum dosage (including assumptions);
(d) Results of the initial flocculation trial which will build on the information within Technical Report G.22 Erosion and Sediment Control Plan;
(e) A spill contingency plan;
(f) Details of the person or bodies that will hold responsibility for long-term maintenance of the flocculation treatment system and the organisational structure which will support this structure.

Any amendments to the CTP shall be approved by the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council, in writing, at least 10 working days prior to implementation.

31) C.1 The NZTA shall provide to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council plans and drawings (including dimensioned, cross sections, elevations and site plans of all areas of proposed reclamation (including associated permanent and temporary CMA occupation), permanent structures and temporary structures) at least 20 working days before the
proposed date of commencement of the construction of the reclamation, bridge piers or temporary structure.

32) M.1 The NZTA shall finalise and implement through the CEMP, the ECOMP submitted with this application. The ECOMP shall be revised to accurately reflect the conditions of this consent and changes to the details of construction processes prior to construction commencing. The ECOMP shall include, but not be limited to, details of:
(a) Monitoring of marine habitats and ecological values;
(b) Trigger event criteria for undertaking additional monitoring;
(c) Procedures for responding to accidental discharges to the marine environment;
(d) Complaints investigation, monitoring and reporting; and
(e) The identification of staff and contractors’ responsibilities.

CONSTRUCTION CONDITIONS

33) CEMP.4 The CEMP shall be implemented and maintained throughout the entire construction period.

34) CEMP.5 A copy of the CEMP shall be held on each construction site at all times and be available for inspection on request by the Auckland Council.

35) CEMP.8 All storage of material and equipment associated with the construction works shall take place within the boundaries of the designation.

36) CEMP.12 The CEMP shall be reviewed by the NZTA at least annually or as a result of a material change to the Project. The review shall take into consideration:
(a) Compliance with designation and consent conditions;
(b) Any changes to construction methods;
(c) Key changes to roles and responsibilities within the Project;
(d) Changes in industry best practice standards;
(e) Changes in legal or other requirements;
(f) Results of inspections, monitoring, incidents, corrective actions, internal or external assessments; and
(g) Public complaints.
A summary of the review process undertaken shall be kept by the NZTA, provided annually to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council and made available (with any related data) to the Auckland Council upon request.

37) CEMP.13 Following the review process (as described in Condition CEMP.12), the CEMP may require updating. Any material change proposed to the CEMP (including appended Management Plans) shall be submitted for approval to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council at least 10 working days prior to the proposed changes taking effect.‘

Advice Note: Material change will include amendment to any base information informing the CEMP or any process, procedure or method of the CEMP (such as the environmental constraints map, compliance monitoring process, complaints procedure or mitigation / remedial methods identified) which has the potential to increase adverse effects on a particular value. For clarity changes to personnel and contact schedules do not constitute a material change.

38) PI.3 At least 15 working days prior to the commencement of construction, and at 15 working day intervals thereafter, or as required depending on the scale of works and effects on the community, advertisements will be placed in the relevant local newspapers and community noticeboards (as identified in Condition CEMP.6(b)) detailing the nature of the forthcoming
works, the location of the forthcoming works and hours of operation. All advertisements will include reference to a 24 hour toll free complaints telephone number. Where relevant, advertisements will also include but not be limited to details of:

(a) Any traffic disruptions or controls or changes to property access, pedestrian/cycle routes and bus stops; and

(b) Any other construction activities, including night time works, blasting, and structure-borne noise, as identified in the conditions.

39) PI.4 The NZTA shall manage, investigate and resolve (as appropriate) all complaints for the duration of the construction works in accordance with the environmental complaints section of the CEMP. The implementation strategy for complaints includes:

(a) A 24 hour toll free telephone number and email address, which shall be provided to all potentially affected residents and businesses. The number shall be available and answered at all times during the entire duration of the works for the receipt and management of any complaints. A sign containing the contact details shall be located at each site specific work activity;

(b) The NZTA shall maintain a record of all complaints made to this number, email or any site office, including the full details of the complainant and the nature of the complaint;

(c) Upon receiving a complaint, within 10 days of complaint receipt, a formal written response will be provided to the complainant and Auckland Council;

(d) The NZTA shall undertake corrective action where necessary to resolve any problem identified. All action taken and relevant information shall be documented. For the avoidance of doubt, ‘where necessary’ refers to where the works are not being carried out in accordance with conditions of this designation;

(e) Where issues and complaints about effects cannot be resolved through the CEMP complaints management process, a meeting shall be held between the NZTA, the complainant and the Auckland Council representative(s) to discuss the complaint and ways in which the issue may be resolved. If parties cannot agree on a resolution, an independent qualified mediator will be appointed, agreeable to all parties and at the shared cost of all parties, to undertake mediation of the dispute or concerns; and

(f) All information collected in Conditions PI.4 (b), (c) and (d) shall be detailed in a Construction Compliance Report (including the means by which the complaint was addressed, whether resolution was reached and how the response was carried out) prepared by the NZTA. This Report shall be submitted to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council on a quarterly basis commencing at the beginning of the works and for the entire duration of construction.

40) PI.6 The Community Liaison Group(s) shall be provided opportunities to review and comment on the following (amongst other things):

(a) The Outline Plan of Works detailing designs for the northern and southern ventilation buildings and stacks (the outcomes of this consultation will be reported in accordance with the processes required in DC.8(n) and DC.9(k);

(b) The Open Space Restoration Plans (as required by Condition OS.3);

(c) Finalisation and amendment to Urban Design and Landscape Plans (UDL Plans) (as required by Condition LV.1);

(d) The Oakley Inlet Heritage Plan (as required by Conditions OS.5(b)(i) and ARCH.6);

(e) The detail of the Oakley Creek restoration (as required by Condition STW.20);

(f) Publicly available results of environmental monitoring as required by the designation and/or these Consents (e.g. air quality monitoring); and
(g) The finalisation of the STEM assessment required by CEMP.6(o) and a schedule of trees that are required to be removed for consideration of timber use in heritage projects as required by Condition SO.7.

Advice Note: Attention is drawn to the Vegetation conditions concerning identification and protection of Significant Vegetation and Valued Vegetation.

(h) Detailed design features of the Te Atatu underpass (e.g. lighting and architectural treatment).

41) E.3 Erosion and sediment control shall be in general accordance with the plans and information submitted with the application, and in particular, Technical Report G.22 Erosion and Sediment Control Plan, subject to such amendments as may be required by the following conditions of this Consent.

42) E.8 Erosion and sediment control measures shall be constructed and maintained in accordance with the ARC Technical Report 90 (TP90) (and any amendments to that document), except where a higher standard is detailed in the documents referred to in Conditions E.3 and E.5 above, in which case the higher standard shall apply.

43) E.11 All ‘cleanwater’ runoff from stabilised surfaces, including catchment areas above the site, shall be diverted away from earthwork areas via a stabilised system, so as to prevent surface erosion.

44) E.14 The NZTA shall ensure that procedures are adopted to prevent the deposition of slurry, clay or other materials on the roads by vehicles leaving the site. Should the exercise of this Consent result in material being deposited on the road, that material shall be removed immediately to the satisfaction of the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council.

45) E.17 All sediment retention ponds and decanting earth bunds are to be chemically treated in accordance with the CTP required under Condition E.16 of this consent.

46) E.19 A copy of the “as-built(s)” and approved CESCPs shall be kept on site, and all erosion and sediment control measures (including staging boundaries and particularly the extent of exposed areas) shall be updated as soon as practicable as changes are made. As-built plans shall be accompanied by text detailing the relevant earthworks methodology, constraints and likely progressions, and shall be revised as required to enable clear interpretation as to the day to day operation and management of erosion and sediment controls.

47) E.21 The site shall be stabilised against erosion as soon as practicable, and in a progressive manner, as earthworks are finished over various areas of the site. Areas of bulk earthworks not actively worked for a period of two weeks shall be stabilised.

48) E.22 The NZTA shall ensure that the following earthworks shall be stabilised as soon as practicable after completion thereof, or within 5 working days of completion, whichever shall occur first:

(a) Temporary erosion and sediment controls; and
(b) Construction yards.

49) E.23 No surface earthworks on the site shall be undertaken between 1 May and 30 September in any year, without the written approval of the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council. Earthworks in this regard refers to bulk earthworks (cut/fill/waste) associated with the site.

50) C.2 Construction shall be undertaken in accordance with the construction methodology detailed in the application, specifically Technical Report G.23 Coastal Works and Technical Report
G.22 Erosion and Sediment Control Plan. The construction methodology shall include:

(a) The use of temporary coffer dams to create dry working areas;
(b) Realignment of sections of existing low-tide channels in Oakley inlet and Waterview Estuary that will be directly affected by the reclamation works;
(c) Removal of mangroves to provide construction and ground-treatment access, placement of temporary coffer dams and to facilitate natural channel migration in the Whau River side drainage channel (east of Rosebank Domain);
(d) Installation or removal works to be undertaken at the best practicable time to minimise potential sediment disturbance.

51) C.3 The NZTA shall notify the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council in writing of the proposed commencement date of the reclamation, structures and/or channel realignment works at least 10 working days prior to the proposed start date.

52) C.6 The NZTA shall maintain the site in good order and shall remedy all damage and disturbance caused by vehicle traffic, plant and equipment to the foreshore during construction, to the satisfaction of the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council.

53) C.7 Removal or pruning of vegetation in the CMA shall be limited to the areas of permanent and temporary occupation as shown on the Waterview Connection Project Assessment of Environmental Effects Plan Set F.12 and F.13 submitted with the application (ref Schedule A, rows 13 and 14). Removal of mangroves shall be implemented in accordance with the principles detailed in the Ecological Management Plan.

54) C.9 All imported fill material to be used in the reclamations shall be in accordance with the Ministry for the Environment “cleanfill” definition, as detailed in Publication ME418 “A Guide to the Management of Cleanfills, 2002” or subsequent updates.

55) C.10 The NZTA shall maintain a log recording the source of fill material imported onto each reclamation site. This log shall be made available to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council for inspection on request.

56) C.11 (a) Provision for navigation of vessels beneath the Whau River Bridges during construction shall be maintained to the satisfaction of the Auckland Harbour Master;
(b) Following construction, provision for the navigation of vessels beneath the Whau River Bridges be provided by the navigation channels and headspace clearance identified on the Plan Whau River Motorway and Pedestrian Bridges Elevation Plan 221 in F.8 (refer Schedule A, Row 9);
(c) For purposes of safe navigation, the NZTA shall identify an appropriate pier to mark on the Whau River Bridges, in consultation with the Te Atatu Boating Club and to the satisfaction of the Auckland Harbour Master. This pier shall be surveyed and marked with height graduations advising available minimum headspace under the Bridges for different stages of the tide with an appropriate safety margin.

57) M.10 The NZTA shall maintain the coastal marine area free of any gross litter, rubbish and debris during construction.

58) M.11 Prior to excavation of sediment from the marine habitat remediation zone (MHRZ), mangrove vegetation will be removed from the sediment and disposed of at an appropriate offsite facility. The excavated sediment shall be stockpiled within an adjacent dry working area. When the sediment is returned to the MHRZ it will be levelled out to tie in with the existing mudflat. Where a routine marine benthic habitat monitoring site is within an area of MHRZ, additional monitoring of the depth of sediment overlying the improved ground/
mudcrete will also be undertaken.

59) M.12 The NZTA shall minimise the extent of the Causeway footprint to the greatest extent possible.

POST-CONSTRUCTION CONDITIONS

60) E.15 Notice shall be given to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council prior to any erosion and sediment control measures being removed and/or on completion of the works.

61) E.24 Revegetation/stabilisation shall be completed by 30 April in the year of bulk earthworks in accordance with measures detailed in the approved CESCP, unless a later date is approved in writing by the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council at least two weeks before 30 April.

62) C.4 The NZTA shall notify the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council in writing within 10 working days of the completion of each discrete area of reclamation, structures and/or channel realignment works.

63) C.5 The NZTA shall supply to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council and LINZ Hydrographic Services and LINZ Topographic Services Land Information New Zealand, PO Box 5501, Wellington 6145), a complete set of “as built” plans, final topographic and bathymetric data, and appropriate certification confirming that the new reclamations, structures and channel realignment works have been built in accordance with sound engineering practice, within three months of the completion of the reclamation works.

64) C.8 The NZTA shall ensure the removal of all equipment, erosion and sediment control measures, surplus sediment and construction materials from the CMA within 20 working days following the completion of the construction works, to the satisfaction of the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council.

65) M.9 The NZTA shall undertake planting within the rock revetment of the reclamation along the alignment of SH16 where practicable, in places where such plantings will be sheltered from erosion and in such a way that they will not undermine the structural integrity of the revetment. Any such planting will be in general accordance with the Urban Design and Landscape Plans (Plan Set F.16) submitted with this application (Refer Schedule A, Row 17).

MONITORING

66) E.20 The NZTA shall carry out monitoring in accordance with the Technical Report G.22 Erosion and Sediment Control Plan and the approved CESCP and shall maintain records detailing:
   (a) The monitoring undertaken;
   (b) The erosion and sediment controls that required maintenance;
   (c) The time when the maintenance was completed; and
   (d) Areas of non-compliance with the erosion and sediment control monitoring plan (if any) and the reasons for the non-compliance.
   This information shall be made available to the Auckland Council upon request.

67) C.13 During preparation works in the CMA for ground improvement and reclamation works adjacent to the Rosebank Domain access road, mangroves required to be removed on the southern side of the existing drainage channel are to be extracted together with their root systems and removed from the CMA to facilitate the lateral migration of the channel to the
The evolution of the channel shall be monitored by a baseline cross-section survey of the channel at two sites prior to construction, then monitoring the same sections every 2 months until 6 months after completion of the reclamation, together with photographs along the affected section, to confirm the natural migration of the channel is proceeding unimpeded by mangrove roots. The monitoring information shall be provided to the Auckland Council within 20 working days of completion of each phase of monitoring.

68) C.16

On the northern side of the Causeway, from just before the commencement of construction in the CMA for each section of works, until 6 months after completion of each section, the NZTA shall undertake every two (2) months or after a severe wave-storm, intertidal beach profile surveys down to the spring low-tide mark along offshore-directed transects (one off the centre of the construction section and one either side at 20 m away from the ends of the construction site) and photographs documenting the physical state of the seabed around the perimeter of the cofferdam. The monitoring information shall be made available to the Auckland Council. If the monitoring identifies that excessive erosion or accretion has occurred from corner or end effects of the construction section, as confirmed by a coastal processes expert, further seabed erosion control measures or a sediment by-passing method (for accretion) to reduce localised effects seaward of the temporary occupation or permanent occupation designation (whichever applies) shall be implemented as soon as practicable. Details of the proposed measures or methods shall be made available to Auckland Council prior to implementation.

69) M.2

The NZTA shall engage a suitably qualified ecologist to undertake a marine habitat monitoring programme, as described in Conditions M.3 to M.6.

70) M.3

The marine benthic habitat monitoring programme shall be undertaken every 6 months:

(a) At least 12 months prior to construction commencing, to allow for two baseline surveys to be undertaken;
(b) During construction; and
(c) For a maximum of 3 years following completion of the Project, or for a lesser time if the monitoring indicates no significant effects, as agreed with the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council.

71) M.4

The marine benthic habitat monitoring programme shall be undertaken in accordance with the details set out in the ECOMP and include:

(a) Sampling of the marine invertebrate community composition (collection of sediment cores to a depth of approximately 15cm);
(b) Sampling of the sediment surface (top 2cm) for sediment grain size; and
(c) Sampling of the sediment surface (top 2cm) for sediment quality (analysis of the concentration of copper, lead, zinc and polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons).

72) M.5

The marine benthic habitat monitoring shall be undertaken within sampling grids (50m x 30m) broadly established at the following locations:

(a) Two locations within Oakley Inlet;
(b) Four locations within Waterview Estuary; and
(c) Four locations north of the Causeway.

Specific locations and experimental design shall be detailed in the ECOMP, and the design of the monitoring programme will be based on the Estuarine Environmental Assessment and Monitoring: A National Protocol (Cawthron 2002).

73) M.6

The NZTA shall undertake additional marine habitat monitoring in the event of a 'trigger event' for marine ecology habitats. For the purposes of this consent, a 'trigger event' for
marine ecology habitats is defined in the ECOMP.

74) M.7 The NZTA shall review the marine habitat monitoring results (pursuant to Conditions M.3 to M.6) and in the event that potential adverse effects are identified, the NZTA shall develop and implement appropriate contingency plans and/or remedial measures.

REPORTING

75) M.8 The marine benthic habitat monitoring results shall be compiled by the NZTA, and a report provided to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council every 6 months.
EPA 10/2.038 – (ARC: 38342)

This document has been prepared in compliance with conditions of the "Final Report and Decision of the Board of Inquiry into the New Zealand Transport Agency Waterview Connection Proposal, Volume 2, Conditions of Consent". Schedule B of Volume 2 identifies the Conditions relevant to this Consent by the code and number as referenced throughout this document. In the event of dispute, Schedule B of Volume 2 shall take precedence over this Consent.

Type: Coastal Consent

Description: Reclamation in the CMA (Sector 4 (approx. 4.5ha)):

This consent relates to the reclamation for access and construction purposes and permanent reclamation associated with motorway widening in CPA 1, north and south of causeway and includes associated vegetation removal and diversion of estuarine channels (including sediment works associated with diversion) required for the mitigation of effects on the reclamation. The Plan states that any non-complying consent under 13.5.3 is a restricted coastal activity in specific conditions.

Lapse Period: 10 years

Code:

RC = Standard Resource Consent Conditions
CEMP = Construction Environmental Management Plan Conditions
PI = Public Information Conditions
CNV = Noise and Vibration Conditions - Construction
V = Vegetation Conditions
A = Avian Conditions
E = Earthworks Conditions
C = Coastal Conditions
M = Marine Ecology Conditions

GENERAL CONDITIONS

1) RC.1 Except as modified by the conditions below, the works shall be undertaken in general accordance with the information provided by the New Zealand Transport Agency (NZTA), in the resource consent applications and the supporting documents (as detailed in Condition DC.1), and in the supplementary information provided in evidence by the NZTA.

2) RC.1A The NZTA shall implement the conditions of these consents in accordance with Schedule B, which sets out the Conditions that are to be applied to each consent including the duration of each consent.

3) RC.2 The Conditions of these consents may be reviewed by the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council, pursuant to Section 128 of the Resource Management Act 1991 (the Act), by the giving of notice pursuant to Section 129 of the Act, on the one year anniversary of the commencement of the consents and every year thereafter in order:
(a) To deal with any adverse effect on the environment which may arise from the exercise of the consent and which it is appropriate to deal with at a later stage; or
(b) To deal with any other adverse effect on the environment on which the exercise of the consent may have an influence.

4) RC.4 Any Management Plans submitted to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council for approval or certification may be submitted in stages to reflect any proposed staging of the physical works. Plans submitted shall clearly show the integration with adjacent stages and interrelated activities.

5) RC.5 In the event of any dispute, disagreement or inaction arising as to any Auckland Council Manager certification/approvals required by the consent conditions, or as to the implementation of or monitoring required by the conditions, matters shall be referred in the first instance to the NZTA Regional State Highway Manager and to the Resource Consents Manager, Auckland Council to determine a process of resolution.

If a resolution cannot be agreed, then the matter may be referred to an independent appropriately qualified expert, agreeable to both parties, setting out the details of the matter to be referred for determination and the reasons the parties do not agree.

The independent appropriately qualified expert shall be appointed within 10 working days of the NZTA or Auckland Council giving notice of their intention to seek expert determination. The expert shall, as soon as possible, issue his or her decision on the matter. In making the decision, the expert shall be entitled to seek further information and hear from the parties as he or she sees fit.

Advice note: The dispute resolution process provided for in this condition does not prejudice any party’s right to take enforcement action in relation to the implementation of the designation conditions. However, the dispute resolution process will be applied before any formal enforcement action is taken by the Council except in urgent situations.

6) RC.6 Pursuant to Section 36(1)(d) of the RMA, the requiring authority is required to pay to Auckland Council any administrative charge for the carrying out by the local authority of its functions in relation to the administration, monitoring, and supervision of designation conditions.

7) RC.7 The servants of agents of Auckland Council shall be permitted to have access to relevant parts of the Project at all reasonable times for the purpose of carrying out inspections, investigations, tests, measurements and/or to take samples.

8) V.18 The NZTA shall implement the approved Traherne Island Weed and Pest Management Plan. Every 5 years, a suitably qualified and experienced ecologist engaged by NZTA shall review the plan in consultation with the Department of Conservation. The plan shall then be submitted to the Auckland Council for approval.

9) A.6 Animal pest control shall be undertaken by the NZTA on Traherne Island (northern and southern sides) and on the Coastal Marine Area (CMA) frontage of SH16 from Traherne Island North to Whau Creek, and on the southern side of SH16 from Traherne Island South to Whau River (in accordance with Condition V.17).
10) E.4 A detailed schedule of construction activities shall be prepared and forwarded to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council prior to the commencement of works, and updated at 3 monthly intervals during the works. These schedule shall include details of:

(a) The location, commencement date and expected duration of any major earthworks operations, including but not limited to, the portal excavations and the Great North Road cut and cover operation; and

(b) The proposed construction and methodology, including staging of earthworks.

PRE-CONSTRUCTION CONDITIONS

11) RC.3 Within 3 months of the resource consents commencing for the Project (or at least 1 month prior to any Auckland Council approvals or certifications required by these Conditions, whichever is the earlier), the NZTA shall update and finalise to the satisfaction of the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council all drawings and Plans cited in Schedule A, together with a full set of the information and documentation referred to in Condition DC.1 and provide these to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council. At the same time the NZTA shall prepare to the satisfaction of Auckland Council, a document for each resource consent which sets out the resource consent and have attached to it in text format a comprehensive set of the conditions imposed by the Board of Inquiry in its Final Decision as summarised in Schedule B, inclusive of any standard conditions and advice notes.

In particular (but not limited to), the following Plans will need to be amended in light of the Final Conditions:

(a) F.2 Operational Scheme Plans (refer Schedule A, Row 3) require amendment detailing the amended location of the ventilation stacks and southern ventilation buildings;

(b) F.5 Construction Scheme Plans (refer Schedule A, Row 4) require amendment to detail changes to construction footprint for the amended location of ventilation stacks and southern ventilation buildings and reconfiguration of Construction Yard 1;

(c) F.6 Construction Yard Plans 101 and 107 (refer Schedule A, Row 7), detailing amendments to the Construction Yard 1 in light of the reconfiguration of this Yard and for Construction Yard 7 in light of the relocation of the northern ventilation stack (refer Schedule A, Row 34);

(d) F.8 Plans of Structures and Architectural Features (refer Schedule A, Row 9), detailing the amended location of the Northern Ventilation Stack and the design and location of the Southern Ventilation Building and Stack;

(e) The CNVMP (including flow diagram and the supplementary evidence produced by Ms Wilkening) (refer Schedule A, Rows 36, 37 and 39);

(f) Update to the areas of the Open Space Restoration Plans (Schedule A, Row 30) to:
   (i) Extend these areas in geographic extent to provide for the works identified in the Management Plan notations identified in the OS Conditions (in particular OS.5 and OS.6). (e.g. these areas will (as relevant) include Eric Armishaw Park, Howlett Reserve and Waterview Esplanade Reserve); and
   (ii) Exclude the operational area of designation required for the northern ventilation stack (as identified through the OPW process (refer Condition DC.8); and

(g) Schedule A, Row 28 the Plan detailing proposed open space impacts and replacements needs to be updated to recolour the two land parcels on Hendon Avenue (which are excluded from the replacement calculations) to ‘brown’ to confirm they are part of the operational impact and will not be returned as open space.
12) CEMP.1  Except where provided for in Condition CEMP.1A below, the NZTA shall update and finalise the draft Construction Environmental Management Plan (CEMP) including all the Management Plans which form part of the CEMP and are included as appendices, submitted with this application to ensure compliance with the consent and designation conditions imposed by the Board of Inquiry. The CEMP shall be provided to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council for review at least 20 working days prior to the commencement of works to certify compliance and consistency with the conditions. Construction shall not commence until certification is obtained.

Advice note: For clarity the CEMP will be updated and finalised in accordance with the conditions. Any amendments will be limited to reflecting the requirements of the conditions, specifying personnel, and completing the Environmental Risk Register.

Advice Note: Particular care must be taken with development and operation of Construction Yard 7. When the CEMP is being updated and finalised, consideration must be given to the contents of the draft SSCEMP prepared for Construction Yard 7 (Row 41, Schedule A) recognising changes required by inclusion of the ventilation stack in this yard.

13) CEMP.1A  In the case of the trial embankment, where works will commence well in advance of the main construction works for the Causeway, the NZTA will provide to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council, a site-specific CEMP for review and approval at least 20 working days prior to commencement of the trial embankment works.

14) CEMP.1B  For the purposes of staging works, as some works may commence well in advance of others, the NZTA may provide staged or site specific CEMPs for those works to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council. The NZTA shall consult with the Team Manager about the need and timing for any other site-specific or staged CEMPs and shall provide any required site-specific or staged CEMPs to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council for review at least 20 working days prior to commencement of the specific stage (including enabling) or site works.

15) CEMP.2  The certification process of the CEMP (and its appendices) shall confirm that the CEMP gives effect to the relevant conditions, as well as those matters in CEMP.6, and that it includes details of:

(a) Staff and contractors’ responsibilities;
(b) Training requirements for employees, sub-contractors and visitors;
(c) Environmental incident and emergency management;
(d) Communication and interface procedures (in accordance with the Communication Plan required under Condition PI.2);
(e) Environmental complaints management (including the procedures required under Condition PI.4);
(f) Compliance monitoring;
(g) Reporting (including detail on the frequency of reporting to the Auckland Council);
(h) Environmental auditing; and
(i) Corrective action.

16) CEMP.3  The management of key environmental effects associated with the construction phase of the Project is detailed within environmental management plans that are included in the CEMP as appendices. This suite of management plans as shown on Figure CEMP.A comprises:

(a) Construction Noise and Vibration Management Plan (CNVMP);
(b) Construction Air Quality Management Plan (CAQMP);
17) CEMP.6 The finalised CEMP shall include specific details on demolition, construction and management of all works associated with the Project. The certification process of the CEMP shall confirm that the CEMP includes details of the following:

(a) Details of the site or Project manager and the community liaison person, including their contact details (phone, facsimile, postal address, email address);

(b) The location of large notice boards that clearly identify the NZTA and the Project name, together with the name, telephone, email address and address for service of the site or Project manager and the community liaison person;

(c) An outline construction programme of the work indicating in particular likely time periods for road closures and anticipated traffic diversion effects;

(d) The hours of work, which should reflect the need to ensure that residents enjoy reasonable freedom from noisy or intrusive construction activity in their neighbourhood at night, on Sundays and during public holidays;

(e) Measures to be adopted to maintain the land affected by the works in a tidy condition in terms of disposal/ storage of rubbish, storage and unloading of building materials and similar construction activities;

(f) Location of worker’s offices and conveniences (e.g. portaloos);

(g) Procedures of controlling sediment run-off, dust and the removal of soil, debris and demolition and construction materials from public roads or places. Dust mitigation measures should include use of water sprays to control dust nuisance on dry or windy days;

(h) Methods to stabilise ingress and egress points to construction sites, to the standard required by ARC Technical Publication 90 (Nov 2007);

18) CEMP.10 The NZTA shall finalise and implement the Hazardous Substances Management Plan (HSMP), through the CEMP (as per Condition CEMP.1), submitted with this application, prior to works commencing on site. The certification process of the CEMP shall confirm that the HSMP clearly identifies the requirements for proper storage, handling, transport and disposal of hazardous substances during the construction phase of the Project and confirm that there shall be no storage of explosives on the Project site.

19) CEMP.11 The NZTA shall develop and implement a Waste Management Plan in accordance with the
waste management principles, controls and methods set out in the CEMP. The Plan shall be provided to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council and be implemented throughout the entire construction period.

20) CEMP.15 The NZTA will be responsible for all service relocations required for construction of the Project. The NZTA shall liaise with the providers of infrastructure service networks (including, but not limited to water, gas, stormwater, wastewater, power and telecommunications), and private property owners with on-site services to develop methodologies and timing for necessary services relocation required for the Project, with the objective of minimising disruption to the operation of these service networks and on-site services.

Advice note:

(a) It is noted that if separate consents are required for relocations for any services of network utility operators or landowners, such consents will be obtained before construction commences in the relevant area, and any effects of those relocations would be considered at that time. The same applies to any alteration of consents if required.

(b) Network infrastructure owned and operated by Watercare Services is located within the designations. An operating agreement will be developed by the NZTA and Watercare Services which will include appropriate notification and access protocols where works are to be undertaken by either network operator on or adjacent to Watercare Services infrastructure within the designations.

21) PI.1 A community liaison person shall be appointed by the NZTA for the duration of the construction phase of the Project to be the main and readily accessible point of contact for persons affected by the Project. The liaison person’s name and contact details shall be made available in the CEMP and on site signage by the NZTA. This person must be reasonably available for on-going consultation on all matters of concern to affected parties arising from the Project.

22) PI.2 The NZTA shall prepare and implement a Communications Plan that sets out procedures detailing how the public, Ministry of Social Development, Housing New Zealand Corporation and other organisations representing the particular demographic characteristics of the community (including but not limited to Primary Health Organisations, general practitioners, youth, education organisations, aged care groups and groups representing ethnic and migrant communities) will be communicated with throughout the construction and monitoring periods (as prescribed in the designation and consent conditions).

In preparing the Communications Plan, the NZTA will liaise with Auckland Council to access its community liaison databases. The Communications Plan will includes details of:

(a) The site or Project manager and the community liaison person, including their contact details (phone, facsimile, postal address, email address);

(b) In accordance with these Conditions, the database of the key construction activities and monitoring requirements that are the subject of the Communications Plan;

(c) The database of stakeholders and residents who will be communicated with;

(d) Communication methods, an assessment of how these methods reach the different audience/stakeholder groups (including those methods set out in Condition CEMP.6), and detail on when each of these methods will be used (e.g. regular communication or event specific methods);

(e) The appointed specialist in Environmental and Occupational Medicine, including contact details (as per Condition SO.13);

(f) Any stakeholder specific communication plans required; and
Monitoring and review procedures for the Communications Plan.
The Communications Plan shall be written in accordance with the external communication procedures set out in the CEMP and provided at least 20 working days prior to construction commencing, to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council, Working Liaison Group and the Community Liaison Group(s) established by Condition PI.5. The structure of the communication groups set out in these conditions is attached as Figure PI.A.

23) PI.5 The NZTA shall establish Community Liaison Group(s) at least two months prior to construction commencing in each of the following key construction areas:
   (a) Te Atatu (including the SH16 Causeway)
   (b) Waterview (including works to St Lukes on SH16 and on the Waterview Estuary and Causeway Bridges)
   (c) Owairaka
and hold regular meetings (at least three monthly) throughout the construction period and up to 24 months following construction completion relevant to these areas (or less if the members of the Group agree), so that on-going monitoring information can continue to be disseminated.

The Community Liaison Group(s) shall be open to all interested parties within the Project area including, but not limited to the following groups:
   (a) Auckland Council and Auckland Transport;
   (b) Educational facilities within the Project area (including schools, kindergartens, childcare facilities and Unitec Institute of Technology);
   (c) Relevant community/ environmental groups (including but not limited to Friends of Oakley Creek, Star Mills Preservation Group, Cycle Action Auckland and representatives from those organisations identified in the Communications Plan (as required by Condition PI.2) and local residents;
   (d) Department of Conservation;
   (e) Local Boards;
   (f) Iwi groups with Mana Whenua;
   (g) Public transport providers; and
   (h) Housing New Zealand Corporation.

Advice note: The purpose of the Community Liaison Group(s) is to provide a regular forum through which information about the Project can be provided to the community, and an opportunity for concerns or issues to be raised.

24) CNV.1 The NZTA shall finalise and implement through the CEMP, a Construction Noise and Vibration Management Plan (CNVMP) throughout the entire construction period of the Project.

The CNVMP shall describe the measures adopted to meet:
   (a) the noise criteria set out in Conditions CNV.2 and 3 below;
   (b) the vibration criteria set out in Condition CNV.4 below; or
   (c) where (a) or (b) cannot be met, the process that will be followed to appropriately mitigate noise and vibration effects including methods that may be applied outside the designation.

The CNVMP shall be provided to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council at least 20 working days prior to construction activities being undertaken for review and certification that the CNVMP, as a minimum, addresses the following:
   (i) Construction noise and vibration criteria (Conditions CNV.2, CNV.3, and CNV.4);
(ii) Hours of operation, including times and days when noisy and/or vibration inducing construction activities would occur;

(iii) Machinery and equipment to be used;

(iv) Vibration testing of equipment to confirm safe distances to buildings prior to construction;

(v) Preparation of building condition surveys of critical dwellings prior to, during and after completion of construction works;

(vi) Roles and responsibilities of personnel on site;

(vii) Construction operator training procedures;

(viii) Methods for monitoring and reporting on construction noise and vibration;

(ix) A hierarchy of mitigation options that will be assessed for the Project noise mitigation, including alternative strategies where full compliance with the relevant noise and/or vibration criteria cannot be achieved;

(x) Management schedules containing site specific information;

(xi) Measures for liaising with and notifying potentially affected receivers of proposed construction activities and the potential for noise and vibration effects, specifically:

- PPFs located within a horizontal distance of 35 metres of underground excavation works, along the tunnel alignment shall receive prior notification not greater than 7 days (and not less than 24 hours) prior to the commencement of works.
- Methods for ensuring residents affected by night works (within 100m of the construction site night works, as defined on the maps (refer Schedule A, Row 35) are notified of such works (i.e. any works during the hours of 20:00 to 06:30) at least 5 days prior to the commencement of any such work.
- The maps showing PPFs to be notified of night works (refer Schedule A, Row 35, shall be reviewed and included within the CNVMP.

(xii) Methods for receiving and handling complaints about construction noise and vibration;

(xiii) Measures for preventing the occurrence of rogue fly rock, including management of charge weights and face loading procedures, stemming of charge holes and profiling of the face to maintain minimum burden (face cover);

(xiv) Investigations on the practicability of implementing permanent noise mitigation works for construction mitigation (as per Condition CNV.7);

(xv) Investigations of the practicability of implementing Building Modification mitigation, as required in accordance with Conditions ON.6 and ON.11, prior to commencement of construction within 100m of the relevant PPFs (including those on the Unitec site); and

(xvi) The process for developing Site Specific Noise Management Plans (SSNMP), in accordance with the SSNMP Flow Chart (refer Schedule A, Row 36), including templates and a certification process for the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council (in accordance with Condition CNV.13) to confirm the process of SSNMP review of noise mitigation options where, the modelled/predicted levels or subsequent actual levels exceed the criteria in Conditions CNV.2 and/or CNV.4.

25) V.2 The NZTA shall employ a suitably experienced botanist ('nominated botanist') for the duration of the works to monitor, supervise and direct all works affecting or otherwise in
close proximity to the Significant Vegetation and Valued Vegetation identified in the ECOMP.

26) V.11 Prior to commencement of works adjacent to Traherne Island, the NZTA shall employ a suitably qualified and experienced plant translocation expert to uplift and protect all areas of *Mimulus repens* on Traherne Island that will be affected by the work. The *Mimulus repens* shall be relocated to suitable and safe habitat away from the works area, or otherwise held and protected for the duration of the works in the vicinity of their original location and be replanted back at that location (or in close proximity to it) upon completion of the works. The location of the recipient sites will be determined in consultation with the Department of Conservation and in general accordance with the Traherne Island Natural Heritage Restoration Plan (2009 – 2014). Trials shall be undertaken to identify appropriate recipient sites, with these trial sites being monitored for a period of no less than 5 years, or until their failure. Where possible, recipient sites shall be located in currently weed-free areas. Where recipient sites may potentially be affected by weeds, they shall be subject to an on-going weed management plan. Should translocation attempts fail at all trial sites then the NZTA, in consultation with DOC, shall determine an alternative appropriate form of mitigation.

27) V.17 Prior to commencement of works adjacent to or on Traherne Island, the NZTA shall employ a suitably qualified and experienced ecologist for the preparation of a Traherne Island Weed and Pest Management Plan. The Plan shall be prepared in consultation with the Department of Conservation and be submitted to the Auckland Council for approval at least 20 working days prior to construction commencing.

28) A.1 The NZTA shall finalise, and implement through the CEMP, ECOMP submitted with this application to include the matters set out in Conditions A.2 to A.6.

29) E.1 The NZTA shall inform the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council in writing at least 10 working days before the start date of the works authorised by this Consent.

30) E.2 Prior to commencement of works, in each period between October 1 and April 30 that this Consent is exercised, a pre-construction site meeting between Auckland Council and relevant parties, including the primary contractor, shall be conducted. The approved Contractors Erosion and Sediment Control Plan (CESCP) as per Condition E.5 of this Consent shall be made available and discussed at the pre-construction meeting.

31) E.5 Prior to the commencement of works for each specific area and/or activity, a “Contractors Erosion and Sediment Control Plan” (CESCP) shall be prepared. This document shall follow the principles and practices within Technical Report G.22 Erosion and Sediment Control Plan and shall detail any specific variations from that report. The CESCPs shall include, but not be limited to:
   (a) Contour information at suitable intervals;
   (b) Erosion and sediment controls including specific pond design;
   (c) Supporting calculations;
   (d) Catchment boundaries for the sediment controls;
   (e) Location of the works, and cut and fill operations;
   (f) Details of construction methods to be employed, including timing and duration;
   (g) A programme for managing exposed area, including progressive stabilisation considerations;
   (h) The identification of appropriately qualified and experienced staff to manage the environmental issues onsite;
   (i) The identification of staff who have clearly defined roles and responsibilities to monitor compliance with the Consent Conditions and CESCP;
(j) Provision of details of a chain of responsibility for managing environmental issues and details of responsible personnel; and

(k) The establishment of a sediment control team (including representatives from the contractor, Auckland Council and the NZTA) to meet and review erosion and sediment control on a weekly basis.

32) E.6 For each specific area of works, a CESCP shall be submitted a minimum of 20 working days prior to earthworks commencing, for the written approval of the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council, which shall be obtained prior to earthworks commencing. The approved CESCP shall be implemented accordingly.

33) E.7 Any amendments to the CESCPs must be approved by the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council in writing at least 10 working days prior to any amendment being implemented.

34) E.12 All perimeter controls shall be operational before earthworks begin.

35) E.16 Prior to the commissioning of chemical treatments for sediment management purposes (as per Condition E.17), the NZTA shall provide the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council with a Chemical Treatment Plan (CTP), for confirmation by the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council that it will achieve the standards set out in the CESCP required under Condition E.6. The CTP shall follow the principles and chemical treatment details outlined within the Technical Report G.22 Erosion and Sediment Control Plan and shall include as a minimum:

(a) Specific design details of the chemical treatment system;

(b) Monitoring, maintenance (including post-storm) and contingency programme (including a Record Sheet);

(c) Details of optimum dosage (including assumptions);

(d) Results of the initial flocculation trial which will build on the information within Technical Report G.22 Erosion and Sediment Control Plan;

(e) A spill contingency plan;

(f) Details of the person or bodies that will hold responsibility for long-term maintenance of the flocculation treatment system and the organisational structure which will support this structure.

Any amendments to the CTP shall be approved by the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council, in writing, at least 10 working days prior to implementation.

36) C.1 The NZTA shall provide to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council plans and drawings (including dimensioned, cross sections, elevations and site plans of all areas of proposed reclamation (including associated permanent and temporary CMA occupation), permanent structures and temporary structures) at least 20 working days before the proposed date of commencement of the construction of the reclamation, bridge piers or temporary structure.
The NZTA shall finalise and implement through the CEMP, the ECOMP submitted with this application. The ECOMP shall be revised to accurately reflect the conditions of this consent and changes to the details of construction processes prior to construction commencing. The ECOMP shall include, but not be limited to, details of:

(a) Monitoring of marine habitats and ecological values;
(b) Trigger event criteria for undertaking additional monitoring;
(c) Procedures for responding to accidental discharges to the marine environment;
(d) Complaints investigation, monitoring and reporting; and
(e) The identification of staff and contractors’ responsibilities.

CONSTRUCTION CONDITIONS

38) CEMP.4 The CEMP shall be implemented and maintained throughout the entire construction period.

39) CEMP.5 A copy of the CEMP shall be held on each construction site at all times and be available for inspection on request by the Auckland Council.

40) CEMP.8 All storage of material and equipment associated with the construction works shall take place within the boundaries of the designation.

41) CEMP.12 The CEMP shall be reviewed by the NZTA at least annually or as a result of a material change to the Project. The review shall take into consideration:

(a) Compliance with designation and consent conditions;
(b) Any changes to construction methods;
(c) Key changes to roles and responsibilities within the Project;
(d) Changes in industry best practice standards;
(e) Changes in legal or other requirements;
(f) Results of inspections, monitoring, incidents, corrective actions, internal or external assessments; and
(g) Public complaints.

A summary of the review process undertaken shall be kept by the NZTA, provided annually to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council and made available (with any related data) to the Auckland Council upon request.

42) CEMP.13 Following the review process (as described in Condition CEMP.12), the CEMP may require updating. Any material change proposed to the CEMP (including appended Management Plans) shall be submitted for approval to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council at least 10 working days prior to the proposed changes taking effect.’

Advice Note: Material change will include amendment to any base information informing the CEMP or any process, procedure or method of the CEMP (such as the environmental constraints map, compliance monitoring process, complaints procedure or mitigation / remedial methods identified) which has the potential to increase adverse effects on a particular value. For clarity changes to personnel and contact schedules do not constitute a material change.

43) PI.3 At least 15 working days prior to the commencement of construction, and at 15 working day intervals thereafter, or as required depending on the scale of works and effects on the community, advertisements will be placed in the relevant local newspapers and community noticeboards (as identified in Condition CEMP.6(b)) detailing the nature of the forthcoming works, the location of the forthcoming works and hours of operation. All advertisements will include reference to a 24 hour toll free complaints telephone number. Where relevant,
advertisements will also include but not be limited to details of:

(a) Any traffic disruptions or controls or changes to property access, pedestrian/cycle routes and bus stops; and

(b) Any other construction activities, including night time works, blasting, and structure-borne noise, as identified in the conditions.

44) PI.4 The NZTA shall manage, investigate and resolve (as appropriate) all complaints for the duration of the construction works in accordance with the environmental complaints section of the CEMP. The implementation strategy for complaints includes:

(a) A 24 hour toll free telephone number and email address, which shall be provided to all potentially affected residents and businesses. The number shall be available and answered at all times during the entire duration of the works for the receipt and management of any complaints. A sign containing the contact details shall be located at each site specific work activity;

(b) The NZTA shall maintain a record of all complaints made to this number, email or any site office, including the full details of the complainant and the nature of the complaint;

(c) Upon receiving a complaint, within 10 days of complaint receipt, a formal written response will be provided to the complainant and Auckland Council;

(d) The NZTA shall undertake corrective action where necessary to resolve any problem identified. All action taken and relevant information shall be documented. For the avoidance of doubt, ‘where necessary’ refers to where the works are not being carried out in accordance with conditions of this designation;

(e) Where issues and complaints about effects cannot be resolved through the CEMP complaints management process, a meeting shall be held between the NZTA, the complainant and the Auckland Council representative(s) to discuss the complaint and ways in which the issue may be resolved. If parties cannot agree on a resolution, an independent qualified mediator will be appointed, agreeable to all parties and at the shared cost of all parties, to undertake mediation of the dispute or concerns; and

(f) All information collected in Conditions PI.4 (b), (c) and (d) shall be detailed in a Construction Compliance Report (including the means by which the complaint was addressed, whether resolution was reached and how the response was carried out) prepared by the NZTA. This Report shall be submitted to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council on a quarterly basis commencing at the beginning of the works and for the entire duration of construction.

45) PI.6 The Community Liaison Group(s) shall be provided opportunities to review and comment on the following (amongst other things):

(a) The Outline Plan of Works detailing designs for the northern and southern ventilation buildings and stacks (the outcomes of this consultation will be reported in accordance with the processes required in DC.8(n) and DC.9(k);

(b) The Open Space Restoration Plans (as required by Condition OS.3);

(c) Finalisation and amendment to Urban Design and Landscape Plans (UDL Plans) (as required by Condition LV.1);

(d) The Oakley Inlet Heritage Plan (as required by Conditions OS.5(b)(i) and ARCH.6);

(e) The detail of the Oakley Creek restoration (as required by Condition STW.20);

(f) Publicly available results of environmental monitoring as required by the designation and/or these Consents (e.g. air quality monitoring); and

(g) The finalisation of the STEM assessment required by CEMP.6(o) and a schedule of trees that are required to be removed for consideration of timber use in heritage
Advice Note: Attention is drawn to the Vegetation conditions concerning identification and protection of Significant Vegetation and Valued Vegetation.

(h) Detailed design features of the Te Atatu underpass (e.g. lighting and architectural treatment).

46) CNV.2 Exception where certified by the Council through the SSNMP (in accordance with Condition CNV.13), construction noise (excluding noise from blasting Monday to Saturday inclusive) shall be measured and assessed in accordance with NZS 6803:1999 “Acoustics - Construction Noise” and shall comply with the following criteria:

Note: In Condition CNV.2 (T) means a duration between 15 minutes and 60 minutes, in accordance with NZS6803:1999.

(a) Project Construction Noise Criteria: Residential Receivers

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Time of week</th>
<th>Time period</th>
<th>Project Construction Noise Criteria (Long Term Construction) dB</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Sectors 1 to 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>$L_{Aeq(T)}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Monday - Saturday</td>
<td>0630-0730</td>
<td>60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>0730-1800</td>
<td>70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1800-2000</td>
<td>65</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2000-0630</td>
<td>60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sundays and Public Holidays</td>
<td>0630-0730</td>
<td>45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>0730-1800</td>
<td>60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1800-2000</td>
<td>45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2000-0630</td>
<td>45</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(b) Project Construction Noise Criteria: Commercial and Industrial Receivers

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Time period</th>
<th>Project Construction Noise Criteria (Long Term Construction) dB</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>$L_{Aeq(T)}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0730-1800</td>
<td>70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1800-0730</td>
<td>75</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(c) Project Construction Noise Criteria: Internal Structure-borne Noise from tunnelling for Residential Receivers

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Time period</th>
<th>Project Construction Noise Criteria Inside</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0600-2200</td>
<td>35 dB $L_{Aeq(T)}$ All habitable rooms</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2200-0600</td>
<td>30 dB $L_{Aeq(T)}$ Bedrooms</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
(d) Project Construction Noise Criteria: Internal noise for Licensed Educational Facilities

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Time period (School Days)</th>
<th>Project Construction Noise Criteria Inside</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Teaching Hours</td>
<td>45 dB $L_{Aeq(T)}$ or existing, whichever is the higher Classrooms, library, offices, teaching, laboratories, manual arts, workshops</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Teaching Hours</td>
<td>40 dB $L_{Aeq(T)}$ or existing, whichever is the higher School hall, lecture theatres</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note: In Condition CNV2(d) “Teaching hours” means:

Primary schools and Kindergartens: 9am to 3pm

Unitec: 8am to 9pm

47) CNV.7 Where practicable, permanent (traffic) noise barriers, required in any Sector as Detailed Mitigation Options for operational noise following completion of the Project (in accordance with Conditions ON.3 to ON.5) shall be erected prior to noise generating construction works commencing. Where this is not practicable, temporary noise mitigation measures shall be implemented in accordance with the CNVMP, prior to noise generating construction works commencing.

48) CNV.8 Pile driving or pile removal shall not be undertaken at night (i.e. during the hours of 20:00 – 06:30).

49) CNV.9 The concrete batch plants, rock crushing plants and the loading bays and conveyors for such plants shall be fully enclosed.

50) CNV.13 SSNMPs (required by Condition CNV.1(xvi)) above, shall be submitted to Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council for review and certification at least 7 working days prior to the proposed works commencing. A decision will be provided by the Council within 5 working days of receipt of the SSNMP.

Works will not commence until certification is received from the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council. The Council may, at its discretion, waive the requirement for SSNMPs to be submitted to the Council where an SSNMP is required.

If monitoring shows that levels specified in a SSNMP are being exceeded, work generating the exceedance will stop and not recommence until further mitigation is implemented in accordance with an amended SSNMP certified by Council.

Advice note: It is accepted that the criteria of CNV.2 and CNV.4 may not be met at all times, but that the NZTA will take all practical steps to achieve compliance, taking into account the hierarchy of mitigation options outlined in Condition CNV.1 (ix).

51) A.2 The NZTA shall provide temporary high tide roosting structure(s) adjacent to the Causeway during construction, in accordance with the ECOMP, to the satisfaction of the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council. The temporary bird roosts shall be sized in accordance with the ECOMP, and located within the Waterview Estuary adjacent to the southern side of the causeway and in the vicinity of the existing Causeway bridge.

52) A.5 Vegetation clearance at Traherne Island shall occur outside the bird breeding season of September to December. Elsewhere, vegetation clearance shall occur outside the bird breeding season of September to December where practicable.

53) E.3 Erosion and sediment control shall be in general accordance with the plans and information submitted with the application, and in particular, Technical Report G.22 Erosion and Sediment Control Plan, subject to such amendments as may be required by the following
conditions of this Consent.

54) E.8 Erosion and sediment control measures shall be constructed and maintained in accordance with the ARC Technical Report 90 (TP90) (and any amendments to that document), except where a higher standard is detailed in the documents referred to in Conditions E.3 and E.5 above, in which case the higher standard shall apply.

55) E.11 All ‘cleanwater’ runoff from stabilised surfaces, including catchment areas above the site, shall be diverted away from earthwork areas via a stabilised system, so as to prevent surface erosion.

56) E.14 The NZTA shall ensure that procedures are adopted to prevent the deposition of slurry, clay or other materials on the roads by vehicles leaving the site. Should the exercise of this Consent result in material being deposited on the road, that material shall be removed immediately to the satisfaction of the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council.

57) E.17 All sediment retention ponds and decanting earth bunds are to be chemically treated in accordance with the CTP required under Condition E.16 of this consent.

58) E.19 A copy of the “as-built(s)” and approved CESCPs shall be kept on site, and all erosion and sediment control measures (including staging boundaries and particularly the extent of exposed areas) shall be updated as soon as practicable as changes are made. As-built plans shall be accompanied by text detailing the relevant earthworks methodology, constraints and likely progressions, and shall be revised as required to enable clear interpretation as to the day to day operation and management of erosion and sediment controls.

59) E.21 The site shall be stabilised against erosion as soon as practicable, and in a progressive manner, as earthworks are finished over various areas of the site. Areas of bulk earthworks not actively worked for a period of two weeks shall be stabilised.

60) E.22 The NZTA shall ensure that the following earthworks shall be stabilised as soon as practicable after completion thereof, or within 5 working days of completion, whichever shall occur first:
(a) Temporary erosion and sediment controls; and
(b) Construction yards.

61) E.23 No surface earthworks on the site shall be undertaken between 1 May and 30 September in any year, without the written approval of the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council. Earthworks in this regard refers to bulk earthworks (cut/fill/waste) associated with the site.

62) C.2 Construction shall be undertaken in accordance with the construction methodology detailed in the application, specifically Technical Report G.23 Coastal Works and Technical Report G.22 Erosion and Sediment Control Plan. The construction methodology shall include:
(a) The use of temporary coffer dams to create dry working areas;
(b) Realignment of sections of existing low-tide channels in Oakley inlet and Waterview Estuary that will be directly affected by the reclamation works;
(c) Removal of mangroves to provide construction and ground-treatment access, placement of temporary coffer dams and to facilitate natural channel migration in the Whau River side drainage channel (east of Rosebank Domain);
(d) Installation or removal works to be undertaken at the best practicable time to minimise potential sediment disturbance.

63) C.3 The NZTA shall notify the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council in writing
of the proposed commencement date of the reclamation, structures and/or channel realignment works at least 10 working days prior to the proposed start date.

64) C.6 The NZTA shall maintain the site in good order and shall remedy all damage and disturbance caused by vehicle traffic, plant and equipment to the foreshore during construction, to the satisfaction of the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council.

65) C.7 Removal or pruning of vegetation in the CMA shall be limited to the areas of permanent and temporary occupation as shown on the Waterview Connection Project Assessment of Environmental Effects Plan Set F.12 and F.13 submitted with the application (ref Schedule A, rows 13 and 14). Removal of mangroves shall be implemented in accordance with the principles detailed in the Ecological Management Plan.

66) C.9 All imported fill material to be used in the reclamation shall be in accordance with the Ministry for the Environment “cleanfill” definition, as detailed in Publication ME418 “A Guide to the Management of Cleanfills, 2002” or subsequent updates.

67) C.10 The NZTA shall maintain a log recording the source of fill material imported onto each reclamation site. This log shall be made available to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council for inspection on request.

68) M.10 The NZTA shall maintain the coastal marine area free of any gross litter, rubbish and debris during construction.

69) M.11 Prior to excavation of sediment from the marine habitat remediation zone (MHRZ), mangrove vegetation will be removed from the sediment and disposed of at an appropriate offsite facility. The excavated sediment shall be stockpiled within an adjacent dry working area. When the sediment is returned to the MHRZ it will be levelled out to tie in with the existing mudflat. Where a routine marine benthic habitat monitoring site is within an area of MHRZ, additional monitoring of the depth of sediment overlying the improved ground/mudcrete will also be undertaken.

70) M.12 The NZTA shall minimise the extent of the Causeway footprint to the greatest extent possible.

POST-CONSTRUCTION CONDITIONS

71) E.15 Notice shall be given to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council prior to any erosion and sediment control measures being removed and/or on completion of the works.

72) E.24 Revegetation/stabilisation shall be completed by 30 April in the year of bulk earthworks in accordance with measures detailed in the approved CESCP, unless a later date is approved in writing by the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council at least two weeks before 30 April.

73) C.4 The NZTA shall notify the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council in writing within 10 working days of the completion of each discrete area of reclamation, structures and/or channel realignment works.

74) C.5 The NZTA shall supply to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council and LINZ Hydrographic Services and LINZ Topographic Services Land Information New Zealand, PO Box 5501, Wellington 6145), a complete set of “as built” plans, final topographic and bathymetric data, and appropriate certification confirming that the new reclamation, structures and channel realignment works have been built in accordance with sound engineering practice, within three months of the completion of the reclamation works.
75) C.8 The NZTA shall ensure the removal of all equipment, erosion and sediment control measures, surplus sediment and construction materials from the CMA within 20 working days following the completion of the construction works, to the satisfaction of the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council.

76) M.9 The NZTA shall undertake planting within the rock revetment of the reclamation along the alignment of SH16 where practicable, in places where such plantings will be sheltered from erosion and in such a way that they will not undermine the structural integrity of the revetment. Any such planting will be in general accordance with the Urban Design and Landscape Plans (Plan Set F.16) submitted with this application (Refer Schedule A, Row 17).

MONITORING

77) V.9 The nominated botanist shall undertake a monitoring programme throughout the construction period, including monitoring of:
   (a) The condition, repair and location of the temporary protective fencing or other forms of demarcation used to identify the Significant Vegetation;
   (b) Any works within the vicinity of the Significant Vegetation and Valued Vegetation;
   (c) The general health of the Significant Vegetation and Valued Vegetation (including any Significant or Valued Vegetation that has been relocated away from the works area); and
   (d) Compliance with the vegetation conditions of designation by way of fortnightly inspections during the construction period.

78) A.3 The NZTA shall employ a suitably qualified ecologist to undertake monitoring of the roosting areas located at:
   (a) The existing high tide roost in Harbourview-Orangihina Park; and
   (b) The temporary construction roosting structure(s) pursuant to Condition A.2.
Monitoring shall be undertaken on a monthly basis, with a monitoring report prepared on a quarterly basis. The monitoring report shall be made available to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council and Department of Conservation upon request.

79) A.4 Should the monitoring results indicate that the roosting sites have been abandoned, consultation shall be undertaken with the Department of Conservation and the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council to determine the need for and type of further management strategies (if any) required.

80) E.20 The NZTA shall carry out monitoring in accordance with the Technical Report G.22 Erosion and Sediment Control Plan and the approved CESCP and shall maintain records detailing:
   (a) The monitoring undertaken;
   (b) The erosion and sediment controls that required maintenance;
   (c) The time when the maintenance was completed; and
   (d) Areas of non-compliance with the erosion and sediment control monitoring plan (if any) and the reasons for the non-compliance.
This information shall be made available to the Auckland Council upon request.

81) C.12 On completion of the relevant stage of reclamation, the NZTA shall ensure that stockpiled chenier shell deposits from the northern side of the existing Causeway are reinstated to suitable locations along the northern side of the newly reclaimed Causeway in consultation with the Department of Conservation and the Auckland Council. The placement of the shell
bank material shall be to the satisfaction of the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council. The movement of these reinstated shell deposits shall be monitored quarterly for the first year after placement to confirm they have been reworked by waves to form a contiguous shell bank by undertaking topographic survey transects at low tide and photographs to document the transition. The monitoring information shall be provided to the Auckland Council within 20 working days of completion of each phase of monitoring.

82) C.14 Following final excavation of each of the three (3) realigned sections of low-tide channels in Waterview Estuary and Oakley Inlet (two sites), these sites shall be monitored quarterly for one year after completion of the excavation, to confirm that the channel (thalweg and the transition sections with the unmodified channel) has reached a stable configuration. The monitoring can be achieved around low tide (average tide range) by an on-water visual reconnaissance, spot depth soundings and documented with photographs. The monitoring information shall be provided to the Auckland Council within 20 working days of completion of each phase of monitoring.

83) C.15 Within a month of the closure of the Rosebank culvert under SH16 (adjacent to the Rosebank Westbound Off-ramp), the NZTA shall undertake a single tidal salinity survey on a high spring tide (High Water at or above 3.4 m at Port of Auckland) without significant prior rainfall, to confirm and document that tidal flushing of brackish waters occurs in the boardwalk area presently serviced by the culvert. Salinity, water depth and the length of time either side of high water that the area is effectively inundated shall be monitored at one site near the eastern end of the boardwalk section of the shared cycleway [WGS-84 Map ref: -36.87057° N, 174.67408° E]. The monitoring information shall be made available to the Auckland Council.

84) C.16 On the northern side of the Causeway, from just before the commencement of construction in the CMA for each section of works, until 6 months after completion of each section, the NZTA shall undertake every two (2) months or after a severe wave-storm, intertidal beach profile surveys down to the spring low-tide mark along offshore-directed transects (one off the centre of the construction section and one either side at 20 m away from the ends of the construction site) and photographs documenting the physical state of the seabed around the perimeter of the cofferdam. The monitoring information shall be made available to the Auckland Council. If the monitoring identifies that excessive erosion or accretion has occurred from corner or end effects of the construction section, as confirmed by a coastal processes expert, further seabed erosion control measures or a sediment by-passing method (for accretion) to reduce localised effects seaward of the temporary occupation or permanent occupation designation (whichever applies) shall be implemented as soon as practicable. Details of the proposed measures or methods shall be made available to Auckland Council prior to implementation.

85) M.2 The NZTA shall engage a suitably qualified ecologist to undertake a marine habitat monitoring programme, as described in Conditions M.3 to M.6.

86) M.3 The marine benthic habitat monitoring programme shall be undertaken every 6 months:
   (a) At least 12 months prior to construction commencing, to allow for two baseline surveys to be undertaken;
   (b) During construction; and
   (c) For a maximum of 3 years following completion of the Project, or for a lesser time if the monitoring indicates no significant effects, as agreed with the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council.

87) M.4 The marine benthic habitat monitoring programme shall be undertaken in accordance with the details set out in the ECOMP and include:
(a) Sampling of the marine invertebrate community composition (collection of sediment cores to a depth of approximately 15cm);
(b) Sampling of the sediment surface (top 2cm) for sediment grain size; and
(c) Sampling of the sediment surface (top 2cm) for sediment quality (analysis of the concentration of copper, lead, zinc and polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons).

88) M.5 The marine benthic habitat monitoring shall be undertaken within sampling grids (50m x 30m) broadly established at the following locations:
(a) Two locations within Oakley Inlet;
(b) Four locations within Waterview Estuary; and
(c) Four locations north of the Causeway.
Specific locations and experimental design shall be detailed in the ECOMP, and the design of the monitoring programme will be based on the *Estuarine Environmental Assessment and Monitoring: A National Protocol* (Cawthron 2002).

89) M.6 The NZTA shall undertake additional marine habitat monitoring in the event of a ‘trigger event’ for marine ecology habitats. For the purposes of this consent, a ‘trigger event’ for marine ecology habitats is defined in the ECOMP.

90) M.7 The NZTA shall review the marine habitat monitoring results (pursuant to Conditions M.3 to M.6) and in the event that potential adverse effects are identified, the NZTA shall develop and implement appropriate contingency plans and/or remedial measures.

REPORTING

91) M.8 The marine benthic habitat monitoring results shall be compiled by the NZTA, and a report provided to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council every 6 months.
Type: Coastal Consent

Description: Disturbance of Foreshore and Seabed (Sectors 1, 2, 4 and 5):

Disturbance of the foreshore and seabed during construction including vegetation removal, use of motor vehicles, disturbance of sediment, temporary structures and erosion and sediment control measures including, in a GMA, CPA2 and Mooring Management Area for construction:

Sector 1 - Stormwater wetland and associated reclamation; Outfall discharging into Henderson Creek.

Sector 2 - Temporary staging platforms within Whau River; Piles for Whau River Bridges; Piles for new pedestrian/cycle facility; Rock lined channels.

Sectors 4 and 5 (north eastern side of causeway) - Temporary staging platforms adjacent to Pt Chevalier; Piles for ramps adjacent to Pt Chevalier.

Duration: 10 years

Code: RC = Standard Resource Consent Conditions
CEMP = Construction Environmental Management Plan Conditions
PI = Public Information Conditions
CNV = Noise and Vibration Conditions - Construction
V = Vegetation Conditions
A = Avian Conditions
E = Earthworks Conditions
C = Coastal Conditions
M = Marine Ecology Conditions
GENERAL CONDITIONS

1) RC.1 Except as modified by the conditions below, the works shall be undertaken in general accordance with the information provided by the New Zealand Transport Agency (NZTA), in the resource consent applications and the supporting documents (as detailed in Condition DC.1), and in the supplementary information provided in evidence by the NZTA.

2) RC.1A The NZTA shall implement the conditions of these consents in accordance with Schedule B, which sets out the Conditions that are to be applied to each consent including the duration of each consent.

3) RC.2 The Conditions of these consents may be reviewed by the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council, pursuant to Section 128 of the Resource Management Act 1991 (the Act), by the giving of notice pursuant to Section 129 of the Act, on the one year anniversary of the commencement of the consents and every year thereafter in order:
   (a) To deal with any adverse effect on the environment which may arise from the exercise of the consent and which it is appropriate to deal with at a later stage; or
   (b) To deal with any other adverse effect on the environment on which the exercise of the consent may have an influence.

4) RC.4 Any Management Plans submitted to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council for approval or certification may be submitted in stages to reflect any proposed staging of the physical works. Plans submitted shall clearly show the integration with adjacent stages and interrelated activities.

5) RC.5 In the event of any dispute, disagreement or inaction arising as to any Auckland Council Manager certification/approvals required by the consent conditions, or as to the implementation of or monitoring required by the conditions, matters shall be referred in the first instance to the NZTA Regional State Highway Manager and to the Resource Consents Manager, Auckland Council to determine a process of resolution.

   If a resolution cannot be agreed, then the matter may be referred to an independent appropriately qualified expert, agreeable to both parties, setting out the details of the matter to be referred for determination and the reasons the parties do not agree.

   The independent appropriately qualified expert shall be appointed within 10 working days of the NZTA or Auckland Council giving notice of their intention to seek expert determination. The expert shall, as soon as possible, issue his or her decision on the matter. In making the decision, the expert shall be entitled to seek further information and hear from the parties as he or she sees fit.

   Advice note: The dispute resolution process provided for in this condition does not prejudice any party's right to take enforcement action in relation to the implementation of the designation conditions. However, the dispute resolution process will be applied before any formal enforcement action is taken by the Council except in urgent situations.

6) RC.6 Pursuant to Section 36(1)(d) of the RMA, the requiring authority is required to pay to Auckland Council any administrative charge for the carrying out by the local authority of its functions in relation to the administration, monitoring, and supervision of designation conditions.

7) RC.7 The servants of agents of Auckland Council shall be permitted to have access to relevant parts of the Project at all reasonable times for the purpose of carrying out inspections, investigations, tests, measurements and/or to take samples.
8) V.18 The NZTA shall implement the approved Traherne Island Weed and Pest Management Plan. Every 5 years, a suitably qualified and experienced ecologist engaged by NZTA shall review the plan in consultation with the Department of Conservation. The plan shall then be submitted to the Auckland Council for approval.

9) E.4 A detailed schedule of construction activities shall be prepared and forwarded to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council prior to the commencement of works, and updated at 3 monthly intervals during the works. These schedule shall include details of:
   (a) The location, commencement date and expected duration of any major earthworks operations, including but not limited to, the portal excavations and the Great North Road cut and cover operation; and
   (b) The proposed construction and methodology, including staging of earthworks.

PRE-CONSTRUCTION CONDITIONS

10) RC.3 Within 3 months of the resource consents commencing for the Project (or at least 1 month prior to any Auckland Council approvals or certifications required by these Conditions, whichever is the earlier), the NZTA shall update and finalise to the satisfaction of the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council all drawings and Plans cited in Schedule A, together with a full set of the information and documentation referred to in Condition DC.1 and provide these to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council. At the same time the NZTA shall prepare to the satisfaction of Auckland Council, a document for each resource consent which sets out the resource consent and have attached to it in text format a comprehensive set of the conditions imposed by the Board of Inquiry in its Final Decision as summarised in Schedule B, inclusive of any standard conditions and advice notes.

In particular (but not limited to), the following Plans will need to be amended in light of the Final Conditions:
   (a) F.2 Operational Scheme Plans (refer Schedule A, Row 3) require amendment detailing the amended location of the ventilation stacks and southern ventilation buildings;
   (b) F.5 Construction Scheme Plans (refer Schedule A, Row 4) require amendment to detail changes to construction footprint for the amended location of ventilation stacks and southern ventilation buildings and reconfiguration of Construction Yard 1;
   (c) F.6 Construction Yard Plans 101 and 107 (refer Schedule A, Row 7), detailing amendments to the Construction Yard 1 in light of the reconfiguration of this Yard and for Construction Yard 7 in light of the relocation of the northern ventilation stack (refer Schedule A, Row 34);
   (d) F.8 Plans of Structures and Architectural Features (refer Schedule A, Row 9), detailing the amended location of the Northern Ventilation Stack and the design and location of the Southern Ventilation Building and Stack;
   (e) The CNVMP (including flow diagram and the supplementary evidence produced by Ms Wilkening) (refer Schedule A, Rows 36, 37 and 39);
   (f) Update to the areas of the Open Space Restoration Plans (Schedule A, Row 30) to:
      (i) Extend these areas in geographic extent to provide for the works identified in the Management Plan notifications identified in the OS Conditions (in particular OS.5 and OS.6). (e.g. these areas will (as relevant) include Eric Armishaw Park, Howlett Reserve and Waterview Esplanade Reserve); and
      (ii) Exclude the operational area of designation required for the northern ventilation
Schedule A, Row 28 the Plan detailing proposed open space impacts and replacements needs to be updated to recolour the two land parcels on Hendon Avenue (which are excluded from the replacement calculations) to ‘brown’ to confirm they are part of the operational impact and will not be returned as open space.

11) **CEMP.1**  
Except where provided for in Condition CEMP.1A below, the NZTA shall update and finalise the draft Construction Environmental Management Plan (CEMP) including all the Management Plans which form part of the CEMP and are included as appendices, submitted with this application to ensure compliance with the consent and designation conditions imposed by the Board of Inquiry. The CEMP shall be provided to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council for review at least 20 working days prior to the commencement of works to certify compliance and consistency with the conditions. Construction shall not commence until certification is obtained.

Advice note: For clarity the CEMP will be updated and finalised in accordance with the conditions. Any amendments will be limited to reflecting the requirements of the conditions, specifying personnel, and completing the Environmental Risk Register.

Advice Note: Particular care must be taken with development and operation of Construction Yard 7. When the CEMP is being updated and finalised, consideration must be given to the contents of the draft SSCEMP prepared for Construction Yard 7 (Row 41, Schedule A) recognising changes required by inclusion of the ventilation stack in this yard.

12) **CEMP.1A**  
In the case of the trial embankment, where works will commence well in advance of the main construction works for the Causeway, the NZTA will provide to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council, a site-specific CEMP for review and approval at least 20 working days prior to commencement of the trial embankment works.

13) **CEMP.1B**  
For the purposes of staging works, as some works may commence well in advance of others, the NZTA may provide staged or site specific CEMPs for those works to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council. The NZTA shall consult with the Team Manager about the need and timing for any other site-specific or staged CEMPs and shall provide any required site-specific or staged CEMPs to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council for review at least 20 working days prior to commencement of such the specific stage (including enabling) or site works.

14) **CEMP.2**  
The certification process of the CEMP (and its appendices) shall confirm that the CEMP gives effect to the relevant conditions, as well as those matters in CEMP.6, and that it includes details of:

(a) Staff and contractors’ responsibilities;
(b) Training requirements for employees, sub-contractors and visitors;
(c) Environmental incident and emergency management;
(d) Communication and interface procedures (in accordance with the Communication Plan required under Condition PI.2);
(e) Environmental complaints management (including the procedures required under Condition PI.4);
(f) Compliance monitoring;
(g) Reporting (including detail on the frequency of reporting to the Auckland Council);
(h) Environmental auditing; and
(i) Corrective action.

15) **CEMP.3**  
The management of key environmental effects associated with the construction phase of the Project is detailed within environmental management plans that are included in the
CEMP as appendices. This suite of management plans as shown on Figure CEMP.A comprises:

(a) Construction Noise and Vibration Management Plan (CNVMP);
(b) Construction Air Quality Management Plan (CAQMP);
(c) Erosion and Sediment Control Plan (ESCP);
(d) Temporary Stormwater Management Plan (TSMP);
(e) Ecological Management Plan (ECOMP);
(f) Groundwater Management Plan (GWMP);
(g) Settlement Effects Management Plan (SEMP);
(h) Contaminated Soils Management Plan (CSMP);
(i) Hazardous Substances Management Plan (HSMP);
(j) Archaeological Site Management Plan (ASMP);
(k) Construction Traffic Management Plan (CTMP);
(l) Concrete Batching and Crushing Plant Management Plan (CBCPMP);
(m) Electrical Infrastructure Site Development and Construction Management Plan (EISDCMP) (to be prepared in accordance with Condition CEMP.15);
(n) Waste Management Plan (to be prepared in accordance with Condition CEMP.10) ;
and
(o) Temporary Construction Lighting Management Plan (to be prepared in accordance with Condition L.2).

16) CEMP.6 The finalised CEMP shall include specific details on demolition, construction and management of all works associated with the Project. The certification process of the CEMP shall confirm that the CEMP includes details of the following:

(a) Details of the site or Project manager and the community liaison person, including their contact details (phone, facsimile, postal address, email address);
(b) The location of large notice boards that clearly identify the NZTA and the Project name, together with the name, telephone, email address and address for service of the site or Project manager and the community liaison person;
(c) An outline construction programme of the work indicating in particular likely time periods for road closures and anticipated traffic diversion effects;
(d) The hours of work, which should reflect the need to ensure that residents enjoy reasonable freedom from noisy or intrusive construction activity in their neighbourhood at night, on Sundays and during public holidays;
(e) Measures to be adopted to maintain the land affected by the works in a tidy condition in terms of disposal/ storage of rubbish, storage and unloading of building materials and similar construction activities;
(f) Location of worker’s offices and conveniences (e.g. portaloos);
(g) Procedures of controlling sediment run-off, dust and the removal of soil, debris and demolition and construction materials from public roads or places. Dust mitigation measures should include use of water sprays to control dust nuisance on dry or windy days;
(h) Methods to stabilise ingress and egress points to construction sites, to the standard required by ARC Technical Publication 90 (Nov 2007);

17) CEMP.10 The NZTA shall finalise and implement the Hazardous Substances Management Plan (HSMP), through the CEMP (as per Condition CEMP.1), submitted with this application, prior to works commencing on site. The certification process of the CEMP shall confirm that
the HSMP clearly identifies the requirements for proper storage, handling, transport and disposal of hazardous substances during the construction phase of the Project and confirm that there shall be no storage of explosives on the Project site.

18) CEMP.11 The NZTA shall develop and implement a Waste Management Plan in accordance with the waste management principles, controls and methods set out in the CEMP. The Plan shall be provided to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council and be implemented throughout the entire construction period.

19) CEMP.15 The NZTA will be responsible for all service relocations required for construction of the Project. The NZTA shall liaise with the providers of infrastructure service networks (including, but not limited to water, gas, stormwater, wastewater, power and telecommunications), and private property owners with on-site services to develop methodologies and timing for necessary services relocation required for the Project, with the objective of minimising disruption to the operation of these service networks and on-site services.

Advice note:
(a) It is noted that if separate consents are required for relocations for any services of network utility operators or landowners, such consents will be obtained before construction commences in the relevant area, and any effects of those relocations would be considered at that time. The same applies to any alteration of consents if required.

(b) Network infrastructure owned and operated by Watercare Services is located within the designations. An operating agreement will be developed by the NZTA and Watercare Services which will include appropriate notification and access protocols where works are to be undertaken by either network operator on or adjacent to Watercare Services infrastructure within the designations.

20) PI.1 A community liaison person shall be appointed by the NZTA for the duration of the construction phase of the Project to be the main and readily accessible point of contact for persons affected by the Project. The liaison person's name and contact details shall be made available in the CEMP and on site signage by the NZTA. This person must be reasonably available for on-going consultation on all matters of concern to affected parties arising from the Project.

21) PI.2 The NZTA shall prepare and implement a Communications Plan that sets out procedures detailing how the public, Ministry of Social Development, Housing New Zealand Corporation and other organisations representing the particular demographic characteristics of the community (including but not limited to Primary Health Organisations, general practitioners, youth, education organisations, aged care groups and groups representing ethnic and migrant communities) will be communicated with throughout the construction and monitoring periods (as prescribed in the designation and consent conditions).

In preparing the Communications Plan, the NZTA will liaise with Auckland Council to access its community liaison databases. The Communications Plan will includes details of:
(a) The site or Project manager and the community liaison person, including their contact details (phone, facsimile, postal address, email address);
(b) In accordance with these Conditions, the database of the key construction activities and monitoring requirements that are the subject of the Communications Plan;
(c) The database of stakeholders and residents who will be communicated with;
(d) Communication methods, an assessment of how these methods reach the different audience/stakeholder groups (including those methods set out in Condition CEMP.6), and detail on when each of these methods will be used (e.g. regular communication or
(e) The appointed specialist in Environmental and Occupational Medicine, including contact details (as per Condition SO.13);

(f) Any stakeholder specific communication plans required; and

(g) Monitoring and review procedures for the Communications Plan.

The Communications Plan shall be written in accordance with the external communication procedures set out in the CEMP and provided at least 20 working days prior to construction commencing, to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council, Working Liaison Group and the Community Liaison Group(s) established by Condition PI.5. The structure of the communication groups set out in these conditions is attached as Figure PI.A.

22) PI.5

The NZTA shall establish Community Liaison Group(s) at least two months prior to construction commencing in each of the following key construction areas:

(a) Te Atatu (including the SH16 Causeway)

(b) Waterview (including works to St Lukes on SH16 and on the Waterview Estuary and Causeway Bridges)

(c) Owairaka

and hold regular meetings (at least three monthly) throughout the construction period and up to 24 months following construction completion relevant to these areas (or less if the members of the Group agree), so that on-going monitoring information can continue to be disseminated.

The Community Liaison Group(s) shall be open to all interested parties within the Project area including, but not limited to the following groups:

(a) Auckland Council and Auckland Transport;

(b) Educational facilities within the Project area (including schools, kindergartens, childcare facilities and Unitec Institute of Technology);

(c) Relevant community/ environmental groups (including but not limited to Friends of Oakley Creek, Star Mills Preservation Group, Cycle Action Auckland and representatives from those organisations identified in the Communications Plan (as required by Condition PI.2) and local residents;

(d) Department of Conservation;

(e) Local Boards;

(f) Iwi groups with Mana Whenua;

(g) Public transport providers; and

(h) Housing New Zealand Corporation.

Advice note: The purpose of the Community Liaison Group(s) is to provide a regular forum through which information about the Project can be provided to the community, and an opportunity for concerns or issues to be raised.

23) V.11

Prior to commencement of works adjacent to Traherne Island, the NZTA shall employ a suitably qualified and experienced plant translocation expert to uplift and protect all areas of *Mimulus repens* on Traherne Island that will be affected by the work. The *Mimulus repens* shall be relocated to suitable and safe habitat away from the works area, or otherwise held and protected for the duration of the works in the vicinity of their original location and be replanted back at that location (or in close proximity to it) upon completion of the works. The location of the recipient sites will be determined in consultation with the Department of Conservation and in general accordance with the Traherne Island Natural Heritage Restoration Plan (2009 – 2014). Trials shall be undertaken to identify appropriate recipient sites, with these trial sites being monitored for a period of no less than 5 years, or until their...
failure. Where possible, recipient sites shall be located in currently weed-free areas. Where recipient sites may potentially be affected by weeds, they shall be subject to an on-going weed management plan. Should translocation attempts fail at all trial sites then the NZTA, in consultation with DOC, shall determine an alternative appropriate form of mitigation.

24) V.17 Prior to commencement of works adjacent to or on Traherne Island, the NZTA shall employ a suitably qualified and experienced ecologist for the preparation of a Traherne Island Weed and Pest Management Plan. The Plan shall be prepared in consultation with the Department of Conservation and be submitted to the Auckland Council for approval at least 20 working days prior to construction commencing.

25) E.1 The NZTA shall inform the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council in writing at least 10 working days before the start date of the works authorised by this Consent.

26) E.2 Prior to commencement of works, in each period between October 1 and April 30 that this Consent is exercised, a pre-construction site meeting between Auckland Council and relevant parties, including the primary contractor, shall be conducted. The approved Contractors Erosion and Sediment Control Plan (CESCP) as per Condition E.5 of this Consent shall be made available and discussed at the pre-construction meeting.

27) E.5 Prior to the commencement of works for each specific area and/or activity, a "Contractors Erosion and Sediment Control Plan" (CESCP) shall be prepared. This document shall follow the principles and practices within Technical Report G.22 Erosion and Sediment Control Plan and shall detail any specific variations from that report. The CESCPs shall include, but not be limited to:

(a) Contour information at suitable intervals;
(b) Erosion and sediment controls including specific pond design;
(c) Supporting calculations;
(d) Catchment boundaries for the sediment controls;
(e) Location of the works, and cut and fill operations;
(f) Details of construction methods to be employed, including timing and duration;
(g) A programme for managing exposed area, including progressive stabilisation considerations;
(h) The identification of appropriately qualified and experienced staff to manage the environmental issues onsite;
(i) The identification of staff who have clearly defined roles and responsibilities to monitor compliance with the Consent Conditions and CESCP;
(j) Provision of details of a chain of responsibility for managing environmental issues and details of responsible personnel; and
(k) The establishment of a sediment control team (including representatives from the contractor, Auckland Council and the NZTA) to meet and review erosion and sediment control on a weekly basis.

28) E.6 For each specific area of works, a CESCP shall be submitted a minimum of 20 working days prior to earthworks commencing, for the written approval of the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council, which shall be obtained prior to earthworks commencing. The approved CESCP shall be implemented accordingly.

29) E.7 Any amendments to the CESCPs must be approved by the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council in writing at least 10 working days prior to any amendment being implemented.
30) **E.12** All perimeter controls shall be operational before earthworks begin.

31) **E.16** Prior to the commissioning of chemical treatments for sediment management purposes (as per Condition E.17), the NZTA shall provide the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council with a Chemical Treatment Plan (CTP), for confirmation by the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council that it will achieve the standards set out in the CESCP required under Condition E.6. The CTP shall follow the principles and chemical treatment details outlined within the Technical Report G.22 *Erosion and Sediment Control Plan* and shall include as a minimum:

(a) Specific design details of the chemical treatment system;

(b) Monitoring, maintenance (including post-storm) and contingency programme (including a Record Sheet);

(c) Details of optimum dosage (including assumptions);

(d) Results of the initial flocculation trial which will build on the information within Technical Report G.22 *Erosion and Sediment Control Plan*;

(e) A spill contingency plan;

(f) Details of the person or bodies that will hold responsibility for long-term maintenance of the flocculation treatment system and the organisational structure which will support this structure.

Any amendments to the CTP shall be approved by the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council, in writing, at least 10 working days prior to implementation.

32) **C.1** The NZTA shall provide to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council plans and drawings (including dimensioned, cross sections, elevations and site plans of all areas of proposed reclamation (including associated permanent and temporary CMA occupation), permanent structures and temporary structures) at least 20 working days before the proposed date of commencement of the construction of the reclamation, bridge piers or temporary structure.

33) **M.1** The NZTA shall finalise and implement through the CEMP, the ECOMP submitted with this application. The ECOMP shall be revised to accurately reflect the conditions of this consent and changes to the details of construction processes prior to construction commencing. The ECOMP shall include, but not be limited to, details of:

(a) Monitoring of marine habitats and ecological values;

(b) Trigger event criteria for undertaking additional monitoring;

(c) Procedures for responding to accidental discharges to the marine environment;

(d) Complaints investigation, monitoring and reporting; and

(e) The identification of staff and contractors’ responsibilities.

**CONSTRUCTION CONDITIONS**

34) **CEMP.4** The CEMP shall be implemented and maintained throughout the entire construction period.

35) **CEMP.5** A copy of the CEMP shall be held on each construction site at all times and be available for inspection on request by the Auckland Council.

36) **CEMP.8** All storage of material and equipment associated with the construction works shall take place within the boundaries of the designation.

37) **CEMP.12** The CEMP shall be reviewed by the NZTA at least annually or as a result of a material change to the Project. The review shall take into consideration:

(a) Compliance with designation and consent conditions;
(b) Any changes to construction methods;
(c) Key changes to roles and responsibilities within the Project;
(d) Changes in industry best practice standards;
(e) Changes in legal or other requirements;
(f) Results of inspections, monitoring, incidents, corrective actions, internal or external assessments; and
(g) Public complaints.

A summary of the review process undertaken shall be kept by the NZTA, provided annually to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council and made available (with any related data) to the Auckland Council upon request.

38) CEMP.13 Following the review process (as described in Condition CEMP.12), the CEMP may require updating. Any material change proposed to the CEMP (including appended Management Plans) shall be submitted for approval to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council at least 10 working days prior to the proposed changes taking effect.

Advice Note: Material change will include amendment to any base information informing the CEMP or any process, procedure or method of the CEMP (such as the environmental constraints map, compliance monitoring process, complaints procedure or mitigation / remedial methods identified) which has the potential to increase adverse effects on a particular value. For clarity changes to personnel and contact schedules do not constitute a material change.

39) PI.3 At least 15 working days prior to the commencement of construction, and at 15 working day intervals thereafter, or as required depending on the scale of works and effects on the community, advertisements will be placed in the relevant local newspapers and community noticeboards (as identified in Condition CEMP.6(b)) detailing the nature of the forthcoming works, the location of the forthcoming works and hours of operation. All advertisements will include reference to a 24 hour toll free complaints telephone number. Where relevant, advertisements will also include but not be limited to details of:

(a) Any traffic disruptions or controls or changes to property access, pedestrian/ cycle routes and bus stops; and
(b) Any other construction activities, including night time works, blasting, and structure-borne noise, as identified in the conditions.

40) PI.4 The NZTA shall manage, investigate and resolve (as appropriate) all complaints for the duration of the construction works in accordance with the environmental complaints section of the CEMP. The implementation strategy for complaints includes:

(a) A 24 hour toll free telephone number and email address, which shall be provided to all potentially affected residents and businesses. The number shall be available and answered at all times during the entire duration of the works for the receipt and management of any complaints. A sign containing the contact details shall be located at each site specific work activity;
(b) The NZTA shall maintain a record of all complaints made to this number, email or any site office, including the full details of the complainant and the nature of the complaint;
(c) Upon receiving a complaint, within 10 days of complaint receipt, a formal written response will be provided to the complainant and Auckland Council;
(d) The NZTA shall undertake corrective action where necessary to resolve any problem identified. All action taken and relevant information shall be documented. For the avoidance of doubt, ‘where necessary’ refers to where the works are not being carried out in accordance with conditions of this designation;
(e) Where issues and complaints about effects cannot be resolved through the CEMP complaints management process, a meeting shall be held between the NZTA, the complainant and the Auckland Council representative(s) to discuss the complaint and ways in which the issue may be resolved. If parties cannot agree on a resolution, an independent qualified mediator will be appointed, agreeable to all parties and at the shared cost of all parties, to undertake mediation of the dispute or concerns; and

(f) All information collected in Conditions PI.4 (b), (c) and (d) shall be detailed in a Construction Compliance Report (including the means by which the complaint was addressed, whether resolution was reached and how the response was carried out) prepared by the NZTA. This Report shall be submitted to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council on a quarterly basis commencing at the beginning of the works and for the entire duration of construction.

41) PI.6 The Community Liaison Group(s) shall be provided opportunities to review and comment on the following (amongst other things):

(a) The Outline Plan of Works detailing designs for the northern and southern ventilation buildings and stacks (the outcomes of this consultation will be reported in accordance with the processes required in DC.8(n) and DC.9(k);

(b) The Open Space Restoration Plans (as required by Condition OS.3);

(c) Finalisation and amendment to Urban Design and Landscape Plans (UDL Plans) (as required by Condition LV.1);

(d) The Oakley Inlet Heritage Plan (as required by Conditions OS.5(b)(i) and ARCH.6);

(e) The detail of the Oakley Creek restoration (as required by Condition STW.20);

(f) Publicly available results of environmental monitoring as required by the designation and/or these Consents (e.g. air quality monitoring); and

(g) The finalisation of the STEM assessment required by CEMP.6(o) and a schedule of trees that are required to be removed for consideration of timber use in heritage projects as required by Condition SO.7.

Advice Note: Attention is drawn to the Vegetation conditions concerning identification and protection of Significant Vegetation and Valued Vegetation.

(h) Detailed design features of the Te Atatu underpass (e.g. lighting and architectural treatment).

42) CNV.8 Pile driving or pile removal shall not be undertaken at night (i.e. during the hours of 20:00 – 06:30).

43) A.2 The NZTA shall provide temporary high tide roosting structure(s) adjacent to the Causeway during construction, in accordance with the ECOMP, to the satisfaction of the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council. The temporary bird roosts shall be sized in accordance with the ECOMP, and located within the Waterview Estuary adjacent to the southern side of the causeway and in the vicinity of the existing Causeway bridge.

44) E.3 Erosion and sediment control shall be in general accordance with the plans and information submitted with the application, and in particular, Technical Report G.22 Erosion and Sediment Control Plan, subject to such amendments as may be required by the following conditions of this Consent.

45) E.8 Erosion and sediment control measures shall be constructed and maintained in accordance with the ARC Technical Report 90 (TP90) (and any amendments to that document), except where a higher standard is detailed in the documents referred to in Conditions E.3 and E.5 above, in which case the higher standard shall apply.
46) E.10 Prior to any decision to discharge waters that have collected in coffer dam sumps to the coastal marine area (CMA), the following procedures shall be followed:

(a) Sump waters shall be tested for pH and turbidity; and

(b) Discharge to the CMA shall only be permitted where:

(i) pH does not exceed a threshold of pH 8.5; and

(ii) turbidity or suspended solids concentrations do not exceed a threshold, to be agreed between NZTA and the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council prior to use of temporary coffer dams.

In the event that measured pH and/or turbidity exceeds these thresholds, the sump waters shall be treated to the appropriate standard prior to discharge to the CMA or shall be disposed of to an approved location outside of the CMA. The proposed treatment methodology shall be included within the CESP and shall be submitted to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council for its approval at least 20 working days prior to implementation.

47) E.11 All ‘cleanwater’ runoff from stabilised surfaces, including catchment areas above the site, shall be diverted away from earthwork areas via a stabilised system, so as to prevent surface erosion.

48) E.14 The NZTA shall ensure that procedures are adopted to prevent the deposition of slurry, clay or other materials on the roads by vehicles leaving the site. Should the exercise of this Consent result in material being deposited on the road, that material shall be removed immediately to the satisfaction of the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council.

49) E.17 All sediment retention ponds and decanting earth bunds are to be chemically treated in accordance with the CTP required under Condition E.16 of this consent.

50) E.19 A copy of the “as-built(s)” and approved CESCPs shall be kept on site, and all erosion and sediment control measures (including staging boundaries and particularly the extent of exposed areas) shall be updated as soon as practicable as changes are made. As-built plans shall be accompanied by text detailing the relevant earthworks methodology, constraints and likely progressions, and shall be revised as required to enable clear interpretation as to the day to day operation and management of erosion and sediment controls.

51) E.21 The site shall be stabilised against erosion as soon as practicable, and in a progressive manner, as earthworks are finished over various areas of the site. Areas of bulk earthworks not actively worked for a period of two weeks shall be stabilised.

52) E.22 The NZTA shall ensure that the following earthworks shall be stabilised as soon as practicable after completion thereof, or within 5 working days of completion, whichever shall occur first:

(a) Temporary erosion and sediment controls; and

(b) Construction yards.

53) E.23 No surface earthworks on the site shall be undertaken between 1 May and 30 September in any year, without the written approval of the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council. Earthworks in this regard refers to bulk earthworks (cut/fill/waste) associated with the site.

54) C.2 Construction shall be undertaken in accordance with the construction methodology detailed in the application, specifically Technical Report G.23 Coastal Works and Technical Report G.22 Erosion and Sediment Control Plan. The construction methodology shall include:
(a) The use of temporary coffer dams to create dry working areas;
(b) Realignment of sections of existing low-tide channels in Oakley inlet and Waterview Estuary that will be directly affected by the reclamation works;
(c) Removal of mangroves to provide construction and ground-treatment access, placement of temporary coffer dams and to facilitate natural channel migration in the Whau River side drainage channel (east of Rosebank Domain);
(d) Installation or removal works to be undertaken at the best practicable time to minimise potential sediment disturbance.

55) C.3 The NZTA shall notify the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council in writing of the proposed commencement date of the reclamation, structures and/or channel realignment works at least 10 working days prior to the proposed start date.

56) C.6 The NZTA shall maintain the site in good order and shall remedy all damage and disturbance caused by vehicle traffic, plant and equipment to the foreshore during construction, to the satisfaction of the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council.

57) C.7 Removal or pruning of vegetation in the CMA shall be limited to the areas of permanent and temporary occupation as shown on the Waterview Connection Project Assessment of Environmental Effects Plan Set F.12 and F.13 submitted with the application (ref Schedule A, rows 13 and 14). Removal of mangroves shall be implemented in accordance with the principles detailed in the Ecological Management Plan.

58) C.11 (a) Provision for navigation of vessels beneath the Whau River Bridges during construction shall be maintained to the satisfaction of the Auckland Harbour Master;
(b) Following construction, provision for the navigation of vessels beneath the Whau River Bridges be provided by the navigation channels and headspace clearance identified on the Plan Whau River Motorway and Pedestrian Bridges Elevation Plan 221 in F.8 (refer Schedule A, Row 9);
(c) For purposes of safe navigation, the NZTA shall identify an appropriate pier to mark on the Whau River Bridges, in consultation with the Te Atatu Boating Club and to the satisfaction of the Auckland Harbour Master. This pier shall be surveyed and marked with height graduations advising available minimum headspace under the Bridges for different stages of the tide with an appropriate safety margin.

59) M.10 The NZTA shall maintain the coastal marine area free of any gross litter, rubbish and debris during construction.

60) M.11 Prior to excavation of sediment from the marine habitat remediation zone (MHRZ), mangrove vegetation will be removed from the sediment and disposed of at an appropriate offsite facility. The excavated sediment shall be stockpiled within an adjacent dry working area. When the sediment is returned to the MHRZ it will be levelled out to tie in with the existing mudflat. Where a routine marine benthic habitat monitoring site is within an area of MHRZ, additional monitoring of the depth of sediment overlying the improved ground/mudcrete will also be undertaken.
POST-CONSTRUCTION CONDITIONS

61) E.15 Notice shall be given to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council prior to any erosion and sediment control measures being removed and/or on completion of the works.

62) E.24 Revegetation/stabilisation shall be completed by 30 April in the year of bulk earthworks in accordance with measures detailed in the approved CESCP, unless a later date is approved in writing by the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council at least two weeks before 30 April.

63) C.4 The NZTA shall notify the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council in writing within 10 working days of the completion of each discrete area of reclamation, structures and/or channel realignment works.

64) C.8 The NZTA shall ensure the removal of all equipment, erosion and sediment control measures, surplus sediment and construction materials from the CMA within 20 working days following the completion of the construction works, to the satisfaction of the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council.

MONITORING

65) A.3 The NZTA shall employ a suitably qualified ecologist to undertake monitoring of the roosting areas located at:
(a) The existing high tide roost in Harbourview-Orangihina Park; and
(b) The temporary construction roosting structure(s) pursuant to Condition A.2.
Monitoring shall be undertaken on a monthly basis, with a monitoring report prepared on a quarterly basis. The monitoring report shall be made available to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council and Department of Conservation upon request.

66) E.20 The NZTA shall carry out monitoring in accordance with the Technical Report G.22 Erosion and Sediment Control Plan and the approved CESCP and shall maintain records detailing:
(a) The monitoring undertaken;
(b) The erosion and sediment controls that required maintenance;
(c) The time when the maintenance was completed; and
(d) Areas of non-compliance with the erosion and sediment control monitoring plan (if any) and the reasons for the non-compliance.
This information shall be made available to the Auckland Council upon request.

67) C.12 On completion of the relevant stage of reclamation, the NZTA shall ensure that stockpiled chenier shell deposits from the northern side of the existing Causeway are reinstated to suitable locations along the northern side of the newly reclaimed Causeway in consultation with the Department of Conservation and the Auckland Council. The placement of the shell bank material shall be to the satisfaction of the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council. The movement of these reinstated shell deposits shall be monitored quarterly for the first year after placement to confirm they have been reworked by waves to form a contiguous shell bank by undertaking topographic survey transects at low tide and photographs to document the transition. The monitoring information shall be provided to the Auckland Council within 20 working days of completion of each phase of monitoring.

68) C.13 During preparation works in the CMA for ground improvement and reclamation works adjacent to the Rosebank Domain access road, mangroves required to be removed on the
southern side of the existing drainage channel are to be extracted together with their root systems and removed from the CMA to facilitate the lateral migration of the channel to the south prior to infilling. The evolution of the channel shall be monitored by a baseline cross-section survey of the channel at two sites prior to construction, then monitoring the same sections every 2 months until 6 months after completion of the reclamation, together with photographs along the affected section, to confirm the natural migration of the channel is proceeding unimpeded by mangrove roots. The monitoring information shall be provided to the Auckland Council within 20 working days of completion of each phase of monitoring.

69) C.14
Following final excavation of each of the three (3) realigned sections of low-tide channels in Waterview Estuary and Oakley Inlet (two sites), these sites shall be monitored quarterly for one year after completion of the excavation, to confirm that the channel (thalweg and the transition sections with the unmodified channel) has reached a stable configuration. The monitoring can be achieved around low tide (average tide range) by an on-water visual reconnaissance, spot depth soundings and documented with photographs. The monitoring information shall be provided to the Auckland Council within 20 working days of completion of each phase of monitoring.

70) C.15
Within a month of the closure of the Rosebank culvert under SH16 (adjacent to the Rosebank Westbound Off-ramp), the NZTA shall undertake a single tidal salinity survey on a high spring tide (High Water at or above 3.4 m at Port of Auckland) without significant prior rainfall, to confirm and document that tidal flushing of brackish waters occurs in the boardwalk area presently serviced by the culvert. Salinity, water depth and the length of time either side of high water that the area is effectively inundated shall be monitored at one site near the eastern end of the boardwalk section of the shared cycleway [WGS-84 Map ref: -36.87057° N, 174.67408° E]. The monitoring information shall be made available to the Auckland Council.

71) C.16
On the northern side of the Causeway, from just before the commencement of construction in the CMA for each section of works, until 6 months after completion of each section, the NZTA shall undertake every two (2) months or after a severe wave-storm, intertidal beach profile surveys down to the spring low-tide mark along offshore-directed transects (one off the centre of the construction section and one either side at 20 m away from the ends of the construction site) and photographs documenting the physical state of the seabed around the perimeter of the cofferdam. The monitoring information shall be made available to the Auckland Council. If the monitoring identifies that excessive erosion or accretion has occurred from corner or end effects of the construction section, as confirmed by a coastal processes expert, further seabed erosion control measures or a sediment by-passing method (for accretion) to reduce localised effects seaward of the temporary occupation or permanent occupation designation (whichever applies) shall be implemented as soon as practicable. Details of the proposed measures or methods shall be made available to Auckland Council prior to implementation.

72) M.2
The NZTA shall engage a suitably qualified ecologist to undertake a marine habitat monitoring programme, as described in Conditions M.3 to M.6.

73) M.3
The marine benthic habitat monitoring programme shall be undertaken every 6 months:
(a) At least 12 months prior to construction commencing, to allow for two baseline surveys to be undertaken;
(b) During construction; and
(c) For a maximum of 3 years following completion of the Project, or for a lesser time if the monitoring indicates no significant effects, as agreed with the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council.
74) M.4 The marine benthic habitat monitoring programme shall be undertaken in accordance with the details set out in the ECOMP and include:
   (a) Sampling of the marine invertebrate community composition (collection of sediment cores to a depth of approximately 15cm);
   (b) Sampling of the sediment surface (top 2cm) for sediment grain size; and
   (c) Sampling of the sediment surface (top 2cm) for sediment quality (analysis of the concentration of copper, lead, zinc and polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons).

75) M.5 The marine benthic habitat monitoring shall be undertaken within sampling grids (50m x 30m) broadly established at the following locations:
   (a) Two locations within Oakley Inlet;
   (b) Four locations within Waterview Estuary; and
   (c) Four locations north of the Causeway.

Specific locations and experimental design shall be detailed in the ECOMP, and the design of the monitoring programme will be based on the *Estuarine Environmental Assessment and Monitoring: A National Protocol* (Cawthron 2002).

76) M.6 The NZTA shall undertake additional marine habitat monitoring in the event of a 'trigger event' for marine ecology habitats. For the purposes of this consent, a 'trigger event' for marine ecology habitats is defined in the ECOMP.

77) M.7 The NZTA shall review the marine habitat monitoring results (pursuant to Conditions M.3 to M.6) and in the event that potential adverse effects are identified, the NZTA shall develop and implement appropriate contingency plans and/or remedial measures.

REPORTING

78) M.8 The marine benthic habitat monitoring results shall be compiled by the NZTA, and a report provided to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council every 6 months.
This document has been prepared in compliance with conditions of the “Final Report and Decision of the Board of Inquiry into the New Zealand Transport Agency Waterview Connection Proposal, Volume 2, Conditions of Consent”. Schedule B of Volume 2 identifies the Conditions relevant to this Consent by the code and number as referenced throughout this document. In the event of dispute, Schedule B of Volume 2 shall take precedence over this Consent.

Type: Coastal Consent

Description: Disturbance of Foreshore and Seabed (Sector 2):
Removal of vegetation, including mangrove removal, in any CPA 2. This includes the removal of mangroves to the west of Rosebank Park Domain.

Duration: 10 years

Code:
RC = Standard Resource Consent Conditions
CEMP = Construction Environmental Management Plan Conditions
PI = Public Information Conditions
C = Coastal Conditions
M = Marine Ecology Conditions

GENERAL CONDITIONS

1) RC.1 Except as modified by the conditions below, the works shall be undertaken in general accordance with the information provided by the New Zealand Transport Agency (NZTA), in the resource consent applications and the supporting documents (as detailed in Condition DC.1), and in the supplementary information provided in evidence by the NZTA.

2) RC.1A The NZTA shall implement the conditions of these consents in accordance with Schedule B, which sets out the Conditions that are to be applied to each consent including the duration of each consent.

3) RC.2 The Conditions of these consents may be reviewed by the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council, pursuant to Section 128 of the Resource Management Act 1991 (the Act), by the giving of notice pursuant to Section 129 of the Act, on the one year anniversary of the commencement of the consents and every year thereafter in order:
   (a) To deal with any adverse effect on the environment which may arise from the exercise of the consent and which it is appropriate to deal with at a later stage; or
   (b) To deal with any other adverse effect on the environment on which the exercise of the consent may have an influence.

4) RC.4 Any Management Plans submitted to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council for approval or certification may be submitted in stages to reflect any proposed staging of the physical works. Plans submitted shall clearly show the integration with adjacent stages and interrelated activities.

5) RC.5 In the event of any dispute, disagreement or inaction arising as to any Auckland Council Manager certification/ approvals required by the consent conditions, or as to the
implementation of or monitoring required by the conditions, matters shall be referred in the
first instance to the NZTA Regional State Highway Manager and to the Resource Consents
Manager, Auckland Council to determine a process of resolution.

If a resolution cannot be agreed, then the matter may be referred to an independent
appropriately qualified expert, agreeable to both parties, setting out the details of the matter
to be referred for determination and the reasons the parties do not agree.

The independent appropriately qualified expert shall be appointed within 10 working days of
the NZTA or Auckland Council giving notice of their intention to seek expert determination.
The expert shall, as soon as possible, issue his or her decision on the matter. In making the
decision, the expert shall be entitled to seek further information and hear from the parties as
he or she sees fit.

Advice note: The dispute resolution process provided for in this condition does not prejudice
any party’s right to take enforcement action in relation to the implementation of the
designation conditions. However, the dispute resolution process will be applied before any
formal enforcement action is taken by the Council except in urgent situations.

6) RC.6 Pursuant to Section 36(1)(d) of the RMA, the requiring authority is required to pay to
Auckland Council any administrative charge for the carrying out by the local authority of its
functions in relation to the administration, monitoring, and supervision of designation
conditions.

7) RC.7 The servants of agents of Auckland Council shall be permitted to have access to relevant
parts of the Project at all reasonable times for the purpose of carrying out inspections,
investigations, tests, measurements and/or to take samples.

PRE-CONSTRUCTION CONDITIONS

8) RC.3 Within 3 months of the resource consents commencing for the Project (or at least 1 month
prior to any Auckland Council approvals or certifications required by these Conditions,
whichever is the earlier), the NZTA shall update and finalise to the satisfaction of the Major
Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council all drawings and Plans cited in Schedule
A, together with a full set of the information and documentation referred to in Condition
DC.1 and provide these to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council. At
the same time the NZTA shall prepare to the satisfaction of Auckland Council, a document
for each resource consent which sets out the resource consent and have attached to it in
text format a comprehensive set of the conditions imposed by the Board of Inquiry in its
Final Decision as summarised in Schedule B, inclusive of any standard conditions and
advice notes.

In particular (but not limited to), the following Plans will need to be amended in light of the
Final Conditions:

(a) F.2 Operational Scheme Plans (refer Schedule A, Row 3) require amendment
detailing the amended location of the ventilation stacks and southern ventilation
buildings;

(b) F.5 Construction Scheme Plans (refer Schedule A, Row 4) require amendment to
detail changes to construction footprint for the amended location of ventilation stacks
and southern ventilation buildings and reconfiguration of Construction Yard 1);

(c) F.6 Construction Yard Plans 101 and 107 (refer Schedule A, Row 7), detailing
amendments to the Construction Yard 1 in light of the reconfiguration of this Yard and
for Construction Yard 7 in light of the relocation of the northern ventilation stack (refer
Schedule A, Row 34);
plans of structures and architectural features (refer schedule a, row 9),
detailing the amended location of the northern ventilation stack and the design and
location of the southern ventilation building and stack;

(e) the cnvmp (including flow diagram and the supplementary evidence produced by
ms wilkening) (refer schedule a, rows 36, 37 and 39);

(f) update to the areas of the open space restoration plans (schedule a, row 30) to:

(i) extend these areas in geographic extent to provide for the works identified in the
management plan notations identified in the os conditions (in particular os.5
and os.6). (e.g. these areas will (as relevant) include eric armishaw park,
howlett reserve and waterview esplanade reserve); and

(ii) exclude the operational area of designation required for the northern ventilation
stack (as identified through the OPW process (refer condition DC.8); and

(g) schedule a, row 28 the plan detailing proposed open space impacts and
replacements needs to be updated to recolour the two land parcels on hendon avenue
(which are excluded from the replacement calculations) to ‘brown’ to confirm they are
part of the operational impact and will not be returned as open space.

9) CEMP.1

Except where provided for in condition CEMP.1A below, the NZTA shall update and finalise
the draft Construction Environmental Management Plan (CEMP) including all the
Management Plans which form part of the CEMP and are included as appendices,
submitted with this application to ensure compliance with the consent and designation
conditions imposed by the Board of Inquiry. The CEMP shall be provided to the Major
Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council for review at least 20 working days prior to
the commencement of works to certify compliance and consistency with the conditions.
Construction shall not commence until certification is obtained.

Advice note: For clarity the CEMP will be updated and finalised in accordance with the
conditions. Any amendments will be limited to reflecting the requirements of the conditions,
specifying personnel, and completing the Environmental Risk Register.

Advice Note: Particular care must be taken with development and operation of Construction
Yard 7. When the CEMP is being updated and finalised, consideration must be given to the
contents of the draft SSCEMP prepared for Construction Yard 7 (Row 41, Schedule A)
recognising changes required by inclusion of the ventilation stack in this yard.

10) CEMP.1A

In the case of the trial embankment, where works will commence well in advance of the
main construction works for the Causeway, the NZTA will provide to the Major Infrastructure
Team Manager, Auckland Council, a site-specific CEMP for review and approval at least
20 working days prior to commencement of the trial embankment works.

11) CEMP.1B

For the purposes of staging works, as some works may commence well in advance of
others, the NZTA may provide staged or site specific CEMPs for those works to the Major
Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council. The NZTA shall consult with the Team
Manager about the need and timing for any other site-specific or staged CEMPs and shall
provide any required site-specific or staged CEMPs to the Major Infrastructure Team
Manager, Auckland Council for review at least 20 working days prior to commencement of
such the specific stage (including enabling) or site works.

12) CEMP.2

The certification process of the CEMP (and its appendices) shall confirm that the CEMP
gives effect to the relevant conditions, as well as those matters in CEMP.6, and that it
includes details of:

(a) Staff and contractors’ responsibilities;

(b) Training requirements for employees, sub-contractors and visitors;
13) CEMP.3 The management of key environmental effects associated with the construction phase of the Project is detailed within environmental management plans that are included in the CEMP as appendices. This suite of management plans as shown on Figure CEMP.A comprises:

(a) Construction Noise and Vibration Management Plan (CNVMP);
(b) Construction Air Quality Management Plan (CAQMP);
(c) Erosion and Sediment Control Plan (ESCP);
(d) Temporary Stormwater Management Plan (TSMP);
(e) Ecological Management Plan (ECOMP);
(f) Groundwater Management Plan (GWMP);
(g) Settlement Effects Management Plan (SEMP);
(h) Contaminated Soils Management Plan (CSMP);
(i) Hazardous Substances Management Plan (HSMP);
(j) Archaeological Site Management Plan (ASMP);
(k) Construction Traffic Management Plan (CTMP);
(l) Concrete Batching and Crushing Plant Management Plan (CBCPMP);
(m) Electrical Infrastructure Site Development and Construction Management Plan (EISDCMP) (to be prepared in accordance with Condition CEMP.15);
(n) Waste Management Plan (to be prepared in accordance with Condition CEMP.10);

14) CEMP.6 The finalised CEMP shall include specific details on demolition, construction and management of all works associated with the Project. The certification process of the CEMP shall confirm that the CEMP includes details of the following:

(a) Details of the site or Project manager and the community liaison person, including their contact details (phone, facsimile, postal address, email address);
(b) The location of large notice boards that clearly identify the NZTA and the Project name, together with the name, telephone, email address and address for service of the site or Project manager and the community liaison person;
(c) An outline construction programme of the work indicating in particular likely time periods for road closures and anticipated traffic diversion effects;
(d) The hours of work, which should reflect the need to ensure that residents enjoy reasonable freedom from noisy or intrusive construction activity in their neighbourhood at night, on Sundays and during public holidays;
(e) Measures to be adopted to maintain the land affected by the works in a tidy condition in
(f) Location of worker’s offices and conveniences (e.g. portaloos);

(g) Procedures of controlling sediment run-off, dust and the removal of soil, debris and demolition and construction materials from public roads or places. Dust mitigation measures should include use of water sprays to control dust nuisance on dry or windy days;

(h) Methods to stabilise ingress and egress points to construction sites, to the standard required by ARC Technical Publication 90 (Nov 2007);

15) CEMP.10 The NZTA shall finalise and implement the Hazardous Substances Management Plan (HSMP), through the CEMP (as per Condition CEMP.1), submitted with this application, prior to works commencing on site. The certification process of the CEMP shall confirm that the HSMP clearly identifies the requirements for proper storage, handling, transport and disposal of hazardous substances during the construction phase of the Project and confirm that there shall be no storage of explosives on the Project site.

16) CEMP.11 The NZTA shall develop and implement a Waste Management Plan in accordance with the waste management principles, controls and methods set out in the CEMP. The Plan shall be provided to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council and be implemented throughout the entire construction period.

17) CEMP.15 The NZTA will be responsible for all service relocations required for construction of the Project. The NZTA shall liaise with the providers of infrastructure service networks (including, but not limited to water, gas, stormwater, wastewater, power and telecommunications), and private property owners with on-site services to develop methodologies and timing for necessary services relocation required for the Project, with the objective of minimising disruption to the operation of these service networks and on-site services.

Advice note:

(a) It is noted that if separate consents are required for relocations for any services of network utility operators or landowners, such consents will be obtained before construction commences in the relevant area, and any effects of those relocations would be considered at that time. The same applies to any alteration of consents if required.

(b) Network infrastructure owned and operated by Watercare Services is located within the designations. An operating agreement will be developed by the NZTA and Watercare Services which will include appropriate notification and access protocols where works are to be undertaken by either network operator on or adjacent to Watercare Services infrastructure within the designations.

18) PI.1 A community liaison person shall be appointed by the NZTA for the duration of the construction phase of the Project to be the main and readily accessible point of contact for persons affected by the Project. The liaison person’s name and contact details shall be made available in the CEMP and on site signage by the NZTA. This person must be reasonably available for on-going consultation on all matters of concern to affected parties arising from the Project.

19) PI.2 The NZTA shall prepare and implement a Communications Plan that sets out procedures detailing how the public, Ministry of Social Development, Housing New Zealand Corporation and other organisations representing the particular demographic characteristics of the community (including but not limited to Primary Health Organisations, general practitioners, youth, education organisations, aged care groups and groups representing ethnic and
migrant communities) will be communicated with throughout the construction and monitoring periods (as prescribed in the designation and consent conditions).

In preparing the Communications Plan, the NZTA will liaise with Auckland Council to access its community liaison databases. The Communications Plan will include details of:

(a) The site or Project manager and the community liaison person, including their contact details (phone, facsimile, postal address, email address);

(b) In accordance with these Conditions, the database of the key construction activities and monitoring requirements that are the subject of the Communications Plan;

(c) The database of stakeholders and residents who will be communicated with;

(d) Communication methods, an assessment of how these methods reach the different audience/stakeholder groups (including those methods set out in Condition CEMP.6), and detail on when each of these methods will be used (e.g. regular communication or event specific methods);

(e) The appointed specialist in Environmental and Occupational Medicine, including contact details (as per Condition SO.13);

(f) Any stakeholder specific communication plans required; and

(g) Monitoring and review procedures for the Communications Plan.

The Communications Plan shall be written in accordance with the external communication procedures set out in the CEMP and provided at least 20 working days prior to construction commencing, to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council, Working Liaison Group and the Community Liaison Group(s) established by Condition PI.5. The structure of the communication groups set out in these conditions is attached as Figure PI.A.

20) PI.5 The NZTA shall establish Community Liaison Group(s) at least two months prior to construction commencing in each of the following key construction areas:

(a) Te Atatu (including the SH16 Causeway)

(b) Waterview (including works to St Lukes on SH16 and on the Waterview Estuary and Causeway Bridges)

(c) Owairaka

and hold regular meetings (at least three monthly) throughout the construction period and up to 24 months following construction completion relevant to these areas (or less if the members of the Group agree), so that on-going monitoring information can continue to be disseminated.

The Community Liaison Group(s) shall be open to all interested parties within the Project area including, but not limited to the following groups:

(a) Auckland Council and Auckland Transport;

(b) Educational facilities within the Project area (including schools, kindergartens, childcare facilities and Unitec Institute of Technology);

(c) Relevant community/environmental groups (including but not limited to Friends of Oakley Creek, Star Mills Preservation Group, Cycle Action Auckland and representatives from those organisations identified in the Communications Plan (as required by Condition PI.2) and local residents;

(d) Department of Conservation;

(e) Local Boards;

(f) Iwi groups with Mana Whenua;

(g) Public transport providers; and

(h) Housing New Zealand Corporation.
Advice note: The purpose of the Community Liaison Group(s) is to provide a regular forum through which information about the Project can be provided to the community, and an opportunity for concerns or issues to be raised.

21) C.1 The NZTA shall provide to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council plans and drawings (including dimensioned, cross sections, elevations and site plans of all areas of proposed reclamation (including associated permanent and temporary CMA occupation), permanent structures and temporary structures) at least 20 working days before the proposed date of commencement of the construction of the reclamation, bridge piers or temporary structure.

CONSTRUCTION CONDITIONS

22) CEMP.4 The CEMP shall be implemented and maintained throughout the entire construction period.

23) CEMP.5 A copy of the CEMP shall be held on each construction site at all times and be available for inspection on request by the Auckland Council.

24) CEMP.12 The CEMP shall be reviewed by the NZTA at least annually or as a result of a material change to the Project. The review shall take into consideration:
   (a) Compliance with designation and consent conditions;
   (b) Any changes to construction methods;
   (c) Key changes to roles and responsibilities within the Project;
   (d) Changes in industry best practice standards;
   (e) Changes in legal or other requirements;
   (f) Results of inspections, monitoring, incidents, corrective actions, internal or external assessments; and
   (g) Public complaints.

   A summary of the review process undertaken shall be kept by the NZTA, provided annually to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council and made available (with any related data) to the Auckland Council upon request.

25) CEMP.13 Following the review process (as described in Condition CEMP.12), the CEMP may require updating. Any material change proposed to the CEMP (including appended Management Plans) shall be submitted for approval to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council at least 10 working days prior to the proposed changes taking effect.

   Advice Note: Material change will include amendment to any base information informing the CEMP or any process, procedure or method of the CEMP (such as the environmental constraints map, compliance monitoring process, complaints procedure or mitigation / remedial methods identified) which has the potential to increase adverse effects on a particular value. For clarity changes to personnel and contact schedules do not constitute a material change.

26) PI.3 At least 15 working days prior to the commencement of construction, and at 15 working day intervals thereafter, or as required depending on the scale of works and effects on the community, advertisements will be placed in the relevant local newspapers and community noticeboards (as identified in Condition CEMP.6(b)) detailing the nature of the forthcoming works, the location of the forthcoming works and hours of operation. All advertisements will include reference to a 24 hour toll free complaints telephone number. Where relevant, advertisements will also include but not be limited to details of:
   (a) Any traffic disruptions or controls or changes to property access, pedestrian/ cycle routes and bus stops; and
(b) Any other construction activities, including night time works, blasting, and structure-borne noise, as identified in the conditions.

27) PI.4  The NZTA shall manage, investigate and resolve (as appropriate) all complaints for the duration of the construction works in accordance with the environmental complaints section of the CEMP. The implementation strategy for complaints includes:

(a) A 24 hour toll free telephone number and email address, which shall be provided to all potentially affected residents and businesses. The number shall be available and answered at all times during the entire duration of the works for the receipt and management of any complaints. A sign containing the contact details shall be located at each site specific work activity;

(b) The NZTA shall maintain a record of all complaints made to this number, email or any site office, including the full details of the complainant and the nature of the complaint;

(c) Upon receiving a complaint, within 10 days of complaint receipt, a formal written response will be provided to the complainant and Auckland Council;

(d) The NZTA shall undertake corrective action where necessary to resolve any problem identified. All action taken and relevant information shall be documented. For the avoidance of doubt, ‘where necessary’ refers to where the works are not being carried out in accordance with conditions of this designation;

(e) Where issues and complaints about effects cannot be resolved through the CEMP complaints management process, a meeting shall be held between the NZTA, the complainant and the Auckland Council representative(s) to discuss the complaint and ways in which the issue may be resolved. If parties cannot agree on a resolution, an independent qualified mediator will be appointed, agreeable to all parties and at the shared cost of all parties, to undertake mediation of the dispute or concerns; and

(f) All information collected in Conditions PI.4 (b), (c) and (d) shall be detailed in a Construction Compliance Report (including the means by which the complaint was addressed, whether resolution was reached and how the response was carried out) prepared by the NZTA. This Report shall be submitted to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council on a quarterly basis commencing at the beginning of the works and for the entire duration of construction.

28) PI.6  The Community Liaison Group(s) shall be provided opportunities to review and comment on the following (amongst other things):

(a) The Outline Plan of Works detailing designs for the northern and southern ventilation buildings and stacks (the outcomes of this consultation will be reported in accordance with the processes required in DC.8(n) and DC.9(k);

(b) The Open Space Restoration Plans (as required by Condition OS.3);

(c) Finalisation and amendment to Urban Design and Landscape Plans (UDL Plans) (as required by Condition LV.1);

(d) The Oakley Inlet Heritage Plan (as required by Conditions OS.5(b)(i) and ARCH.6);

(e) The detail of the Oakley Creek restoration (as required by Condition STW.20);

(f) Publicly available results of environmental monitoring as required by the designation and/or these Consents (e.g. air quality monitoring); and

(g) The finalisation of the STEM assessment required by CEMP.6(o) and a schedule of trees that are required to be removed for consideration of timber use in heritage projects as required by Condition SO.7.

Advice Note: Attention is drawn to the Vegetation conditions concerning identification and protection of Significant Vegetation and Valued Vegetation.
(h) Detailed design features of the Te Atatu underpass (e.g. lighting and architectural treatment).

29)  C.2 Construction shall be undertaken in accordance with the construction methodology detailed in the application, specifically Technical Report G.23 Coastal Works and Technical Report G.22 Erosion and Sediment Control Plan. The construction methodology shall include:
   (a) The use of temporary coffer dams to create dry working areas;
   (b) Realignment of sections of existing low-tide channels in Oakley inlet and Waterview Estuary that will be directly affected by the reclamation works;
   (c) Removal of mangroves to provide construction and ground-treatment access, placement of temporary coffer dams and to facilitate natural channel migration in the Whau River side drainage channel (east of Rosebank Domain);
   (d) Installation or removal works to be undertaken at the best practicable time to minimise potential sediment disturbance.

30)  C.3 The NZTA shall notify the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council in writing of the proposed commencement date of the reclamation, structures and/or channel realignment works at least 10 working days prior to the proposed start date.

31)  C.6 The NZTA shall maintain the site in good order and shall remedy all damage and disturbance caused by vehicle traffic, plant and equipment to the foreshore during construction, to the satisfaction of the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council.

32)  C.7 Removal or pruning of vegetation in the CMA shall be limited to the areas of permanent and temporary occupation as shown on the Waterview Connection Project Assessment of Environmental Effects Plan Set F.12 and F.13 submitted with the application (ref Schedule A, rows 13 and 14). Removal of mangroves shall be implemented in accordance with the principles detailed in the Ecological Management Plan.

33)  M.11 Prior to excavation of sediment from the marine habitat remediation zone (MHRZ), mangrove vegetation will be removed from the sediment and disposed of at an appropriate offsite facility. The excavated sediment shall be stockpiled within an adjacent dry working area. When the sediment is returned to the MHRZ it will be levelled out to tie in with the existing mudflat. Where a routine marine benthic habitat monitoring site is within an area of MHRZ, additional monitoring of the depth of sediment overlying the improved ground/mudcrete will also be undertaken.

**POST-CONSTRUCTION / OPERATIONS CONDITIONS**

34)  C.4 The NZTA shall notify the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council in writing within 10 working days of the completion of each discrete area of reclamation, structures and/or channel realignment works.

35)  C.8 The NZTA shall ensure the removal of all equipment, erosion and sediment control measures, surplus sediment and construction materials from the CMA within 20 working days following the completion of the construction works, to the satisfaction of the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council.
MONITORING

36) C.13 During preparation works in the CMA for ground improvement and reclamation works adjacent to the Rosebank Domain access road, mangroves required to be removed on the southern side of the existing drainage channel are to be extracted together with their root systems and removed from the CMA to facilitate the lateral migration of the channel to the south prior to infilling. The evolution of the channel shall be monitored by a baseline cross-section survey of the channel at two sites prior to construction, then monitoring the same sections every 2 months until 6 months after completion of the reclamation, together with photographs along the affected section, to confirm the natural migration of the channel is proceeding unimpeded by mangrove roots. The monitoring information shall be provided to the Auckland Council within 20 working days of completion of each phase of monitoring.

37) M.6 The NZTA shall undertake additional marine habitat monitoring in the event of a ‘trigger event’ for marine ecology habitats. For the purposes of this consent, a ‘trigger event’ for marine ecology habitats is defined in the ECOMP.

REPORTING

38) M.8 The marine benthic habitat monitoring results shall be compiled by the NZTA, and a report provided to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council every 6 months.
This document has been prepared in compliance with conditions of the “Final Report and Decision of the Board of Inquiry into the New Zealand Transport Agency Waterview Connection Proposal, Volume 2, Conditions of Consent”. Schedule B of Volume 2 identifies the Conditions relevant to this Consent by the code and number as referenced throughout this document. In the event of dispute, Schedule B of Volume 2 shall take precedence over this Consent.

**Type:** Coastal Consent

**Description:** Disturbance of Foreshore and Seabed (Sectors 4 and 5):

Disturbance of the foreshore and seabed during construction including vegetation removal and mangrove removal, use of motor vehicles, disturbance of sediment, temporary structures and erosion and sediment control measures including, in CPA1, to access existing lawful structures, but excluding the disturbance consequential to activities under which other consents are sought.

This includes disturbance for activities such as machinery access to temporary construction areas in the CMA (e.g. the estuary, Causeway Bridges, pedestrian/cycle way facility, coastal protection works, rock revetment / batters, and temporary staging platforms within Oakley Inlet etc).

**Duration:** 10 years

**Code:**

- **RC** = Standard Resource Consent Conditions
- **CEMP** = Construction Environmental Management Plan Conditions
- **PI** = Public Information Conditions
- **V** = Vegetation Conditions
- **A** = Avian Conditions
- **E** = Earthworks Conditions
- **C** = Coastal Conditions
- **M** = Marine Ecology Conditions

**GENERAL CONDITIONS**

1) **RC.1** Except as modified by the conditions below, the works shall be undertaken in general accordance with the information provided by the New Zealand Transport Agency (NZTA), in the resource consent applications and the supporting documents (as detailed in Condition DC.1), and in the supplementary information provided in evidence by the NZTA.

2) **RC.1A** The NZTA shall implement the conditions of these consents in accordance with Schedule B, which sets out the Conditions that are to be applied to each consent including the duration of each consent.

3) **RC.2** The Conditions of these consents may be reviewed by the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council, pursuant to Section 128 of the Resource Management Act 1991 (the Act), by the giving of notice pursuant to Section 129 of the Act, on the one year
anniversary of the commencement of the consents and every year thereafter in order:

(a) To deal with any adverse effect on the environment which may arise from the exercise of the consent and which it is appropriate to deal with at a later stage; or

(b) To deal with any other adverse effect on the environment on which the exercise of the consent may have an influence.

4) RC.4 Any Management Plans submitted to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council for approval or certification may be submitted in stages to reflect any proposed staging of the physical works. Plans submitted shall clearly show the integration with adjacent stages and interrelated activities.

5) RC.5 In the event of any dispute, disagreement or inaction arising as to any Auckland Council Manager certification/approvals required by the consent conditions, or as to the implementation of or monitoring required by the conditions, matters shall be referred in the first instance to the NZTA Regional State Highway Manager and to the Resource Consents Manager, Auckland Council to determine a process of resolution.

If a resolution cannot be agreed, then the matter may be referred to an independent appropriately qualified expert, agreeable to both parties, setting out the details of the matter to be referred for determination and the reasons the parties do not agree.

The independent appropriately qualified expert shall be appointed within 10 working days of the NZTA or Auckland Council giving notice of their intention to seek expert determination.

The expert shall, as soon as possible, issue his or her decision on the matter. In making the decision, the expert shall be entitled to seek further information and hear from the parties as he or she sees fit.

Advice note: The dispute resolution process provided for in this condition does not prejudice any party’s right to take enforcement action in relation to the implementation of the designation conditions. However, the dispute resolution process will be applied before any formal enforcement action is taken by the Council except in urgent situations.

6) RC.6 Pursuant to Section 36(1)(d) of the RMA, the requiring authority is required to pay to Auckland Council any administrative charge for the carrying out by the local authority of its functions in relation to the administration, monitoring, and supervision of designation conditions.

7) RC.7 The servants of agents of Auckland Council shall be permitted to have access to relevant parts of the Project at all reasonable times for the purpose of carrying out inspections, investigations, tests, measurements and/or to take samples.

8) V.18 The NZTA shall implement the approved Traherne Island Weed and Pest Management Plan. Every 5 years, a suitably qualified and experienced ecologist engaged by NZTA shall review the plan in consultation with the Department of Conservation. The plan shall then be submitted to the Auckland Council for approval.

9) A.6 Animal pest control shall be undertaken by the NZTA on Traherne Island (northern and southern sides) and on the Coastal Marine Area (CMA) frontage of SH16 from Traherne Island North to Whau Creek, and on the southern side of SH16 from Traherne Island South to Whau River (in accordance with Condition V.17).
10) E.4 A detailed schedule of construction activities shall be prepared and forwarded to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council prior to the commencement of works, and updated at 3 monthly intervals during the works. These schedule shall include details of:
(a) The location, commencement date and expected duration of any major earthworks operations, including but not limited to, the portal excavations and the Great North Road cut and cover operation; and
(b) The proposed construction and methodology, including staging of earthworks.

PRE-CONSTRUCTION CONDITIONS

11) RC.3 Within 3 months of the resource consents commencing for the Project (or at least 1 month prior to any Auckland Council approvals or certifications required by these Conditions, whichever is the earlier), the NZTA shall update and finalise to the satisfaction of the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council all drawings and Plans cited in Schedule A, together with a full set of the information and documentation referred to in Condition DC.1 and provide these to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council. At the same time the NZTA shall prepare to the satisfaction of Auckland Council, a document for each resource consent which sets out the resource consent and have attached to it in text format a comprehensive set of the conditions imposed by the Board of Inquiry in its Final Decision as summarised in Schedule B, inclusive of any standard conditions and advice notes.

In particular (but not limited to), the following Plans will need to be amended in light of the Final Conditions:
(a) F.2 Operational Scheme Plans (refer Schedule A, Row 3) require amendment detailing the amended location of the ventilation stacks and southern ventilation buildings;
(b) F.5 Construction Scheme Plans (refer Schedule A, Row 4) require amendment to detail changes to construction footprint for the amended location of ventilation stacks and southern ventilation buildings and reconfiguration of Construction Yard 1;
(c) F.6 Construction Yard Plans 101 and 107 (refer Schedule A, Row 7), detailing amendments to the Construction Yard 1 in light of the reconfiguration of this Yard and for Construction Yard 7 in light of the relocation of the northern ventilation stack (refer Schedule A, Row 34);
(d) F.8 Plans of Structures and Architectural Features (refer Schedule A, Row 9), detailing the amended location of the Northern Ventilation Stack and the design and location of the Southern Ventilation Building and Stack;
(e) The CNVMP (including flow diagram and the supplementary evidence produced by Ms Wilkening) (refer Schedule A, Rows 36, 37 and 39);
(f) Update to the areas of the Open Space Restoration Plans (Schedule A, Row 30) to:
   (i) Extend these areas in geographic extent to provide for the works identified in the Management Plan notations identified in the OS Conditions (in particular OS.5 and OS.6). (e.g. these areas will (as relevant) include Eric Armishaw Park, Howlett Reserve and Waterview Esplanade Reserve); and
   (ii) Exclude the operational area of designation required for the northern ventilation stack (as identified through the OPW process (refer Condition DC.8); and
(g) Schedule A, Row 28 the Plan detailing proposed open space impacts and replacements needs to be updated to recolour the two land parcels on Hendon Avenue (which are excluded from the replacement calculations) to ‘brown’ to confirm they are part of the operational impact and will not be returned as open space.

12) CEMP.1 Except where provided for in Condition CEMP.1A below, the NZTA shall update and finalise
the draft Construction Environmental Management Plan (CEMP) including all the Management Plans which form part of the CEMP and are included as appendices, submitted with this application to ensure compliance with the consent and designation conditions imposed by the Board of Inquiry. The CEMP shall be provided to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council for review at least 20 working days prior to the commencement of works to certify compliance and consistency with the conditions. Construction shall not commence until certification is obtained.

Advice note: For clarity the CEMP will be updated and finalised in accordance with the conditions. Any amendments will be limited to reflecting the requirements of the conditions, specifying personnel, and completing the Environmental Risk Register.

Advice Note: Particular care must be taken with development and operation of Construction Yard 7. When the CEMP is being updated and finalised, consideration must be given to the contents of the draft SSCEMP prepared for Construction Yard 7 (Row 41, Schedule A) recognising changes required by inclusion of the ventilation stack in this yard.

13) CEMP.1A In the case of the trial embankment, where works will commence well in advance of the main construction works for the Causeway, the NZTA will provide to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council, a site-specific CEMP for review and approval at least 20 working days prior to commencement of the trial embankment works.

14) CEMP.1B For the purposes of staging works, as some works may commence well in advance of others, the NZTA may provide staged or site specific CEMPs for those works to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council. The NZTA shall consult with the Team Manager about the need and timing for any other site-specific or staged CEMPs and shall provide any required site-specific or staged CEMPs to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council for review at least 20 working days prior to commencement of such the specific stage (including enabling) or site works.

15) CEMP.2 The certification process of the CEMP (and its appendices) shall confirm that the CEMP gives effect to the relevant conditions, as well as those matters in CEMP.6, and that it includes details of:
   (a) Staff and contractors’ responsibilities;
   (b) Training requirements for employees, sub-contractors and visitors;
   (c) Environmental incident and emergency management;
   (d) Communication and interface procedures (in accordance with the Communication Plan required under Condition PI.2);
   (e) Environmental complaints management (including the procedures required under Condition PI.4);
   (f) Compliance monitoring;
   (g) Reporting (including detail on the frequency of reporting to the Auckland Council);
   (h) Environmental auditing; and
   (i) Corrective action.

16) CEMP.3 The management of key environmental effects associated with the construction phase of the Project is detailed within environmental management plans that are included in the CEMP as appendices. This suite of management plans as shown on Figure CEMP.A comprises:
   (a) Construction Noise and Vibration Management Plan (CNVMP);
   (b) Construction Air Quality Management Plan (CAQMP);
   (c) Erosion and Sediment Control Plan (ESCP);
   (d) Temporary Stormwater Management Plan (TSMP);
(e) Ecological Management Plan (ECOMP);
(f) Groundwater Management Plan (GWMP);
(g) Settlement Effects Management Plan (SEMP);
(h) Contaminated Soils Management Plan (CSMP);
(i) Hazardous Substances Management Plan (HSMP);
(j) Archaeological Site Management Plan (ASMP);
(k) Construction Traffic Management Plan (CTMP);
(l) Concrete Batching and Crushing Plant Management Plan (CBCPMP);
(m) Electrical Infrastructure Site Development and Construction Management Plan (EISDCMP) (to be prepared in accordance with Condition CEMP.15);
(n) Waste Management Plan (to be prepared in accordance with Condition CEMP.10); and
(o) Temporary Construction Lighting Management Plan (to be prepared in accordance with Condition L.2).

17) CEMP.6 The finalised CEMP shall include specific details on demolition, construction and management of all works associated with the Project. The certification process of the CEMP shall confirm that the CEMP includes details of the following:
(a) Details of the site or Project manager and the community liaison person, including their contact details (phone, facsimile, postal address, email address);
(b) The location of large notice boards that clearly identify the NZTA and the Project name, together with the name, telephone, email address and address for service of the site or Project manager and the community liaison person;
(c) An outline construction programme of the work indicating in particular likely time periods for road closures and anticipated traffic diversion effects;
(d) The hours of work, which should reflect the need to ensure that residents enjoy reasonable freedom from noisy or intrusive construction activity in their neighbourhood at night, on Sundays and during public holidays;
(e) Measures to be adopted to maintain the land affected by the works in a tidy condition in terms of disposal/ storage of rubbish, storage and unloading of building materials and similar construction activities;
(f) Location of worker’s offices and conveniences (e.g. portaloos);
(g) Procedures of controlling sediment run-off, dust and the removal of soil, debris and demolition and construction materials from public roads or places. Dust mitigation measures should include use of water sprays to control dust nuisance on dry or windy days;
(h) Methods to stabilise ingress and egress points to construction sites, to the standard required by ARC Technical Publication 90 (Nov 2007);

18) CEMP.10 The NZTA shall finalise and implement the Hazardous Substances Management Plan (HSMP), through the CEMP (as per Condition CEMP.1), submitted with this application, prior to works commencing on site. The certification process of the CEMP shall confirm that the HSMP clearly identifies the requirements for proper storage, handling, transport and disposal of hazardous substances during the construction phase of the Project and confirm that there shall be no storage of explosives on the Project site.

19) CEMP.11 The NZTA shall develop and implement a Waste Management Plan in accordance with the waste management principles, controls and methods set out in the CEMP. The Plan shall be provided to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council and be implemented throughout the entire construction period.
20) CEMP.15 The NZTA will be responsible for all service relocations required for construction of the Project. The NZTA shall liaise with the providers of infrastructure service networks (including, but not limited to water, gas, stormwater, wastewater, power and telecommunications), and private property owners with on-site services to develop methodologies and timing for necessary services relocation required for the Project, with the objective of minimising disruption to the operation of these service networks and on-site services.

Advice note:
(a) It is noted that if separate consents are required for relocations for any services of network utility operators or landowners, such consents will be obtained before construction commences in the relevant area, and any effects of those relocations would be considered at that time. The same applies to any alteration of consents if required.

(b) Network infrastructure owned and operated by Watercare Services is located within the designations. An operating agreement will be developed by the NZTA and Watercare Services which will include appropriate notification and access protocols where works are to be undertaken by either network operator on or adjacent to Watercare Services infrastructure within the designations.

21) PI.1 A community liaison person shall be appointed by the NZTA for the duration of the construction phase of the Project to be the main and readily accessible point of contact for persons affected by the Project. The liaison person’s name and contact details shall be made available in the CEMP and on site signage by the NZTA. This person must be reasonably available for on-going consultation on all matters of concern to affected parties arising from the Project.

22) PI.2 The NZTA shall prepare and implement a Communications Plan that sets out procedures detailing how the public, Ministry of Social Development, Housing New Zealand Corporation and other organisations representing the particular demographic characteristics of the community (including but not limited to Primary Health Organisations, general practitioners, youth, education organisations, aged care groups and groups representing ethnic and migrant communities) will be communicated with throughout the construction and monitoring periods (as prescribed in the designation and consent conditions).

In preparing the Communications Plan, the NZTA will liaise with Auckland Council to access its community liaison databases. The Communications Plan will include details of:
(a) The site or Project manager and the community liaison person, including their contact details (phone, facsimile, postal address, email address);
(b) In accordance with these Conditions, the database of the key construction activities and monitoring requirements that are the subject of the Communications Plan;
(c) The database of stakeholders and residents who will be communicated with;
(d) Communication methods, an assessment of how these methods reach the different audience/stakeholder groups (including those methods set out in Condition CEMP.6), and detail on when each of these methods will be used (e.g. regular communication or event specific methods);
(e) The appointed specialist in Environmental and Occupational Medicine, including contact details (as per Condition SO.13);
(f) Any stakeholder specific communication plans required; and
(g) Monitoring and review procedures for the Communications Plan.

The Communications Plan shall be written in accordance with the external communication procedures set out in the CEMP and provided at least 20 working days prior to construction.
commencing, to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council, Working Liaison Group and the Community Liaison Group(s) established by Condition PI.5. The structure of the communication groups set out in these conditions is attached as Figure PI.A.

23) PI.5 The NZTA shall establish Community Liaison Group(s) at least two months prior to construction commencing in each of the following key construction areas:

(a) Te Atatu (including the SH16 Causeway)
(b) Waterview (including works to St Lukes on SH16 and on the Waterview Estuary and Causeway Bridges)
(c) Owairaka

and hold regular meetings (at least three monthly) throughout the construction period and up to 24 months following construction completion relevant to these areas (or less if the members of the Group agree), so that on-going monitoring information can continue to be disseminated.

The Community Liaison Group(s) shall be open to all interested parties within the Project area including, but not limited to the following groups:

(a) Auckland Council and Auckland Transport;
(b) Educational facilities within the Project area (including schools, kindergartens, childcare facilities and Unitec Institute of Technology);
(c) Relevant community/ environmental groups (including but not limited to Friends of Oakley Creek, Star Mills Preservation Group, Cycle Action Auckland and representatives from those organisations identified in the Communications Plan (as required by Condition PI.2) and local residents;
(d) Department of Conservation;
(e) Local Boards;
(f) Iwi groups with Mana Whenua;
(g) Public transport providers; and
(h) Housing New Zealand Corporation.

Advice note: The purpose of the Community Liaison Group(s) is to provide a regular forum through which information about the Project can be provided to the community, and an opportunity for concerns or issues to be raised.

24) V.11 Prior to commencement of works adjacent to Traherne Island, the NZTA shall employ a suitably qualified and experienced plant translocation expert to uplift and protect all areas of Mimulus repens on Traherne Island that will be affected by the work. The Mimulus repens shall be relocated to suitable and safe habitat away from the works area, or otherwise held and protected for the duration of the works in the vicinity of their original location and be replanted back at that location (or in close proximity to it) upon completion of the works. The location of the recipient sites will be determined in consultation with the Department of Conservation and in general accordance with the Traherne Island Natural Heritage Restoration Plan (2009 – 2014). Trials shall be undertaken to identify appropriate recipient sites, with these trial sites being monitored for a period of no less than 5 years, or until their failure. Where possible, recipient sites shall be located in currently weed-free areas. Where recipient sites may potentially be affected by weeds, they shall be subject to an on-going weed management plan. Should translocation attempts fail at all trial sites then the NZTA, in consultation with DOC, shall determine an alternative appropriate form of mitigation.

25) V.17 Prior to commencement of works adjacent to or on Traherne Island, the NZTA shall employ a suitably qualified and experienced ecologist for the preparation of a Traherne Island Weed and Pest Management Plan. The Plan shall be prepared in consultation with the
Department of Conservation and be submitted to the Auckland Council for approval at least 20 working days prior to construction commencing.

26) A.1 The NZTA shall finalise, and implement through the CEMP, ECOMP submitted with this application to include the matters set out in Conditions A.2 to A.6.

27) E.1 The NZTA shall inform the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council in writing at least 10 working days before the start date of the works authorised by this Consent.

28) E.2 Prior to commencement of works, in each period between October 1 and April 30 that this Consent is exercised, a pre-construction site meeting between Auckland Council and relevant parties, including the primary contractor, shall be conducted. The approved Contractors Erosion and Sediment Control Plan (CESCP) as per Condition E.5 of this Consent shall be made available and discussed at the pre-construction meeting.

29) E.5 Prior to the commencement of works for each specific area and/or activity, a “Contractors Erosion and Sediment Control Plan” (CESCP) shall be prepared. This document shall follow the principles and practices within Technical Report G.22 Erosion and Sediment Control Plan and shall detail any specific variations from that report. The CESCPs shall include, but not be limited to:

(a) Contour information at suitable intervals;
(b) Erosion and sediment controls including specific pond design;
(c) Supporting calculations;
(d) Catchment boundaries for the sediment controls;
(e) Location of the works, and cut and fill operations;
(f) Details of construction methods to be employed, including timing and duration;
(g) A programme for managing exposed area, including progressive stabilisation considerations;
(h) The identification of appropriately qualified and experienced staff to manage the environmental issues onsite;
(i) The identification of staff who have clearly defined roles and responsibilities to monitor compliance with the Consent Conditions and CESCP;
(j) Provision of details of a chain of responsibility for managing environmental issues and details of responsible personnel; and
(k) The establishment of a sediment control team (including representatives from the contractor, Auckland Council and the NZTA) to meet and review erosion and sediment control on a weekly basis.

30) E.6 For each specific area of works, a CESCP shall be submitted a minimum of 20 working days prior to earthworks commencing, for the written approval of the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council, which shall be obtained prior to earthworks commencing. The approved CESCP shall be implemented accordingly.

31) E.7 Any amendments to the CESCPs must be approved by the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council in writing at least 10 working days prior to any amendment being implemented.

32) E.12 All perimeter controls shall be operational before earthworks begin.

33) E.16 Prior to the commissioning of chemical treatments for sediment management purposes (as per Condition E.17), the NZTA shall provide the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council with a Chemical Treatment Plan (CTP), for confirmation by the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council that it will achieve the standards set out in the CESCP required under Condition E.6. The CTP shall follow the principles and chemical
treatment details outlined within the Technical Report G.22 *Erosion and Sediment Control Plan* and shall include as a minimum:

(a) Specific design details of the chemical treatment system;
(b) Monitoring, maintenance (including post-storm) and contingency programme (including a Record Sheet);
(c) Details of optimum dosage (including assumptions);
(d) Results of the initial flocculation trial which will build on the information within Technical Report G.22 *Erosion and Sediment Control Plan*;
(e) A spill contingency plan;
(f) Details of the person or bodies that will hold responsibility for long-term maintenance of the flocculation treatment system and the organisational structure which will support this structure.

Any amendments to the CTP shall be approved by the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council, in writing, at least 10 working days prior to implementation.

34) C.1 The NZTA shall provide to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council plans and drawings (including dimensioned, cross sections, elevations and site plans of all areas of proposed reclamation (including associated permanent and temporary CMA occupation), permanent structures and temporary structures) at least 20 working days before the proposed date of commencement of the construction of the reclamation, bridge piers or temporary structure.

35) M.1 The NZTA shall finalise and implement through the CEMP, the ECOMP submitted with this application. The ECOMP shall be revised to accurately reflect the conditions of this consent and changes to the details of construction processes prior to construction commencing. The ECOMP shall include, but not be limited to, details of:

(a) Monitoring of marine habitats and ecological values;
(b) Trigger event criteria for undertaking additional monitoring;
(c) Procedures for responding to accidental discharges to the marine environment;
(d) Complaints investigation, monitoring and reporting; and
(e) The identification of staff and contractors’ responsibilities.

**CONSTRUCTION CONDITIONS**

36) CEMP.4 The CEMP shall be implemented and maintained throughout the entire construction period.

37) CEMP.5 A copy of the CEMP shall be held on each construction site at all times and be available for inspection on request by the Auckland Council.

38) CEMP.8 All storage of material and equipment associated with the construction works shall take place within the boundaries of the designation.

39) CEMP.12 The CEMP shall be reviewed by the NZTA at least annually or as a result of a material change to the Project. The review shall take into consideration:

(a) Compliance with designation and consent conditions;
(b) Any changes to construction methods;
(c) Key changes to roles and responsibilities within the Project;
(d) Changes in industry best practice standards;
(e) Changes in legal or other requirements;
(f) Results of inspections, monitoring, incidents, corrective actions, internal or external
Public complaints.

A summary of the review process undertaken shall be kept by the NZTA, provided annually to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council and made available (with any related data) to the Auckland Council upon request.

40) CEMP.13 Following the review process (as described in Condition CEMP.12), the CEMP may require updating. Any material change proposed to the CEMP (including appended Management Plans) shall be submitted for approval to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council at least 10 working days prior to the proposed changes taking effect.

Advice Note: Material change will include amendment to any base information informing the CEMP or any process, procedure or method of the CEMP (such as the environmental constraints map, compliance monitoring process, complaints procedure or mitigation/ remedial methods identified) which has the potential to increase adverse effects on a particular value. For clarity changes to personnel and contact schedules do not constitute a material change.

41) PI.3 At least 15 working days prior to the commencement of construction, and at 15 working day intervals thereafter, or as required depending on the scale of works and effects on the community, advertisements will be placed in the relevant local newspapers and community noticeboards (as identified in Condition CEMP.6(b)) detailing the nature of the forthcoming works, the location of the forthcoming works and hours of operation. All advertisements will include reference to a 24 hour toll free complaints telephone number. Where relevant, advertisements will also include but not be limited to details of:

   (a) Any traffic disruptions or controls or changes to property access, pedestrian/ cycle routes and bus stops; and

   (b) Any other construction activities, including night time works, blasting, and structure-borne noise, as identified in the conditions.

42) PI.4 The NZTA shall manage, investigate and resolve (as appropriate) all complaints for the duration of the construction works in accordance with the environmental complaints section of the CEMP. The implementation strategy for complaints includes:

   (a) A 24 hour toll free telephone number and email address, which shall be provided to all potentially affected residents and businesses. The number shall be available and answered at all times during the entire duration of the works for the receipt and management of any complaints. A sign containing the contact details shall be located at each site specific work activity;

   (b) The NZTA shall maintain a record of all complaints made to this number, email or any site office, including the full details of the complainant and the nature of the complaint;

   (c) Upon receiving a complaint, within 10 days of complaint receipt, a formal written response will be provided to the complainant and Auckland Council;

   (d) The NZTA shall undertake corrective action where necessary to resolve any problem identified. All action taken and relevant information shall be documented. For the avoidance of doubt, ‘where necessary’ refers to where the works are not being carried out in accordance with conditions of this designation;

   (e) Where issues and complaints about effects cannot be resolved through the CEMP complaints management process, a meeting shall be held between the NZTA, the complainant and the Auckland Council representative(s) to discuss the complaint and ways in which the issue may be resolved. If parties cannot agree on a resolution, an independent qualified mediator will be appointed, agreeable to all parties and at the shared cost of all parties, to undertake mediation of the dispute or concerns; and
(f) All information collected in Conditions PI.4 (b), (c) and (d) shall be detailed in a Construction Compliance Report (including the means by which the complaint was addressed, whether resolution was reached and how the response was carried out) prepared by the NZTA. This Report shall be submitted to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council on a quarterly basis commencing at the beginning of the works and for the entire duration of construction.

43) PI.6 The Community Liaison Group(s) shall be provided opportunities to review and comment on the following (amongst other things):
(a) The Outline Plan of Works detailing designs for the northern and southern ventilation buildings and stacks (the outcomes of this consultation will be reported in accordance with the processes required in DC.8(n) and DC.9(k);
(b) The Open Space Restoration Plans (as required by Condition OS.3);
(c) Finalisation and amendment to Urban Design and Landscape Plans (UDL Plans) (as required by Condition LV.1);
(d) The Oakley Inlet Heritage Plan (as required by Conditions OS.5(b)(i) and ARCH.6);
(e) The detail of the Oakley Creek restoration (as required by Condition STW.20);
(f) Publicly available results of environmental monitoring as required by the designation and/or these Consents (e.g. air quality monitoring); and
(g) The finalisation of the STEM assessment required by CEMP.6(o) and a schedule of trees that are required to be removed for consideration of timber use in heritage projects as required by Condition SO.7.

Advice Note: Attention is drawn to the Vegetation conditions concerning identification and protection of Significant Vegetation and Valued Vegetation.

(h) Detailed design features of the Te Atatu underpass (e.g. lighting and architectural treatment).

44) A.2 The NZTA shall provide temporary high tide roosting structure(s) adjacent to the Causeway during construction, in accordance with the ECOMP, to the satisfaction of the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council. The temporary bird roosts shall be sized in accordance with the ECOMP, and located within the Waterview Estuary adjacent to the southern side of the causeway and in the vicinity of the existing Causeway bridge.

45) A.5 Vegetation clearance at Traherne Island shall occur outside the bird breeding season of September to December. Elsewhere, vegetation clearance shall occur outside the bird breeding season of September to December where practicable.

46) E.3 Erosion and sediment control shall be in general accordance with the plans and information submitted with the application, and in particular, Technical Report G.22 Erosion and Sediment Control Plan, subject to such amendments as may be required by the following conditions of this Consent.

47) E.8 Erosion and sediment control measures shall be constructed and maintained in accordance with the ARC Technical Report 90 (TP90) (and any amendments to that document), except where a higher standard is detailed in the documents referred to in Conditions E.3 and E.5 above, in which case the higher standard shall apply.

48) E.10 Prior to any decision to discharge waters that have collected in coffer dam sumps to the coastal marine area (CMA), the following procedures shall be followed;
(a) Sump waters shall be tested for pH and turbidity; and
(b) Discharge to the CMA shall only be permitted where;
   (i) pH does not exceed a threshold of pH 8.5; and
(ii) turbidity or suspended solids concentrations do not exceed a threshold, to be agreed between NZTA and the, Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council prior to use of temporary coffer dams.

In the event that measured pH and/or turbidity exceeds these thresholds, the sump waters shall be treated to the appropriate standard prior to discharge to the CMA or shall be disposed of to an approved location outside of the CMA. The proposed treatment methodology shall be included within the CESP and shall be submitted to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council for its approval at least 20 working days prior to implementation.

49) E.11 All ‘cleanwater’ runoff from stabilised surfaces, including catchment areas above the site, shall be diverted away from earthwork areas via a stabilised system, so as to prevent surface erosion.

50) E.14 The NZTA shall ensure that procedures are adopted to prevent the deposition of slurry, clay or other materials on the roads by vehicles leaving the site. Should the exercise of this Consent result in material being deposited on the road, that material shall be removed immediately to the satisfaction of the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council.

51) E.17 All sediment retention ponds and decanting earth bunds are to be chemically treated in accordance with the CTP required under Condition E.16 of this consent.

52) E.19 A copy of the “as-built(s)” and approved CESCPs shall be kept on site, and all erosion and sediment control measures (including staging boundaries and particularly the extent of exposed areas) shall be updated as soon as practicable as changes are made. As-built plans shall be accompanied by text detailing the relevant earthworks methodology, constraints and likely progressions, and shall be revised as required to enable clear interpretation as to the day to day operation and management of erosion and sediment controls.

53) E.21 The site shall be stabilised against erosion as soon as practicable, and in a progressive manner, as earthworks are finished over various areas of the site. Areas of bulk earthworks not actively worked for a period of two weeks shall be stabilised.

54) E.22 The NZTA shall ensure that the following earthworks shall be stabilised as soon as practicable after completion thereof, or within 5 working days of completion, whichever shall occur first:
(a) Temporary erosion and sediment controls; and
(b) Construction yards.

55) E.23 No surface earthworks on the site shall be undertaken between 1 May and 30 September in any year, without the written approval of the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council. Earthworks in this regard refers to bulk earthworks (cut/fill/waste) associated with the site.

56) C.2 Construction shall be undertaken in accordance with the construction methodology detailed in the application, specifically Technical Report G.23 Coastal Works and Technical Report G.22 Erosion and Sediment Control Plan. The construction methodology shall include:
(a) The use of temporary coffer dams to create dry working areas;
(b) Realignment of sections of existing low-tide channels in Oakley inlet and Waterview Estuary that will be directly affected by the reclamation works;
(c) Removal of mangroves to provide construction and ground-treatment access, placement of temporary coffer dams and to facilitate natural channel migration in the
Whau River side drainage channel (east of Rosebank Domain);

(d) Installation or removal works to be undertaken at the best practicable time to minimise potential sediment disturbance.

57) C.3 The NZTA shall notify the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council in writing of the proposed commencement date of the reclamation, structures and/or channel realignment works at least 10 working days prior to the proposed start date.

58) C.6 The NZTA shall maintain the site in good order and shall remedy all damage and disturbance caused by vehicle traffic, plant and equipment to the foreshore during construction, to the satisfaction of the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council.

59) C.7 Removal or pruning of vegetation in the CMA shall be limited to the areas of permanent and temporary occupation as shown on the Waterview Connection Project Assessment of Environmental Effects Plan Set F.12 and F.13 submitted with the application (ref Schedule A, rows 13 and 14). Removal of mangroves shall be implemented in accordance with the principles detailed in the Ecological Management Plan.

60) M.10 The NZTA shall maintain the coastal marine area free of any gross litter, rubbish and debris during construction.

61) M.11 Prior to excavation of sediment from the marine habitat remediation zone (MHRZ), mangrove vegetation will be removed from the sediment and disposed of at an appropriate offsite facility. The excavated sediment shall be stockpiled within an adjacent dry working area. When the sediment is returned to the MHRZ it will be levelled out to tie in with the existing mudflat. Where a routine marine benthic habitat monitoring site is within an area of MHRZ, additional monitoring of the depth of sediment overlying the improved ground/mudcrete will also be undertaken.

62) M.12 The NZTA shall minimise the extent of the Causeway footprint to the greatest extent possible.

POST-CONSTRUCTION CONDITIONS

63) E.15 Notice shall be given to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council prior to any erosion and sediment control measures being removed and/or on completion of the works.

64) E.24 Revegetation/stabilisation shall be completed by 30 April in the year of bulk earthworks in accordance with measures detailed in the approved CESCP, unless a later date is approved in writing by the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council at least two weeks before 30 April.

65) C.4 The NZTA shall notify the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council in writing within 10 working days of the completion of each discrete area of reclamation, structures and/or channel realignment works.

66) C.8 The NZTA shall ensure the removal of all equipment, erosion and sediment control measures, surplus sediment and construction materials from the CMA within 20 working days following the completion of the construction works, to the satisfaction of the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council.
MONITORING

67) A.3 The NZTA shall employ a suitably qualified ecologist to undertake monitoring of the roosting areas located at:
(a) The existing high tide roost in Harbourview-Orangihina Park; and
(b) The temporary construction roosting structure(s) pursuant to Condition A.2.
Monitoring shall be undertaken on a monthly basis, with a monitoring report prepared on a quarterly basis. The monitoring report shall be made available to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council and Department of Conservation upon request.

68) A.4 Should the monitoring results indicate that the roosting sites have been abandoned, consultation shall be undertaken with the Department of Conservation and the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council to determine the need for and type of further management strategies (if any) required.

69) E.20 The NZTA shall carry out monitoring in accordance with the Technical Report G.22 Erosion and Sediment Control Plan and the approved CESCP and shall maintain records detailing:
(a) The monitoring undertaken;
(b) The erosion and sediment controls that required maintenance;
(c) The time when the maintenance was completed; and
(d) Areas of non-compliance with the erosion and sediment control monitoring plan (if any) and the reasons for the non-compliance.
This information shall be made available to the Auckland Council upon request.

70) C.12 On completion of the relevant stage of reclamion, the NZTA shall ensure that stockpiled chenier shell deposits from the northern side of the existing Causeway are reinstated to suitable locations along the northern side of the newly reclaimed Causeway in consultation with the Department of Conservation and the Auckland Council. The placement of the shell bank material shall be to the satisfaction of the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council. The movement of these reinstated shell deposits shall be monitored quarterly for the first year after placement to confirm they have been reworked by waves to form a contiguous shell bank by undertaking topographic survey transects at low tide and photographs to document the transition. The monitoring information shall be provided to the Auckland Council within 20 working days of completion of each phase of monitoring.

71) C.13 During preparation works in the CMA for ground improvement and reclamation works adjacent to the Rosebank Domain access road, mangroves required to be removed on the southern side of the existing drainage channel are to be extracted together with their root systems and removed from the CMA to facilitate the lateral migration of the channel to the south prior to infilling. The evolution of the channel shall be monitored by a baseline cross-section survey of the channel at two sites prior to construction, then monitoring the same sections every 2 months until 6 months after completion of the reclamation, together with photographs along the affected section, to confirm the natural migration of the channel is proceeding unimpeded by mangrove roots. The monitoring information shall be provided to the Auckland Council within 20 working days of completion of each phase of monitoring.

72) C.14 Following final excavation of each of the three (3) realigned sections of low-tide channels in Waterview Estuary and Oakley Inlet (two sites), these sites shall be monitored quarterly for one year after completion of the excavation, to confirm that the channel (thalweg and the transition sections with the unmodified channel) has reached a stable configuration. The monitoring can be achieved around low tide (average tide range) by an on-water visual reconnaissance, spot depth soundings and documented with photographs. The monitoring
information shall be provided to the Auckland Council within 20 working days of completion of each phase of monitoring.

73) C.15 Within a month of the closure of the Rosebank culvert under SH16 (adjacent to the Rosebank Westbound Off-ramp), the NZTA shall undertake a single tidal salinity survey on a high spring tide (High Water at or above 3.4 m at Port of Auckland) without significant prior rainfall, to confirm and document that tidal flushing of brackish waters occurs in the boardwalk area presently serviced by the culvert. Salinity, water depth and the length of time either side of high water that the area is effectively inundated shall be monitored at one site near the eastern end of the boardwalk section of the shared cycleway [WGS-84 Map ref: -36.87057° N, 174.67408° E]. The monitoring information shall be made available to the Auckland Council.

74) C.16 On the northern side of the Causeway, from just before the commencement of construction in the CMA for each section of works, until 6 months after completion of each section, the NZTA shall undertake every two (2) months or after a severe wave-storm, intertidal beach profile surveys down to the spring low-tide mark along offshore-directed transects (one off the centre of the construction section and one either side at 20 m away from the ends of the construction site) and photographs documenting the physical state of the seabed around the perimeter of the cofferdam. The monitoring information shall be made available to the Auckland Council. If the monitoring identifies that excessive erosion or accretion has occurred from corner or end effects of the construction section, as confirmed by a coastal processes expert, further seabed erosion control measures or a sediment by-passing method (for accretion) to reduce localised effects seaward of the temporary occupation or permanent occupation designation (whichever applies) shall be implemented as soon as practicable. Details of the proposed measures or methods shall be made available to Auckland Council prior to implementation.

75) M.2 The NZTA shall engage a suitably qualified ecologist to undertake a marine habitat monitoring programme, as described in Conditions M.3 to M.6.

76) M.3 The marine benthic habitat monitoring programme shall be undertaken every 6 months:
(a) At least 12 months prior to construction commencing, to allow for two baseline surveys to be undertaken;
(b) During construction; and
(c) For a maximum of 3 years following completion of the Project, or for a lesser time if the monitoring indicates no significant effects, as agreed with the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council.

77) M.4 The marine benthic habitat monitoring programme shall be undertaken in accordance with the details set out in the ECOMP and include:
(a) Sampling of the marine invertebrate community composition (collection of sediment cores to a depth of approximately 15cm);
(b) Sampling of the sediment surface (top 2cm) for sediment grain size; and
(c) Sampling of the sediment surface (top 2cm) for sediment quality (analysis of the concentration of copper, lead, zinc and polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons).

78) M.5 The marine benthic habitat monitoring shall be undertaken within sampling grids (50m x 30m) broadly established at the following locations:
(a) Two locations within Oakley Inlet;
(b) Four locations within Waterview Estuary; and
(c) Four locations north of the Causeway.
Specific locations and experimental design shall be detailed in the ECOMP, and the design
of the monitoring programme will be based on the *Estuarine Environmental Assessment and Monitoring: A National Protocol* (Cawthron 2002).

79) M.6 The NZTA shall undertake additional marine habitat monitoring in the event of a 'trigger event' for marine ecology habitats. For the purposes of this consent, a 'trigger event' for marine ecology habitats is defined in the ECOMP.

80) M.7 The NZTA shall review the marine habitat monitoring results (pursuant to Conditions M.3 to M.6) and in the event that potential adverse effects are identified, the NZTA shall develop and implement appropriate contingency plans and/or remedial measures.

**REPORTING**

81) M.8 The marine benthic habitat monitoring results shall be compiled by the NZTA, and a report provided to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council every 6 months.
EPA 10/2.042 – (ARC: 38346)

This document has been prepared in compliance with conditions of the “Final Report and Decision of the Board of Inquiry into the New Zealand Transport Agency Waterview Connection Proposal, Volume 2, Conditions of Consent”. Schedule B of Volume 2 identifies the Conditions relevant to this Consent by the code and number as referenced throughout this document. In the event of dispute, Schedule B of Volume 2 shall take precedence over this Consent.

Type: Coastal Consent

Description: Disturbance of Foreshore and Seabed (Sectors 4 and 5):

The use of motor vehicles in any CPA.

Duration: 10 years

Code: 
RC = Standard Resource Consent Conditions
CEMP = Construction Environmental Management Plan Conditions
PI = Public Information Conditions
V = Vegetation Conditions
C = Coastal Conditions
M = Marine Ecology Conditions

GENERAL CONDITIONS

1) RC.1 Except as modified by the conditions below, the works shall be undertaken in general accordance with the information provided by the New Zealand Transport Agency (NZTA), in the resource consent applications and the supporting documents (as detailed in Condition DC.1), and in the supplementary information provided in evidence by the NZTA.

2) RC.1A The NZTA shall implement the conditions of these consents in accordance with Schedule B, which sets out the Conditions that are to be applied to each consent including the duration of each consent.

3) RC.2 The Conditions of these consents may be reviewed by the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council, pursuant to Section 128 of the Resource Management Act 1991 (the Act), by the giving of notice pursuant to Section 129 of the Act, on the one year anniversary of the commencement of the consents and every year thereafter in order:

(a) To deal with any adverse effect on the environment which may arise from the exercise of the consent and which it is appropriate to deal with at a later stage; or

(b) To deal with any other adverse effect on the environment on which the exercise of the consent may have an influence.

4) RC.4 Any Management Plans submitted to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council for approval or certification may be submitted in stages to reflect any proposed staging of the physical works. Plans submitted shall clearly show the integration with adjacent stages and interrelated activities.

5) RC.5 In the event of any dispute, disagreement or inaction arising as to any Auckland Council
Manager certification/approvals required by the consent conditions, or as to the implementation of or monitoring required by the conditions, matters shall be referred in the first instance to the NZTA Regional State Highway Manager and to the Resource Consents Manager, Auckland Council to determine a process of resolution.

If a resolution cannot be agreed, then the matter may be referred to an independent appropriately qualified expert, agreeable to both parties, setting out the details of the matter to be referred for determination and the reasons the parties do not agree.

The independent appropriately qualified expert shall be appointed within 10 working days of the NZTA or Auckland Council giving notice of their intention to seek expert determination. The expert shall, as soon as possible, issue his or her decision on the matter. In making the decision, the expert shall be entitled to seek further information and hear from the parties as he or she sees fit.

Advice note: The dispute resolution process provided for in this condition does not prejudice any party’s right to take enforcement action in relation to the implementation of the designation conditions. However, the dispute resolution process will be applied before any formal enforcement action is taken by the Council except in urgent situations.

6) RC.6 Pursuant to Section 36(1)(d) of the RMA, the requiring authority is required to pay to Auckland Council any administrative charge for the carrying out by the local authority of its functions in relation to the administration, monitoring, and supervision of designation conditions.

7) RC.7 The servants of agents of Auckland Council shall be permitted to have access to relevant parts of the Project at all reasonable times for the purpose of carrying out inspections, investigations, tests, measurements and/or to take samples.

8) V.18 The NZTA shall implement the approved Traherne Island Weed and Pest Management Plan. Every 5 years, a suitably qualified and experienced ecologist engaged by NZTA shall review the plan in consultation with the Department of Conservation. The plan shall then be submitted to the Auckland Council for approval.

PRE-CONSTRUCTION CONDITIONS

9) RC.3 Within 3 months of the resource consents commencing for the Project (or at least 1 month prior to any Auckland Council approvals or certifications required by these Conditions, whichever is the earlier), the NZTA shall update and finalise to the satisfaction of the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council all drawings and Plans cited in Schedule A, together with a full set of the information and documentation referred to in Condition DC.1 and provide these to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council. At the same time the NZTA shall prepare to the satisfaction of Auckland Council, a document for each resource consent which sets out the resource consent and have attached to it in text format a comprehensive set of the conditions imposed by the Board of Inquiry in its Final Decision as summarised in Schedule B, inclusive of any standard conditions and advice notes.

In particular (but not limited to), the following Plans will need to be amended in light of the Final Conditions:

(a) F.2 Operational Scheme Plans (refer Schedule A, Row 3) require amendment detailing the amended location of the ventilation stacks and southern ventilation buildings;

(b) F.5 Construction Scheme Plans (refer Schedule A, Row 4) require amendment to detail changes to construction footprint for the amended location of ventilation stacks.
(c) F.6 Construction Yard Plans 101 and 107 (refer Schedule A, Row 7), detailing amendments to the Construction Yard 1 in light of the reconfiguration of this Yard and for Construction Yard 7 in light of the relocation of the northern ventilation stack (refer Schedule A, Row 34);

(d) F.8 Plans of Structures and Architectural Features (refer Schedule A, Row 9), detailing the amended location of the Northern Ventilation Stack and the design and location of the Southern Ventilation Building and Stack;

(e) The CNVMP (including flow diagram and the supplementary evidence produced by Ms Wilkening) (refer Schedule A, Rows 36, 37 and 39);

(f) Update to the areas of the Open Space Restoration Plans (Schedule A, Row 30) to:

(i) Extend these areas in geographic extent to provide for the works identified in the Management Plan notations identified in the OS Conditions (in particular OS.5 and OS.6). (e.g. these areas will (as relevant) include Eric Armishaw Park, Howlett Reserve and Waterview Esplanade Reserve); and

(ii) Exclude the operational area of designation required for the northern ventilation stack (as identified through the OPW process (refer Condition DC.8); and

(g) Schedule A, Row 28 the Plan detailing proposed open space impacts and replacements needs to be updated to recolour the two land parcels on Hendon Avenue (which are excluded from the replacement calculations) to ‘brown’ to confirm they are part of the operational impact and will not be returned as open space.

10) CEMP.1 Except where provided for in Condition CEMP.1A below, the NZTA shall update and finalise the draft Construction Environmental Management Plan (CEMP) including all the Management Plans which form part of the CEMP and are included as appendices, submitted with this application to ensure compliance with the consent and designation conditions imposed by the Board of Inquiry. The CEMP shall be provided to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council for review at least 20 working days prior to the commencement of works to certify compliance and consistency with the conditions. Construction shall not commence until certification is obtained.

Advice note: For clarity the CEMP will be updated and finalised in accordance with the conditions. Any amendments will be limited to reflecting the requirements of the conditions, specifying personnel, and completing the Environmental Risk Register.

Advice Note: Particular care must be taken with development and operation of Construction Yard 7. When the CEMP is being updated and finalised, consideration must be given to the contents of the draft SSCEMP prepared for Construction Yard 7 (Row 41, Schedule A) recognising changes required by inclusion of the ventilation stack in this yard.

11) CEMP.1A In the case of the trial embankment, where works will commence well in advance of the main construction works for the Causeway, the NZTA will provide to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council, a site-specific CEMP for review and approval at least 20 working days prior to commencement of the trial embankment works.

12) CEMP.1B For the purposes of staging works, as some works may commence well in advance of others, the NZTA may provide staged or site specific CEMPs for those works to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council. The NZTA shall consult with the Team Manager about the need and timing for any other site-specific or staged CEMPs and shall provide any required site-specific or staged CEMPs to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council for review at least 20 working days prior to commencement of such the specific stage (including enabling) or site works.

13) CEMP.2 The certification process of the CEMP (and its appendices) shall confirm that the CEMP
gives effect to the relevant conditions, as well as those matters in CEMP.6, and that it includes details of:

(a) Staff and contractors’ responsibilities;
(b) Training requirements for employees, sub-contractors and visitors;
(c) Environmental incident and emergency management;
(d) Communication and interface procedures (in accordance with the Communication Plan required under Condition PI.2);
(e) Environmental complaints management (including the procedures required under Condition PI.4);
(f) Compliance monitoring;
(g) Reporting (including detail on the frequency of reporting to the Auckland Council);
(h) Environmental auditing; and
(i) Corrective action.

14) CEMP.3 The management of key environmental effects associated with the construction phase of the Project is detailed within environmental management plans that are included in the CEMP as appendices. This suite of management plans as shown on Figure CEMP.A comprises:

(a) Construction Noise and Vibration Management Plan (CNVMP);
(b) Construction Air Quality Management Plan (CAQMP);
(c) Erosion and Sediment Control Plan (ESCP);
(d) Temporary Stormwater Management Plan (TSMP);
(e) Ecological Management Plan (ECOMP);
(f) Groundwater Management Plan (GWMP);
(g) Settlement Effects Management Plan (SEMP);
(h) Contaminated Soils Management Plan (CSMP);
(i) Hazardous Substances Management Plan (HSMP);
(j) Archaeological Site Management Plan (ASMP);
(k) Construction Traffic Management Plan (CTMP);
(l) Concrete Batching and Crushing Plant Management Plan (CBCPMP);
(m) Electrical Infrastructure Site Development and Construction Management Plan (EISDCMP) (to be prepared in accordance with Condition CEMP.15);
(n) Waste Management Plan (to be prepared in accordance with Condition CEMP.10);
and
(o) Temporary Construction Lighting Management Plan (to be prepared in accordance with Condition L.2).

15) CEMP.6 The finalised CEMP shall include specific details on demolition, construction and management of all works associated with the Project. The certification process of the CEMP shall confirm that the CEMP includes details of the following:

(a) Details of the site or Project manager and the community liaison person, including their contact details (phone, facsimile, postal address, email address);
(b) The location of large notice boards that clearly identify the NZTA and the Project name, together with the name, telephone, email address and address for service of the site or Project manager and the community liaison person;
(c) An outline construction programme of the work indicating in particular likely time
(d) The hours of work, which should reflect the need to ensure that residents enjoy reasonable freedom from noisy or intrusive construction activity in their neighbourhood at night, on Sundays and during public holidays;

(e) Measures to be adopted to maintain the land affected by the works in a tidy condition in terms of disposal/storage of rubbish, storage and unloading of building materials and similar construction activities;

(f) Location of worker’s offices and conveniences (e.g. portaloos);

(g) Procedures of controlling sediment run-off, dust and the removal of soil, debris and demolition and construction materials from public roads or places. Dust mitigation measures should include use of water sprays to control dust nuisance on dry or windy days;

(h) Methods to stabilise ingress and egress points to construction sites, to the standard required by ARC Technical Publication 90 (Nov 2007);

16) CEMP.10 The NZTA shall finalise and implement the Hazardous Substances Management Plan (HSMP), through the CEMP (as per Condition CEMP.1), submitted with this application, prior to works commencing on site. The certification process of the CEMP shall confirm that the HSMP clearly identifies the requirements for proper storage, handling, transport and disposal of hazardous substances during the construction phase of the Project and confirm that there shall be no storage of explosives on the Project site.

17) CEMP.11 The NZTA shall develop and implement a Waste Management Plan in accordance with the waste management principles, controls and methods set out in the CEMP. The Plan shall be provided to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council and be implemented throughout the entire construction period.

18) CEMP.15 The NZTA will be responsible for all service relocations required for construction of the Project. The NZTA shall liaise with the providers of infrastructure service networks (including, but not limited to water, gas, stormwater, wastewater, power and telecommunications), and private property owners with on-site services to develop methodologies and timing for necessary services relocation required for the Project, with the objective of minimising disruption to the operation of these service networks and on-site services.

Advice note:

(a) It is noted that if separate consents are required for relocations for any services of network utility operators or landowners, such consents will be obtained before construction commences in the relevant area, and any effects of those relocations would be considered at that time. The same applies to any alteration of consents if required.

(b) Network infrastructure owned and operated by Watercare Services is located within the designations. An operating agreement will be developed by the NZTA and Watercare Services which will include appropriate notification and access protocols where works are to be undertaken by either network operator on or adjacent to Watercare Services infrastructure within the designations.

19) PI.1 A community liaison person shall be appointed by the NZTA for the duration of the construction phase of the Project to be the main and readily accessible point of contact for persons affected by the Project. The liaison person’s name and contact details shall be made available in the CEMP and on site signage by the NZTA. This person must be reasonably available for on-going consultation on all matters of concern to affected parties arising from the Project.
20) PI.2 The NZTA shall prepare and implement a Communications Plan that sets out procedures detailing how the public, Ministry of Social Development, Housing New Zealand Corporation and other organisations representing the particular demographic characteristics of the community (including but not limited to Primary Health Organisations, general practitioners, youth, education organisations, aged care groups and groups representing ethnic and migrant communities) will be communicated with throughout the construction and monitoring periods (as prescribed in the designation and consent conditions).

In preparing the Communications Plan, the NZTA will liaise with Auckland Council to access its community liaison databases. The Communications Plan will include details of:

(a) The site or Project manager and the community liaison person, including their contact details (phone, facsimile, postal address, email address);

(b) In accordance with these Conditions, the database of the key construction activities and monitoring requirements that are the subject of the Communications Plan;

(c) The database of stakeholders and residents who will be communicated with;

(d) Communication methods, an assessment of how these methods reach the different audience/stakeholder groups (including those methods set out in Condition CEMP.6), and detail on when each of these methods will be used (e.g. regular communication or event specific methods);

(e) The appointed specialist in Environmental and Occupational Medicine, including contact details (as per Condition SO.13);

(f) Any stakeholder specific communication plans required; and

(g) Monitoring and review procedures for the Communications Plan.

The Communications Plan shall be written in accordance with the external communication procedures set out in the CEMP and provided at least 20 working days prior to construction commencing, to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council, Working Liaison Group and the Community Liaison Group(s) established by Condition PI.5. The structure of the communication groups set out in these conditions is attached as Figure PI.A.

21) PI.5 The NZTA shall establish Community Liaison Group(s) at least two months prior to construction commencing in each of the following key construction areas:

(a) Te Atatu (including the SH16 Causeway)

(b) Waterview (including works to St Lukes on SH16 and on the Waterview Estuary and Causeway Bridges)

(c) Owairaka

and hold regular meetings (at least three monthly) throughout the construction period and up to 24 months following construction completion relevant to these areas (or less if the members of the Group agree), so that on-going monitoring information can continue to be disseminated.

The Community Liaison Group(s) shall be open to all interested parties within the Project area including, but not limited to the following groups:

(a) Auckland Council and Auckland Transport;

(b) Educational facilities within the Project area (including schools, kindergartens, childcare facilities and Unitec Institute of Technology);

(c) Relevant community/environmental groups (including but not limited to Friends of Oakley Creek, Star Mills Preservation Group, Cycle Action Auckland and representatives from those organisations identified in the Communications Plan (as required by Condition PI.2) and local residents;

(d) Department of Conservation;
Local Boards; 
(f) Iwi groups with Mana Whenua; 
(g) Public transport providers; and 
(h) Housing New Zealand Corporation.

Advice note: The purpose of the Community Liaison Group(s) is to provide a regular forum through which information about the Project can be provided to the community, and an opportunity for concerns or issues to be raised.

Prior to commencement of works adjacent to or on Traherne Island, the NZTA shall employ a suitably qualified and experienced ecologist for the preparation of a Traherne Island Weed and Pest Management Plan. The Plan shall be prepared in consultation with the Department of Conservation and be submitted to the Auckland Council for approval at least 20 working days prior to construction commencing.

CONSTRUCTION CONDITIONS

23) CEMP.4 The CEMP shall be implemented and maintained throughout the entire construction period.
24) CEMP.5 A copy of the CEMP shall be held on each construction site at all times and be available for inspection on request by the Auckland Council.
25) CEMP.8 All storage of material and equipment associated with the construction works shall take place within the boundaries of the designation.
26) CEMP.12 The CEMP shall be reviewed by the NZTA at least annually or as a result of a material change to the Project. The review shall take into consideration:
   (a) Compliance with designation and consent conditions;
   (b) Any changes to construction methods;
   (c) Key changes to roles and responsibilities within the Project;
   (d) Changes in industry best practice standards;
   (e) Changes in legal or other requirements;
   (f) Results of inspections, monitoring, incidents, corrective actions, internal or external assessments; and
   (g) Public complaints.

A summary of the review process undertaken shall be kept by the NZTA, provided annually to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council and made available (with any related data) to the Auckland Council upon request.

27) CEMP.13 Following the review process (as described in Condition CEMP.12), the CEMP may require updating. Any material change proposed to the CEMP (including appended Management Plans) shall be submitted for approval to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council at least 10 working days prior to the proposed changes taking effect.'

Advice Note: Material change will include amendment to any base information informing the CEMP or any process, procedure or method of the CEMP (such as the environmental constraints map, compliance monitoring process, complaints procedure or mitigation / remedial methods identified) which has the potential to increase adverse effects on a particular value. For clarity changes to personnel and contact schedules do not constitute a material change.

28) PI.3 At least 15 working days prior to the commencement of construction, and at 15 working day intervals thereafter, or as required depending on the scale of works and effects on the community, advertisements will be placed in the relevant local newspapers and community
noticeboards (as identified in Condition CEMP.6(b)) detailing the nature of the forthcoming works, the location of the forthcoming works and hours of operation. All advertisements will include reference to a 24 hour toll free complaints telephone number. Where relevant, advertisements will also include but not be limited to details of:

(a) Any traffic disruptions or controls or changes to property access, pedestrian/ cycle routes and bus stops; and

(b) Any other construction activities, including night time works, blasting, and structure-borne noise, as identified in the conditions.

29) PI.4 The NZTA shall manage, investigate and resolve (as appropriate) all complaints for the duration of the construction works in accordance with the environmental complaints section of the CEMP. The implementation strategy for complaints includes:

(a) A 24 hour toll free telephone number and email address, which shall be provided to all potentially affected residents and businesses. The number shall be available and answered at all times during the entire duration of the works for the receipt and management of any complaints. A sign containing the contact details shall be located at each site specific work activity;

(b) The NZTA shall maintain a record of all complaints made to this number, email or any site office, including the full details of the complainant and the nature of the complaint;

(c) Upon receiving a complaint, within 10 days of complaint receipt, a formal written response will be provided to the complainant and Auckland Council;

(d) The NZTA shall undertake corrective action where necessary to resolve any problem identified. All action taken and relevant information shall be documented. For the avoidance of doubt, ‘where necessary’ refers to where the works are not being carried out in accordance with conditions of this designation;

(e) Where issues and complaints about effects cannot be resolved through the CEMP complaints management process, a meeting shall be held between the NZTA, the complainant and the Auckland Council representative(s) to discuss the complaint and ways in which the issue may be resolved. If parties cannot agree on a resolution, an independent qualified mediator will be appointed, agreeable to all parties and at the shared cost of all parties, to undertake mediation of the dispute or concerns; and

(f) All information collected in Conditions PI.4 (b), (c) and (d) shall be detailed in a Construction Compliance Report (including the means by which the complaint was addressed, whether resolution was reached and how the response was carried out) prepared by the NZTA. This Report shall be submitted to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council on a quarterly basis commencing at the beginning of the works and for the entire duration of construction.

30) PI.6 The Community Liaison Group(s) shall be provided opportunities to review and comment on the following (amongst other things):

(a) The Outline Plan of Works detailing designs for the northern and southern ventilation buildings and stacks (the outcomes of this consultation will be reported in accordance with the processes required in DC.8(n) and DC.9(k);

(b) The Open Space Restoration Plans (as required by Condition OS.3);

(c) Finalisation and amendment to Urban Design and Landscape Plans (UDL Plans) (as required by Condition LV.1);

(d) The Oakley Inlet Heritage Plan (as required by Conditions OS.5(b)(i) and ARCH.6);

(e) The detail of the Oakley Creek restoration (as required by Condition STW.20);

(f) Publicly available results of environmental monitoring as required by the designation
(g) The finalisation of the STEM assessment required by CEMP.6(o) and a schedule of
trees that are required to be removed for consideration of timber use in heritage
projects as required by Condition SO.7.

Advice Note: Attention is drawn to the Vegetation conditions concerning identification
and protection of Significant Vegetation and Valued Vegetation.

(h) Detailed design features of the Te Atatu underpass (e.g. lighting and architectural
treatment).

31) C.2 Construction shall be undertaken in accordance with the construction methodology detailed
G.22 Erosion and Sediment Control Plan. The construction methodology shall include:

(a) The use of temporary coffer dams to create dry working areas;

(b) Realignment of sections of existing low-tide channels in Oakley inlet and Waterview
Estuary that will be directly affected by the reclamation works;

(c) Removal of mangroves to provide construction and ground-treatment access,
placement of temporary coffer dams and to facilitate natural channel migration in the
Whau River side drainage channel (east of Rosebank Domain);

(d) Installation or removal works to be undertaken at the best practicable time to
minimise potential sediment disturbance.

32) C.3 The NZTA shall notify the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council in writing
of the proposed commencement date of the reclamation, structures and/or channel
realignment works at least 10 working days prior to the proposed start date.

33) C.6 The NZTA shall maintain the site in good order and shall remedy all damage and
disturbance caused by vehicle traffic, plant and equipment to the foreshore during
construction, to the satisfaction of the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland
Council.

34) C.7 Removal or pruning of vegetation in the CMA shall be limited to the areas of permanent and
temporary occupation as shown on the Waterview Connection Project Assessment of
Environmental Effects Plan Set F.12 and F.13 submitted with the application (ref Schedule
A, rows 13 and 14). Removal of mangroves shall be implemented in accordance with the

POST-CONSTRUCTION CONDITIONS

35) C.4 The NZTA shall notify the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council in writing
within 10 working days of the completion of each discrete area of reclamation, structures
and/or channel realignment works.

36) C.8 The NZTA shall ensure the removal of all equipment, erosion and sediment control
measures, surplus sediment and construction materials from the CMA within 20 working
days following the completion of the construction works, to the satisfaction of the Major
Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council.
MONITORING

37) C.12 On completion of the relevant stage of reclamation, the NZTA shall ensure that stockpiled chenier shell deposits from the northern side of the existing Causeway are reinstated to suitable locations along the northern side of the newly reclaimed Causeway in consultation with the Department of Conservation and the Auckland Council. The placement of the shell bank material shall be to the satisfaction of the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council. The movement of these reinstated shell deposits shall be monitored quarterly for the first year after placement to confirm they have been reworked by waves to form a contiguous shell bank by undertaking topographic survey transects at low tide and photographs to document the transition. The monitoring information shall be provided to the Auckland Council within 20 working days of completion of each phase of monitoring.

38) C.14 Following final excavation of each of the three (3) realigned sections of low-tide channels in Waterview Estuary and Oakley Inlet (two sites), these sites shall be monitored quarterly for one year after completion of the excavation, to confirm that the channel (thalweg and the transition sections with the unmodified channel) has reached a stable configuration. The monitoring can be achieved around low tide (average tide range) by an on-water visual reconnaissance, spot depth soundings and documented with photographs. The monitoring information shall be provided to the Auckland Council within 20 working days of completion of each phase of monitoring.

39) C.15 Within a month of the closure of the Rosebank culvert under SH16 (adjacent to the Rosebank Westbound Off-ramp), the NZTA shall undertake a single tidal salinity survey on a high spring tide (High Water at or above 3.4 m at Port of Auckland) without significant prior rainfall, to confirm and document that tidal flushing of brackish waters occurs in the boardwalk area presently serviced by the culvert. Salinity, water depth and the length of time either side of high water that the area is effectively inundated shall be monitored at one site near the eastern end of the boardwalk section of the shared cycleway [WGS-84 Map ref: -36.87057° N, 174.67408° E]. The monitoring information shall be made available to the Auckland Council.

40) C.16 On the northern side of the Causeway, from just before the commencement of construction in the CMA for each section of works, until 6 months after completion of each section, the NZTA shall undertake every two (2) months or after a severe wave-storm, intertidal beach profile surveys down to the spring low-tide mark along offshore-directed transects (one off the centre of the construction section and one either side at 20 m away from the ends of the construction site) and photographs documenting the physical state of the seabed around the perimeter of the cofferdam. The monitoring information shall be made available to the Auckland Council. If the monitoring identifies that excessive erosion or accretion has occurred from corner or end effects of the construction section, as confirmed by a coastal processes expert, further seabed erosion control measures or a sediment by-passing method (for accretion) to reduce localised effects seaward of the temporary occupation or permanent occupation designation (whichever applies) shall be implemented as soon as practicable. Details of the proposed measures or methods shall be made available to Auckland Council prior to implementation.

41) M.6 The NZTA shall undertake additional marine habitat monitoring in the event of a 'trigger event' for marine ecology habitats. For the purposes of this consent, a 'trigger event' for marine ecology habitats is defined in the ECOMP.

42) M.7 The NZTA shall review the marine habitat monitoring results (pursuant to Conditions M.3 to M.6) and in the event that potential adverse effects are identified, the NZTA shall develop
and implement appropriate contingency plans and/or remedial measures.

REPORTING

43) M.8 The marine benthic habitat monitoring results shall be compiled by the NZTA, and a report provided to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council every 6 months.
EPA 10/2.043 – (ARC: 38347)

This document has been prepared in compliance with conditions of the “Final Report and Decision of the Board of Inquiry into the New Zealand Transport Agency Waterview Connection Proposal, Volume 2, Conditions of Consent”. Schedule B of Volume 2 identifies the Conditions relevant to this Consent by the code and number as referenced throughout this document. In the event of dispute, Schedule B of Volume 2 shall take precedence over this Consent.

Type: Coastal Consent

Description: Taking and use of inner coastal water (Sectors 2 and 4):

The taking and use of inner coastal water for use in the proposed coffer dam (construction of the reclamation).

Duration: 10 years

Code:

RC = Standard Resource Consent Conditions
CEMP = Construction Environmental Management Plan Conditions
PI = Public Information Conditions
V = Vegetation Conditions
C = Coastal Conditions
M = Marine Ecology Conditions

GENERAL CONDITIONS

1) RC.1 Except as modified by the conditions below, the works shall be undertaken in general accordance with the information provided by the New Zealand Transport Agency (NZTA), in the resource consent applications and the supporting documents (as detailed in Condition DC.1), and in the supplementary information provided in evidence by the NZTA.

2) RC.1A The NZTA shall implement the conditions of these consents in accordance with Schedule B, which sets out the Conditions that are to be applied to each consent including the duration of each consent.

3) RC.2 The Conditions of these consents may be reviewed by the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council, pursuant to Section 128 of the Resource Management Act 1991 (the Act), by the giving of notice pursuant to Section 129 of the Act, on the one year anniversary of the commencement of the consents and every year thereafter in order:

(a) To deal with any adverse effect on the environment which may arise from the exercise of the consent and which it is appropriate to deal with at a later stage; or

(b) To deal with any other adverse effect on the environment on which the exercise of the consent may have an influence.

4) RC.4 Any Management Plans submitted to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council for approval or certification may be submitted in stages to reflect any proposed staging of the physical works. Plans submitted shall clearly show the integration with adjacent stages and interrelated activities.
5) **RC.5**  In the event of any dispute, disagreement or inaction arising as to any Auckland Council Manager certification/approvals required by the consent conditions, or as to the implementation of or monitoring required by the conditions, matters shall be referred in the first instance to the NZTA Regional State Highway Manager and to the Resource Consents Manager, Auckland Council to determine a process of resolution.

If a resolution cannot be agreed, then the matter may be referred to an independent appropriately qualified expert, agreeable to both parties, setting out the details of the matter to be referred for determination and the reasons the parties do not agree.

The independent appropriately qualified expert shall be appointed within 10 working days of the NZTA or Auckland Council giving notice of their intention to seek expert determination. The expert shall, as soon as possible, issue his or her decision on the matter. In making the decision, the expert shall be entitled to seek further information and hear from the parties as he or she sees fit.

Advice note: The dispute resolution process provided for in this condition does not prejudice any party’s right to take enforcement action in relation to the implementation of the designation conditions. However, the dispute resolution process will be applied before any formal enforcement action is taken by the Council except in urgent situations.

6) **RC.6**  Pursuant to Section 36(1)(d) of the RMA, the requiring authority is required to pay to Auckland Council any administrative charge for the carrying out by the local authority of its functions in relation to the administration, monitoring, and supervision of designation conditions.

7) **RC.7**  The servants of agents of Auckland Council shall be permitted to have access to relevant parts of the Project at all reasonable times for the purpose of carrying out inspections, investigations, tests, measurements and/or to take samples.

8) **V.18**  The NZTA shall implement the approved Traherne Island Weed and Pest Management Plan. Every 5 years, a suitably qualified and experienced ecologist engaged by NZTA shall review the plan in consultation with the Department of Conservation. The plan shall then be submitted to the Auckland Council for approval.

**PRE-CONSTRUCTION CONDITIONS**

9) **RC.3**  Within 3 months of the resource consents commencing for the Project (or at least 1 month prior to any Auckland Council approvals or certifications required by these Conditions, whichever is the earlier), the NZTA shall update and finalise to the satisfaction of the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council all drawings and Plans cited in Schedule A, together with a full set of the information and documentation referred to in Condition DC.1 and provide these to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council. At the same time the NZTA shall prepare to the satisfaction of Auckland Council, a document for each resource consent which sets out the resource consent and have attached to it in text format a comprehensive set of the conditions imposed by the Board of Inquiry in its Final Decision as summarised in Schedule B, inclusive of any standard conditions and advice notes.

In particular (but not limited to), the following Plans will need to be amended in light of the Final Conditions:

(a) **F.2** Operational Scheme Plans (refer Schedule A, Row 3) require amendment detailing the amended location of the ventilation stacks and southern ventilation buildings;

(b) **F.5** Construction Scheme Plans (refer Schedule A, Row 4) require amendment to
(c) F.6 Construction Yard Plans 101 and 107 (refer Schedule A, Row 7), detailing amendments to the Construction Yard 1 in light of the reconfiguration of this Yard and for Construction Yard 7 in light of the relocation of the northern ventilation stack (refer Schedule A, Row 34);

(d) F.8 Plans of Structures and Architectural Features (refer Schedule A, Row 9), detailing the amended location of the Northern Ventilation Stack and the design and location of the Southern Ventilation Building and Stack;

(e) The CNVMP (including flow diagram and the supplementary evidence produced by Ms Wilkening) (refer Schedule A, Rows 36, 37 and 39);

(f) Update to the areas of the Open Space Restoration Plans (Schedule A, Row 30) to:

(i) Extend these areas in geographic extent to provide for the works identified in the Management Plan notations identified in the OS Conditions (in particular OS.5 and OS.6). (e.g. these areas will (as relevant) include Eric Armishaw Park, Howlett Reserve and Waterview Esplanade Reserve); and

(ii) Exclude the operational area of designation required for the northern ventilation stack (as identified through the OPW process (refer Condition DC.8); and

(g) Schedule A, Row 28 the Plan detailing proposed open space impacts and replacements needs to be updated to recolour the two land parcels on Hendon Avenue (which are excluded from the replacement calculations) to ‘brown’ to confirm they are part of the operational impact and will not be returned as open space.

10) CEMP.1 Except where provided for in Condition CEMP.1A below, the NZTA shall update and finalise the draft Construction Environmental Management Plan (CEMP) including all the Management Plans which form part of the CEMP and are included as appendices, submitted with this application to ensure compliance with the consent and designation conditions imposed by the Board of Inquiry. The CEMP shall be provided to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council for review at least 20 working days prior to the commencement of works to certify compliance and consistency with the conditions. Construction shall not commence until certification is obtained.

Advice note: For clarity the CEMP will be updated and finalised in accordance with the conditions. Any amendments will be limited to reflecting the requirements of the conditions, specifying personnel, and completing the Environmental Risk Register.

Advice Note: Particular care must be taken with development and operation of Construction Yard 7. When the CEMP is being updated and finalised, consideration must be given to the contents of the draft SSCEMP prepared for Construction Yard 7 (Row 41, Schedule A) recognising changes required by inclusion of the ventilation stack in this yard.

11) CEMP.1A In the case of the trial embankment, where works will commence well in advance of the main construction works for the Causeway, the NZTA will provide to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council, a site-specific CEMP for review and approval at least 20 working days prior to commencement of the trial embankment works.

12) CEMP.1B For the purposes of staging works, as some works may commence well in advance of others, the NZTA may provide staged or site specific CEMPs for those works to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council. The NZTA shall consult with the Team Manager about the need and timing for any other site-specific or staged CEMPs and shall provide any required site-specific or staged CEMPs to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council for review at least 20 working days prior to commencement of such the specific stage (including enabling) or site works.
The certification process of the CEMP (and its appendices) shall confirm that the CEMP gives effect to the relevant conditions, as well as those matters in CEMP.6, and that it includes details of:

(a) Staff and contractors’ responsibilities;
(b) Training requirements for employees, sub-contractors and visitors;
(c) Environmental incident and emergency management;
(d) Communication and interface procedures (in accordance with the Communication Plan required under Condition PI.2);
(e) Environmental complaints management (including the procedures required under Condition PI.4);
(f) Compliance monitoring;
(g) Reporting (including detail on the frequency of reporting to the Auckland Council);
(h) Environmental auditing; and
(i) Corrective action.

The management of key environmental effects associated with the construction phase of the Project is detailed within environmental management plans that are included in the CEMP as appendices. This suite of management plans as shown on Figure CEMP.A comprises:

(a) Construction Noise and Vibration Management Plan (CNVMP);
(b) Construction Air Quality Management Plan (CAQMP);
(c) Erosion and Sediment Control Plan (ESCP);
(d) Temporary Stormwater Management Plan (TSMP);
(e) Ecological Management Plan (ECOMP);
(f) Groundwater Management Plan (GWMP);
(g) Settlement Effects Management Plan (SEMP);
(h) Contaminated Soils Management Plan (CSMP);
(i) Hazardous Substances Management Plan (HSMP);
(j) Archaeological Site Management Plan (ASMP);
(k) Construction Traffic Management Plan (CTMP);
(l) Concrete Batching and Crushing Plant Management Plan (CBCPMP);
(m) Electrical Infrastructure Site Development and Construction Management Plan (EISDCMP) (to be prepared in accordance with Condition CEMP.15);
(n) Waste Management Plan (to be prepared in accordance with Condition CEMP.10);

The finalised CEMP shall include specific details on demolition, construction and management of all works associated with the Project. The certification process of the CEMP shall confirm that the CEMP includes details of the following:

(a) Details of the site or Project manager and the community liaison person, including their contact details (phone, facsimile, postal address, email address);
(b) The location of large notice boards that clearly identify the NZTA and the Project name, together with the name, telephone, email address and address for service of the site or Project manager and the community liaison person;
(c) An outline construction programme of the work indicating in particular likely time periods for road closures and anticipated traffic diversion effects;

(d) The hours of work, which should reflect the need to ensure that residents enjoy reasonable freedom from noisy or intrusive construction activity in their neighbourhood at night, on Sundays and during public holidays;

(e) Measures to be adopted to maintain the land affected by the works in a tidy condition in terms of disposal/storage of rubbish, storage and unloading of building materials and similar construction activities;

(f) Location of worker’s offices and conveniences (e.g. portaloos);

(g) Procedures of controlling sediment run-off, dust and the removal of soil, debris and demolition and construction materials from public roads or places. Dust mitigation measures should include use of water sprays to control dust nuisance on dry or windy days;

(h) Methods to stabilise ingress and egress points to construction sites, to the standard required by ARC Technical Publication 90 (Nov 2007);

16) CEMP.10 The NZTA shall finalise and implement the Hazardous Substances Management Plan (HSMP), through the CEMP (as per Condition CEMP.1), submitted with this application, prior to works commencing on site. The certification process of the CEMP shall confirm that the HSMP clearly identifies the requirements for proper storage, handling, transport and disposal of hazardous substances during the construction phase of the Project and confirm that there shall be no storage of explosives on the Project site.

17) CEMP.11 The NZTA shall develop and implement a Waste Management Plan in accordance with the waste management principles, controls and methods set out in the CEMP. The Plan shall be provided to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council and be implemented throughout the entire construction period.

18) CEMP.15 The NZTA will be responsible for all service relocations required for construction of the Project. The NZTA shall liaise with the providers of infrastructure service networks (including, but not limited to water, gas, stormwater, wastewater, power and telecommunications), and private property owners with on-site services to develop methodologies and timing for necessary services relocation required for the Project, with the objective of minimising disruption to the operation of these service networks and on-site services.

Advice note:

(a) It is noted that if separate consents are required for relocations for any services of network utility operators or landowners, such consents will be obtained before construction commences in the relevant area, and any effects of those relocations would be considered at that time. The same applies to any alteration of consents if required.

(b) Network infrastructure owned and operated by Watercare Services is located within the designations. An operating agreement will be developed by the NZTA and Watercare Services which will include appropriate notification and access protocols where works are to be undertaken by either network operator on or adjacent to Watercare Services infrastructure within the designations.

19) Pl.1 A community liaison person shall be appointed by the NZTA for the duration of the construction phase of the Project to be the main and readily accessible point of contact for persons affected by the Project. The liaison person’s name and contact details shall be made available in the CEMP and on site signage by the NZTA. This person must be reasonably available for on-going consultation on all matters of concern to affected parties.
arising from the Project.

20) PI.2 The NZTA shall prepare and implement a Communications Plan that sets out procedures detailing how the public, Ministry of Social Development, Housing New Zealand Corporation and other organisations representing the particular demographic characteristics of the community (including but not limited to Primary Health Organisations, general practitioners, youth, education organisations, aged care groups and groups representing ethnic and migrant communities) will be communicated with throughout the construction and monitoring periods (as prescribed in the designation and consent conditions).

In preparing the Communications Plan, the NZTA will liaise with Auckland Council to access its community liaison databases. The Communications Plan will include details of:

(a) The site or Project manager and the community liaison person, including their contact details (phone, facsimile, postal address, email address);
(b) In accordance with these Conditions, the database of the key construction activities and monitoring requirements that are the subject of the Communications Plan;
(c) The database of stakeholders and residents who will be communicated with;
(d) Communication methods, an assessment of how these methods reach the different audience/stakeholder groups (including those methods set out in Condition CEMP.6), and detail on when each of these methods will be used (e.g. regular communication or event specific methods);
(e) The appointed specialist in Environmental and Occupational Medicine, including contact details (as per Condition SO.13);
(f) Any stakeholder specific communication plans required; and
(g) Monitoring and review procedures for the Communications Plan.

The Communications Plan shall be written in accordance with the external communication procedures set out in the CEMP and provided at least 20 working days prior to construction commencing, to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council, Working Liaison Group and the Community Liaison Group(s) established by Condition PI.5. The structure of the communication groups set out in these conditions is attached as Figure PI.A.

21) PI.5 The NZTA shall establish Community Liaison Group(s) at least two months prior to construction commencing in each of the following key construction areas:

(a) Te Atatu (including the SH16 Causeway)
(b) Waterview (including works to St Lukes on SH16 and on the Waterview Estuary and Causeway Bridges)
(c) Owairaka

and hold regular meetings (at least three monthly) throughout the construction period and up to 24 months following construction completion relevant to these areas (or less if the members of the Group agree), so that on-going monitoring information can continue to be disseminated.

The Community Liaison Group(s) shall be open to all interested parties within the Project area including, but not limited to the following groups:

(a) Auckland Council and Auckland Transport;
(b) Educational facilities within the Project area (including schools, kindergartens, childcare facilities and Unitec Institute of Technology);
(c) Relevant community/ environmental groups (including but not limited to Friends of Oakley Creek, Star Mills Preservation Group, Cycle Action Auckland and representatives from those organisations identified in the Communications Plan (as required by Condition PI.2) and local residents;
(d) Department of Conservation;
(e) Local Boards;
(f) Iwi groups with Mana Whenua;
(g) Public transport providers; and
(h) Housing New Zealand Corporation.

Advice note: The purpose of the Community Liaison Group(s) is to provide a regular forum through which information about the Project can be provided to the community, and an opportunity for concerns or issues to be raised.

22) V.17 Prior to commencement of works adjacent to or on Traherne Island, the NZTA shall employ a suitably qualified and experienced ecologist for the preparation of a Traherne Island Weed and Pest Management Plan. The Plan shall be prepared in consultation with the Department of Conservation and be submitted to the Auckland Council for approval at least 20 working days prior to construction commencing.

23) M.1 The NZTA shall finalise and implement through the CEMP, the ECOMP submitted with this application. The ECOMP shall be revised to accurately reflect the conditions of this consent and changes to the details of construction processes prior to construction commencing. The ECOMP shall include, but not be limited to, details of:
(a) Monitoring of marine habitats and ecological values;
(b) Trigger event criteria for undertaking additional monitoring;
(c) Procedures for responding to accidental discharges to the marine environment;
(d) Complaints investigation, monitoring and reporting; and
(e) The identification of staff and contractors’ responsibilities.

CONSTRUCTION CONDITIONS

24) CEMP.4 The CEMP shall be implemented and maintained throughout the entire construction period.

25) CEMP.5 A copy of the CEMP shall be held on each construction site at all times and be available for inspection on request by the Auckland Council.

26) CEMP.12 The CEMP shall be reviewed by the NZTA at least annually or as a result of a material change to the Project. The review shall take into consideration:
(a) Compliance with designation and consent conditions;
(b) Any changes to construction methods;
(c) Key changes to roles and responsibilities within the Project;
(d) Changes in industry best practice standards;
(e) Changes in legal or other requirements;
(f) Results of inspections, monitoring, incidents, corrective actions, internal or external assessments; and
(g) Public complaints.

A summary of the review process undertaken shall be kept by the NZTA, provided annually to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council and made available (with any related data) to the Auckland Council upon request.

27) CEMP.13 Following the review process (as described in Condition CEMP.12), the CEMP may require updating. Any material change proposed to the CEMP (including appended Management Plans) shall be submitted for approval to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council at least 10 working days prior to the proposed changes taking effect.'
Advice Note: Material change will include amendment to any base information informing the CEMP or any process, procedure or method of the CEMP (such as the environmental constraints map, compliance monitoring process, complaints procedure or mitigation / remedial methods identified) which has the potential to increase adverse effects on a particular value. For clarity changes to personnel and contact schedules do not constitute a material change.

28) PI.3 At least 15 working days prior to the commencement of construction, and at 15 working day intervals thereafter, or as required depending on the scale of works and effects on the community, advertisements will be placed in the relevant local newspapers and community noticeboards (as identified in Condition CEMP.6(b)) detailing the nature of the forthcoming works, the location of the forthcoming works and hours of operation. All advertisements will include reference to a 24 hour toll free complaints telephone number. Where relevant, advertisements will also include but not be limited to details of:

(a) Any traffic disruptions or controls or changes to property access, pedestrian/ cycle routes and bus stops; and
(b) Any other construction activities, including night time works, blasting, and structure-borne noise, as identified in the conditions.

29) PI.4 The NZTA shall manage, investigate and resolve (as appropriate) all complaints for the duration of the construction works in accordance with the environmental complaints section of the CEMP. The implementation strategy for complaints includes:

(a) A 24 hour toll free telephone number and email address, which shall be provided to all potentially affected residents and businesses. The number shall be available and answered at all times during the entire duration of the works for the receipt and management of any complaints. A sign containing the contact details shall be located at each site specific work activity;
(b) The NZTA shall maintain a record of all complaints made to this number, email or any site office, including the full details of the complainant and the nature of the complaint;
(c) Upon receiving a complaint, within 10 days of complaint receipt, a formal written response will be provided to the complainant and Auckland Council;
(d) The NZTA shall undertake corrective action where necessary to resolve any problem identified. All action taken and relevant information shall be documented. For the avoidance of doubt, 'where necessary' refers to where the works are not being carried out in accordance with conditions of this designation;
(e) Where issues and complaints about effects cannot be resolved through the CEMP complaints management process, a meeting shall be held between the NZTA, the complainant and the Auckland Council representative(s) to discuss the complaint and ways in which the issue may be resolved. If parties cannot agree on a resolution, an independent qualified mediator will be appointed, agreeable to all parties and at the shared cost of all parties, to undertake mediation of the dispute or concerns; and
(f) All information collected in Conditions PI.4 (b), (c) and (d) shall be detailed in a Construction Compliance Report (including the means by which the complaint was addressed, whether resolution was reached and how the response was carried out) prepared by the NZTA. This Report shall be submitted to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council on a quarterly basis commencing at the beginning of the works and for the entire duration of construction.

30) PI.6 The Community Liaison Group(s) shall be provided opportunities to review and comment on the following (amongst other things):

(a) The Outline Plan of Works detailing designs for the northern and southern ventilation
(b) The Open Space Restoration Plans (as required by Condition OS.3);
(c) Finalisation and amendment to Urban Design and Landscape Plans (UDL Plans) (as required by Condition LV.1);
(d) The Oakley Inlet Heritage Plan (as required by Conditions OS.5(b)(i) and ARCH.6);
(e) The detail of the Oakley Creek restoration (as required by Condition STW.20);
(f) Publicly available results of environmental monitoring as required by the designation and/or these Consents (e.g. air quality monitoring); and
(g) The finalisation of the STEM assessment required by CEMP.6(o) and a schedule of trees that are required to be removed for consideration of timber use in heritage projects as required by Condition SO.7.

Advice Note: Attention is drawn to the Vegetation conditions concerning identification and protection of Significant Vegetation and Valued Vegetation.

(h) Detailed design features of the Te Atatu underpass (e.g. lighting and architectural treatment).

31) C.2

Construction shall be undertaken in accordance with the construction methodology detailed in the application, specifically Technical Report G.23 Coastal Works and Technical Report G.22 Erosion and Sediment Control Plan. The construction methodology shall include:

(a) The use of temporary coffer dams to create dry working areas;
(b) Realignment of sections of existing low-tide channels in Oakley inlet and Waterview Estuary that will be directly affected by the reclamation works;
(c) Removal of mangroves to provide construction and ground-treatment access, placement of temporary coffer dams and to facilitate natural channel migration in the Whau River side drainage channel (east of Rosebank Domain);
(d) Installation or removal works to be undertaken at the best practicable time to minimise potential sediment disturbance.

32) C.3

The NZTA shall notify the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council in writing of the proposed commencement date of the reclamation, structures and/or channel realignment works at least 10 working days prior to the proposed start date.

33) C.6

The NZTA shall maintain the site in good order and shall remedy all damage and disturbance caused by vehicle traffic, plant and equipment to the foreshore during construction, to the satisfaction of the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council.

34) M.10

The NZTA shall maintain the coastal marine area free of any gross litter, rubbish and debris during construction.

POST-CONSTRUCTION CONDITIONS

35) C.4

The NZTA shall notify the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council in writing within 10 working days of the completion of each discrete area of reclamation, structures and/or channel realignment works.
MONITORING

36) M.2 The NZTA shall engage a suitably qualified ecologist to undertake a marine habitat monitoring programme, as described in Conditions M.3 to M.6.

37) M.3 The marine benthic habitat monitoring programme shall be undertaken every 6 months:
(a) At least 12 months prior to construction commencing, to allow for two baseline surveys to be undertaken;
(b) During construction; and
(c) For a maximum of 3 years following completion of the Project, or for a lesser time if the monitoring indicates no significant effects, as agreed with the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council.

38) M.4 The marine benthic habitat monitoring programme shall be undertaken in accordance with the details set out in the ECOMP and include:
(a) Sampling of the marine invertebrate community composition (collection of sediment cores to a depth of approximately 15cm);
(b) Sampling of the sediment surface (top 2cm) for sediment grain size; and
(c) Sampling of the sediment surface (top 2cm) for sediment quality (analysis of the concentration of copper, lead, zinc and polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons).

39) M.5 The marine benthic habitat monitoring shall be undertaken within sampling grids (50m x 30m) broadly established at the following locations:
(a) Two locations within Oakley Inlet;
(b) Four locations within Waterview Estuary; and
(c) Four locations north of the Causeway.
Specific locations and experimental design shall be detailed in the ECOMP, and the design of the monitoring programme will be based on the Estuarine Environmental Assessment and Monitoring: A National Protocol (Cawthron 2002).

40) M.6 The NZTA shall undertake additional marine habitat monitoring in the event of a 'trigger event' for marine ecology habitats. For the purposes of this consent, a 'trigger event' for marine ecology habitats is defined in the ECOMP.

41) M.7 The NZTA shall review the marine habitat monitoring results (pursuant to Conditions M.3 to M.6) and in the event that potential adverse effects are identified, the NZTA shall develop and implement appropriate contingency plans and/or remedial measures.

REPORTING

42) M.8 The marine benthic habitat monitoring results shall be compiled by the NZTA, and a report provided to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council every 6 months.
This document has been prepared in compliance with conditions of the “Final Report and Decision of the Board of Inquiry into the New Zealand Transport Agency Waterview Connection Proposal, Volume 2, Conditions of Consent”. Schedule B of Volume 2 identifies the Conditions relevant to this Consent by the code and number as referenced throughout this document. In the event of dispute, Schedule B of Volume 2 shall take precedence over this Consent.

**Type:** Coastal Consent

**Description:** Damming and impounding of inner coastal water (Sectors 2 and 4):

The damming and impounding of inner coastal water in the coffer dam during construction – General Management Area

**Duration:** 10 years

**Code:**

RC = Standard Resource Consent Conditions

CEMP = Construction Environmental Management Plan Conditions

PI = Public Information Conditions

V = Vegetation Conditions

E = Earthworks Conditions

C = Coastal Conditions

M = Marine Ecology Conditions

**GENERAL CONDITIONS**

1) **RC.1** Except as modified by the conditions below, the works shall be undertaken in general accordance with the information provided by the New Zealand Transport Agency (NZTA), in the resource consent applications and the supporting documents (as detailed in Condition DC.1), and in the supplementary information provided in evidence by the NZTA.

2) **RC.1A** The NZTA shall implement the conditions of these consents in accordance with Schedule B, which sets out the Conditions that are to be applied to each consent including the duration of each consent.

3) **RC.2** The Conditions of these consents may be reviewed by the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council, pursuant to Section 128 of the Resource Management Act 1991 (the Act), by the giving of notice pursuant to Section 129 of the Act, on the one year anniversary of the commencement of the consents and every year thereafter in order:

   (a) To deal with any adverse effect on the environment which may arise from the exercise of the consent and which it is appropriate to deal with at a later stage; or

   (b) To deal with any other adverse effect on the environment on which the exercise of the consent may have an influence.

4) **RC.4** Any Management Plans submitted to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council for approval or certification may be submitted in stages to reflect any proposed staging of the physical works. Plans submitted shall clearly show the integration with adjacent...
5) **RC.5** In the event of any dispute, disagreement or inaction arising as to any Auckland Council Manager certification/approvals required by the consent conditions, or as to the implementation of or monitoring required by the conditions, matters shall be referred in the first instance to the NZTA Regional State Highway Manager and to the Resource Consents Manager, Auckland Council to determine a process of resolution.

If a resolution cannot be agreed, then the matter may be referred to an independent appropriately qualified expert, agreeable to both parties, setting out the details of the matter to be referred for determination and the reasons the parties do not agree.

The independent appropriately qualified expert shall be appointed within 10 working days of the NZTA or Auckland Council giving notice of their intention to seek expert determination. The expert shall, as soon as possible, issue his or her decision on the matter. In making the decision, the expert shall be entitled to seek further information and hear from the parties as he or she sees fit.

Advice note: The dispute resolution process provided for in this condition does not prejudice any party’s right to take enforcement action in relation to the implementation of the designation conditions. However, the dispute resolution process will be applied before any formal enforcement action is taken by the Council except in urgent situations.

6) **RC.6** Pursuant to Section 36(1)(d) of the RMA, the requiring authority is required to pay to Auckland Council any administrative charge for the carrying out by the local authority of its functions in relation to the administration, monitoring, and supervision of designation conditions.

7) **RC.7** The servants of agents of Auckland Council shall be permitted to have access to relevant parts of the Project at all reasonable times for the purpose of carrying out inspections, investigations, tests, measurements and/or to take samples.

8) **V.18** The NZTA shall implement the approved Traherne Island Weed and Pest Management Plan. Every 5 years, a suitably qualified and experienced ecologist engaged by NZTA shall review the plan in consultation with the Department of Conservation. The plan shall then be submitted to the Auckland Council for approval.

9) **E.4** A detailed schedule of construction activities shall be prepared and forwarded to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council prior to the commencement of works, and updated at 3 monthly intervals during the works. These schedule shall include details of:

   (a) The location, commencement date and expected duration of any major earthworks operations, including but not limited to, the portal excavations and the Great North Road cut and cover operation; and

   (b) The proposed construction and methodology, including staging of earthworks.

**PRE-CONSTRUCTION CONDITIONS**

10) **RC.3** Within 3 months of the resource consents commencing for the Project (or at least 1 month prior to any Auckland Council approvals or certifications required by these Conditions, whichever is the earlier), the NZTA shall update and finalise to the satisfaction of the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council all drawings and Plans cited in Schedule A, together with a full set of the information and documentation referred to in Condition DC.1 and provide these to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council. At the same time the NZTA shall prepare to the satisfaction of Auckland Council, a document for each resource consent which sets out the resource consent and have attached to it in text format a comprehensive set of the conditions imposed by the Board of Inquiry in its
Final Decision as summarised in Schedule B, inclusive of any standard conditions and advice notes.

In particular (but not limited to), the following Plans will need to be amended in light of the Final Conditions:

(a) F.2 Operational Scheme Plans (refer Schedule A, Row 3) require amendment detailing the amended location of the ventilation stacks and southern ventilation buildings;

(b) F.5 Construction Scheme Plans (refer Schedule A, Row 4) require amendment to detail changes to construction footprint for the amended location of ventilation stacks and southern ventilation buildings and reconfiguration of Construction Yard 1);

(c) F.6 Construction Yard Plans 101 and 107 (refer Schedule A, Row 7), detailing amendments to the Construction Yard 1 in light of the reconfiguration of this Yard and for Construction Yard 7 in light of the relocation of the northern ventilation stack (refer Schedule A, Row 34);

(d) F.8 Plans of Structures and Architectural Features (refer Schedule A, Row 9), detailing the amended location of the Northern Ventilation Stack and the design and location of the Southern Ventilation Building and Stack;

(e) The CNVMP (including flow diagram and the supplementary evidence produced by Ms Wilkening) (refer Schedule A, Rows 36, 37 and 39);

(f) Update to the areas of the Open Space Restoration Plans (Schedule A, Row 30) to:
   (i) Extend these areas in geographic extent to provide for the works identified in the Management Plan notations identified in the OS Conditions (in particular OS.5 and OS.6). (e.g. these areas will (as relevant) include Eric Armishaw Park, Howlett Reserve and Waterview Esplanade Reserve); and
   (ii) Exclude the operational area of designation required for the northern ventilation stack (as identified through the OPW process (refer Condition DC.8); and

(g) Schedule A, Row 28 the Plan detailing proposed open space impacts and replacements needs to be updated to recolour the two land parcels on Hendon Avenue (which are excluded from the replacement calculations) to 'brown' to confirm they are part of the operational impact and will not be returned as open space.

11) CEMP.1 Except where provided for in Condition CEMP.1A below, the NZTA shall update and finalise the draft Construction Environmental Management Plan (CEMP) including all the Management Plans which form part of the CEMP and are included as appendices, submitted with this application to ensure compliance with the consent and designation conditions imposed by the Board of Inquiry. The CEMP shall be provided to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council for review at least 20 working days prior to the commencement of works to certify compliance and consistency with the conditions. Construction shall not commence until certification is obtained.

Advice note: For clarity the CEMP will be updated and finalised in accordance with the conditions. Any amendments will be limited to reflecting the requirements of the conditions, specifying personnel, and completing the Environmental Risk Register.

Advice Note: Particular care must be taken with development and operation of Construction Yard 7. When the CEMP is being updated and finalised, consideration must be given to the contents of the draft SSCEMP prepared for Construction Yard 7 (Row 41, Schedule A) recognising changes required by inclusion of the ventilation stack in this yard.

12) CEMP.1A In the case of the trial embankment, where works will commence well in advance of the main construction works for the Causeway, the NZTA will provide to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council, a site-specific CEMP for review and approval at least
20 working days prior to commencement of the trial embankment works.

13) CEMP.1B For the purposes of staging works, as some works may commence well in advance of others, the NZTA may provide staged or site specific CEMPs for those works to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council. The NZTA shall consult with the Team Manager about the need and timing for any other site-specific or staged CEMPs and shall provide any required site-specific or staged CEMPs to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council for review at least 20 working days prior to commencement of such the specific stage (including enabling) or site works.

14) CEMP.2 The certification process of the CEMP (and its appendices) shall confirm that the CEMP gives effect to the relevant conditions, as well as those matters in CEMP.6, and that it includes details of:
(a) Staff and contractors’ responsibilities;
(b) Training requirements for employees, sub-contractors and visitors;
(c) Environmental incident and emergency management;
(d) Communication and interface procedures (in accordance with the Communication Plan required under Condition PI.2);
(e) Environmental complaints management (including the procedures required under Condition PI.4);
(f) Compliance monitoring;
(g) Reporting (including detail on the frequency of reporting to the Auckland Council);
(h) Environmental auditing; and
(i) Corrective action.

15) CEMP.3 The management of key environmental effects associated with the construction phase of the Project is detailed within environmental management plans that are included in the CEMP as appendices. This suite of management plans as shown on Figure CEMP.A comprises:
(a) Construction Noise and Vibration Management Plan (CNVMP);
(b) Construction Air Quality Management Plan (CAQMP);
(c) Erosion and Sediment Control Plan (ESCP);
(d) Temporary Stormwater Management Plan (TSMP);
(e) Ecological Management Plan (ECOMP);
(f) Groundwater Management Plan (GWMP);
(g) Settlement Effects Management Plan (SEMP);
(h) Contaminated Soils Management Plan (CSMP);
(i) Hazardous Substances Management Plan (HSMP);
(j) Archaeological Site Management Plan (ASMP);
(k) Construction Traffic Management Plan (CTMP);
(l) Concrete Batching and Crushing Plant Management Plan (CBCPMP);
(m) Electrical Infrastructure Site Development and Construction Management Plan (EISDCMP) (to be prepared in accordance with Condition CEMP.15);
(n) Waste Management Plan (to be prepared in accordance with Condition CEMP.10);
and
(o) Temporary Construction Lighting Management Plan (to be prepared in accordance with Condition L.2).
16) CEMP.6 The finalised CEMP shall include specific details on demolition, construction and management of all works associated with the Project. The certification process of the CEMP shall confirm that the CEMP includes details of the following:

(a) Details of the site or Project manager and the community liaison person, including their contact details (phone, facsimile, postal address, email address);

(b) The location of large notice boards that clearly identify the NZTA and the Project name, together with the name, telephone, email address and address for service of the site or Project manager and the community liaison person;

(c) An outline construction programme of the work indicating in particular likely time periods for road closures and anticipated traffic diversion effects;

(d) The hours of work, which should reflect the need to ensure that residents enjoy reasonable freedom from noisy or intrusive construction activity in their neighbourhood at night, on Sundays and during public holidays;

(e) Measures to be adopted to maintain the land affected by the works in a tidy condition in terms of disposal/ storage of rubbish, storage and unloading of building materials and similar construction activities;

(f) Location of worker’s offices and conveniences (e.g. portaloos);

(g) Procedures of controlling sediment run-off, dust and the removal of soil, debris and demolition and construction materials from public roads or places. Dust mitigation measures should include use of water sprays to control dust nuisance on dry or windy days;

(h) Methods to stabilise ingress and egress points to construction sites, to the standard required by ARC Technical Publication 90 (Nov 2007);

17) CEMP.10 The NZTA shall finalise and implement the Hazardous Substances Management Plan (HSMP), through the CEMP (as per Condition CEMP.1), submitted with this application, prior to works commencing on site. The certification process of the CEMP shall confirm that the HSMP clearly identifies the requirements for proper storage, handling, transport and disposal of hazardous substances during the construction phase of the Project and confirm that there shall be no storage of explosives on the Project site.

18) CEMP.11 The NZTA shall develop and implement a Waste Management Plan in accordance with the waste management principles, controls and methods set out in the CEMP. The Plan shall be provided to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council and be implemented throughout the entire construction period.

19) CEMP.15 The NZTA will be responsible for all service relocations required for construction of the Project. The NZTA shall liaise with the providers of infrastructure service networks (including, but not limited to water, gas, stormwater, wastewater, power and telecommunications), and private property owners with on-site services to develop methodologies and timing for necessary services relocation required for the Project, with the objective of minimising disruption to the operation of these service networks and on-site services.

Advice note:

(a) It is noted that if separate consents are required for relocations for any services of network utility operators or landowners, such consents will be obtained before construction commences in the relevant area, and any effects of those relocations would be considered at that time. The same applies to any alteration of consents if required.

(b) Network infrastructure owned and operated by Watercare Services is located within the designations. An operating agreement will be developed by the NZTA and Watercare Services.
A community liaison person shall be appointed by the NZTA for the duration of the construction phase of the Project to be the main and readily accessible point of contact for persons affected by the Project. The liaison person’s name and contact details shall be made available in the CEMP and on site signage by the NZTA. This person must be reasonably available for on-going consultation on all matters of concern to affected parties arising from the Project.

The NZTA shall prepare and implement a Communications Plan that sets out procedures detailing how the public, Ministry of Social Development, Housing New Zealand Corporation and other organisations representing the particular demographic characteristics of the community (including but not limited to Primary Health Organisations, general practitioners, youth, education organisations, aged care groups and groups representing ethnic and migrant communities) will be communicated with throughout the construction and monitoring periods (as prescribed in the designation and consent conditions).

In preparing the Communications Plan, the NZTA will liaise with Auckland Council to access its community liaison databases. The Communications Plan will includes details of:

(a) The site or Project manager and the community liaison person, including their contact details (phone, facsimile, postal address, email address);
(b) In accordance with these Conditions, the database of the key construction activities and monitoring requirements that are the subject of the Communications Plan;
(c) The database of stakeholders and residents who will be communicated with;
(d) Communication methods, an assessment of how these methods reach the different audience/stakeholder groups (including those methods set out in Condition CEMP.6), and detail on when each of these methods will be used (e.g. regular communication or event specific methods);
(e) The appointed specialist in Environmental and Occupational Medicine, including contact details (as per Condition SO.13);
(f) Any stakeholder specific communication plans required; and
(g) Monitoring and review procedures for the Communications Plan.

The Communications Plan shall be written in accordance with the external communication procedures set out in the CEMP and provided at least 20 working days prior to construction commencing, to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council, Working Liaison Group and the Community Liaison Group(s) established by Condition PI.5. The structure of the communication groups set out in these conditions is attached as Figure PI.A.

The NZTA shall establish Community Liaison Group(s) at least two months prior to construction commencing in each of the following key construction areas:

(a) Te Atatu (including the SH16 Causeway)
(b) Waterview (including works to St Lukes on SH16 and on the Waterview Estuary and Causeway Bridges)
(c) Owairaka

and hold regular meetings (at least three monthly) throughout the construction period and up to 24 months following construction completion relevant to these areas (or less if the members of the Group agree), so that on-going monitoring information can continue to be disseminated.

The Community Liaison Group(s) shall be open to all interested parties within the Project
area including, but not limited to the following groups:

(a) Auckland Council and Auckland Transport;
(b) Educational facilities within the Project area (including schools, kindergartens, childcare facilities and Unitec Institute of Technology);
(c) Relevant community/environmental groups (including but not limited to Friends of Oakley Creek, Star Mills Preservation Group, Cycle Action Auckland and representatives from those organisations identified in the Communications Plan (as required by Condition PI.2) and local residents;
(d) Department of Conservation;
(e) Local Boards;
(f) Iwi groups with Mana Whenua;
(g) Public transport providers; and
(h) Housing New Zealand Corporation.

Advice note: The purpose of the Community Liaison Group(s) is to provide a regular forum through which information about the Project can be provided to the community, and an opportunity for concerns or issues to be raised.

23) V.17 Prior to commencement of works adjacent to or on Traherne Island, the NZTA shall employ a suitably qualified and experienced ecologist for the preparation of a Traherne Island Weed and Pest Management Plan. The Plan shall be prepared in consultation with the Department of Conservation and be submitted to the Auckland Council for approval at least 20 working days prior to construction commencing.

24) E.1 The NZTA shall inform the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council in writing at least 10 working days before the start date of the works authorised by this Consent.

25) E.2 Prior to commencement of works, in each period between October 1 and April 30 that this Consent is exercised, a pre-construction site meeting between Auckland Council and relevant parties, including the primary contractor, shall be conducted. The approved Contractors Erosion and Sediment Control Plan (CESCP) as per Condition E.5 of this Consent shall be made available and discussed at the pre-construction meeting.

26) E.5 Prior to the commencement of works for each specific area and/or activity, a “Contractors Erosion and Sediment Control Plan” (CESCP) shall be prepared. This document shall follow the principles and practices within Technical Report G.22 Erosion and Sediment Control Plan and shall detail any specific variations from that report. The CESCPs shall include, but not be limited to:
(a) Contour information at suitable intervals;
(b) Erosion and sediment controls including specific pond design;
(c) Supporting calculations;
(d) Catchment boundaries for the sediment controls;
(e) Location of the works, and cut and fill operations;
(f) Details of construction methods to be employed, including timing and duration;
(g) A programme for managing exposed area, including progressive stabilisation considerations;
(h) The identification of appropriately qualified and experienced staff to manage the environmental issues onsite;
(i) The identification of staff who have clearly defined roles and responsibilities to monitor compliance with the Consent Conditions and CESCP;
(j) Provision of details of a chain of responsibility for managing environmental issues and
(k) The establishment of a sediment control team (including representatives from the contractor, Auckland Council and the NZTA) to meet and review erosion and sediment control on a weekly basis.

27) E.6 For each specific area of works, a CESCP shall be submitted a minimum of 20 working days prior to earthworks commencing, for the written approval of the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council, which shall be obtained prior to earthworks commencing. The approved CESCP shall be implemented accordingly.

28) E.7 Any amendments to the CESCPs must be approved by the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council in writing at least 10 working days prior to any amendment being implemented.

29) E.16 Prior to the commissioning of chemical treatments for sediment management purposes (as per Condition E.17), the NZTA shall provide the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council with a Chemical Treatment Plan (CTP), for confirmation by the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council that it will achieve the standards set out in the CESCP required under Condition E.6. The CTP shall follow the principles and chemical treatment details outlined within the Technical Report G.22 Erosion and Sediment Control Plan and shall include as a minimum:

(a) Specific design details of the chemical treatment system;

(b) Monitoring, maintenance (including post-storm) and contingency programme (including a Record Sheet);

(c) Details of optimum dosage (including assumptions);

(d) Results of the initial flocculation trial which will build on the information within Technical Report G.22 Erosion and Sediment Control Plan;

(e) A spill contingency plan;

(f) Details of the person or bodies that will hold responsibility for long-term maintenance of the flocculation treatment system and the organisational structure which will support this structure.

Any amendments to the CTP shall be approved by the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council, in writing, at least 10 working days prior to implementation.

30) C.1 The NZTA shall provide to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council plans and drawings (including dimensioned, cross sections, elevations and site plans of all areas of proposed reclamation (including associated permanent and temporary CMA occupation), permanent structures and temporary structures) at least 20 working days before the proposed date of commencement of the construction of the reclamation, bridge piers or temporary structure.

31) M.1 The NZTA shall finalise and implement through the CEMP, the ECOMP submitted with this application. The ECOMP shall be revised to accurately reflect the conditions of this consent and changes to the details of construction processes prior to construction commencing. The ECOMP shall include, but not be limited to, details of:

(a) Monitoring of marine habitats and ecological values;

(b) Trigger event criteria for undertaking additional monitoring;

(c) Procedures for responding to accidental discharges to the marine environment;

(d) Complaints investigation, monitoring and reporting; and

(e) The identification of staff and contractors’ responsibilities.
CONSTRUCTION CONDITIONS

32) CEMP.4 The CEMP shall be implemented and maintained throughout the entire construction period.

33) CEMP.5 A copy of the CEMP shall be held on each construction site at all times and be available for inspection on request by the Auckland Council.

34) CEMP.12 The CEMP shall be reviewed by the NZTA at least annually or as a result of a material change to the Project. The review shall take into consideration:

(a) Compliance with designation and consent conditions;
(b) Any changes to construction methods;
(c) Key changes to roles and responsibilities within the Project;
(d) Changes in industry best practice standards;
(e) Changes in legal or other requirements;
(f) Results of inspections, monitoring, incidents, corrective actions, internal or external assessments; and
(g) Public complaints.

A summary of the review process undertaken shall be kept by the NZTA, provided annually to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council and made available (with any related data) to the Auckland Council upon request.

35) CEMP.13 Following the review process (as described in Condition CEMP.12), the CEMP may require updating. Any material change proposed to the CEMP (including appended Management Plans) shall be submitted for approval to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council at least 10 working days prior to the proposed changes taking effect.

Advice Note: Material change will include amendment to any base information informing the CEMP or any process, procedure or method of the CEMP (such as the environmental constraints map, compliance monitoring process, complaints procedure or mitigation / remedial methods identified) which has the potential to increase adverse effects on a particular value. For clarity changes to personnel and contact schedules do not constitute a material change.

36) PI.3 At least 15 working days prior to the commencement of construction, and at 15 working day intervals thereafter, or as required depending on the scale of works and effects on the community, advertisements will be placed in the relevant local newspapers and community noticeboards (as identified in Condition CEMP.6(b)) detailing the nature of the forthcoming works, the location of the forthcoming works and hours of operation. All advertisements will include reference to a 24 hour toll free complaints telephone number. Where relevant, advertisements will also include but not be limited to details of:

(a) Any traffic disruptions or controls or changes to property access, pedestrian/ cycle routes and bus stops; and
(b) Any other construction activities, including night time works, blasting, and structure-borne noise, as identified in the conditions.

37) PI.4 The NZTA shall manage, investigate and resolve (as appropriate) all complaints for the duration of the construction works in accordance with the environmental complaints section of the CEMP. The implementation strategy for complaints includes:

(a) A 24 hour toll free telephone number and email address, which shall be provided to all potentially affected residents and businesses. The number shall be available and answered at all times during the entire duration of the works for the receipt and management of any complaints. A sign containing the contact details shall be located
(b) The NZTA shall maintain a record of all complaints made to this number, email or any site office, including the full details of the complainant and the nature of the complaint;

(c) Upon receiving a complaint, within 10 days of complaint receipt, a formal written response will be provided to the complainant and Auckland Council;

(d) The NZTA shall undertake corrective action where necessary to resolve any problem identified. All action taken and relevant information shall be documented. For the avoidance of doubt, ‘where necessary’ refers to where the works are not being carried out in accordance with conditions of this designation;

(e) Where issues and complaints about effects cannot be resolved through the CEMP complaints management process, a meeting shall be held between the NZTA, the complainant and the Auckland Council representative(s) to discuss the complaint and ways in which the issue may be resolved. If parties cannot agree on a resolution, an independent qualified mediator will be appointed, agreeable to all parties and at the shared cost of all parties, to undertake mediation of the dispute or concerns; and

(f) All information collected in Conditions PI.4 (b), (c) and (d) shall be detailed in a Construction Compliance Report (including the means by which the complaint was addressed, whether resolution was reached and how the response was carried out) prepared by the NZTA. This Report shall be submitted to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council on a quarterly basis commencing at the beginning of the works and for the entire duration of construction.

38) PI.6 The Community Liaison Group(s) shall be provided opportunities to review and comment on the following (amongst other things):

(a) The Outline Plan of Works detailing designs for the northern and southern ventilation buildings and stacks (the outcomes of this consultation will be reported in accordance with the processes required in DC.8(n) and DC.9(k);

(b) The Open Space Restoration Plans (as required by Condition OS.3);

(c) Finalisation and amendment to Urban Design and Landscape Plans (UDL Plans) (as required by Condition LV.1);

(d) The Oakley Inlet Heritage Plan (as required by Conditions OS.5(b)(i) and ARCH.6);

(e) The detail of the Oakley Creek restoration (as required by Condition STW.20);

(f) Publicly available results of environmental monitoring as required by the designation and/or these Consents (e.g. air quality monitoring); and

(g) The finalisation of the STEM assessment required by CEMP.6(o) and a schedule of trees that are required to be removed for consideration of timber use in heritage projects as required by Condition SO.7.

Advice Note: Attention is drawn to the Vegetation conditions concerning identification and protection of Significant Vegetation and Valued Vegetation.

(h) Detailed design features of the Te Atatu underpass (e.g. lighting and architectural treatment).

39) E.3 Erosion and sediment control shall be in general accordance with the plans and information submitted with the application, and in particular, Technical Report G.22 Erosion and Sediment Control Plan, subject to such amendments as may be required by the following conditions of this Consent.

40) E.8 Erosion and sediment control measures shall be constructed and maintained in accordance with the ARC Technical Report 90 (TP90) (and any amendments to that document), except where a higher standard is detailed in the documents referred to in Conditions E.3 and E.5
above, in which case the higher standard shall apply.

41) E.11 All ‘cleanwater’ runoff from stabilised surfaces, including catchment areas above the site, shall be diverted away from earthwork areas via a stabilised system, so as to prevent surface erosion.

42) E.14 The NZTA shall ensure that procedures are adopted to prevent the deposition of slurry, clay or other materials on the roads by vehicles leaving the site. Should the exercise of this Consent result in material being deposited on the road, that material shall be removed immediately to the satisfaction of the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council.

43) E.17 All sediment retention ponds and decanting earth bunds are to be chemically treated in accordance with the CTP required under Condition E.16 of this consent.

44) E.19 A copy of the “as-built(s)” and approved CESCPs shall be kept on site, and all erosion and sediment control measures (including staging boundaries and particularly the extent of exposed areas) shall be updated as soon as practicable as changes are made. As-built plans shall be accompanied by text detailing the relevant earthworks methodology, constraints and likely progressions, and shall be revised as required to enable clear interpretation as to the day to day operation and management of erosion and sediment controls.

45) E.21 The site shall be stabilised against erosion as soon as practicable, and in a progressive manner, as earthworks are finished over various areas of the site. Areas of bulk earthworks not actively worked for a period of two weeks shall be stabilised.

46) E.22 The NZTA shall ensure that the following earthworks shall be stabilised as soon as practicable after completion thereof, or within 5 working days of completion, whichever shall occur first:
   (a) Temporary erosion and sediment controls; and
   (b) Construction yards.

47) E.23 No surface earthworks on the site shall be undertaken between 1 May and 30 September in any year, without the written approval of the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council. Earthworks in this regard refers to bulk earthworks (cut/fill/waste) associated with the site.

48) C.2 Construction shall be undertaken in accordance with the construction methodology detailed in the application, specifically Technical Report G.23 Coastal Works and Technical Report G.22 Erosion and Sediment Control Plan. The construction methodology shall include:
   (a) The use of temporary coffer dams to create dry working areas;
   (b) Realignment of sections of existing low-tide channels in Oakley inlet and Waterview Estuary that will be directly affected by the reclamation works;
   (c) Removal of mangroves to provide construction and ground-treatment access, placement of temporary coffer dams and to facilitate natural channel migration in the Whau River side drainage channel (east of Rosebank Domain);
   (d) Installation or removal works to be undertaken at the best practicable time to minimise potential sediment disturbance.

49) C.3 The NZTA shall notify the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council in writing of the proposed commencement date of the reclamation, structures and/or channel realignment works at least 10 working days prior to the proposed start date.

50) C.6 The NZTA shall maintain the site in good order and shall remedy all damage and disturbance caused by vehicle traffic, plant and equipment to the foreshore during
construction, to the satisfaction of the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council.

51) M.10 The NZTA shall maintain the coastal marine area free of any gross litter, rubbish and debris during construction.

POST-CONSTRUCTION CONDITIONS

52) E.15 Notice shall be given to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council prior to any erosion and sediment control measures being removed and/or on completion of the works.

53) E.24 Revegetation/stabilisation shall be completed by 30 April in the year of bulk earthworks in accordance with measures detailed in the approved CESCP, unless a later date is approved in writing by the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council at least two weeks before 30 April.

54) C.4 The NZTA shall notify the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council in writing within 10 working days of the completion of each discrete area of reclamation, structures and/or channel realignment works.

MONITORING

55) E.20 The NZTA shall carry out monitoring in accordance with the Technical Report G.22 Erosion and Sediment Control Plan and the approved CESCP and shall maintain records detailing:
   (a) The monitoring undertaken;
   (b) The erosion and sediment controls that required maintenance;
   (c) The time when the maintenance was completed; and
   (d) Areas of non-compliance with the erosion and sediment control monitoring plan (if any) and the reasons for the non-compliance.

This information shall be made available to the Auckland Council upon request.

56) M.2 The NZTA shall engage a suitably qualified ecologist to undertake a marine habitat monitoring programme, as described in Conditions M.3 to M.6.

57) M.3 The marine benthic habitat monitoring programme shall be undertaken every 6 months:
   (a) At least 12 months prior to construction commencing, to allow for two baseline surveys to be undertaken;
   (b) During construction; and
   (c) For a maximum of 3 years following completion of the Project, or for a lesser time if the monitoring indicates no significant effects, as agreed with the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council.

58) M.4 The marine benthic habitat monitoring programme shall be undertaken in accordance with the details set out in the ECOMP and include:
   (a) Sampling of the marine invertebrate community composition (collection of sediment cores to a depth of approximately 15cm);
   (b) Sampling of the sediment surface (top 2cm) for sediment grain size; and
   (c) Sampling of the sediment surface (top 2cm) for sediment quality (analysis of the concentration of copper, lead, zinc and polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons).

59) M.5 The marine benthic habitat monitoring shall be undertaken within sampling grids (50m x 30m) broadly established at the following locations:
(a) Two locations within Oakley Inlet;
(b) Four locations within Waterview Estuary; and
(c) Four locations north of the Causeway.

Specific locations and experimental design shall be detailed in the ECOMP, and the design of the monitoring programme will be based on the *Estuarine Environmental Assessment and Monitoring: A National Protocol* (Cawthron 2002).

60) M.6 The NZTA shall undertake additional marine habitat monitoring in the event of a 'trigger event' for marine ecology habitats. For the purposes of this consent, a 'trigger event' for marine ecology habitats is defined in the ECOMP.

61) M.7 The NZTA shall review the marine habitat monitoring results (pursuant to Conditions M.3 to M.6) and in the event that potential adverse effects are identified, the NZTA shall develop and implement appropriate contingency plans and/or remedial measures.

REPORTING

62) M.8 The marine benthic habitat monitoring results shall be compiled by the NZTA, and a report provided to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council every 6 months.
**EPA 10/2.045 – (ARC: 38349)**

This document has been prepared in compliance with conditions of the "Final Report and Decision of the Board of Inquiry into the New Zealand Transport Agency Waterview Connection Proposal, Volume 2, Conditions of Consent". Schedule B of Volume 2 identifies the Conditions relevant to this Consent by the code and number as referenced throughout this document. In the event of dispute, Schedule B of Volume 2 shall take precedence over this Consent.

**Type:** Coastal Consent

**Description:** Damming and impounding of inner coastal water (Sectors 2 and 4):

The damming and impounding of inner coastal water in the coffer dam during construction – CPA1

**Duration:** 10 years

**Code:**

RC = Standard Resource Consent Conditions

CEMP = Construction Environmental Management Plan Conditions

PI = Public Information Conditions

V = Vegetation Conditions

E = Earthworks Conditions

C = Coastal Conditions

M = Marine Ecology Conditions

**GENERAL CONDITIONS**

1) **RC.1** Except as modified by the conditions below, the works shall be undertaken in general accordance with the information provided by the New Zealand Transport Agency (NZTA), in the resource consent applications and the supporting documents (as detailed in Condition DC.1), and in the supplementary information provided in evidence by the NZTA.

2) **RC.1A** The NZTA shall implement the conditions of these consents in accordance with Schedule B, which sets out the Conditions that are to be applied to each consent including the duration of each consent.

3) **RC.2** The Conditions of these consents may be reviewed by the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council, pursuant to Section 128 of the Resource Management Act 1991 (the Act), by the giving of notice pursuant to Section 129 of the Act, on the one year anniversary of the commencement of the consents and every year thereafter in order:

   (a) To deal with any adverse effect on the environment which may arise from the exercise of the consent and which it is appropriate to deal with at a later stage; or

   (b) To deal with any other adverse effect on the environment on which the exercise of the consent may have an influence.

4) **RC.4** Any Management Plans submitted to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council for approval or certification may be submitted in stages to reflect any proposed staging of the physical works. Plans submitted shall clearly show the integration with adjacent
stages and interrelated activities.

5) RC.5 In the event of any dispute, disagreement or inaction arising as to any Auckland Council Manager certification/ approvals required by the consent conditions, or as to the implementation of or monitoring required by the conditions, matters shall be referred in the first instance to the NZTA Regional State Highway Manager and to the Resource Consents Manager, Auckland Council to determine a process of resolution.

If a resolution cannot be agreed, then the matter may be referred to an independent appropriately qualified expert, agreeable to both parties, setting out the details of the matter to be referred for determination and the reasons the parties do not agree.

The independent appropriately qualified expert shall be appointed within 10 working days of the NZTA or Auckland Council giving notice of their intention to seek expert determination. The expert shall, as soon as possible, issue his or her decision on the matter. In making the decision, the expert shall be entitled to seek further information and hear from the parties as he or she sees fit.

Advice note: The dispute resolution process provided for in this condition does not prejudice any party’s right to take enforcement action in relation to the implementation of the designation conditions. However, the dispute resolution process will be applied before any formal enforcement action is taken by the Council except in urgent situations.

6) RC.6 Pursuant to Section 36(1)(d) of the RMA, the requiring authority is required to pay to Auckland Council any administrative charge for the carrying out by the local authority of its functions in relation to the administration, monitoring, and supervision of designation conditions.

7) RC.7 The servants of agents of Auckland Council shall be permitted to have access to relevant parts of the Project at all reasonable times for the purpose of carrying out inspections, investigations, tests, measurements and/or to take samples.

8) V.18 The NZTA shall implement the approved Traherne Island Weed and Pest Management Plan. Every 5 years, a suitably qualified and experienced ecologist engaged by NZTA shall review the plan in consultation with the Department of Conservation. The plan shall then be submitted to the Auckland Council for approval.

9) E.4 A detailed schedule of construction activities shall be prepared and forwarded to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council prior to the commencement of works, and updated at 3 monthly intervals during the works. These schedule shall include details of:
(a) The location, commencement date and expected duration of any major earthworks operations, including but not limited to, the portal excavations and the Great North Road cut and cover operation; and
(b) The proposed construction and methodology, including staging of earthworks.

PRE-CONSTRUCTION CONDITIONS

10) RC.3 Within 3 months of the resource consents commencing for the Project (or at least 1 month prior to any Auckland Council approvals or certifications required by these Conditions, whichever is the earlier), the NZTA shall update and finalise to the satisfaction of the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council all drawings and Plans cited in Schedule A, together with a full set of the information and documentation referred to in Condition DC.1 and provide these to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council. At the same time the NZTA shall prepare to the satisfaction of Auckland Council, a document for each resource consent which sets out the resource consent and have attached to it in text format a comprehensive set of the conditions imposed by the Board of Inquiry in its
Final Decision as summarised in Schedule B, inclusive of any standard conditions and advice notes.

In particular (but not limited to), the following Plans will need to be amended in light of the Final Conditions:

(a) F.2 Operational Scheme Plans (refer Schedule A, Row 3) require amendment detailing the amended location of the ventilation stacks and southern ventilation buildings;

(b) F.5 Construction Scheme Plans (refer Schedule A, Row 4) require amendment to detail changes to construction footprint for the amended location of ventilation stacks and southern ventilation buildings and reconfiguration of Construction Yard 1;

(c) F.6 Construction Yard Plans 101 and 107 (refer Schedule A, Row 7), detailing amendments to the Construction Yard 1 in light of the reconfiguration of this Yard and for Construction Yard 7 in light of the relocation of the northern ventilation stack (refer Schedule A, Row 34);

(d) F.8 Plans of Structures and Architectural Features (refer Schedule A, Row 9), detailing the amended location of the Northern Ventilation Stack and the design and location of the Southern Ventilation Building and Stack;

(e) The CNVMP (including flow diagram and the supplementary evidence produced by Ms Wilkening) (refer Schedule A, Rows 36, 37 and 39);

(f) Update to the areas of the Open Space Restoration Plans (Schedule A, Row 30) to:
   (i) Extend these areas in geographic extent to provide for the works identified in the Management Plan notations identified in the OS Conditions (in particular OS.5 and OS.6). (e.g. these areas will (as relevant) include Eric Armishaw Park, Howlett Reserve and Waterview Esplanade Reserve); and
   (ii) Exclude the operational area of designation required for the northern ventilation stack (as identified through the OPW process (refer Condition DC.8); and

(g) Schedule A, Row 28 the Plan detailing proposed open space impacts and replacements needs to be updated to recolour the two land parcels on Hendon Avenue (which are excluded from the replacement calculations) to ‘brown’ to confirm they are part of the operational impact and will not be returned as open space.

11) CEMP.1 Except where provided for in Condition CEMP.1A below, the NZTA shall update and finalise the draft Construction Environmental Management Plan (CEMP) including all the Management Plans which form part of the CEMP and are included as appendices, submitted with this application to ensure compliance with the consent and designation conditions imposed by the Board of Inquiry. The CEMP shall be provided to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council for review at least 20 working days prior to the commencement of works to certify compliance and consistency with the conditions. Construction shall not commence until certification is obtained.

Advice note: For clarity the CEMP will be updated and finalised in accordance with the conditions. Any amendments will be limited to reflecting the requirements of the conditions, specifying personnel, and completing the Environmental Risk Register.

Advice Note: Particular care must be taken with development and operation of Construction Yard 7. When the CEMP is being updated and finalised, consideration must be given to the contents of the draft SSCEMP prepared for Construction Yard 7 (Row 41, Schedule A) recognising changes required by inclusion of the ventilation stack in this yard.

12) CEMP.1A In the case of the trial embankment, where works will commence well in advance of the main construction works for the Causeway, the NZTA will provide to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council, a site-specific CEMP for review and approval at least
20 working days prior to commencement of the trial embankment works.

13) CEMP.1B For the purposes of staging works, as some works may commence well in advance of others, the NZTA may provide staged or site specific CEMPs for those works to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council. The NZTA shall consult with the Team Manager about the need and timing for any other site-specific or staged CEMPs and shall provide any required site-specific or staged CEMPs to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council for review at least 20 working days prior to commencement of such the specific stage (including enabling) or site works.

14) CEMP.2 The certification process of the CEMP (and its appendices) shall confirm that the CEMP gives effect to the relevant conditions, as well as those matters in CEMP.6, and that it includes details of:
(a) Staff and contractors’ responsibilities;
(b) Training requirements for employees, sub-contractors and visitors;
(c) Environmental incident and emergency management;
(d) Communication and interface procedures (in accordance with the Communication Plan required under Condition PI.2);
(e) Environmental complaints management (including the procedures required under Condition PI.4);
(f) Compliance monitoring;
(g) Reporting (including detail on the frequency of reporting to the Auckland Council);
(h) Environmental auditing; and
(i) Corrective action.

15) CEMP.3 The management of key environmental effects associated with the construction phase of the Project is detailed within environmental management plans that are included in the CEMP as appendices. This suite of management plans as shown on Figure CEMP.A comprises:
(a) Construction Noise and Vibration Management Plan (CNVMP);
(b) Construction Air Quality Management Plan (CAQMP);
(c) Erosion and Sediment Control Plan (ESCP);
(d) Temporary Stormwater Management Plan (TSMP);
(e) Ecological Management Plan (ECOMP);
(f) Groundwater Management Plan (GWMP);
(g) Settlement Effects Management Plan (SEMP);
(h) Contaminated Soils Management Plan (CSMP);
(i) Hazardous Substances Management Plan (HSMP);
(j) Archaeological Site Management Plan (ASMP);
(k) Construction Traffic Management Plan (CTMP);
(l) Concrete Batching and Crushing Plant Management Plan (CBCPMP);
(m) Electrical Infrastructure Site Development and Construction Management Plan (EISDCMP) (to be prepared in accordance with Condition CEMP.15);
(n) Waste Management Plan (to be prepared in accordance with Condition CEMP.10) ; and
(o) Temporary Construction Lighting Management Plan (to be prepared in accordance with Condition L.2).
The finalised CEMP shall include specific details on demolition, construction and management of all works associated with the Project. The certification process of the CEMP shall confirm that the CEMP includes details of the following:

(a) Details of the site or Project manager and the community liaison person, including their contact details (phone, facsimile, postal address, email address);

(b) The location of large notice boards that clearly identify the NZTA and the Project name, together with the name, telephone, email address and address for service of the site or Project manager and the community liaison person;

(c) An outline construction programme of the work indicating in particular likely time periods for road closures and anticipated traffic diversion effects;

(d) The hours of work, which should reflect the need to ensure that residents enjoy reasonable freedom from noisy or intrusive construction activity in their neighbourhood at night, on Sundays and during public holidays;

(e) Measures to be adopted to maintain the land affected by the works in a tidy condition in terms of disposal/ storage of rubbish, storage and unloading of building materials and similar construction activities;

(f) Location of worker’s offices and conveniences (e.g. portaloos);

(g) Procedures of controlling sediment run-off, dust and the removal of soil, debris and demolition and construction materials from public roads or places. Dust mitigation measures should include use of water sprays to control dust nuisance on dry or windy days;

(h) Methods to stabilise ingress and egress points to construction sites, to the standard required by ARC Technical Publication 90 (Nov 2007);

The NZTA shall finalise and implement the Hazardous Substances Management Plan (HSMP), through the CEMP (as per Condition CEMP.1), submitted with this application, prior to works commencing on site. The certification process of the CEMP shall confirm that the HSMP clearly identifies the requirements for proper storage, handling, transport and disposal of hazardous substances during the construction phase of the Project and confirm that there shall be no storage of explosives on the Project site.

The NZTA shall develop and implement a Waste Management Plan in accordance with the waste management principles, controls and methods set out in the CEMP. The Plan shall be provided to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council and be implemented throughout the entire construction period.

The NZTA will be responsible for all service relocations required for construction of the Project. The NZTA shall liaise with the providers of infrastructure service networks (including, but not limited to water, gas, stormwater, wastewater, power and telecommunications), and private property owners with on-site services to develop methodologies and timing for necessary services relocation required for the Project, with the objective of minimising disruption to the operation of these service networks and on-site services.

Advice note:

(a) It is noted that if separate consents are required for relocations for any services of network utility operators or landowners, such consents will be obtained before construction commences in the relevant area, and any effects of those relocations would be considered at that time. The same applies to any alteration of consents if required.

(b) Network infrastructure owned and operated by Watercare Services is located within the designations. An operating agreement will be developed by the NZTA and Watercare Services.
20) PI.1 A community liaison person shall be appointed by the NZTA for the duration of the construction phase of the Project to be the main and readily accessible point of contact for persons affected by the Project. The liaison person’s name and contact details shall be made available in the CEMP and on site signage by the NZTA. This person must be reasonably available for on-going consultation on all matters of concern to affected parties arising from the Project.

21) PI.2 The NZTA shall prepare and implement a Communications Plan that sets out procedures detailing how the public, Ministry of Social Development, Housing New Zealand Corporation and other organisations representing the particular demographic characteristics of the community (including but not limited to Primary Health Organisations, general practitioners, youth, education organisations, aged care groups and groups representing ethnic and migrant communities) will be communicated with throughout the construction and monitoring periods (as prescribed in the designation and consent conditions).

In preparing the Communications Plan, the NZTA will liaise with Auckland Council to access its community liaison databases. The Communications Plan will include details of:

(a) The site or Project manager and the community liaison person, including their contact details (phone, facsimile, postal address, email address);
(b) In accordance with these Conditions, the database of the key construction activities and monitoring requirements that are the subject of the Communications Plan;
(c) The database of stakeholders and residents who will be communicated with;
(d) Communication methods, an assessment of how these methods reach the different audience/stakeholder groups (including those methods set out in Condition CEMP.6), and detail on when each of these methods will be used (e.g. regular communication or event specific methods);
(e) The appointed specialist in Environmental and Occupational Medicine, including contact details (as per Condition SO.13);
(f) Any stakeholder specific communication plans required; and
(g) Monitoring and review procedures for the Communications Plan.

The Communications Plan shall be written in accordance with the external communication procedures set out in the CEMP and provided at least 20 working days prior to construction commencing, to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council, Working Liaison Group and the Community Liaison Group(s) established by Condition PI.5. The structure of the communication groups set out in these conditions is attached as Figure PI.A.

23) PI.5 The NZTA shall establish Community Liaison Group(s) at least two months prior to construction commencing in each of the following key construction areas:

(a) Te Atatu (including the SH16 Causeway)
(b) Waterview (including works to St Lukes on SH16 and on the Waterview Estuary and Causeway Bridges)
(c) Owairaka

and hold regular meetings (at least three monthly) throughout the construction period and up to 24 months following construction completion relevant to these areas (or less if the members of the Group agree), so that on-going monitoring information can continue to be disseminated.

The Community Liaison Group(s) shall be open to all interested parties within the Project...
area including, but not limited to the following groups:

(a) Auckland Council and Auckland Transport;
(b) Educational facilities within the Project area (including schools, kindergartens, childcare facilities and Unitec Institute of Technology);
(c) Relevant community/environmental groups (including but not limited to Friends of Oakley Creek, Star Mills Preservation Group, Cycle Action Auckland and representatives from those organisations identified in the Communications Plan (as required by Condition PI.2) and local residents;
(d) Department of Conservation;
(e) Local Boards;
(f) Iwi groups with Mana Whenua;
(g) Public transport providers; and
(h) Housing New Zealand Corporation.

Advice note: The purpose of the Community Liaison Group(s) is to provide a regular forum through which information about the Project can be provided to the community, and an opportunity for concerns or issues to be raised.

23) V.17 Prior to commencement of works adjacent to or on Traherne Island, the NZTA shall employ a suitably qualified and experienced ecologist for the preparation of a Traherne Island Weed and Pest Management Plan. The Plan shall be prepared in consultation with the Department of Conservation and be submitted to the Auckland Council for approval at least 20 working days prior to construction commencing.

24) E.1 The NZTA shall inform the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council in writing at least 10 working days before the start date of the works authorised by this Consent.

25) E.2 Prior to commencement of works, in each period between October 1 and April 30 that this Consent is exercised, a pre-construction site meeting between Auckland Council and relevant parties, including the primary contractor, shall be conducted. The approved Contractors Erosion and Sediment Control Plan (CESCP) as per Condition E.5 of this Consent shall be made available and discussed at the pre-construction meeting.

26) E.5 Prior to the commencement of works for each specific area and/or activity, a “Contractors Erosion and Sediment Control Plan” (CESCP) shall be prepared. This document shall follow the principles and practices within Technical Report G.22 Erosion and Sediment Control Plan and shall detail any specific variations from that report. The CESCPs shall include, but not be limited to:

(a) Contour information at suitable intervals;
(b) Erosion and sediment controls including specific pond design;
(c) Supporting calculations;
(d) Catchment boundaries for the sediment controls;
(e) Location of the works, and cut and fill operations;
(f) Details of construction methods to be employed, including timing and duration;
(g) A programme for managing exposed area, including progressive stabilisation considerations;
(h) The identification of appropriately qualified and experienced staff to manage the environmental issues onsite;
(i) The identification of staff who have clearly defined roles and responsibilities to monitor compliance with the Consent Conditions and CESCP;
(j) Provision of details of a chain of responsibility for managing environmental issues and
(k) The establishment of a sediment control team (including representatives from the contractor, Auckland Council and the NZTA) to meet and review erosion and sediment control on a weekly basis.

27) E.6 For each specific area of works, a CESCP shall be submitted a minimum of 20 working days prior to earthworks commencing, for the written approval of the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council, which shall be obtained prior to earthworks commencing. The approved CESCP shall be implemented accordingly.

28) E.7 Any amendments to the CESCPs must be approved by the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council in writing at least 10 working days prior to any amendment being implemented.

29) E.16 Prior to the commissioning of chemical treatments for sediment management purposes (as per Condition E.17), the NZTA shall provide the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council with a Chemical Treatment Plan (CTP), for confirmation by the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council that it will achieve the standards set out in the CESCP required under Condition E.6. The CTP shall follow the principles and chemical treatment details outlined within the Technical Report G.22 Erosion and Sediment Control Plan and shall include as a minimum:

(a) Specific design details of the chemical treatment system;
(b) Monitoring, maintenance (including post-storm) and contingency programme (including a Record Sheet);
(c) Details of optimum dosage (including assumptions);
(d) Results of the initial flocculation trial which will build on the information within Technical Report G.22 Erosion and Sediment Control Plan;
(e) A spill contingency plan;
(f) Details of the person or bodies that will hold responsibility for long-term maintenance of the flocculation treatment system and the organisational structure which will support this structure.

Any amendments to the CTP shall be approved by the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council, in writing, at least 10 working days prior to implementation.

30) C.1 The NZTA shall provide to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council plans and drawings (including dimensioned, cross sections, elevations and site plans of all areas of proposed reclamation (including associated permanent and temporary CMA occupation), permanent structures and temporary structures) at least 20 working days before the proposed date of commencement of the construction of the reclamation, bridge piers or temporary structure.

31) M.1 The NZTA shall finalise and implement through the CEMP, the ECOMP submitted with this application. The ECOMP shall be revised to accurately reflect the conditions of this consent and changes to the details of construction processes prior to construction commencing. The ECOMP shall include, but not be limited to, details of:

(a) Monitoring of marine habitats and ecological values;
(b) Trigger event criteria for undertaking additional monitoring;
(c) Procedures for responding to accidental discharges to the marine environment;
(d) Complaints investigation, monitoring and reporting; and
(e) The identification of staff and contractors’ responsibilities.
CONSTRUCTION CONDITIONS

32) CEMP.4 The CEMP shall be implemented and maintained throughout the entire construction period.

33) CEMP.5 A copy of the CEMP shall be held on each construction site at all times and be available for inspection on request by the Auckland Council.

34) CEMP.12 The CEMP shall be reviewed by the NZTA at least annually or as a result of a material change to the Project. The review shall take into consideration:
(a) Compliance with designation and consent conditions;
(b) Any changes to construction methods;
(c) Key changes to roles and responsibilities within the Project;
(d) Changes in industry best practice standards;
(e) Changes in legal or other requirements;
(f) Results of inspections, monitoring, incidents, corrective actions, internal or external assessments; and
(g) Public complaints.
A summary of the review process undertaken shall be kept by the NZTA, provided annually to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council and made available (with any related data) to the Auckland Council upon request.

35) CEMP.13 Following the review process (as described in Condition CEMP.12), the CEMP may require updating. Any material change proposed to the CEMP (including appended Management Plans) shall be submitted for approval to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council at least 10 working days prior to the proposed changes taking effect.

Advice Note: Material change will include amendment to any base information informing the CEMP or any process, procedure or method of the CEMP (such as the environmental constraints map, compliance monitoring process, complaints procedure or mitigation / remedial methods identified) which has the potential to increase adverse effects on a particular value. For clarity changes to personnel and contact schedules do not constitute a material change.

36) PI.3 At least 15 working days prior to the commencement of construction, and at 15 working day intervals thereafter, or as required depending on the scale of works and effects on the community, advertisements will be placed in the relevant local newspapers and community noticeboards (as identified in Condition CEMP.6(b)) detailing the nature of the forthcoming works, the location of the forthcoming works and hours of operation. All advertisements will include reference to a 24 hour toll free complaints telephone number. Where relevant, advertisements will also include but not be limited to details of:
(a) Any traffic disruptions or controls or changes to property access, pedestrian/ cycle routes and bus stops; and
(b) Any other construction activities, including night time works, blasting, and structure-borne noise, as identified in the conditions.

37) PI.4 The NZTA shall manage, investigate and resolve (as appropriate) all complaints for the duration of the construction works in accordance with the environmental complaints section of the CEMP. The implementation strategy for complaints includes:
(a) A 24 hour toll free telephone number and email address, which shall be provided to all potentially affected residents and businesses. The number shall be available and answered at all times during the entire duration of the works for the receipt and management of any complaints. A sign containing the contact details shall be located...
(b) The NZTA shall maintain a record of all complaints made to this number, email or any site office, including the full details of the complainant and the nature of the complaint;

(c) Upon receiving a complaint, within 10 days of complaint receipt, a formal written response will be provided to the complainant and Auckland Council;

(d) The NZTA shall undertake corrective action where necessary to resolve any problem identified. All action taken and relevant information shall be documented. For the avoidance of doubt, ‘where necessary’ refers to where the works are not being carried out in accordance with conditions of this designation;

(e) Where issues and complaints about effects cannot be resolved through the CEMP complaints management process, a meeting shall be held between the NZTA, the complainant and the Auckland Council representative(s) to discuss the complaint and ways in which the issue may be resolved. If parties cannot agree on a resolution, an independent qualified mediator will be appointed, agreeable to all parties and at the shared cost of all parties, to undertake mediation of the dispute or concerns; and

(f) All information collected in Conditions PI.4 (b), (c) and (d) shall be detailed in a Construction Compliance Report (including the means by which the complaint was addressed, whether resolution was reached and how the response was carried out) prepared by the NZTA. This Report shall be submitted to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council on a quarterly basis commencing at the beginning of the works and for the entire duration of construction.

38) PI.6 The Community Liaison Group(s) shall be provided opportunities to review and comment on the following (amongst other things):

(a) The Outline Plan of Works detailing designs for the northern and southern ventilation buildings and stacks (the outcomes of this consultation will be reported in accordance with the processes required in DC.8(n) and DC.9(k);

(b) The Open Space Restoration Plans (as required by Condition OS.3);

(c) Finalisation and amendment to Urban Design and Landscape Plans (UDL Plans) (as required by Condition LV.1);

(d) The Oakley Inlet Heritage Plan (as required by Conditions OS.5(b)(i) and ARCH.6);

(e) The detail of the Oakley Creek restoration (as required by Condition STW.20);

(f) Publicly available results of environmental monitoring as required by the designation and/or these Consents (e.g. air quality monitoring); and

(g) The finalisation of the STEM assessment required by CEMP.6(o) and a schedule of trees that are required to be removed for consideration of timber use in heritage projects as required by Condition SO.7.

Advice Note: Attention is drawn to the Vegetation conditions concerning identification and protection of Significant Vegetation and Valued Vegetation.

(h) Detailed design features of the Te Atatu underpass (e.g. lighting and architectural treatment).

39) E.3 Erosion and sediment control shall be in general accordance with the plans and information submitted with the application, and in particular, Technical Report G.22 Erosion and Sediment Control Plan, subject to such amendments as may be required by the following conditions of this Consent.

40) E.8 Erosion and sediment control measures shall be constructed and maintained in accordance with the ARC Technical Report 90 (TP90) (and any amendments to that document), except where a higher standard is detailed in the documents referred to in Conditions E.3 and E.5
above, in which case the higher standard shall apply.

41) E.10 Prior to any decision to discharge waters that have collected in coffer dam sumps to the coastal marine area (CMA), the following procedures shall be followed;
   (a) Sump waters shall be tested for pH and turbidity; and
   (b) Discharge to the CMA shall only be permitted where;
       (i) pH does not exceed a threshold of pH 8.5; and
       (ii) turbidity or suspended solids concentrations do not exceed a threshold, to be agreed between NZTA and the, Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council prior to use of temporary coffer dams.

In the event that measured pH and/or turbidity exceeds these thresholds, the sump waters shall be treated to the appropriate standard prior to discharge to the CMA or shall be disposed of to an approved location outside of the CMA. The proposed treatment methodology shall be included within the CESP and shall be submitted to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council for its approval at least 20 working days prior to implementation.

42) E.11 All ‘cleanwater’ runoff from stabilised surfaces, including catchment areas above the site, shall be diverted away from earthwork areas via a stabilised system, so as to prevent surface erosion.

43) E.14 The NZTA shall ensure that procedures are adopted to prevent the deposition of slurry, clay or other materials on the roads by vehicles leaving the site. Should the exercise of this Consent result in material being deposited on the road, that material shall be removed immediately to the satisfaction of the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council.

44) E.17 All sediment retention ponds and decanting earth bunds are to be chemically treated in accordance with the CTP required under Condition E.16 of this consent.

45) E.19 A copy of the “as-built(s)” and approved CESCPs shall be kept on site, and all erosion and sediment control measures (including staging boundaries and particularly the extent of exposed areas) shall be updated as soon as practicable as changes are made. As-built plans shall be accompanied by text detailing the relevant earthworks methodology, constraints and likely progressions, and shall be revised as required to enable clear interpretation as to the day to day operation and management of erosion and sediment controls.

46) E.21 The site shall be stabilised against erosion as soon as practicable, and in a progressive manner, as earthworks are finished over various areas of the site. Areas of bulk earthworks not actively worked for a period of two weeks shall be stabilised.

47) E.22 The NZTA shall ensure that the following earthworks shall be stabilised as soon as practicable after completion thereof, or within 5 working days of completion, whichever shall occur first:
   (a) Temporary erosion and sediment controls; and
   (b) Construction yards.

48) E.23 No surface earthworks on the site shall be undertaken between 1 May and 30 September in any year, without the written approval of the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council. Earthworks in this regard refers to bulk earthworks (cut/fill/waste) associated with the site.

49) C.2 Construction shall be undertaken in accordance with the construction methodology detailed in the application, specifically Technical Report G.23 Coastal Works and Technical Report
G.22 Erosion and Sediment Control Plan. The construction methodology shall include:

(a) The use of temporary coffer dams to create dry working areas;
(b) Realignment of sections of existing low-tide channels in Oakley inlet and Waterview Estuary that will be directly affected by the reclamation works;
(c) Removal of mangroves to provide construction and ground-treatment access, placement of temporary coffer dams and to facilitate natural channel migration in the Whau River side drainage channel (east of Rosebank Domain);
(d) Installation or removal works to be undertaken at the best practicable time to minimise potential sediment disturbance.

50) C.3 The NZTA shall notify the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council in writing of the proposed commencement date of the reclamation, structures and/or channel realignment works at least 10 working days prior to the proposed start date.

51) C.6 The NZTA shall maintain the site in good order and shall remedy all damage and disturbance caused by vehicle traffic, plant and equipment to the foreshore during construction, to the satisfaction of the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council.

52) M.10 The NZTA shall maintain the coastal marine area free of any gross litter, rubbish and debris during construction.

POST-CONSTRUCTION CONDITIONS

53) E.15 Notice shall be given to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council prior to any erosion and sediment control measures being removed and/or on completion of the works.

54) E.24 Revegetation/stabilisation shall be completed by 30 April in the year of bulk earthworks in accordance with measures detailed in the approved CESCP, unless a later date is approved in writing by the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council at least two weeks before 30 April.

55) C.4 The NZTA shall notify the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council in writing within 10 working days of the completion of each discrete area of reclamation, structures and/or channel realignment works.

MONITORING

56) E.20 The NZTA shall carry out monitoring in accordance with the Technical Report G.22 Erosion and Sediment Control Plan and the approved CESCP and shall maintain records detailing:

(a) The monitoring undertaken;
(b) The erosion and sediment controls that required maintenance;
(c) The time when the maintenance was completed; and
(d) Areas of non-compliance with the erosion and sediment control monitoring plan (if any) and the reasons for the non-compliance.

This information shall be made available to the Auckland Council upon request.

57) M.2 The NZTA shall engage a suitably qualified ecologist to undertake a marine habitat monitoring programme, as described in Conditions M.3 to M.6.

58) M.3 The marine benthic habitat monitoring programme shall be undertaken every 6 months:

(a) At least 12 months prior to construction commencing, to allow for two baseline surveys
(b) During construction; and
(c) For a maximum of 3 years following completion of the Project, or for a lesser time if the monitoring indicates no significant effects, as agreed with the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council.

59) M.4 The marine benthic habitat monitoring programme shall be undertaken in accordance with the details set out in the ECOMP and include:

(a) Sampling of the marine invertebrate community composition (collection of sediment cores to a depth of approximately 15cm);
(b) Sampling of the sediment surface (top 2cm) for sediment grain size; and
(c) Sampling of the sediment surface (top 2cm) for sediment quality (analysis of the concentration of copper, lead, zinc and polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons).

60) M.5 The marine benthic habitat monitoring shall be undertaken within sampling grids (50m x 30m) broadly established at the following locations:

(a) Two locations within Oakley Inlet;
(b) Four locations within Waterview Estuary; and
(c) Four locations north of the Causeway.

Specific locations and experimental design shall be detailed in the ECOMP, and the design of the monitoring programme will be based on the *Estuarine Environmental Assessment and Monitoring: A National Protocol* (Cawthron 2002).

61) M.6 The NZTA shall undertake additional marine habitat monitoring in the event of a ‘trigger event’ for marine ecology habitats. For the purposes of this consent, a ‘trigger event’ for marine ecology habitats is defined in the ECOMP.

62) M.7 The NZTA shall review the marine habitat monitoring results (pursuant to Conditions M.3 to M.6) and in the event that potential adverse effects are identified, the NZTA shall develop and implement appropriate contingency plans and/or remedial measures.

REPORTING

63) M.8 The marine benthic habitat monitoring results shall be compiled by the NZTA, and a report provided to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council every 6 months.
This document has been prepared in compliance with conditions of the "Final Report and Decision of the Board of Inquiry into the New Zealand Transport Agency Waterview Connection Proposal, Volume 2, Conditions of Consent". Schedule B of Volume 2 identifies the Conditions relevant to this Consent by the code and number as referenced throughout this document. In the event of dispute, Schedule B of Volume 2 shall take precedence over this Consent.

**Type:** Coastal Consent

**Description:** Discharge of Contaminants (Sectors 1 through 5)

This consent relates to the discharge of contaminants during construction into the CMA and discharge of contaminants in stormwater flows during construction along Sectors 1 – 5, including point source and sheet flow discharges.

**Duration:** 10 years

**Code:**

- RC = Standard Resource Consent Conditions
- CEMP = Construction Environment Management Plan Conditions
- PI = Public Information Conditions
- E = Earthworks Conditions
- SW = Stormwater Conditions
- C = Coastal Conditions
- M = Marine Ecology Conditions

**GENERAL CONDITIONS**

1) **RC.1** Except as modified by the conditions below, the works shall be undertaken in general accordance with the information provided by the New Zealand Transport Agency (NZTA), in the resource consent applications and the supporting documents (as detailed in Condition DC.1), and in the supplementary information provided in evidence by the NZTA.

2) **RC.1A** The NZTA shall implement the conditions of these consents in accordance with Schedule B, which sets out the Conditions that are to be applied to each consent including the duration of each consent.

3) **RC.2** The Conditions of these consents may be reviewed by the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council, pursuant to Section 128 of the Resource Management Act 1991 (the Act), by the giving of notice pursuant to Section 129 of the Act, on the one year anniversary of the commencement of the consents and every year thereafter in order:

   (a) To deal with any adverse effect on the environment which may arise from the exercise of the consent and which it is appropriate to deal with at a later stage; or

   (b) To deal with any other adverse effect on the environment on which the exercise of the consent may have an influence.

4) **RC.4** Any Management Plans submitted to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland...
Council for approval or certification may be submitted in stages to reflect any proposed staging of the physical works. Plans submitted shall clearly show the integration with adjacent stages and interrelated activities.

5) **RC.5** In the event of any dispute, disagreement or inaction arising as to any Auckland Council Manager certification/approvals required by the consent conditions, or as to the implementation of or monitoring required by the conditions, matters shall be referred in the first instance to the NZTA Regional State Highway Manager and to the Resource Consents Manager, Auckland Council to determine a process of resolution.

If a resolution cannot be agreed, then the matter may be referred to an independent appropriately qualified expert, agreeable to both parties, setting out the details of the matter to be referred for determination and the reasons the parties do not agree.

The independent appropriately qualified expert shall be appointed within 10 working days of the NZTA or Auckland Council giving notice of their intention to seek expert determination. The expert shall, as soon as possible, issue his or her decision on the matter. In making the decision, the expert shall be entitled to seek further information and hear from the parties as he or she sees fit.

Advice note: The dispute resolution process provided for in this condition does not prejudice any party’s right to take enforcement action in relation to the implementation of the designation conditions. However, the dispute resolution process will be applied before any formal enforcement action is taken by the Council except in urgent situations.

6) **RC.6** Pursuant to Section 36(1)(d) of the RMA, the requiring authority is required to pay to Auckland Council any administrative charge for the carrying out by the local authority of its functions in relation to the administration, monitoring, and supervision of designation conditions.

7) **RC.7** The servants of agents of Auckland Council shall be permitted to have access to relevant parts of the Project at all reasonable times for the purpose of carrying out inspections, investigations, tests, measurements and/or to take samples.

8) **E.4** A detailed schedule of construction activities shall be prepared and forwarded to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council prior to the commencement of works, and updated at 3 monthly intervals during the works. These schedule shall include details of:

   (a) The location, commencement date and expected duration of any major earthworks operations, including but not limited to, the portal excavations and the Great North Road cut and cover operation; and

   (b) The proposed construction and methodology, including staging of earthworks.

**PRE-CONSTRUCTION CONDITIONS**

9) **RC.3** Within 3 months of the resource consents commencing for the Project (or at least 1 month prior to any Auckland Council approvals or certifications required by these Conditions, whichever is the earlier), the NZTA shall update and finalise to the satisfaction of the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council all drawings and Plans cited in Schedule A, together with a full set of the information and documentation referred to in Condition DC.1 and provide these to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council. At the same time the NZTA shall prepare to the satisfaction of Auckland Council, a document for each resource consent which sets out the resource consent and have attached to it in text format a comprehensive set of the conditions imposed by the Board of Inquiry in its Final Decision as summarised in Schedule B, inclusive of any standard conditions and advice notes.

In particular (but not limited to), the following Plans will need to be amended in light of the
Final Conditions:

(a) F.2 Operational Scheme Plans (refer Schedule A, Row 3) require amendment detailing the amended location of the ventilation stacks and southern ventilation buildings;

(b) F.5 Construction Scheme Plans (refer Schedule A, Row 4) require amendment to detail changes to construction footprint for the amended location of ventilation stacks and southern ventilation buildings and reconfiguration of Construction Yard 1);

(c) F.6 Construction Yard Plans 101 and 107 (refer Schedule A, Row 7), detailing amendments to the Construction Yard 1 in light of the reconfiguration of this Yard and for Construction Yard 7 in light of the relocation of the northern ventilation stack (refer Schedule A, Row 34);

(d) F.8 Plans of Structures and Architectural Features (refer Schedule A, Row 9), detailing the amended location of the Northern Ventilation Stack and the design and location of the Southern Ventilation Building and Stack;

(e) The CNVMP (including flow diagram and the supplementary evidence produced by Ms Wilkening) (refer Schedule A, Rows 36, 37 and 39);

(f) Update to the areas of the Open Space Restoration Plans (Schedule A, Row 30) to:
   (i) Extend these areas in geographic extent to provide for the works identified in the Management Plan notations identified in the OS Conditions (in particular OS.5 and OS.6). (e.g. these areas will (as relevant) include Eric Armishaw Park, Howlett Reserve and Waterview Esplanade Reserve); and
   (ii) Exclude the operational area of designation required for the northern ventilation stack (as identified through the OPW process (refer Condition DC.8); and

(g) Schedule A, Row 28 the Plan detailing proposed open space impacts and replacements needs to be updated to recolour the two land parcels on Hendon Avenue (which are excluded from the replacement calculations) to ‘brown’ to confirm they are part of the operational impact and will not be returned as open space.

10) CEMP.1 Except where provided for in Condition CEMP.1A below, the NZTA shall update and finalise the draft Construction Environmental Management Plan (CEMP) including all the Management Plans which form part of the CEMP and are included as appendices, submitted with this application to ensure compliance with the consent and designation conditions imposed by the Board of Inquiry. The CEMP shall be provided to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council for review at least 20 working days prior to the commencement of works to certify compliance and consistency with the conditions. Construction shall not commence until certification is obtained.

Advice note: For clarity the CEMP will be updated and finalised in accordance with the conditions. Any amendments will be limited to reflecting the requirements of the conditions, specifying personnel, and completing the Environmental Risk Register.

Advice Note: Particular care must be taken with development and operation of Construction Yard 7. When the CEMP is being updated and finalised, consideration must be given to the contents of the draft SSCEMP prepared for Construction Yard 7 (Row 41, Schedule A) recognising changes required by inclusion of the ventilation stack in this yard.

11) CEMP.1A In the case of the trial embankment, where works will commence well in advance of the main construction works for the Causeway, the NZTA will provide to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council, a site-specific CEMP for review and approval at least 20 working days prior to commencement of the trial embankment works.

12) CEMP.1B For the purposes of staging works, as some works may commence well in advance of others, the NZTA may provide staged or site specific CEMPs for those works to the Major...
Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council. The NZTA shall consult with the Team Manager about the need and timing for any other site-specific or staged CEMPs and shall provide any required site-specific or staged CEMPs to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council for review at least 20 working days prior to commencement of such the specific stage (including enabling) or site works.

13) CEMP.2 The certification process of the CEMP (and its appendices) shall confirm that the CEMP gives effect to the relevant conditions, as well as those matters in CEMP.6, and that it includes details of:

(a) Staff and contractors’ responsibilities;
(b) Training requirements for employees, sub-contractors and visitors;
(c) Environmental incident and emergency management;
(d) Communication and interface procedures (in accordance with the Communication Plan required under Condition PI.2);
(e) Environmental complaints management (including the procedures required under Condition PI.4);
(f) Compliance monitoring;
(g) Reporting (including detail on the frequency of reporting to the Auckland Council);
(h) Environmental auditing; and
(i) Corrective action.

14) CEMP.3 The management of key environmental effects associated with the construction phase of the Project is detailed within environmental management plans that are included in the CEMP as appendices. This suite of management plans as shown on Figure CEMP.A comprises:

(a) Construction Noise and Vibration Management Plan (CNVMP);
(b) Construction Air Quality Management Plan (CAQMP);
(c) Erosion and Sediment Control Plan (ESCP);
(d) Temporary Stormwater Management Plan (TSMP);
(e) Ecological Management Plan (ECOMP);
(f) Groundwater Management Plan (GWMP);
(g) Settlement Effects Management Plan (SEMP);
(h) Contaminated Soils Management Plan (CSMP);
(i) Hazardous Substances Management Plan (HSMP);
(j) Archaeological Site Management Plan (ASMP);
(k) Construction Traffic Management Plan (CTMP);
(l) Concrete Batching and Crushing Plant Management Plan (CBCPMP);
(m) Electrical Infrastructure Site Development and Construction Management Plan (EISDCMP) (to be prepared in accordance with Condition CEMP.15);
(n) Waste Management Plan (to be prepared in accordance with Condition CEMP.10)
and
(o) Temporary Construction Lighting Management Plan (to be prepared in accordance with Condition L.2).

15) CEMP.6 The finalised CEMP shall include specific details on demolition, construction and management of all works associated with the Project. The certification process of the CEMP shall confirm that the CEMP includes details of the following:

(a) Details of the site or Project manager and the community liaison person, including their
(b) The location of large notice boards that clearly identify the NZTA and the Project name, together with the name, telephone, email address and address for service of the site or Project manager and the community liaison person;

(c) An outline construction programme of the work indicating in particular likely time periods for road closures and anticipated traffic diversion effects;

(d) The hours of work, which should reflect the need to ensure that residents enjoy reasonable freedom from noisy or intrusive construction activity in their neighbourhood at night, on Sundays and during public holidays;

(e) Measures to be adopted to maintain the land affected by the works in a tidy condition in terms of disposal/storage of rubbish, storage and unloading of building materials and similar construction activities;

(f) Location of worker’s offices and conveniences (e.g. portaloos);

(g) Procedures of controlling sediment run-off, dust and the removal of soil, debris and demolition and construction materials from public roads or places. Dust mitigation measures should include use of water sprays to control dust nuisance on dry or windy days;

(h) Methods to stabilise ingress and egress points to construction sites, to the standard required by ARC Technical Publication 90 (Nov 2007);

(i) Procedures for ensuring that residents within 100m of construction areas or other people whose use of an area may be disrupted by construction works (for example the Te Atatu Boating Club for works on the Whau River) are given notice of the commencement of construction activities and are informed about the expected duration of the works, including potentially through the community liaison person;

(j) Procedures to be followed to ensure that those working in the vicinity of identified heritage and ecological features are aware of the heritage or ecological values of these features and the steps which need to be taken to meet the conditions applying to work on the site;

(k) Means of ensuring the safety of the general public;

(l) Procedures for the community liaison person to receive and respond to complaints about construction activities, including dust and odour from the works;

(m) Methods of mitigating the local and network wide effects of construction of individual elements of the Project, including measures to ensure that parking of staff vehicles on surrounding streets is restricted;

(n) All temporary boundary/security fences shall be maintained in good order, with any graffiti removed as soon as possible;

(o) Confirmation of a Project Arborist and completion of a STEM assessment of the preliminary list of Amenity Trees in Schedule E.7 of the AEE to confirm the final Amenity Trees; and

(p) The process to minimise removal of Amenity Trees, maximise the protection of those retained, undertake relocation of Amenity Trees and replacement planting of specimen trees (in accordance with Conditions LV.10 and ARCH.9)).

(q) Advice note: For the purposes of CEMP.6(o) and (p), Amenity Tree is defined as a tree or trees that contribute significantly to amenity, taking into account its form, size, health, ecological or historical significance (a preliminary list of these trees is provided in Appendix E.7 of the AEE).

16) CEMP.10 The NZTA shall finalise and implement the Hazardous Substances Management Plan
(HSMP), through the CEMP (as per Condition CEMP.1), submitted with this application, prior to works commencing on site. The certification process of the CEMP shall confirm that the HSMP clearly identifies the requirements for proper storage, handling, transport and disposal of hazardous substances during the construction phase of the Project and confirm that there shall be no storage of explosives on the Project site.

17) CEMP.11 The NZTA shall develop and implement a Waste Management Plan in accordance with the waste management principles, controls and methods set out in the CEMP. The Plan shall be provided to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council and be implemented throughout the entire construction period.

18) CEMP.15 The NZTA will be responsible for all service relocations required for construction of the Project. The NZTA shall liaise with the providers of infrastructure service networks (including, but not limited to water, gas, stormwater, wastewater, power and telecommunications), and private property owners with on-site services to develop methodologies and timing for necessary services relocation required for the Project, with the objective of minimising disruption to the operation of these service networks and on-site services.

Advice note:
(a) It is noted that if separate consents are required for relocations for any services of network utility operators or landowners, such consents will be obtained before construction commences in the relevant area, and any effects of those relocations would be considered at that time. The same applies to any alteration of consents if required.
(b) Network infrastructure owned and operated by Watercare Services is located within the designations. An operating agreement will be developed by the NZTA and Watercare Services which will include appropriate notification and access protocols where works are to be undertaken by either network operator on or adjacent to Watercare Services infrastructure within the designations.

19) PI.1 A community liaison person shall be appointed by the NZTA for the duration of the construction phase of the Project to be the main and readily accessible point of contact for persons affected by the Project. The liaison person’s name and contact details shall be made available in the CEMP and on site signage by the NZTA. This person must be reasonably available for on-going consultation on all matters of concern to affected parties arising from the Project.

20) PI.2 The NZTA shall prepare and implement a Communications Plan that sets out procedures detailing how the public, Ministry of Social Development, Housing New Zealand Corporation and other organisations representing the particular demographic characteristics of the community (including but not limited to Primary Health Organisations, general practitioners, youth, education organisations, aged care groups and groups representing ethnic and migrant communities) will be communicated with throughout the construction and monitoring periods (as prescribed in the designation and consent conditions).

In preparing the Communications Plan, the NZTA will liaise with Auckland Council to access its community liaison databases. The Communications Plan will include details of:
(a) The site or Project manager and the community liaison person, including their contact details (phone, facsimile, postal address, email address);
(b) In accordance with these Conditions, the database of the key construction activities and monitoring requirements that are the subject of the Communications Plan;
(c) The database of stakeholders and residents who will be communicated with;
(d) Communication methods, an assessment of how these methods reach the different
(e) The appointed specialist in Environmental and Occupational Medicine, including contact details (as per Condition SO.13);

(f) Any stakeholder specific communication plans required; and

(g) Monitoring and review procedures for the Communications Plan.

The Communications Plan shall be written in accordance with the external communication procedures set out in the CEMP and provided at least 20 working days prior to construction commencing, to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council, Working Liaison Group and the Community Liaison Group(s) established by Condition PI.5. The structure of the communication groups set out in these conditions is attached as Figure PI.A.

21) PI.5 The NZTA shall establish Community Liaison Group(s) at least two months prior to construction commencing in each of the following key construction areas:

(a) Te Atatu (including the SH16 Causeway)

(b) Waterview (including works to St Lukes on SH16 and on the Waterview Estuary and Causeway Bridges)

(c) Owairaka

and hold regular meetings (at least three monthly) throughout the construction period and up to 24 months following construction completion relevant to these areas (or less if the members of the Group agree), so that on-going monitoring information can continue to be disseminated.

The Community Liaison Group(s) shall be open to all interested parties within the Project area including, but not limited to the following groups:

(a) Auckland Council and Auckland Transport;

(b) Educational facilities within the Project area (including schools, kindergartens, childcare facilities and Unitec Institute of Technology);

(c) Relevant community/environmental groups (including but not limited to Friends of Oakley Creek, Star Mills Preservation Group, Cycle Action Auckland and representatives from those organisations identified in the Communications Plan (as required by Condition PI.2) and local residents;

(d) Department of Conservation;

(e) Local Boards;

(f) Iwi groups with Mana Whenua;

(g) Public transport providers; and

(h) Housing New Zealand Corporation.

Advice note: The purpose of the Community Liaison Group(s) is to provide a regular forum through which information about the Project can be provided to the community, and an opportunity for concerns or issues to be raised.

22) SW.2 The NZTA shall inform the Auckland Council in writing at least 10 working days prior to the start date of the works authorised by this consent.

23) SW.3 The NZTA shall submit the final design of the construction stormwater system for approval to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council at least 20 working days prior to the commencement of construction works. This certification shall confirm the final design meets Condition SW.1, including:
(a) Design calculations for the following:
   (i) flow attenuation devices,
   (ii) stormwater treatment device sizing,
   (iii) bypass device design,
   (iv) stormwater treatment device efficiency;
(b) Design drawings, including all structures, outfalls, treatment devices, bypass devices, wetlands and ponds, swales and overland flow paths;
(c) Catchment plans detailing the area draining to each device; and
(d) Outfall locations.

24) SW.4 Any subsequent amendments to the final designs required by Condition SW.3 shall be submitted for approval in writing by the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council at least 20 working days prior to implementation.

25) SW.5 The NZTA shall arrange and conduct pre-construction site meetings between the Auckland Council and all relevant parties, including the site stormwater engineer, with regard to each component of the temporary stormwater management works. The Council shall be provided with 5 working days written notice of the date and time of each pre-construction site meeting, prior to construction of these works. Any resulting amendments to the design of the works may be reviewed at that time and shall be approved in accordance with Condition SW.3.

26) SW.6 The NZTA shall finalise and implement the Temporary Stormwater Management Plan (TSMP) submitted with this application, as part of the CEMP. The purpose of the TSMP is to ensure appropriate controls are in place to manage stormwater during construction.

27) E.1 The NZTA shall inform the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council in writing at least 10 working days before the start date of the works authorised by this Consent.

28) E.2 Prior to commencement of works, in each period between October 1 and April 30 that this Consent is exercised, a pre-construction site meeting between Auckland Council and relevant parties, including the primary contractor, shall be conducted. The approved Contractors Erosion and Sediment Control Plan (CESCP) as per Condition E.5 of this Consent shall be made available and discussed at the pre-construction meeting.

29) E.5 Prior to the commencement of works for each specific area and/or activity, a “Contractors Erosion and Sediment Control Plan” (CESCP) shall be prepared. This document shall follow the principles and practices within Technical Report G.22 Erosion and Sediment Control Plan and shall detail any specific variations from that report. The CESCPs shall include, but not be limited to:
   (a) Contour information at suitable intervals;
   (b) Erosion and sediment controls including specific pond design;
   (c) Supporting calculations;
   (d) Catchment boundaries for the sediment controls;
   (e) Location of the works, and cut and fill operations;
   (f) Details of construction methods to be employed, including timing and duration;
   (g) A programme for managing exposed area, including progressive stabilisation considerations;
   (h) The identification of appropriately qualified and experienced staff to manage the environmental issues onsite;
   (i) The identification of staff who have clearly defined roles and responsibilities to monitor
(j) Provision of details of a chain of responsibility for managing environmental issues and
details of responsible personnel; and

(k) The establishment of a sediment control team (including representatives from the
contractor, Auckland Council and the NZTA) to meet and review erosion and sediment
control on a weekly basis.

30) E.6 For each specific area of works, a CESCP shall be submitted a minimum of 20 working
days prior to earthworks commencing, for the written approval of the Major Infrastructure
Team Manager, Auckland Council, which shall be obtained prior to earthworks
commencing. The approved CESCP shall be implemented accordingly.

31) E.7 Any amendments to the CESCPs must be approved by the Major Infrastructure Team
Manager, Auckland Council in writing at least 10 working days prior to any amendment
being implemented.

32) E.12 All perimeter controls shall be operational before earthworks begin.

33) E.13 Prior to the construction of sediment retention ponds, super silt fences or other devices
approved by the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council shall be constructed
below the entire area of the sediment retention pond footprint.

34) M.1 The NZTA shall finalise and implement through the CEMP, the ECOMP submitted with this
application. The ECOMP shall be revised to accurately reflect the conditions of this consent
and changes to the details of construction processes prior to construction commencing.
The ECOMP shall include, but not be limited to, details of:

(a) Monitoring of marine habitats and ecological values;
(b) Trigger event criteria for undertaking additional monitoring;
(c) Procedures for responding to accidental discharges to the marine environment;
(d) Complaints investigation, monitoring and reporting; and
(e) The identification of staff and contractors’ responsibilities.

CONSTRUCTION CONDITIONS

35) CEMP.4 The CEMP shall be implemented and maintained throughout the entire construction period.

36) CEMP.5 A copy of the CEMP shall be held on each construction site at all times and be available for
inspection on request by the Auckland Council.

37) CEMP.12 The CEMP shall be reviewed by the NZTA at least annually or as a result of a material
change to the Project. The review shall take into consideration:

(a) Compliance with designation and consent conditions;
(b) Any changes to construction methods;
(c) Key changes to roles and responsibilities within the Project;
(d) Changes in industry best practice standards;
(e) Changes in legal or other requirements;
(f) Results of inspections, monitoring, incidents, corrective actions, internal or external
assessments; and
(g) Public complaints.
A summary of the review process undertaken shall be kept by the NZTA, provided annually
to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council and made available (with any
related data) to the Auckland Council upon request.
38) CEMP.13 Following the review process (as described in Condition CEMP.12), the CEMP may require updating. Any material change proposed to the CEMP (including appended Management Plans) shall be submitted for approval to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council at least 10 working days prior to the proposed changes taking effect.

Advice Note: Material change will include amendment to any base information informing the CEMP or any process, procedure or method of the CEMP (such as the environmental constraints map, compliance monitoring process, complaints procedure or mitigation / remedial methods identified) which has the potential to increase adverse effects on a particular value. For clarity changes to personnel and contact schedules do not constitute a material change.

39) PI.3 At least 15 working days prior to the commencement of construction, and at 15 working day intervals thereafter, or as required depending on the scale of works and effects on the community, advertisements will be placed in the relevant local newspapers and community noticeboards (as identified in Condition CEMP.6(b)) detailing the nature of the forthcoming works, the location of the forthcoming works and hours of operation. All advertisements will include reference to a 24 hour toll free complaints telephone number. Where relevant, advertisements will also include but not be limited to details of:

(a) Any traffic disruptions or controls or changes to property access, pedestrian/ cycle routes and bus stops; and

(b) Any other construction activities, including night time works, blasting, and structure-borne noise, as identified in the conditions.

40) PI.4 The NZTA shall manage, investigate and resolve (as appropriate) all complaints for the duration of the construction works in accordance with the environmental complaints section of the CEMP. The implementation strategy for complaints includes:

(a) A 24 hour toll free telephone number and email address, which shall be provided to all potentially affected residents and businesses. The number shall be available and answered at all times during the entire duration of the works for the receipt and management of any complaints. A sign containing the contact details shall be located at each site specific work activity;

(b) The NZTA shall maintain a record of all complaints made to this number, email or any site office, including the full details of the complainant and the nature of the complaint;

(c) Upon receiving a complaint, within 10 days of complaint receipt, a formal written response will be provided to the complainant and Auckland Council;

(d) The NZTA shall undertake corrective action where necessary to resolve any problem identified. All action taken and relevant information shall be documented. For the avoidance of doubt, ‘where necessary’ refers to where the works are not being carried out in accordance with conditions of this designation;

(e) Where issues and complaints about effects cannot be resolved through the CEMP complaints management process, a meeting shall be held between the NZTA, the complainant and the Auckland Council representative(s) to discuss the complaint and ways in which the issue may be resolved. If parties cannot agree on a resolution, an independent qualified mediator will be appointed, agreeable to all parties and at the shared cost of all parties, to undertake mediation of the dispute or concerns; and

(f) All information collected in Conditions PI.4 (b), (c) and (d) shall be detailed in a Construction Compliance Report (including the means by which the complaint was addressed, whether resolution was reached and how the response was carried out) prepared by the NZTA. This Report shall be submitted to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council on a quarterly basis commencing at the beginning of the
41) PI.6 The Community Liaison Group(s) shall be provided opportunities to review and comment on the following (amongst other things):

(a) The Outline Plan of Works detailing designs for the northern and southern ventilation buildings and stacks (the outcomes of this consultation will be reported in accordance with the processes required in DC.8(n) and DC.9(k);

(b) The Open Space Restoration Plans (as required by Condition OS.3);

(c) Finalisation and amendment to Urban Design and Landscape Plans (UDL Plans) (as required by Condition LV.1);

(d) The Oakley Inlet Heritage Plan (as required by Conditions OS.5(b)(i) and ARCH.6);

(e) The detail of the Oakley Creek restoration (as required by Condition STW.20);

(f) Publicly available results of environmental monitoring as required by the designation and/or these Consents (e.g. air quality monitoring); and

(g) The finalisation of the STEM assessment required by CEMP.6(o) and a schedule of trees that are required to be removed for consideration of timber use in heritage projects as required by Condition SO.7.

Advice Note: Attention is drawn to the Vegetation conditions concerning identification and protection of Significant Vegetation and Valued Vegetation.

(h) Detailed design features of the Te Atatu underpass (e.g. lighting and architectural treatment).

42) E.3 Erosion and sediment control shall be in general accordance with the plans and information submitted with the application, and in particular, Technical Report G.22 Erosion and Sediment Control Plan, subject to such amendments as may be required by the following conditions of this Consent.

43) E.8 Erosion and sediment control measures shall be constructed and maintained in accordance with the ARC Technical Report 90 (TP90) (and any amendments to that document), except where a higher standard is detailed in the documents referred to in Conditions E.3 and E.5 above, in which case the higher standard shall apply.

44) E.10 Prior to any decision to discharge waters that have collected in coffer dam sumps to the coastal marine area (CMA), the following procedures shall be followed;

(a) Sump waters shall be tested for pH and turbidity; and

(b) Discharge to the CMA shall only be permitted where;

(i) pH does not exceed a threshold of pH 8.5; and

(ii) turbidity or suspended solids concentrations do not exceed a threshold, to be agreed between NZTA and the, Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council prior to use of temporary coffer dams.

In the event that measured pH and/or turbidity exceeds these thresholds, the sump waters shall be treated to the appropriate standard prior to discharge to the CMA or shall be disposed of to an approved location outside of the CMA. The proposed treatment methodology shall be included within the CESP and shall be submitted to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council for its approval at least 20 working days prior to implementation.

45) E.11 All ‘cleanwater’ runoff from stabilised surfaces, including catchment areas above the site, shall be diverted away from earthwork areas via a stabilised system, so as to prevent surface erosion.

46) E.14 The NZTA shall ensure that procedures are adopted to prevent the deposition of slurry, clay
or other materials on the roads by vehicles leaving the site. Should the exercise of this Consent result in material being deposited on the road, that material shall be removed immediately to the satisfaction of the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council.

47) E.21 The site shall be stabilised against erosion as soon as practicable, and in a progressive manner, as earthworks are finished over various areas of the site. Areas of bulk earthworks not actively worked for a period of two weeks shall be stabilised.

48) E.22 The NZTA shall ensure that the following earthworks shall be stabilised as soon as practicable after completion thereof, or within 5 working days of completion, whichever shall occur first:
   (a) Temporary erosion and sediment controls; and
   (b) Construction yards.

49) E.23 No surface earthworks on the site shall be undertaken between 1 May and 30 September in any year, without the written approval of the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council. Earthworks in this regard refers to bulk earthworks (cut/fill/waste) associated with the site.
Stormwater management during construction shall be undertaken in accordance with the plans and information submitted with this application and the information contained within Technical Report G.15 Assessment of Stormwater and Streamworks Effects. In particular this requires the construction and completion of stormwater management works to the treatment standards detailed in Tables 1 and 2 below:

Table 1: Motorway catchment areas and treatment standards for Construction Phase of the Waterview Connection Project.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sector</th>
<th>Existing Impervious</th>
<th>Additional Impervious</th>
<th>Total</th>
<th>Treatment</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Area (ha)</td>
<td>Percentage proposed treatment (%)</td>
<td>Area (ha)</td>
<td>Percentage proposed treatment (%)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>8.05</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>3.67</td>
<td>11.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>1.45</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0.72</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>3.88</td>
<td>13.6</td>
<td>1.47</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>8.37</td>
<td>18 – 70(^4)</td>
<td>3.40</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>6.62</td>
<td>30.3</td>
<td>3.43</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>4.08</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1.07</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>na</td>
<td>na</td>
<td>na</td>
<td>na</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>na</td>
<td>na</td>
<td>na</td>
<td>na</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>1.04</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>8.49</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total</td>
<td>33.49</td>
<td>22.25</td>
<td>55.74</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\(^1\) TSS removal is on a long term average basis.

\(^2\) Attenuation of the peak post-development runoff to the peak pre-development runoff for the 2, 10 and 20 year ARI rainfall events

\(^3\) Extended detention of the 34.5mm rainfall event for 24 hours in accordance with ARC TP10 (2003) guidelines.

\(^4\) Range depends on construction stage refer to Technical Report G.15 for details.
Table 2: Construction Yard Catchment Areas for Water Quality Treatment during Construction Phase of the Waterview Connection Project

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sector</th>
<th>Construction Yards</th>
<th>New Impervious Construction Working Catchments</th>
<th>Treatment</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Area (ha)</td>
<td>Percentage proposed treatment (%)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>4.20</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>na</td>
<td>na</td>
<td>75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>0.37</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td></td>
<td>na</td>
<td>75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>3 &amp; 4</td>
<td>7.78</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>1.22</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>6 &amp; 7</td>
<td>1.90</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td></td>
<td>na</td>
<td>Na</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>8, 9, 10, 11 &amp; 12</td>
<td>4.99</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total</td>
<td></td>
<td>20.46</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*1 TSS removal is on a long term average basis.

*2 Attenuation of the peak post-development runoff to the peak pre-development runoff for the 2, 10 and 20 year ARI rainfall events.

*3 Extended detention of the 34.5mm rainfall event for 24 hours in accordance with ARC TP10 (2003) guidelines.

*4 Extended detention is to be provided for stormwater devices discharging to Oakley Creek (upstream of Great North Road), but is not required for stormwater devices discharging to Oakley Inlet (downstream of Great North Road).

51) SW.7 The NZTA shall undertake regular inspections of all stormwater treatment devices installed during construction to ensure they are operating in accordance with the consent conditions and TSMP. All records of these inspections shall be submitted to the Council on a monthly basis.

52) SW.9 The NZTA shall ensure that, for stormwater flows in excess of the capacity of the primary systems, major overland flow paths shall be provided and maintained to allow surplus stormwater from critical storms, up to the 100-year average recurrence interval (ARI) event, to discharge with the minimum of nuisance and damage.

Advice note: For the purposes of this Consent, "major overland flow paths" are those that accompany a primary drainage system of a nominal 600 mm diameter pipe or larger or with peak overland flow exceeding 0.5 m³/s in the 100-year ARI event.
53) SW.20 Any stormwater outfalls authorised by this Consent shall incorporate energy dissipation and/or erosion protection measures to minimise the occurrence of bed scour and bank erosion. The design of stormwater outfalls shall assess various rainfall events and tailwater levels (stream and sea levels) to ensure the critical storm event is considered in the design.

54) C.2 Construction shall be undertaken in accordance with the construction methodology detailed in the application, specifically Technical Report G.23 Coastal Works and Technical Report G.22 Erosion and Sediment Control Plan. The construction methodology shall include:
   (a) The use of temporary coffer dams to create dry working areas;
   (b) Realignment of sections of existing low-tide channels in Oakley inlet and Waterview Estuary that will be directly affected by the reclamation works;
   (c) Removal of mangroves to provide construction and ground-treatment access, placement of temporary coffer dams and to facilitate natural channel migration in the Whau River side drainage channel (east of Rosebank Domain);
   (d) Installation or removal works to be undertaken at the best practicable time to minimise potential sediment disturbance.

55) M.10 The NZTA shall maintain the coastal marine area free of any gross litter, rubbish and debris during construction.

POST-CONSTRUCTION CONDITIONS

56) SW.8 The NZTA shall arrange and conduct a post construction site meeting within 30 days of completion of installation of the stormwater management works between Auckland Council and all relevant parties, including the site stormwater engineer.

57) E.15 Notice shall be given to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council prior to any erosion and sediment control measures being removed and/or on completion of the works.

MONITORING

58) E.20 The NZTA shall carry out monitoring in accordance with the Technical Report G.22 Erosion and Sediment Control Plan and the approved CESCP and shall maintain records detailing:
   (a) The monitoring undertaken;
   (b) The erosion and sediment controls that required maintenance;
   (c) The time when the maintenance was completed; and
   (d) Areas of non-compliance with the erosion and sediment control monitoring plan (if any) and the reasons for the non-compliance.
   This information shall be made available to the Auckland Council upon request.

59) M.2 The NZTA shall engage a suitably qualified ecologist to undertake a marine habitat monitoring programme, as described in Conditions M.3 to M.6.

60) M.3 The marine benthic habitat monitoring programme shall be undertaken every 6 months:
   (a) At least 12 months prior to construction commencing, to allow for two baseline surveys to be undertaken;
   (b) During construction; and
   (c) For a maximum of 3 years following completion of the Project, or for a lesser time if the monitoring indicates no significant effects, as agreed with the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council.
61) M.4 The marine benthic habitat monitoring programme shall be undertaken in accordance with the details set out in the ECOMP and include:

(a) Sampling of the marine invertebrate community composition (collection of sediment cores to a depth of approximately 15cm);

(b) Sampling of the sediment surface (top 2cm) for sediment grain size; and

(c) Sampling of the sediment surface (top 2cm) for sediment quality (analysis of the concentration of copper, lead, zinc and polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons).

62) M.5 The marine benthic habitat monitoring shall be undertaken within sampling grids (50m x 30m) broadly established at the following locations:

(a) Two locations within Oakley Inlet;

(b) Four locations within Waterview Estuary; and

(c) Four locations north of the Causeway.

Specific locations and experimental design shall be detailed in the ECOMP, and the design of the monitoring programme will be based on the Estuarine Environmental Assessment and Monitoring: A National Protocol (Cawthron 2002).

63) M.6 The NZTA shall undertake additional marine habitat monitoring in the event of a 'trigger event' for marine ecology habitats. For the purposes of this consent, a 'trigger event' for marine ecology habitats is defined in the ECOMP.

64) M.7 The NZTA shall review the marine habitat monitoring results (pursuant to Conditions M.3 to M.6) and in the event that potential adverse effects are identified, the NZTA shall develop and implement appropriate contingency plans and/or remedial measures.

REPORTING

65) M.8 The marine benthic habitat monitoring results shall be compiled by the NZTA, and a report provided to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council every 6 months.
This document has been prepared in compliance with conditions of the “Final Report and Decision of the Board of Inquiry into the New Zealand Transport Agency Waterview Connection Proposal, Volume 2, Conditions of Consent”. Schedule B of Volume 2 identifies the Conditions relevant to this Consent by the code and number as referenced throughout this document. In the event of dispute, Schedule B of Volume 2 shall take precedence over this Consent.

**Type:** Coastal Consent

**Description:** Discharge of Contaminants (Sectors 1 through to 5):

This consent relates to the discharge of contaminants during construction into the CMA and discharge of stormwater during construction along Sectors 1 – 5, including point source and sheet flow discharges.

**Duration:** 10 years

**Code:**

- RC = Standard Resource Consent Conditions
- CEMP = Construction Environment Management Plan Conditions
- PI = Public Information Conditions
- E = Earthworks Conditions
- SW = Stormwater Conditions
- C = Coastal Conditions
- M = Marine Ecology Conditions

**GENERAL CONDITIONS**

1) **RC.1** Except as modified by the conditions below, the works shall be undertaken in general accordance with the information provided by the New Zealand Transport Agency (NZTA), in the resource consent applications and the supporting documents (as detailed in Condition DC.1), and in the supplementary information provided in evidence by the NZTA.

2) **RC.1A** The NZTA shall implement the conditions of these consents in accordance with Schedule B, which sets out the Conditions that are to be applied to each consent including the duration of each consent.

3) **RC.2** The Conditions of these consents may be reviewed by the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council, pursuant to Section 128 of the Resource Management Act 1991 (the Act), by the giving of notice pursuant to Section 129 of the Act, on the one year anniversary of the commencement of the consents and every year thereafter in order:

   (a) To deal with any adverse effect on the environment which may arise from the exercise of the consent and which it is appropriate to deal with at a later stage; or

   (b) To deal with any other adverse effect on the environment on which the exercise of the consent may have an influence.

4) **RC.4** Any Management Plans submitted to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland
Council for approval or certification may be submitted in stages to reflect any proposed staging of the physical works. Plans submitted shall clearly show the integration with adjacent stages and interrelated activities.

5) RC.5 In the event of any dispute, disagreement or inaction arising as to any Auckland Council Manager certification/ approvals required by the consent conditions, or as to the implementation of or monitoring required by the conditions, matters shall be referred in the first instance to the NZTA Regional State Highway Manager and to the Resource Consents Manager, Auckland Council to determine a process of resolution.

If a resolution cannot be agreed, then the matter may be referred to an independent appropriately qualified expert, agreeable to both parties, setting out the details of the matter to be referred for determination and the reasons the parties do not agree.

The independent appropriately qualified expert shall be appointed within 10 working days of the NZTA or Auckland Council giving notice of their intention to seek expert determination. The expert shall, as soon as possible, issue his or her decision on the matter. In making the decision, the expert shall be entitled to seek further information and hear from the parties as he or she sees fit.

Advice note: The dispute resolution process provided for in this condition does not prejudice any party’s right to take enforcement action in relation to the implementation of the designation conditions. However, the dispute resolution process will be applied before any formal enforcement action is taken by the Council except in urgent situations.

6) RC.6 Pursuant to Section 36(1)(d) of the RMA, the requiring authority is required to pay to Auckland Council any administrative charge for the carrying out by the local authority of its functions in relation to the administration, monitoring, and supervision of designation conditions.

7) RC.7 The servants of agents of Auckland Council shall be permitted to have access to relevant parts of the Project at all reasonable times for the purpose of carrying out inspections, investigations, tests, measurements and/or to take samples.

8) E.4 A detailed schedule of construction activities shall be prepared and forwarded to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council prior to the commencement of works, and updated at 3 monthly intervals during the works. These schedule shall include details of:

(a) The location, commencement date and expected duration of any major earthworks operations, including but not limited to, the portal excavations and the Great North Road cut and cover operation; and

(b) The proposed construction and methodology, including staging of earthworks.

PRE-CONSTRUCTION CONDITIONS

9) RC.3 Within 3 months of the resource consents commencing for the Project (or at least 1 month prior to any Auckland Council approvals or certifications required by these Conditions, whichever is the earlier), the NZTA shall update and finalise to the satisfaction of the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council all drawings and Plans cited in Schedule A, together with a full set of the information and documentation referred to in Condition DC.1 and provide these to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council. At the same time the NZTA shall prepare to the satisfaction of Auckland Council, a document for each resource consent which sets out the resource consent and have attached to it in text format a comprehensive set of the conditions imposed by the Board of Inquiry in its Final Decision as summarised in Schedule B, inclusive of any standard conditions and advice notes.

In particular (but not limited to), the following Plans will need to be amended in light of the
Final Conditions:

(a) F.2 Operational Scheme Plans (refer Schedule A, Row 3) require amendment detailing the amended location of the ventilation stacks and southern ventilation buildings;

(b) F.5 Construction Scheme Plans (refer Schedule A, Row 4) require amendment to detail changes to construction footprint for the amended location of ventilation stacks and southern ventilation buildings and reconfiguration of Construction Yard 1);

(c) F.6 Construction Yard Plans 101 and 107 (refer Schedule A, Row 7), detailing amendments to the Construction Yard 1 in light of the reconfiguration of this Yard and for Construction Yard 7 in light of the relocation of the northern ventilation stack (refer Schedule A, Row 34);

(d) F.8 Plans of Structures and Architectural Features (refer Schedule A, Row 9), detailing the amended location of the Northern Ventilation Stack and the design and location of the Southern Ventilation Building and Stack;

(e) The CNVMP (including flow diagram and the supplementary evidence produced by Ms Wilkening) (refer Schedule A, Rows 36, 37 and 39);

(f) Update to the areas of the Open Space Restoration Plans (Schedule A, Row 30) to:
   (i) Extend these areas in geographic extent to provide for the works identified in the Management Plan notations identified in the OS Conditions (in particular OS.5 and OS.6). (e.g. these areas will (as relevant) include Eric Armishaw Park, Howlett Reserve and Waterview Esplanade Reserve); and
   (ii) Exclude the operational area of designation required for the northern ventilation stack (as identified through the OPW process (refer Condition DC.8); and

(g) Schedule A, Row 28 the Plan detailing proposed open space impacts and replacements needs to be updated to recolour the two land parcels on Hendon Avenue (which are excluded from the replacement calculations) to ‘brown’ to confirm they are part of the operational impact and will not be returned as open space.

10) CEMP.1 Except where provided for in Condition CEMP.1A below, the NZTA shall update and finalise the draft Construction Environmental Management Plan (CEMP) including all the Management Plans which form part of the CEMP and are included as appendices, submitted with this application to ensure compliance with the consent and designation conditions imposed by the Board of Inquiry. The CEMP shall be provided to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council for review at least 20 working days prior to the commencement of works to certify compliance and consistency with the conditions. Construction shall not commence until certification is obtained.

Advice note: For clarity the CEMP will be updated and finalised in accordance with the conditions. Any amendments will be limited to reflecting the requirements of the conditions, specifying personnel, and completing the Environmental Risk Register.

Advice Note: Particular care must be taken with development and operation of Construction Yard 7. When the CEMP is being updated and finalised, consideration must be given to the contents of the draft SSCEMP prepared for Construction Yard 7 (Row 41, Schedule A) recognising changes required by inclusion of the ventilation stack in this yard.

11) CEMP.1A In the case of the trial embankment, where works will commence well in advance of the main construction works for the Causeway, the NZTA will provide to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council, a site-specific CEMP for review and approval at least 20 working days prior to commencement of the trial embankment works.

12) CEMP.1B For the purposes of staging works, as some works may commence well in advance of others, the NZTA may provide staged or site specific CEMPs for those works to the Major
Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council. The NZTA shall consult with the Team Manager about the need and timing for any other site-specific or staged CEMPs and shall provide any required site-specific or staged CEMPs to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council for review at least 20 working days prior to commencement of such the specific stage (including enabling) or site works.

13) **CEMP.2**

The certification process of the CEMP (and its appendices) shall confirm that the CEMP gives effect to the relevant conditions, as well as those matters in CEMP.6, and that it includes details of:

(a) Staff and contractors’ responsibilities;
(b) Training requirements for employees, sub-contractors and visitors;
(c) Environmental incident and emergency management;
(d) Communication and interface procedures (in accordance with the Communication Plan required under Condition PI.2);
(e) Environmental complaints management (including the procedures required under Condition PI.4);
(f) Compliance monitoring;
(g) Reporting (including detail on the frequency of reporting to the Auckland Council);
(h) Environmental auditing; and
(i) Corrective action.

14) **CEMP.3**

The management of key environmental effects associated with the construction phase of the Project is detailed within environmental management plans that are included in the CEMP as appendices. This suite of management plans as shown on Figure CEMP.A comprises:

(a) Construction Noise and Vibration Management Plan (CNVMP);
(b) Construction Air Quality Management Plan (CAQMP);
(c) Erosion and Sediment Control Plan (ESCP);
(d) Temporary Stormwater Management Plan (TSMP);
(e) Ecological Management Plan (ECOMP);
(f) Groundwater Management Plan (GWMP);
(g) Settlement Effects Management Plan (SEMP);
(h) Contaminated Soils Management Plan (CSMP);
(i) Hazardous Substances Management Plan (HSMP);
(j) Archaeological Site Management Plan (ASMP);
(k) Construction Traffic Management Plan (CTMP);
(l) Concrete Batching and Crushing Plant Management Plan (CBCPMP);
(m) Electrical Infrastructure Site Development and Construction Management Plan (EISDCMP) (to be prepared in accordance with Condition CEMP.15);
(n) Waste Management Plan (to be prepared in accordance with Condition CEMP.10);
(o) Temporary Construction Lighting Management Plan (to be prepared in accordance with Condition L.2).

15) **CEMP.6**

The finalised CEMP shall include specific details on demolition, construction and management of all works associated with the Project. The certification process of the CEMP shall confirm that the CEMP includes details of the following:

(a) Details of the site or Project manager and the community liaison person, including their
(b) The location of large notice boards that clearly identify the NZTA and the Project name, together with the name, telephone, email address and address for service of the site or Project manager and the community liaison person;

(c) An outline construction programme of the work indicating in particular likely time periods for road closures and anticipated traffic diversion effects;

(d) The hours of work, which should reflect the need to ensure that residents enjoy reasonable freedom from noisy or intrusive construction activity in their neighbourhood at night, on Sundays and during public holidays;

(e) Measures to be adopted to maintain the land affected by the works in a tidy condition in terms of disposal/storage of rubbish, storage and unloading of building materials and similar construction activities;

(f) Location of worker's offices and conveniences (e.g. portaloo);

(g) Procedures of controlling sediment run-off, dust and the removal of soil, debris and demolition and construction materials from public roads or places. Dust mitigation measures should include use of water sprays to control dust nuisance on dry or windy days;

(h) Methods to stabilise ingress and egress points to construction sites, to the standard required by ARC Technical Publication 90 (Nov 2007);

(i) Procedures for ensuring that residents within 100m of construction areas or other people whose use of an area may be disrupted by construction works (for example the Te Atatu Boating Club for works on the Whau River) are given notice of the commencement of construction activities and are informed about the expected duration of the works, including potentially through the community liaison person;

(j) Procedures to be followed to ensure that those working in the vicinity of identified heritage and ecological features are aware of the heritage or ecological values of these features and the steps which need to be taken to meet the conditions applying to work on the site;

(k) Means of ensuring the safety of the general public;

(l) Procedures for the community liaison person to receive and respond to complaints about construction activities, including dust and odour from the works;

(m) Methods of mitigating the local and network wide effects of construction of individual elements of the Project, including measures to ensure that parking of staff vehicles on surrounding streets is restricted;

(n) All temporary boundary/security fences shall be maintained in good order, with any graffiti removed as soon as possible;

(o) Confirmation of a Project Arborist and completion of a STEM assessment of the preliminary list of Amenity Trees in Schedule E.7 of the AEE to confirm the final Amenity Trees; and

(p) The process to minimise removal of Amenity Trees, maximise the protection of those retained, undertake relocation of Amenity Trees and replacement planting of specimen trees (in accordance with Conditions LV.10 and ARCH.9)).

(q) Advice note: For the purposes of CEMP.6(o) and (p), Amenity Tree is defined as a tree or trees that contribute significantly to amenity, taking into account its form, size, health, ecological or historical significance (a preliminary list of these trees is provided in Appendix E.7 of the AEE).
16) CEMP.10 The NZTA shall finalise and implement the Hazardous Substances Management Plan (HSMP), through the CEMP (as per Condition CEMP.1), submitted with this application, prior to works commencing on site. The certification process of the CEMP shall confirm that the HSMP clearly identifies the requirements for proper storage, handling, transport and disposal of hazardous substances during the construction phase of the Project and confirm that there shall be no storage of explosives on the Project site.

17) CEMP.11 The NZTA shall develop and implement a Waste Management Plan in accordance with the waste management principles, controls and methods set out in the CEMP. The Plan shall be provided to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council and be implemented throughout the entire construction period.

18) CEMP.15 The NZTA will be responsible for all service relocations required for construction of the Project. The NZTA shall liaise with the providers of infrastructure service networks (including, but not limited to water, gas, stormwater, wastewater, power and telecommunications), and private property owners with on-site services to develop methodologies and timing for necessary services relocation required for the Project, with the objective of minimising disruption to the operation of these service networks and on-site services.

Advice note:

(a) It is noted that if separate consents are required for relocations for any services of network utility operators or landowners, such consents will be obtained before construction commences in the relevant area, and any effects of those relocations would be considered at that time. The same applies to any alteration of consents if required.

(b) Network infrastructure owned and operated by Watercare Services is located within the designations. An operating agreement will be developed by the NZTA and Watercare Services which will include appropriate notification and access protocols where works are to be undertaken by either network operator on or adjacent to Watercare Services infrastructure within the designations.

19) PI.1 A community liaison person shall be appointed by the NZTA for the duration of the construction phase of the Project to be the main and readily accessible point of contact for persons affected by the Project. The liaison person’s name and contact details shall be made available in the CEMP and on site signage by the NZTA. This person must be reasonably available for on-going consultation on all matters of concern to affected parties arising from the Project.

20) PI.2 The NZTA shall prepare and implement a Communications Plan that sets out procedures detailing how the public, Ministry of Social Development, Housing New Zealand Corporation and other organisations representing the particular demographic characteristics of the community (including but not limited to Primary Health Organisations, general practitioners, youth, education organisations, aged care groups and groups representing ethnic and migrant communities) will be communicated with throughout the construction and monitoring periods (as prescribed in the designation and consent conditions).

In preparing the Communications Plan, the NZTA will liaise with Auckland Council to access its community liaison databases. The Communications Plan will includes details of:

(a) The site or Project manager and the community liaison person, including their contact details (phone, facsimile, postal address, email address);

(b) In accordance with these Conditions, the database of the key construction activities and monitoring requirements that are the subject of the Communications Plan;

(c) The database of stakeholders and residents who will be communicated with;
(d) Communication methods, an assessment of how these methods reach the different audience/stakeholder groups (including those methods set out in Condition CEMP.6), and detail on when each of these methods will be used (e.g. regular communication or event specific methods);

(e) The appointed specialist in Environmental and Occupational Medicine, including contact details (as per Condition SO.13);

(f) Any stakeholder specific communication plans required; and

(g) Monitoring and review procedures for the Communications Plan.

The Communications Plan shall be written in accordance with the external communication procedures set out in the CEMP and provided at least 20 working days prior to construction commencing, to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council, Working Liaison Group and the Community Liaison Group(s) established by Condition PI.5. The structure of the communication groups set out in these conditions is attached as Figure PI.A.

21) PI.5 The NZTA shall establish Community Liaison Group(s) at least two months prior to construction commencing in each of the following key construction areas:

(a) Te Atatu (including the SH16 Causeway)

(b) Waterview (including works to St Lukes on SH16 and on the Waterview Estuary and Causeway Bridges)

(c) Owairaka

and hold regular meetings (at least three monthly) throughout the construction period and up to 24 months following construction completion relevant to these areas (or less if the members of the Group agree), so that on-going monitoring information can continue to be disseminated.

The Community Liaison Group(s) shall be open to all interested parties within the Project area including, but not limited to the following groups:

(a) Auckland Council and Auckland Transport;

(b) Educational facilities within the Project area (including schools, kindergartens, childcare facilities and Unitec Institute of Technology);

(c) Relevant community/ environmental groups (including but not limited to Friends of Oakley Creek, Star Mills Preservation Group, Cycle Action Auckland and representatives from those organisations identified in the Communications Plan (as required by Condition PI.2) and local residents;

(d) Department of Conservation;

(e) Local Boards;

(f) Iwi groups with Mana Whenua;

(g) Public transport providers; and

(h) Housing New Zealand Corporation.

Advice note: The purpose of the Community Liaison Group(s) is to provide a regular forum through which information about the Project can be provided to the community, and an opportunity for concerns or issues to be raised.

22) SW.2 The NZTA shall inform the Auckland Council in writing at least 10 working days prior to the start date of the works authorised by this consent.

23) SW.3 The NZTA shall submit the final design of the construction stormwater system for approval to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council at least 20 working days prior to the commencement of construction works. This certification shall confirm the final design
meets Condition SW.1, including:

(a) Design calculations for the following:
   (i) flow attenuation devices,
   (ii) stormwater treatment device sizing,
   (iii) bypass device design,
   (iv) stormwater treatment device efficiency;

(b) Design drawings, including all structures, outfalls, treatment devices, bypass devices, wetlands and ponds, swales and overland flow paths;

(c) Catchment plans detailing the area draining to each device; and

(d) Outfall locations.

24) SW.4 Any subsequent amendments to the final designs required by Condition SW.3 shall be submitted for approval in writing by the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council at least 20 working days prior to implementation.

25) SW.5 The NZTA shall arrange and conduct pre-construction site meetings between the Auckland Council and all relevant parties, including the site stormwater engineer, with regard to each component of the temporary stormwater management works. The Council shall be provided with 5 working days written notice of the date and time of each pre-construction site meeting, prior to construction of these works. Any resulting amendments to the design of the works may be reviewed at that time and shall be approved in accordance with Condition SW.3.

26) SW.6 The NZTA shall finalise and implement the Temporary Stormwater Management Plan (TSMP) submitted with this application, as part of the CEMP. The purpose of the TSMP is to ensure appropriate controls are in place to manage stormwater during construction.

27) E.1 The NZTA shall inform the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council in writing at least 10 working days before the start date of the works authorised by this Consent.

28) E.2 Prior to commencement of works, in each period between October 1 and April 30 that this Consent is exercised, a pre-construction site meeting between Auckland Council and relevant parties, including the primary contractor, shall be conducted. The approved Contractors Erosion and Sediment Control Plan (CESCP) as per Condition E.5 of this Consent shall be made available and discussed at the pre-construction meeting.

29) E.5 Prior to the commencement of works for each specific area and/or activity, a “Contractors Erosion and Sediment Control Plan” (CESCP) shall be prepared. This document shall follow the principles and practices within Technical Report G.22 Erosion and Sediment Control Plan and shall detail any specific variations from that report. The CESCPs shall include, but not be limited to:

(a) Contour information at suitable intervals;
(b) Erosion and sediment controls including specific pond design;
(c) Supporting calculations;
(d) Catchment boundaries for the sediment controls;
(e) Location of the works, and cut and fill operations;
(f) Details of construction methods to be employed, including timing and duration;
(g) A programme for managing exposed area, including progressive stabilisation considerations;
(h) The identification of appropriately qualified and experienced staff to manage the environmental issues onsite;
(i) The identification of staff who have clearly defined roles and responsibilities to monitor compliance with the Consent Conditions and CESCP;
(j) Provision of details of a chain of responsibility for managing environmental issues and details of responsible personnel; and
(k) The establishment of a sediment control team (including representatives from the contractor, Auckland Council and the NZTA) to meet and review erosion and sediment control on a weekly basis.

30) E.6 For each specific area of works, a CESCP shall be submitted a minimum of 20 working days prior to earthworks commencing, for the written approval of the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council, which shall be obtained prior to earthworks commencing. The approved CESCP shall be implemented accordingly.

31) E.7 Any amendments to the CESCPs must be approved by the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council in writing at least 10 working days prior to any amendment being implemented.

32) E.12 All perimeter controls shall be operational before earthworks begin.

33) E.13 Prior to the construction of sediment retention ponds, super silt fences or other devices approved by the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council shall be constructed below the entire area of the sediment retention pond footprint.

34) M.1 The NZTA shall finalise and implement through the CEMP, the ECOMP submitted with this application. The ECOMP shall be revised to accurately reflect the conditions of this consent and changes to the details of construction processes prior to construction commencing. The ECOMP shall include, but not be limited to, details of:
(a) Monitoring of marine habitats and ecological values;
(b) Trigger event criteria for undertaking additional monitoring;
(c) Procedures for responding to accidental discharges to the marine environment;
(d) Complaints investigation, monitoring and reporting; and
(e) The identification of staff and contractors’ responsibilities.

CONSTRUCTION CONDITIONS

35) CEMP.4 The CEMP shall be implemented and maintained throughout the entire construction period.

36) CEMP.5 A copy of the CEMP shall be held on each construction site at all times and be available for inspection on request by the Auckland Council.

37) CEMP.12 The CEMP shall be reviewed by the NZTA at least annually or as a result of a material change to the Project. The review shall take into consideration:
(a) Compliance with designation and consent conditions;
(b) Any changes to construction methods;
(c) Key changes to roles and responsibilities within the Project;
(d) Changes in industry best practice standards;
(e) Changes in legal or other requirements;
(f) Results of inspections, monitoring, incidents, corrective actions, internal or external assessments; and
(g) Public complaints.

A summary of the review process undertaken shall be kept by the NZTA, provided annually to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council and made available (with any
related data) to the Auckland Council upon request.

38) CEMP.13 Following the review process (as described in Condition CEMP.12), the CEMP may require updating. Any material change proposed to the CEMP (including appended Management Plans) shall be submitted for approval to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council at least 10 working days prior to the proposed changes taking effect.

Advice Note: Material change will include amendment to any base information informing the CEMP or any process, procedure or method of the CEMP (such as the environmental constraints map, compliance monitoring process, complaints procedure or mitigation / remedial methods identified) which has the potential to increase adverse effects on a particular value. For clarity changes to personnel and contact schedules do not constitute a material change.

39) PI.3 At least 15 working days prior to the commencement of construction, and at 15 working day intervals thereafter, or as required depending on the scale of works and effects on the community, advertisements will be placed in the relevant local newspapers and community noticeboards (as identified in Condition CEMP.6(b)) detailing the nature of the forthcoming works, the location of the forthcoming works and hours of operation. All advertisements will include reference to a 24 hour toll free complaints telephone number. Where relevant, advertisements will also include but not be limited to details of:

(a) Any traffic disruptions or controls or changes to property access, pedestrian/cycle routes and bus stops; and
(b) Any other construction activities, including night time works, blasting, and structure-borne noise, as identified in the conditions.

40) PI.4 The NZTA shall manage, investigate and resolve (as appropriate) all complaints for the duration of the construction works in accordance with the environmental complaints section of the CEMP. The implementation strategy for complaints includes:

(a) A 24 hour toll free telephone number and email address, which shall be provided to all potentially affected residents and businesses. The number shall be available and answered at all times during the entire duration of the works for the receipt and management of any complaints. A sign containing the contact details shall be located at each site specific work activity;
(b) The NZTA shall maintain a record of all complaints made to this number, email or any site office, including the full details of the complainant and the nature of the complaint;
(c) Upon receiving a complaint, within 10 days of complaint receipt, a formal written response will be provided to the complainant and Auckland Council;
(d) The NZTA shall undertake corrective action where necessary to resolve any problem identified. All action taken and relevant information shall be documented. For the avoidance of doubt, ‘where necessary’ refers to where the works are not being carried out in accordance with conditions of this designation;
(e) Where issues and complaints about effects cannot be resolved through the CEMP complaints management process, a meeting shall be held between the NZTA, the complainant and the Auckland Council representative(s) to discuss the complaint and ways in which the issue may be resolved. If parties cannot agree on a resolution, an independent qualified mediator will be appointed, agreeable to all parties and at the shared cost of all parties, to undertake mediation of the dispute or concerns; and
(f) All information collected in Conditions PI.4 (b), (c) and (d) shall be detailed in a Construction Compliance Report (including the means by which the complaint was addressed, whether resolution was reached and how the response was carried out) prepared by the NZTA. This Report shall be submitted to the Major Infrastructure Team
41) **PI.6** The Community Liaison Group(s) shall be provided opportunities to review and comment on the following (amongst other things):

(a) The Outline Plan of Works detailing designs for the northern and southern ventilation buildings and stacks (the outcomes of this consultation will be reported in accordance with the processes required in DC.8(n) and DC.9(k);

(b) The Open Space Restoration Plans (as required by Condition OS.3);

(c) Finalisation and amendment to Urban Design and Landscape Plans (UDL Plans) (as required by Condition LV.1);

(d) The Oakley Inlet Heritage Plan (as required by Conditions OS.5(b)(i) and ARCH.6);

(e) The detail of the Oakley Creek restoration (as required by Condition STW.20);

(f) Publicly available results of environmental monitoring as required by the designation and/or these Consents (e.g. air quality monitoring); and

(g) The finalisation of the STEM assessment required by CEMP.6(o) and a schedule of trees that are required to be removed for consideration of timber use in heritage projects as required by Condition SO.7.

Advice Note: Attention is drawn to the Vegetation conditions concerning identification and protection of Significant Vegetation and Valued Vegetation.

(h) Detailed design features of the Te Atatu underpass (e.g. lighting and architectural treatment).

42) **E.3** Erosion and sediment control shall be in general accordance with the plans and information submitted with the application, and in particular, Technical Report G.22 Erosion and Sediment Control Plan, subject to such amendments as may be required by the following conditions of this Consent.

43) **E.8** Erosion and sediment control measures shall be constructed and maintained in accordance with the ARC Technical Report 90 (TP90) (and any amendments to that document), except where a higher standard is detailed in the documents referred to in Conditions E.3 and E.5 above, in which case the higher standard shall apply.

44) **E.10** Prior to any decision to discharge waters that have collected in coffer dam sumps to the coastal marine area (CMA), the following procedures shall be followed;

(a) Sump waters shall be tested for pH and turbidity; and

(b) Discharge to the CMA shall only be permitted where;

(i) pH does not exceed a threshold of pH 8.5; and

(ii) turbidity or suspended solids concentrations do not exceed a threshold, to be agreed between NZTA and the, Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council prior to use of temporary coffer dams.

In the event that measured pH and/or turbidity exceeds these thresholds, the sump waters shall be treated to the appropriate standard prior to discharge to the CMA or shall be disposed of to an approved location outside of the CMA. The proposed treatment methodology shall be included within the CESP and shall be submitted to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council for its approval at least 20 working days prior to implementation.

45) **E.11** All ‘cleanwater’ runoff from stabilised surfaces, including catchment areas above the site, shall be diverted away from earthwork areas via a stabilised system, so as to prevent surface erosion.
46) **E.14** The NZTA shall ensure that procedures are adopted to prevent the deposition of slurry, clay or other materials on the roads by vehicles leaving the site. Should the exercise of this Consent result in material being deposited on the road, that material shall be removed immediately to the satisfaction of the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council.

47) **E.21** The site shall be stabilised against erosion as soon as practicable, and in a progressive manner, as earthworks are finished over various areas of the site. Areas of bulk earthworks not actively worked for a period of two weeks shall be stabilised.

48) **E.22** The NZTA shall ensure that the following earthworks shall be stabilised as soon as practicable after completion thereof, or within 5 working days of completion, whichever shall occur first:

   (a) Temporary erosion and sediment controls; and

   (b) Construction yards.

49) **E.23** No surface earthworks on the site shall be undertaken between 1 May and 30 September in any year, without the written approval of the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council. Earthworks in this regard refers to bulk earthworks (cut/fill/waste) associated with the site.
Stormwater management during construction shall be undertaken in accordance with the plans and information submitted with this application and the information contained within Technical Report G.15 Assessment of Stormwater and Streamworks Effects. In particular, this requires the construction and completion of stormwater management works to the treatment standards detailed in Tables 1 and 2 below:

Table 1: Motorway catchment areas and treatment standards for Construction Phase of the Waterview Connection Project.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sector</th>
<th>Existing Impervious</th>
<th>Additional Impervious</th>
<th>Total</th>
<th>Treatment</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Sector Area (ha)</td>
<td>Percentage proposed treatment (%)</td>
<td>Sector Area (ha)</td>
<td>Percentage proposed treatment (%)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>8.05</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>3.67</td>
<td>11.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>1.45</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0.72</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>3.88</td>
<td>13.6</td>
<td>1.47</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>8.37</td>
<td>18 – 70*4</td>
<td>3.40</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>6.62</td>
<td>30.3</td>
<td>3.43</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>4.08</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1.07</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>na</td>
<td>na</td>
<td>na</td>
<td>na</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>na</td>
<td>na</td>
<td>na</td>
<td>na</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>1.04</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>8.49</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total</td>
<td>33.49</td>
<td>22.25</td>
<td>55.74</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*1 TSS removal is on a long term average basis.  
*2 Attenuation of the peak post-development runoff to the peak pre-development runoff for the 2, 10 and 20 year ARI rainfall events.  
*3 Extended detention of the 34.5mm rainfall event for 24 hours in accordance with ARC TP10 (2003) guidelines.  
*4 Range depends on construction stage refer to Technical Report G.15 for details.
Table 2: Construction Yard Catchment Areas for Water Quality Treatment during Construction Phase of the Waterview Connection Project

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sector</th>
<th>Construction Yards</th>
<th>New Impervious Construction Working Catchments</th>
<th>Treatment</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Area (ha)</td>
<td>Percentage proposed treatment (%)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>4.20</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>na</td>
<td>na</td>
<td>75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>0.37</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>na</td>
<td>na</td>
<td>75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>3 &amp; 4</td>
<td>7.78</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>1.22</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>6 &amp; 7</td>
<td>1.90</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>na</td>
<td>na</td>
<td>Na</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>8, 9, 10, 11 &amp; 12</td>
<td>4.99</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total</td>
<td></td>
<td>20.46</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\(^1\) TSS removal is on a long term average basis.
\(^2\) Attenuation of the peak post-development runoff to the peak pre-development runoff for the 2, 10 and 20 year ARI rainfall events
\(^3\) Extended detention of the 34.5mm rainfall event for 24 hours in accordance with ARC TP10 (2003) guidelines.
\(^4\) Extended detention is to be provided for stormwater devices discharging to Oakley Creek (upstream of Great North Road), but is not required for stormwater devices discharging to Oakley Inlet (downstream of Great North Road).

51) SW.7 The NZTA shall undertake regular inspections of all stormwater treatment devices installed during construction to ensure they are operating in accordance with the consent conditions and TSMP. All records of these inspections shall be submitted to the Council on a monthly basis.

52) SW.9 The NZTA shall ensure that, for stormwater flows in excess of the capacity of the primary systems, major overland flow paths shall be provided and maintained to allow surplus stormwater from critical storms, up to the 100-year average recurrence interval (ARI) event, to discharge with the minimum of nuisance and damage.

Advice note: For the purposes of this Consent, "major overland flow paths" are those that accompany a primary drainage system of a nominal 600 mm diameter pipe or larger or with peak overland flow exceeding 0.5 m\(^3\)/s in the 100-year ARI event.
Construction shall be undertaken in accordance with the construction methodology detailed in the application, specifically Technical Report G.23 Coastal Works and Technical Report G.22 Erosion and Sediment Control Plan. The construction methodology shall include:

(a) The use of temporary coffer dams to create dry working areas;
(b) Realignment of sections of existing low-tide channels in Oakley inlet and Waterview Estuary that will be directly affected by the reclamation works;
(c) Removal of mangroves to provide construction and ground-treatment access, placement of temporary coffer dams and to facilitate natural channel migration in the Whau River side drainage channel (east of Rosebank Domain);
(d) Installation or removal works to be undertaken at the best practicable time to minimise potential sediment disturbance.

The NZTA shall maintain the coastal marine area free of any gross litter, rubbish and debris during construction.

POST-CONSTRUCTION CONDITIONS

The NZTA shall arrange and conduct a post construction site meeting within 30 days of completion of installation of the stormwater management works between Auckland Council and all relevant parties, including the site stormwater engineer.

Notice shall be given to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council prior to any erosion and sediment control measures being removed and/or on completion of the works.

The NZTA shall carry out monitoring in accordance with the Technical Report G.22 Erosion and Sediment Control Plan and the approved CESCP and shall maintain records detailing:

(a) The monitoring undertaken;
(b) The erosion and sediment controls that required maintenance;
(c) The time when the maintenance was completed; and
(d) Areas of non-compliance with the erosion and sediment control monitoring plan (if any) and the reasons for the non-compliance.

This information shall be made available to the Auckland Council upon request.

The NZTA shall engage a suitably qualified ecologist to undertake a marine habitat monitoring programme, as described in Conditions M.3 to M.6.

The marine benthic habitat monitoring programme shall be undertaken every 6 months:

(a) At least 12 months prior to construction commencing, to allow for two baseline surveys to be undertaken;
(b) During construction; and
(c) For a maximum of 3 years following completion of the Project, or for a lesser time if the monitoring indicates no significant effects, as agreed with the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council.

The marine benthic habitat monitoring programme shall be undertaken in accordance with the details set out in the ECOMP and include:

(a) Sampling of the marine invertebrate community composition (collection of sediment cores to a depth of approximately 15cm);
(b) Sampling of the sediment surface (top 2cm) for sediment grain size; and

(c) Sampling of the sediment surface (top 2cm) for sediment quality (analysis of the concentration of copper, lead, zinc and polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons).

61) M.5 The marine benthic habitat monitoring shall be undertaken within sampling grids (50m x 30m) broadly established at the following locations:

(a) Two locations within Oakley Inlet;
(b) Four locations within Waterview Estuary; and
(c) Four locations north of the Causeway.

Specific locations and experimental design shall be detailed in the ECOMP, and the design of the monitoring programme will be based on the *Estuarine Environmental Assessment and Monitoring: A National Protocol* (Cawthron 2002).

62) M.6 The NZTA shall undertake additional marine habitat monitoring in the event of a ‘trigger event’ for marine ecology habitats. For the purposes of this consent, a ‘trigger event’ for marine ecology habitats is defined in the ECOMP.

63) M.7 The NZTA shall review the marine habitat monitoring results (pursuant to Conditions M.3 to M.6) and in the event that potential adverse effects are identified, the NZTA shall develop and implement appropriate contingency plans and/or remedial measures.

**REPORTING**

64) M.8 The marine benthic habitat monitoring results shall be compiled by the NZTA, and a report provided to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council every 6 months.
This document has been prepared in compliance with conditions of the "Final Report and Decision of the Board of Inquiry into the New Zealand Transport Agency Waterview Connection Proposal, Volume 2, Conditions of Consent". Schedule B of Volume 2 identifies the Conditions relevant to this Consent by the code and number as referenced throughout this document. In the event of dispute, Schedule B of Volume 2 shall take precedence over this Consent.

**Type:** Coastal Consent

**Description:** Discharge of Contaminants (Sector 1):

This consent relates to the permanent discharge of stormwater to the CMA for the operation of the Project – Sector 1 (Henderson Creek, CPA 2).

**Duration:** 35 years

**Code:**

- RC = Standard Resource Consent Conditions
- SW = Stormwater Conditions
- M = Marine Ecology Conditions

**GENERAL CONDITIONS**

1) **RC.1** Except as modified by the conditions below, the works shall be undertaken in general accordance with the information provided by the New Zealand Transport Agency (NZTA), in the resource consent applications and the supporting documents (as detailed in Condition DC.1), and in the supplementary information provided in evidence by the NZTA.

2) **RC.1A** The NZTA shall implement the conditions of these consents in accordance with Schedule B, which sets out the Conditions that are to be applied to each consent including the duration of each consent.

3) **RC.2** The Conditions of these consents may be reviewed by the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council, pursuant to Section 128 of the Resource Management Act 1991 (the Act), by the giving of notice pursuant to Section 129 of the Act, on the one year anniversary of the commencement of the consents and every year thereafter in order:

   (a) To deal with any adverse effect on the environment which may arise from the exercise of the consent and which it is appropriate to deal with at a later stage; or

   (b) To deal with any other adverse effect on the environment on which the exercise of the consent may have an influence.

4) **RC.4** Any Management Plans submitted to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council for approval or certification may be submitted in stages to reflect any proposed staging of the physical works. Plans submitted shall clearly show the integration with adjacent stages and interrelated activities.

5) **RC.5** In the event of any dispute, disagreement or inaction arising as to any Auckland Council Manager certification/ approvals required by the consent conditions, or as to the implementation of or monitoring required by the conditions, matters shall be referred in the first instance to the NZTA Regional State Highway Manager and to the Resource Consents
Manager, Auckland Council to determine a process of resolution.

If a resolution cannot be agreed, then the matter may be referred to an independent appropriately qualified expert, agreeable to both parties, setting out the details of the matter to be referred for determination and the reasons the parties do not agree.

The independent appropriately qualified expert shall be appointed within 10 working days of the NZTA or Auckland Council giving notice of their intention to seek expert determination. The expert shall, as soon as possible, issue his or her decision on the matter. In making the decision, the expert shall be entitled to seek further information and hear from the parties as he or she sees fit.

Advice note: The dispute resolution process provided for in this condition does not prejudice any party’s right to take enforcement action in relation to the implementation of the designation conditions. However, the dispute resolution process will be applied before any formal enforcement action is taken by the Council except in urgent situations.

6) RC.6 Pursuant to Section 36(1)(d) of the RMA, the requiring authority is required to pay to Auckland Council any administrative charge for the carrying out by the local authority of its functions in relation to the administration, monitoring, and supervision of designation conditions.

7) RC.7 The servants of agents of Auckland Council shall be permitted to have access to relevant parts of the Project at all reasonable times for the purpose of carrying out inspections, investigations, tests, measurements and/or to take samples.

PRE-CONSTRUCTION CONDITIONS

8) RC.3 Within 3 months of the resource consents commencing for the Project (or at least 1 month prior to any Auckland Council approvals or certifications required by these Conditions, whichever is the earlier), the NZTA shall update and finalise to the satisfaction of the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council all drawings and Plans cited in Schedule A, together with a full set of the information and documentation referred to in Condition DC.1 and provide these to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council. At the same time the NZTA shall prepare to the satisfaction of Auckland Council, a document for each resource consent which sets out the resource consent and have attached to it in text format a comprehensive set of the conditions imposed by the Board of Inquiry in its Final Decision as summarised in Schedule B, inclusive of any standard conditions and advice notes.

In particular (but not limited to), the following Plans will need to be amended in light of the Final Conditions:

(a) F.2 Operational Scheme Plans (refer Schedule A, Row 3) require amendment detailing the amended location of the ventilation stacks and southern ventilation buildings;

(b) F.5 Construction Scheme Plans (refer Schedule A, Row 4) require amendment to detail changes to construction footprint for the amended location of ventilation stacks and southern ventilation buildings and reconfiguration of Construction Yard 1);

(c) F.6 Construction Yard Plans 101 and 107 (refer Schedule A, Row 7), detailing amendments to the Construction Yard 1 in light of the reconfiguration of this Yard and for Construction Yard 7 in light of the relocation of the northern ventilation stack (refer Schedule A, Row 34);

(d) F.8 Plans of Structures and Architectural Features (refer Schedule A, Row 9), detailing the amended location of the Northern Ventilation Stack and the design and location of the Southern Ventilation Building and Stack;
(e) The CNVMP (including flow diagram and the supplementary evidence produced by Ms Wilkening) (refer Schedule A, Rows 36, 37 and 39);

(f) Update to the areas of the Open Space Restoration Plans (Schedule A, Row 30) to:
   
i) Extend these areas in geographic extent to provide for the works identified in the Management Plan notations identified in the OS Conditions (in particular OS.5 and OS.6). (e.g. these areas will (as relevant) include Eric Armishaw Park, Howlett Reserve and Waterview Esplanade Reserve); and
   
   ii) Exclude the operational area of designation required for the northern ventilation stack (as identified through the OPW process (refer Condition DC.8); and

(g) Schedule A, Row 28 the Plan detailing proposed open space impacts and replacements needs to be updated to recolour the two land parcels on Hendon Avenue (which are excluded from the replacement calculations) to ‘brown’ to confirm they are part of the operational impact and will not be returned as open space.

9) SW.11 The NZTA shall inform the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council in writing at least 10 working days prior to the start date of the works authorised by this resource consent.

10) SW.12 The NZTA shall submit the final design of the operational stormwater system to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council for approval at least 20 working days prior to the commencement of construction works on the permanent stormwater system. The final design will incorporate the design philosophy contained in Technical Report G.27: Stormwater Design Philosophy Statement (including that it shall best practicably mimic the existing hydrologic regime and setting, to deliver outcome objectives that remedy or mitigate adverse environmental effects, while also considering any measures to improve current flood issues in the catchment.

For certification purposes, these designs shall include, but not be limited to:

(a) Design calculations for the following:
   
i) flow attenuation devices,
   
   ii) stormwater treatment device sizing,
   
   iii) bypass device design,
   
   iv) stormwater treatment device efficiency;

(b) Design drawings, including all structures, outfalls, treatment devices, bypass devices, wetlands and ponds;

(c) Planting plans and schedules for all stormwater treatment devices;

(d) Catchment plans detailing the area draining to each device; and

(e) Outfall locations.

11) SW.13 Any subsequent amendments to the final design of the operational stormwater system shall be submitted for approval in writing by the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council at least 20 working days prior to implementation.

12) SW.14 The NZTA shall arrange and conduct pre-construction site meetings between the Auckland Council and all relevant parties, including the site stormwater engineer, for the installation of each of the operational stormwater management works. The Council shall be provided with 5 working days written notice of the date and time of each pre-construction site meeting prior to construction of the permanent stormwater devices. Any resulting amendments to the design of the works may be reviewed at that time and shall be approved in accordance with Condition SW.12.

13) M.1 The NZTA shall finalise and implement through the CEMP, the ECOMP submitted with this
application. The ECOMP shall be revised to accurately reflect the conditions of this consent and changes to the details of construction processes prior to construction commencing. The ECOMP shall include, but not be limited to, details of:

(a) Monitoring of marine habitats and ecological values;
(b) Trigger event criteria for undertaking additional monitoring;
(c) Procedures for responding to accidental discharges to the marine environment;
(d) Complaints investigation, monitoring and reporting; and
(e) The identification of staff and contractors' responsibilities.

CONSTRUCTION CONDITIONS

14) SW.10 The permanent stormwater measures shall be installed and operated in accordance with the plans and information submitted with this application and the information contained within Technical Report G.15 Assessment of Stormwater and Streamworks Effects. In particular, this requires the construction and completion of stormwater management works to the treatment standards for the catchment areas detailed in Table 3. Stormwater treatment shall also be provided for adjunct activities associated with the Project including access roads and carparks for the tunnel ventilation buildings.

Table 3: Catchment areas and treatment standards for Operational Phase of the Waterview Connection Project by Sector.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sector</th>
<th>Existing Impervious</th>
<th>Additional Impervious</th>
<th>Total</th>
<th>Treatment</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Area (ha)</td>
<td>Percentage proposed treatment (%)</td>
<td>Area (ha)</td>
<td>Percentage proposed treatment (%)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>8.05</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>3.67</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>1.45</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>0.72</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>3.88</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>1.47</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>8.37</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>3.40</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>6.62</td>
<td>92.1</td>
<td>3.43</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>4.08</td>
<td>68.7</td>
<td>1.06</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>1.04</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>8.49</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total</td>
<td>33.49</td>
<td>94.5</td>
<td>22.25</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*1 TSS removal is on a long term average basis.

*2 Attenuation of the peak post-development runoff to the peak pre-development runoff for the 2, 10 and 100 year ARI rainfall events

*3 Extended detention of the 34.5mm rainfall event for 24 hours in accordance with ARC TP10 (2003) guidelines.
15) SW.20 Any stormwater outfalls authorised by this Consent shall incorporate energy dissipation and/or erosion protection measures to minimise the occurrence of bed scour and bank erosion. The design of stormwater outfalls shall assess various rainfall events and tailwater levels (stream and sea levels) to ensure the critical storm event is considered in the design.

16) M.10 The NZTA shall maintain the coastal marine area free of any gross litter, rubbish and debris during construction.

POST-CONSTRUCTION / OPERATION CONDITIONS

17) SW.15 Within 30 days of the practical completion of each part of the stormwater management system, "As Built" plans and documentation of the stormwater system which are certified as a true record of the stormwater management system by a suitably qualified Chartered Professional Engineer shall be supplied to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council.

18) SW.16 The NZTA shall submit to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council within three months of the completion of installation of the stormwater management system an updated and final version of the Operational Stormwater Management Plan (OSMP) submitted with the application, to certify it meets the performance standards specified in Technical Report G.15. The purpose of the OSMP is to set out operation and maintenance requirements for the long term operation of stormwater systems implemented as part of the Project.

The OSMP shall include a monitoring programme for tunnel water quality to be agreed with the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council. The monitoring programme shall have a duration of two years. The water quality report shall be submitted to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council at the end of each year. The OSMP shall be updated at the end of the monitoring programme to revise procedures for the treatment and disposal of tunnel water.

The OSMP shall include, but not be limited to:
(a) A programme for regular maintenance and inspection of works;
(b) A programme for the collection and disposal of debris and sediment collected by the stormwater management devices or practices;
(c) A programme for inspection and maintenance of outfall erosion;
(d) A programme for post-storm maintenance;
(e) General inspection checklists for all aspects of the stormwater management system;
(f) Details of the person or bodies that will hold responsibility for long-term maintenance of the stormwater management system and the organisational structure which will support this process.

19) SW.17 Any amendments to the OSMP shall be submitted for approval in writing by the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council at least 20 working days prior to implementation.

20) SW.18 The NZTA shall arrange and conduct a post construction site meeting within 30 days of completion of installation of each part of the stormwater management works between the Auckland Council and all relevant parties, including the site stormwater engineer. The "As Built" plans and documentation required by condition SW.15 shall be made available at the site meeting.

21) SW.22 In the second year of operation of stormwater treatment wetlands, during the months of December to February, the NZTA shall arrange and conduct a site meeting between the
Auckland Council and the NZTA, including the design stormwater engineer, in order to assess plant health of the stormwater treatment wetlands. Any resulting amendments to the wetland design may be reviewed at that time and shall be approved by the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council.

22) SW.23 Operational run-off and/or water collected from the tunnels that is not suitable for treatment within the Project, shall be collected by the NZTA and transferred for treatment and disposal off-site in accordance with any necessary council approvals or consents.

**MONITORING**

23) M.2 The NZTA shall engage a suitably qualified ecologist to undertake a marine habitat monitoring programme, as described in Conditions M.3 to M.6.

24) M.3 The marine benthic habitat monitoring programme shall be undertaken every 6 months:
   (a) At least 12 months prior to construction commencing, to allow for two baseline surveys to be undertaken;
   (b) During construction; and
   (c) For a maximum of 3 years following completion of the Project, or for a lesser time if the monitoring indicates no significant effects, as agreed with the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council.

25) M.4 The marine benthic habitat monitoring programme shall be undertaken in accordance with the details set out in the ECOMP and include:
   (a) Sampling of the marine invertebrate community composition (collection of sediment cores to a depth of approximately 15cm);
   (b) Sampling of the sediment surface (top 2cm) for sediment grain size; and
   (c) Sampling of the sediment surface (top 2cm) for sediment quality (analysis of the concentration of copper, lead, zinc and polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons).

26) M.5 The marine benthic habitat monitoring shall be undertaken within sampling grids (50m x 30m) broadly established at the following locations:
   (a) Two locations within Oakley Inlet;
   (b) Four locations within Waterview Estuary; and
   (c) Four locations north of the Causeway.

Specific locations and experimental design shall be detailed in the ECOMP, and the design of the monitoring programme will be based on the *Estuarine Environmental Assessment and Monitoring: A National Protocol* (Cawthron 2002).

27) M.6 The NZTA shall undertake additional marine habitat monitoring in the event of a ‘trigger event’ for marine ecology habitats. For the purposes of this consent, a ‘trigger event’ for marine ecology habitats is defined in the ECOMP.

28) M.7 The NZTA shall review the marine habitat monitoring results (pursuant to Conditions M.3 to M.6) and in the event that potential adverse effects are identified, the NZTA shall develop and implement appropriate contingency plans and/or remedial measures.
REPORTING

29) M.8 The marine benthic habitat monitoring results shall be compiled by the NZTA, and a report provided to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council every 6 months.
This document has been prepared in compliance with conditions of the "Final Report and Decision of the Board of Inquiry into the New Zealand Transport Agency Waterview Connection Proposal, Volume 2, Conditions of Consent". Schedule B of Volume 2 identifies the Conditions relevant to this Consent by the code and number as referenced throughout this document. In the event of dispute, Schedule B of Volume 2 shall take precedence over this Consent.

Type: Coastal Consent
Description: Discharge of Contaminants (Sector 2): This consent relates to the permanent discharge of stormwater to the CMA for the operation of the Project – Sector 2 (Whau River, CPA 2 and Mooring Management Area).
Duration: 35 years
Code: RC = Standard Resource Consent Conditions
SW = Stormwater Conditions
M = Marine Ecology Conditions

GENERAL CONDITIONS

1) RC.1 Except as modified by the conditions below, the works shall be undertaken in general accordance with the information provided by the New Zealand Transport Agency (NZTA), in the resource consent applications and the supporting documents (as detailed in Condition DC.1), and in the supplementary information provided in evidence by the NZTA.

2) RC.1A The NZTA shall implement the conditions of these consents in accordance with Schedule B, which sets out the Conditions that are to be applied to each consent including the duration of each consent.

3) RC.2 The Conditions of these consents may be reviewed by the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council, pursuant to Section 128 of the Resource Management Act 1991 (the Act), by the giving of notice pursuant to Section 129 of the Act, on the one year anniversary of the commencement of the consents and every year thereafter in order:
   (a) To deal with any adverse effect on the environment which may arise from the exercise of the consent and which it is appropriate to deal with at a later stage; or
   (b) To deal with any other adverse effect on the environment on which the exercise of the consent may have an influence.

4) RC.4 Any Management Plans submitted to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council for approval or certification may be submitted in stages to reflect any proposed staging of the physical works. Plans submitted shall clearly show the integration with adjacent stages and interrelated activities.

5) RC.5 In the event of any dispute, disagreement or inaction arising as to any Auckland Council Manager certification/ approvals required by the consent conditions, or as to the implementation of compliance or monitoring required by the conditions, matters shall be referred in the first instance to the NZTA Regional State Highway Manager and to the Resource Consents...
Manager, Auckland Council to determine a process of resolution.

If a resolution cannot be agreed, then the matter may be referred to an independent appropriately qualified expert, agreeable to both parties, setting out the details of the matter to be referred for determination and the reasons the parties do not agree.

The independent appropriately qualified expert shall be appointed within 10 working days of the NZTA or Auckland Council giving notice of their intention to seek expert determination. The expert shall, as soon as possible, issue his or her decision on the matter. In making the decision, the expert shall be entitled to seek further information and hear from the parties as he or she sees fit.

Advice note: The dispute resolution process provided for in this condition does not prejudice any party’s right to take enforcement action in relation to the implementation of the designation conditions. However, the dispute resolution process will be applied before any formal enforcement action is taken by the Council except in urgent situations.

6) RC.6 Pursuant to Section 36(1)(d) of the RMA, the requiring authority is required to pay to Auckland Council any administrative charge for the carrying out by the local authority of its functions in relation to the administration, monitoring, and supervision of designation conditions.

7) RC.7 The servants of agents of Auckland Council shall be permitted to have access to relevant parts of the Project at all reasonable times for the purpose of carrying out inspections, investigations, tests, measurements and/or to take samples.

PRE-CONSTRUCTION CONDITIONS

8) RC.3 Within 3 months of the resource consents commencing for the Project (or at least 1 month prior to any Auckland Council approvals or certifications required by these Conditions, whichever is the earlier), the NZTA shall update and finalise to the satisfaction of the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council all drawings and Plans cited in Schedule A, together with a full set of the information and documentation referred to in Condition DC.1 and provide these to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council. At the same time the NZTA shall prepare to the satisfaction of Auckland Council, a document for each resource consent which sets out the resource consent and have attached to it in text format a comprehensive set of the conditions imposed by the Board of Inquiry in its Final Decision as summarised in Schedule B, inclusive of any standard conditions and advice notes.

In particular (but not limited to), the following Plans will need to be amended in light of the Final Conditions:

(a) F.2 Operational Scheme Plans (refer Schedule A, Row 3) require amendment detailing the amended location of the ventilation stacks and southern ventilation buildings;

(b) F.5 Construction Scheme Plans (refer Schedule A, Row 4) require amendment to detail changes to construction footprint for the amended location of ventilation stacks and southern ventilation buildings and reconfiguration of Construction Yard 1);

(c) F.6 Construction Yard Plans 101 and 107 (refer Schedule A, Row 7), detailing amendments to the Construction Yard 1 in light of the reconfiguration of this Yard and for Construction Yard 7 in light of the relocation of the northern ventilation stack (refer Schedule A, Row 34);

(d) F.8 Plans of Structures and Architectural Features (refer Schedule A, Row 9), detailing the amended location of the Northern Ventilation Stack and the design and location of the Southern Ventilation Building and Stack;
(e) The CNVMP (including flow diagram and the supplementary evidence produced by Ms Wilkening) (refer Schedule A, Rows 36, 37 and 39);

(f) Update to the areas of the Open Space Restoration Plans (Schedule A, Row 30) to:

(i) Extend these areas in geographic extent to provide for the works identified in the Management Plan notations identified in the OS Conditions (in particular OS.5 and OS.6). (e.g. these areas will (as relevant) include Eric Armishaw Park, Howlett Reserve and Waterview Esplanade Reserve);

(ii) Exclude the operational area of designation required for the northern ventilation stack (as identified through the OPW process (refer Condition DC.8); and

(g) Schedule A, Row 28 the Plan detailing proposed open space impacts and replacements needs to be updated to recolour the two land parcels on Hendon Avenue (which are excluded from the replacement calculations) to ‘brown’ to confirm they are part of the operational impact and will not be returned as open space.

9) SW.11 The NZTA shall inform the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council in writing at least 10 working days prior to the start date of the works authorised by this resource consent.

10) SW.12 The NZTA shall submit the final design of the operational stormwater system to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council for approval at least 20 working days prior to the commencement of construction works on the permanent stormwater system. The final design will incorporate the design philosophy contained in Technical Report G.27: Stormwater Design Philosophy Statement (including that it shall best practicably mimic the existing hydrologic regime and setting, to deliver outcome objectives that remedy or mitigate adverse environmental effects, while also considering any measures to improve current flood issues in the catchment.

For certification purposes, these designs shall include, but not be limited to:

(a) Design calculations for the following:

   (i) flow attenuation devices,
   (ii) stormwater treatment device sizing,
   (iii) bypass device design,
   (iv) stormwater treatment device efficiency;

(b) Design drawings, including all structures, outfalls, treatment devices, bypass devices, wetlands and ponds;

(c) Planting plans and schedules for all stormwater treatment devices;

(d) Catchment plans detailing the area draining to each device; and

(e) Outfall locations.

11) SW.13 Any subsequent amendments to the final design of the operational stormwater system shall be submitted for approval in writing by the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council at least 20 working days prior to implementation.

12) SW.14 The NZTA shall arrange and conduct pre-construction site meetings between the Auckland Council and all relevant parties, including the site stormwater engineer, for the installation of each of the operational stormwater management works. The Council shall be provided with 5 working days written notice of the date and time of each pre-construction site meeting prior to construction of the permanent stormwater devices. Any resulting amendments to the design of the works may be reviewed at that time and shall be approved in accordance with Condition SW.12.

13) M.1 The NZTA shall finalise and implement through the CEMP, the ECOMP submitted with this
application. The ECOMP shall be revised to accurately reflect the conditions of this consent and changes to the details of construction processes prior to construction commencing. The ECOMP shall include, but not be limited to, details of:
(a) Monitoring of marine habitats and ecological values;
(b) Trigger event criteria for undertaking additional monitoring;
(c) Procedures for responding to accidental discharges to the marine environment;
(d) Complaints investigation, monitoring and reporting; and
(e) The identification of staff and contractors’ responsibilities.

CONSTRUCTION CONDITIONS

14) SW.10 The permanent stormwater measures shall be installed and operated in accordance with the plans and information submitted with this application and the information contained within Technical Report G.15 Assessment of Stormwater and Streamworks Effects. In particular, this requires the construction and completion of stormwater management works to the treatment standards for the catchment areas detailed in Table 3. Stormwater treatment shall also be provided for adjunct activities associated with the Project including access roads and carparks for the tunnel ventilation buildings.

Table 3: Catchment areas and treatment standards for Operational Phase of the Waterview Connection Project by Sector.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sector</th>
<th>Existing Impervious Area (ha)</th>
<th>Percentage proposed treatment (%)</th>
<th>Additional Impervious Area (ha)</th>
<th>Percentage proposed treatment (%)</th>
<th>Total Area (ha)</th>
<th>Percentage proposed treatment (%)</th>
<th>Treatment</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>8.05</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>3.67</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>11.72</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>1.45</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>0.72</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>2.17</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>3.88</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>1.47</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>5.35</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>8.37</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>3.40</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>11.77</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>6.62</td>
<td>92.1</td>
<td>3.43</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>10.05</td>
<td>94.8</td>
<td>80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>4.08</td>
<td>68.7</td>
<td>1.06</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>5.14</td>
<td>75.2</td>
<td>75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>1.04</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>8.49</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>9.53</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total</td>
<td>33.49</td>
<td>94.5</td>
<td>22.25</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>55.74</td>
<td>96.8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*1 TSS removal is on a long term average basis.
*2 Attenuation of the peak post-development runoff to the peak pre-development runoff for the 2, 10 and 100 year ARI rainfall events
*3 Extended detention of the 34.5mm rainfall event for 24 hours in accordance with ARC TP10 (2003) guidelines.
Any stormwater outfalls authorised by this Consent shall incorporate energy dissipation and/or erosion protection measures to minimise the occurrence of bed scour and bank erosion. The design of stormwater outfalls shall assess various rainfall events and tailwater levels (stream and sea levels) to ensure the critical storm event is considered in the design.

The NZTA shall maintain the coastal marine area free of any gross litter, rubbish and debris during construction.

**POST-CONSTRUCTION CONDITIONS**

Within 30 days of the practical completion of each part of the stormwater management system, “As Built” plans and documentation of the stormwater system which are certified as a true record of the stormwater management system by a suitably qualified Chartered Professional Engineer shall be supplied to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council.

The NZTA shall submit to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council within three months of the completion of installation of the stormwater management system an updated and final version of the Operational Stormwater Management Plan (OSMP) submitted with the application, to certify it meets the performance standards specified in Technical Report G.15. The purpose of the OSMP is to set out operation and maintenance requirements for the long term operation of stormwater systems implemented as part of the Project.

The OSMP shall include a monitoring programme for tunnel water quality to be agreed with the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council. The monitoring programme shall have a duration of two years. The water quality report shall be submitted to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council at the end of each year. The OSMP shall be updated at the end of the monitoring programme to revise procedures for the treatment and disposal of tunnel water.

The OSMP shall include, but not be limited to:

(a) A programme for regular maintenance and inspection of works;
(b) A programme for the collection and disposal of debris and sediment collected by the stormwater management devices or practices;
(c) A programme for inspection and maintenance of outfall erosion;
(d) A programme for post-storm maintenance;
(e) General inspection checklists for all aspects of the stormwater management system;
(f) Details of the person or bodies that will hold responsibility for long-term maintenance of the stormwater management system and the organisational structure which will support this process.

Any amendments to the OSMP shall be submitted for approval in writing by the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council at least 20 working days prior to implementation.

The NZTA shall arrange and conduct a post construction site meeting within 30 days of completion of installation of each part of the stormwater management works between the Auckland Council and all relevant parties, including the site stormwater engineer. The “As Built” plans and documentation required by condition SW.15 shall be made available at the site meeting.

In the second year of operation of stormwater treatment wetlands, during the months of December to February, the NZTA shall arrange and conduct a site meeting between the
Auckland Council and the NZTA, including the design stormwater engineer, in order to assess plant health of the stormwater treatment wetlands. Any resulting amendments to the wetland design may be reviewed at that time and shall be approved by the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council.

**MONITORING**

22) **M.2** The NZTA shall engage a suitably qualified ecologist to undertake a marine habitat monitoring programme, as described in Conditions M.3 to M.6.

23) **M.3** The marine benthic habitat monitoring programme shall be undertaken every 6 months:
   (a) At least 12 months prior to construction commencing, to allow for two baseline surveys to be undertaken;
   (b) During construction; and
   (c) For a maximum of 3 years following completion of the Project, or for a lesser time if the monitoring indicates no significant effects, as agreed with the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council.

24) **M.4** The marine benthic habitat monitoring programme shall be undertaken in accordance with the details set out in the ECOMP and include:
   (a) Sampling of the marine invertebrate community composition (collection of sediment cores to a depth of approximately 15cm);
   (b) Sampling of the sediment surface (top 2cm) for sediment grain size; and
   (c) Sampling of the sediment surface (top 2cm) for sediment quality (analysis of the concentration of copper, lead, zinc and polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons).

25) **M.5** The marine benthic habitat monitoring shall be undertaken within sampling grids (50m x 30m) broadly established at the following locations:
   (a) Two locations within Oakley Inlet;
   (b) Four locations within Waterview Estuary; and
   (c) Four locations north of the Causeway.

Specific locations and experimental design shall be detailed in the ECOMP, and the design of the monitoring programme will be based on the *Estuarine Environmental Assessment and Monitoring: A National Protocol* (Cawthron 2002).

26) **M.6** The NZTA shall undertake additional marine habitat monitoring in the event of a ‘trigger event’ for marine ecology habitats. For the purposes of this consent, a ‘trigger event’ for marine ecology habitats is defined in the ECOMP.

27) **M.7** The NZTA shall review the marine habitat monitoring results (pursuant to Conditions M.3 to M.6) and in the event that potential adverse effects are identified, the NZTA shall develop and implement appropriate contingency plans and/or remedial measures.

**REPORTING**

28) **M.8** The marine benthic habitat monitoring results shall be compiled by the NZTA, and a report provided to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council every 6 months.
This document has been prepared in compliance with conditions of the "Final Report and Decision of the Board of Inquiry into the New Zealand Transport Agency Waterview Connection Proposal, Volume 2, Conditions of Consent". Schedule B of Volume 2 identifies the Conditions relevant to this Consent by the code and number as referenced throughout this document. In the event of dispute, Schedule B of Volume 2 shall take precedence over this Consent.

**Type:** Coastal Consent

**Description:** Discharge of Contaminants (Sector 4):

This consent relates to the permanent discharge of stormwater to the CMA for the operation of the Project – Sector 4 (Causeway and Interchange, CPA1).

**Duration:** 35 years

**Code:**

RC = Standard Resource Consent Conditions

SW = Stormwater Conditions

M = Marine Ecology Conditions

**GENERAL CONDITIONS**

1) **RC.1** Except as modified by the conditions below, the works shall be undertaken in general accordance with the information provided by the New Zealand Transport Agency (NZTA), in the resource consent applications and the supporting documents (as detailed in Condition DC.1), and in the supplementary information provided in evidence by the NZTA.

2) **RC.1A** The NZTA shall implement the conditions of these consents in accordance with Schedule B, which sets out the Conditions that are to be applied to each consent including the duration of each consent.

3) **RC.2** The Conditions of these consents may be reviewed by the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council, pursuant to Section 128 of the Resource Management Act 1991 (the Act), by the giving of notice pursuant to Section 129 of the Act, on the one year anniversary of the commencement of the consents and every year thereafter in order:

   (a) To deal with any adverse effect on the environment which may arise from the exercise of the consent and which it is appropriate to deal with at a later stage; or

   (b) To deal with any other adverse effect on the environment on which the exercise of the consent may have an influence.

4) **RC.4** Any Management Plans submitted to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council for approval or certification may be submitted in stages to reflect any proposed staging of the physical works. Plans submitted shall clearly show the integration with adjacent stages and interrelated activities.

5) **RC.5** In the event of any dispute, disagreement or inaction arising as to any Auckland Council Manager certification/approvals required by the consent conditions, or as to the implementation of or monitoring required by the conditions, matters shall be referred in the first instance to the NZTA Regional State Highway Manager and to the Resource Consents.
Manager, Auckland Council to determine a process of resolution. If a resolution cannot be agreed, then the matter may be referred to an independent appropriately qualified expert, agreeable to both parties, setting out the details of the matter to be referred for determination and the reasons the parties do not agree.

The independent appropriately qualified expert shall be appointed within 10 working days of the NZTA or Auckland Council giving notice of their intention to seek expert determination. The expert shall, as soon as possible, issue his or her decision on the matter. In making the decision, the expert shall be entitled to seek further information and hear from the parties as he or she sees fit.

Advice note: The dispute resolution process provided for in this condition does not prejudice any party’s right to take enforcement action in relation to the implementation of the designation conditions. However, the dispute resolution process will be applied before any formal enforcement action is taken by the Council except in urgent situations.

6) RC.6 Pursuant to Section 36(1)(d) of the RMA, the requiring authority is required to pay to Auckland Council any administrative charge for the carrying out by the local authority of its functions in relation to the administration, monitoring, and supervision of designation conditions.

7) RC.7 The servants of agents of Auckland Council shall be permitted to have access to relevant parts of the Project at all reasonable times for the purpose of carrying out inspections, investigations, tests, measurements and/or to take samples.

PRE-CONSTRUCTION CONDITIONS

8) RC.3 Within 3 months of the resource consents commencing for the Project (or at least 1 month prior to any Auckland Council approvals or certifications required by these Conditions, whichever is the earlier), the NZTA shall update and finalise to the satisfaction of the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council all drawings and Plans cited in Schedule A, together with a full set of the information and documentation referred to in Condition DC.1 and provide these to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council. At the same time the NZTA shall prepare to the satisfaction of Auckland Council, a document for each resource consent which sets out the resource consent and have attached to it in text format a comprehensive set of the conditions imposed by the Board of Inquiry in its Final Decision as summarised in Schedule B, inclusive of any standard conditions and advice notes.

In particular (but not limited to), the following Plans will need to be amended in light of the Final Conditions:

(a) F.2 Operational Scheme Plans (refer Schedule A, Row 3) require amendment detailing the amended location of the ventilation stacks and southern ventilation buildings;

(b) F.5 Construction Scheme Plans (refer Schedule A, Row 4) require amendment to detail changes to construction footprint for the amended location of ventilation stacks and southern ventilation buildings and reconfiguration of Construction Yard 1);

(c) F.6 Construction Yard Plans 101 and 107 (refer Schedule A, Row 7), detailing amendments to the Construction Yard 1 in light of the reconfiguration of this Yard and for Construction Yard 7 in light of the relocation of the northern ventilation stack (refer Schedule A, Row 34);

(d) F.8 Plans of Structures and Architectural Features (refer Schedule A, Row 9), detailing the amended location of the Northern Ventilation Stack and the design and location of the Southern Ventilation Building and Stack;
(e) The CNVMP (including flow diagram and the supplementary evidence produced by Ms Wilkening) (refer Schedule A, Rows 36, 37 and 39);

(f) Update to the areas of the Open Space Restoration Plans (Schedule A, Row 30) to:
   (i) Extend these areas in geographic extent to provide for the works identified in the Management Plan notations identified in the OS Conditions (in particular OS.5 and OS.6). (e.g. these areas will (as relevant) include Eric Armishaw Park, Howlett Reserve and Waterview Esplanade Reserve); and
   (ii) Exclude the operational area of designation required for the northern ventilation stack (as identified through the OPW process (refer Condition DC.8); and

(g) Schedule A, Row 28 the Plan detailing proposed open space impacts and replacements needs to be updated to recolour the two land parcels on Hendon Avenue (which are excluded from the replacement calculations) to ‘brown’ to confirm they are part of the operational impact and will not be returned as open space.

9) SW.11 The NZTA shall inform the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council in writing at least 10 working days prior to the start date of the works authorised by this resource consent.

10) SW.12 The NZTA shall submit the final design of the operational stormwater system to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council for approval at least 20 working days prior to the commencement of construction works on the permanent stormwater system. The final design will incorporate the design philosophy contained in Technical Report G.27: Stormwater Design Philosophy Statement (including that it shall best practically mimic the existing hydrologic regime and setting, to deliver outcome objectives that remedy or mitigate adverse environmental effects, while also considering any measures to improve current flood issues in the catchment.

For certification purposes, these designs shall include, but not be limited to:

(a) Design calculations for the following:
   (i) flow attenuation devices,
   (ii) stormwater treatment device sizing,
   (iii) bypass device design,
   (iv) stormwater treatment device efficiency;

(b) Design drawings, including all structures, outfalls, treatment devices, bypass devices, wetlands and ponds;

(c) Planting plans and schedules for all stormwater treatment devices;

(d) Catchment plans detailing the area draining to each device; and

(e) Outfall locations.

11) SW.13 Any subsequent amendments to the final design of the operational stormwater system shall be submitted for approval in writing by the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council at least 20 working days prior to implementation.

12) SW.14 The NZTA shall arrange and conduct pre-construction site meetings between the Auckland Council and all relevant parties, including the site stormwater engineer, for the installation of each of the operational stormwater management works. The Council shall be provided with 5 working days written notice of the date and time of each pre-construction site meeting prior to construction of the permanent stormwater devices. Any resulting amendments to the design of the works may be reviewed at that time and shall be approved in accordance with Condition SW.12.

13) M.1 The NZTA shall finalise and implement through the CEMP, the ECOMP submitted with this
application. The ECOMP shall be revised to accurately reflect the conditions of this consent and changes to the details of construction processes prior to construction commencing. The ECOMP shall include, but not be limited to, details of:
(a) Monitoring of marine habitats and ecological values;
(b) Trigger event criteria for undertaking additional monitoring;
(c) Procedures for responding to accidental discharges to the marine environment;
(d) Complaints investigation, monitoring and reporting; and
(e) The identification of staff and contractors’ responsibilities.

CONSTRUCTION CONDITIONS

14) SW.10 The permanent stormwater measures shall be installed and operated in accordance with the plans and information submitted with this application and the information contained within Technical Report G.15 Assessment of Stormwater and Streamworks Effects. In particular, this requires the construction and completion of stormwater management works to the treatment standards for the catchment areas detailed in Table 3. Stormwater treatment shall also be provided for adjunct activities associated with the Project including access roads and carparks for the tunnel ventilation buildings.

Table 3: Catchment areas and treatment standards for Operational Phase of the Waterview Connection Project by Sector.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sector</th>
<th>Existing Impervious</th>
<th>Additional Impervious</th>
<th>Total</th>
<th>Treatment</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Area (ha) Percentage proposed treatment (%)</td>
<td>Area (ha) Percentage proposed treatment (%)</td>
<td>Area (ha) Percentage proposed treatment (%)</td>
<td>TSS removal*1 (%)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>8.05 100</td>
<td>3.67 100</td>
<td>11.72 100</td>
<td>80 No No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>1.45 100</td>
<td>0.72 100</td>
<td>2.17 100</td>
<td>80 No No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>3.88 100</td>
<td>1.47 100</td>
<td>5.35 100</td>
<td>80 No No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>8.37 100</td>
<td>3.40 100</td>
<td>11.77 100</td>
<td>80 No No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>6.62 92.1</td>
<td>3.43 100</td>
<td>10.05 94.8</td>
<td>80 No No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>4.08 68.7</td>
<td>1.06 100</td>
<td>5.14 75.2</td>
<td>75 No Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>N/A N/A</td>
<td>N/A N/A</td>
<td>N/A N/A</td>
<td>N/A N/A N/A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>N/A N/A</td>
<td>N/A N/A</td>
<td>N/A N/A</td>
<td>N/A N/A N/A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>1.04 100</td>
<td>8.49 100</td>
<td>9.53 100</td>
<td>75 Yes Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total</td>
<td>33.49 94.5</td>
<td>22.25 100</td>
<td>55.74 96.8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*1 TSS removal is on a long term average basis.

*2 Attenuation of the peak post-development runoff to the peak pre-development runoff for the 2, 10 and 100 year ARI rainfall events

*3 Extended detention of the 34.5mm rainfall event for 24 hours in accordance with ARC TP10 (2003) guidelines.
15) M.10  The NZTA shall maintain the coastal marine area free of any gross litter, rubbish and debris during construction.

POST-CONSTRUCTION CONDITIONS

16) SW.15  Within 30 days of the practical completion of each part of the stormwater management system, "As Built" plans and documentation of the stormwater system which are certified as a true record of the stormwater management system by a suitably qualified Chartered Professional Engineer shall be supplied to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council.

17) SW.16  The NZTA shall submit to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council within three months of the completion of installation of the stormwater management system an updated and final version of the Operational Stormwater Management Plan (OSMP) submitted with the application, to certify it meets the performance standards specified in Technical Report G.15. The purpose of the OSMP is to set out operation and maintenance requirements for the long term operation of stormwater systems implemented as part of the Project.

The OSMP shall include a monitoring programme for tunnel water quality to be agreed with the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council. The monitoring programme shall have a duration of two years. The water quality report shall be submitted to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council at the end of each year. The OSMP shall be updated at the end of the monitoring programme to revise procedures for the treatment and disposal of tunnel water.

The OSMP shall include, but not be limited to:

(a) A programme for regular maintenance and inspection of works;
(b) A programme for the collection and disposal of debris and sediment collected by the stormwater management devices or practices;
(c) A programme for inspection and maintenance of outfall erosion;
(d) A programme for post-storm maintenance;
(e) General inspection checklists for all aspects of the stormwater management system;
(f) Details of the person or bodies that will hold responsibility for long-term maintenance of the stormwater management system and the organisational structure which will support this process.

18) SW.17  Any amendments to the OSMP shall be submitted for approval in writing by the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council at least 20 working days prior to implementation.

19) SW.18  The NZTA shall arrange and conduct a post construction site meeting within 30 days of completion of installation of each part of the stormwater management works between the Auckland Council and all relevant parties, including the site stormwater engineer. The “As Built” plans and documentation required by condition SW.15 shall be made available at the site meeting.

20) SW.22  In the second year of operation of stormwater treatment wetlands, during the months of December to February, the NZTA shall arrange and conduct a site meeting between the Auckland Council and the NZTA, including the design stormwater engineer, in order to assess plant health of the stormwater treatment wetlands. Any resulting amendments to the wetland design may be reviewed at that time and shall be approved by the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council.
MONITORING

21) M.2 The NZTA shall engage a suitably qualified ecologist to undertake a marine habitat monitoring programme, as described in Conditions M.3 to M.6.

22) M.3 The marine benthic habitat monitoring programme shall be undertaken every 6 months:
   (a) At least 12 months prior to construction commencing, to allow for two baseline surveys to be undertaken;
   (b) During construction; and
   (c) For a maximum of 3 years following completion of the Project, or for a lesser time if the monitoring indicates no significant effects, as agreed with the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council.

23) M.4 The marine benthic habitat monitoring programme shall be undertaken in accordance with the details set out in the ECOMP and include:
   (a) Sampling of the marine invertebrate community composition (collection of sediment cores to a depth of approximately 15cm);
   (b) Sampling of the sediment surface (top 2cm) for sediment grain size; and
   (c) Sampling of the sediment surface (top 2cm) for sediment quality (analysis of the concentration of copper, lead, zinc and polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons).

24) M.5 The marine benthic habitat monitoring shall be undertaken within sampling grids (50m x 30m) broadly established at the following locations:
   (a) Two locations within Oakley Inlet;
   (b) Four locations within Waterview Estuary; and
   (c) Four locations north of the Causeway.
   Specific locations and experimental design shall be detailed in the ECOMP, and the design of the monitoring programme will be based on the *Estuarine Environmental Assessment and Monitoring: A National Protocol* (Cawthron 2002).

25) M.6 The NZTA shall undertake additional marine habitat monitoring in the event of a 'trigger event' for marine ecology habitats. For the purposes of this consent, a 'trigger event' for marine ecology habitats is defined in the ECOMP.

26) M.7 The NZTA shall review the marine habitat monitoring results (pursuant to Conditions M.3 to M.6) and in the event that potential adverse effects are identified, the NZTA shall develop and implement appropriate contingency plans and/or remedial measures.

REPORTING

27) M.8 The marine benthic habitat monitoring results shall be compiled by the NZTA, and a report provided to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council every 6 months.
This document has been prepared in compliance with conditions of the “Final Report and Decision of the Board of Inquiry into the New Zealand Transport Agency Waterview Connection Proposal, Volume 2, Conditions of Consent”. Schedule B of Volume 2 identifies the Conditions relevant to this Consent by the code and number as referenced throughout this document. In the event of dispute, Schedule B of Volume 2 shall take precedence over this Consent.

**Type:** Coastal Consent

**Description:** Discharge of Contaminants (Sector 5):

This consent relates to the permanent discharge of stormwater to the CMA for the operation of the Project in Sectors 4 and 5 (Great North Road Interchange, Point Chevalier, General Management Area).

**Duration:** 35 years

**Code:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Code</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>RC</td>
<td>Standard Resource Consent Conditions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SW</td>
<td>Stormwater Conditions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M</td>
<td>Marine Ecology Conditions</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**GENERAL CONDITIONS**

1) **RC.1** Except as modified by the conditions below, the works shall be undertaken in general accordance with the information provided by the New Zealand Transport Agency (NZTA), in the resource consent applications and the supporting documents (as detailed in Condition DC.1), and in the supplementary information provided in evidence by the NZTA.

2) **RC.1A** The NZTA shall implement the conditions of these consents in accordance with Schedule B, which sets out the Conditions that are to be applied to each consent including the duration of each consent.

3) **RC.2** The Conditions of these consents may be reviewed by the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council, pursuant to Section 128 of the Resource Management Act 1991 (the Act), by the giving of notice pursuant to Section 129 of the Act, on the one year anniversary of the commencement of the consents and every year thereafter in order:

   (a) To deal with any adverse effect on the environment which may arise from the exercise of the consent and which it is appropriate to deal with at a later stage; or

   (b) To deal with any other adverse effect on the environment on which the exercise of the consent may have an influence.

4) **RC.4** Any Management Plans submitted to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council for approval or certification may be submitted in stages to reflect any proposed staging of the physical works. Plans submitted shall clearly show the integration with adjacent stages and interrelated activities.

5) **RC.5** In the event of any dispute, disagreement or inaction arising as to any Auckland Council Manager certification/ approvals required by the consent conditions, or as to the implementation of or monitoring required by the conditions, matters shall be referred in the first instance to the NZTA Regional State Highway Manager and to the Resource Consents
Manager, Auckland Council to determine a process of resolution.

If a resolution cannot be agreed, then the matter may be referred to an independent appropriately qualified expert, agreeable to both parties, setting out the details of the matter to be referred for determination and the reasons the parties do not agree.

The independent appropriately qualified expert shall be appointed within 10 working days of the NZTA or Auckland Council giving notice of their intention to seek expert determination. The expert shall, as soon as possible, issue his or her decision on the matter. In making the decision, the expert shall be entitled to seek further information and hear from the parties as he or she sees fit.

Advice note: The dispute resolution process provided for in this condition does not prejudice any party’s right to take enforcement action in relation to the implementation of the designation conditions. However, the dispute resolution process will be applied before any formal enforcement action is taken by the Council except in urgent situations.

6) RC.6 Pursuant to Section 36(1)(d) of the RMA, the requiring authority is required to pay to Auckland Council any administrative charge for the carrying out by the local authority of its functions in relation to the administration, monitoring, and supervision of designation conditions.

7) RC.7 The servants of agents of Auckland Council shall be permitted to have access to relevant parts of the Project at all reasonable times for the purpose of carrying out inspections, investigations, tests, measurements and/or to take samples.

PRE-CONSTRUCTION CONDITIONS

8) RC.3 Within 3 months of the resource consents commencing for the Project (or at least 1 month prior to any Auckland Council approvals or certifications required by these Conditions, whichever is the earlier), the NZTA shall update and finalise to the satisfaction of the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council all drawings and Plans cited in Schedule A, together with a full set of the information and documentation referred to in Condition DC.1 and provide these to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council. At the same time the NZTA shall prepare to the satisfaction of Auckland Council, a document for each resource consent which sets out the conditions imposed by the Board of Inquiry in its Final Decision as summarised in Schedule B, inclusive of any standard conditions and advice notes.

In particular (but not limited to), the following Plans will need to be amended in light of the Final Conditions:

(a) F.2 Operational Scheme Plans (refer Schedule A, Row 3) require amendment detailing the amended location of the ventilation stacks and southern ventilation buildings;

(b) F.5 Construction Scheme Plans (refer Schedule A, Row 4) require amendment to detail changes to construction footprint for the amended location of ventilation stacks and southern ventilation buildings and reconfiguration of Construction Yard 1);

(c) F.6 Construction Yard Plans 101 and 107 (refer Schedule A, Row 7), detailing amendments to the Construction Yard 1 in light of the reconfiguration of this Yard and for Construction Yard 7 in light of the relocation of the northern ventilation stack (refer Schedule A, Row 34);

(d) F.8 Plans of Structures and Architectural Features (refer Schedule A, Row 9), detailing the amended location of the Northern Ventilation Stack and the design and location of the Southern Ventilation Building and Stack;
(e) The CNVMP (including flow diagram and the supplementary evidence produced by Ms Wilkening) (refer Schedule A, Rows 36, 37 and 39);

(f) Update to the areas of the Open Space Restoration Plans (Schedule A, Row 30) to:

(i) Extend these areas in geographic extent to provide for the works identified in the Management Plan notations identified in the OS Conditions (in particular OS.5 and OS.6). (e.g. these areas will (as relevant) include Eric Armishaw Park, Howlett Reserve and Waterview Esplanade Reserve); and

(ii) Exclude the operational area of designation required for the northern ventilation stack (as identified through the OPW process (refer Condition DC.8); and

(g) Schedule A, Row 28 the Plan detailing proposed open space impacts and replacements needs to be updated to recolour the two land parcels on Hendon Avenue (which are excluded from the replacement calculations) to ‘brown’ to confirm they are part of the operational impact and will not be returned as open space.

9) SW.11 The NZTA shall inform the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council in writing at least 10 working days prior to the start date of the works authorised by this resource consent.

10) SW.12 The NZTA shall submit the final design of the operational stormwater system to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council for approval at least 20 working days prior to the commencement of construction works on the permanent stormwater system. The final design will incorporate the design philosophy contained in Technical Report G.27: Stormwater Design Philosophy Statement (including that it shall best practicably mimic the existing hydrologic regime and setting, to deliver outcome objectives that remedy or mitigate adverse environmental effects, while also considering any measures to improve current flood issues in the catchment.

For certification purposes, these designs shall include, but not be limited to:

(a) Design calculations for the following:

   (i) flow attenuation devices,

   (ii) stormwater treatment device sizing,

   (iii) bypass device design,

   (iv) stormwater treatment device efficiency;

(b) Design drawings, including all structures, outfalls, treatment devices, bypass devices, wetlands and ponds;

(c) Planting plans and schedules for all stormwater treatment devices;

(d) Catchment plans detailing the area draining to each device; and

(e) Outfall locations.

11) SW.13 Any subsequent amendments to the final design of the operational stormwater system shall be submitted for approval in writing by the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council at least 20 working days prior to implementation.

12) SW.14 The NZTA shall arrange and conduct pre-construction site meetings between the Auckland Council and all relevant parties, including the site stormwater engineer, for the installation of each of the operational stormwater management works. The Council shall be provided with 5 working days written notice of the date and time of each pre-construction site meeting prior to construction of the permanent stormwater devices. Any resulting amendments to the design of the works may be reviewed at that time and shall be approved in accordance with Condition SW.12.

13) M.1 The NZTA shall finalise and implement through the CEMP, the ECOMP submitted with this
application. The ECOMP shall be revised to accurately reflect the conditions of this consent and changes to the details of construction processes prior to construction commencing. The ECOMP shall include, but not be limited to, details of:

(a) Monitoring of marine habitats and ecological values;
(b) Trigger event criteria for undertaking additional monitoring;
(c) Procedures for responding to accidental discharges to the marine environment;
(d) Complaints investigation, monitoring and reporting; and
(e) The identification of staff and contractors’ responsibilities.

CONSTRUCTION CONDITIONS

14) SW.10 The permanent stormwater measures shall be installed and operated in accordance with the plans and information submitted with this application and the information contained within Technical Report G.15 Assessment of Stormwater and Streamworks Effects. In particular, this requires the construction and completion of stormwater management works to the treatment standards for the catchment areas detailed in Table 3. Stormwater treatment shall also be provided for adjunct activities associated with the Project including access roads and carparks for the tunnel ventilation buildings.

Table 3: Catchment areas and treatment standards for Operational Phase of the Waterview Connection Project by Sector.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sector</th>
<th>Existing Impervious</th>
<th>Additional Impervious</th>
<th>Total</th>
<th>Treatment</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Area (ha)</td>
<td>Percentage proposed treatment (%)</td>
<td>Area (ha)</td>
<td>Percentage proposed treatment (%)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>8.05</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>3.67</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>1.45</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>0.72</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>3.88</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>1.47</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>8.37</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>3.40</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>6.62</td>
<td>92.1</td>
<td>3.43</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>4.08</td>
<td>68.7</td>
<td>1.06</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>1.04</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>8.49</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total</td>
<td>33.49</td>
<td>94.5</td>
<td>22.25</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*1 TSS removal is on a long term average basis.

*2 Attenuation of the peak post-development runoff to the peak pre-development runoff for the 2, 10 and 100 year ARI rainfall events

*3 Extended detention of the 34.5mm rainfall event for 24 hours in accordance with ARC TP10 (2003) guidelines.
15) M.10 The NZTA shall maintain the coastal marine area free of any gross litter, rubbish and debris during construction.

POST-CONSTRUCTION CONDITIONS

16) SW.15 Within 30 days of the practical completion of each part of the stormwater management system, "As Built" plans and documentation of the stormwater system which are certified as a true record of the stormwater management system by a suitably qualified Chartered Professional Engineer shall be supplied to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council.

17) SW.16 The NZTA shall submit to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council within three months of the completion of installation of the stormwater management system an updated and final version of the Operational Stormwater Management Plan (OSMP) submitted with the application, to certify it meets the performance standards specified in Technical Report G.15. The purpose of the OSMP is to set out operation and maintenance requirements for the long term operation of stormwater systems implemented as part of the Project.

The OSMP shall include a monitoring programme for tunnel water quality to be agreed with the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council. The monitoring programme shall have a duration of two years. The water quality report shall be submitted to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council at the end of each year. The OSMP shall be updated at the end of the monitoring programme to revise procedures for the treatment and disposal of tunnel water.

The OSMP shall include, but not be limited to:

(a) A programme for regular maintenance and inspection of works;
(b) A programme for the collection and disposal of debris and sediment collected by the stormwater management devices or practices;
(c) A programme for inspection and maintenance of outfall erosion;
(d) A programme for post-storm maintenance;
(e) General inspection checklists for all aspects of the stormwater management system;
(f) Details of the person or bodies that will hold responsibility for long-term maintenance of the stormwater management system and the organisational structure which will support this process.

18) SW.17 Any amendments to the OSMP shall be submitted for approval in writing by the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council at least 20 working days prior to implementation.

19) SW.18 The NZTA shall arrange and conduct a post construction site meeting within 30 days of completion of installation of each part of the stormwater management works between the Auckland Council and all relevant parties, including the site stormwater engineer. The "As Built" plans and documentation required by condition SW.15 shall be made available at the site meeting.

20) SW.22 In the second year of operation of stormwater treatment wetlands, during the months of December to February, the NZTA shall arrange and conduct a site meeting between the Auckland Council and the NZTA, including the design stormwater engineer, in order to assess plant health of the stormwater treatment wetlands. Any resulting amendments to the wetland design may be reviewed at that time and shall be approved by the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council.
MONITORING

21) M.2 The NZTA shall engage a suitably qualified ecologist to undertake a marine habitat monitoring programme, as described in Conditions M.3 to M.6.

22) M.3 The marine benthic habitat monitoring programme shall be undertaken every 6 months:
(a) At least 12 months prior to construction commencing, to allow for two baseline surveys to be undertaken;
(b) During construction; and
(c) For a maximum of 3 years following completion of the Project, or for a lesser time if the monitoring indicates no significant effects, as agreed with the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council.

23) M.4 The marine benthic habitat monitoring programme shall be undertaken in accordance with the details set out in the ECOMP and include:
(a) Sampling of the marine invertebrate community composition (collection of sediment cores to a depth of approximately 15cm);
(b) Sampling of the sediment surface (top 2cm) for sediment grain size; and
(c) Sampling of the sediment surface (top 2cm) for sediment quality (analysis of the concentration of copper, lead, zinc and polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons).

24) M.5 The marine benthic habitat monitoring shall be undertaken within sampling grids (50m x 30m) broadly established at the following locations:
(a) Two locations within Oakley Inlet;
(b) Four locations within Waterview Estuary; and
(c) Four locations north of the Causeway. Specific locations and experimental design shall be detailed in the ECOMP, and the design of the monitoring programme will be based on the Estuarine Environmental Assessment and Monitoring: A National Protocol (Cawthron 2002).

25) M.6 The NZTA shall undertake additional marine habitat monitoring in the event of a ‘trigger event’ for marine ecology habitats. For the purposes of this consent, a ‘trigger event’ for marine ecology habitats is defined in the ECOMP.

26) M.7 The NZTA shall review the marine habitat monitoring results (pursuant to Conditions M.3 to M.6) and in the event that potential adverse effects are identified, the NZTA shall develop and implement appropriate contingency plans and/or remedial measures.

REPORTING

27) M.8 The marine benthic habitat monitoring results shall be compiled by the NZTA, and a report provided to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council every 6 months.
EPA 10/2.052 – (ARC: 38356)

This document has been prepared in compliance with conditions of the “Final Report and Decision of the Board of Inquiry into the New Zealand Transport Agency Waterview Connection Proposal, Volume 2, Conditions of Consent”. Schedule B of Volume 2 identifies the Conditions relevant to this Consent by the code and number as referenced throughout this document. In the event of dispute, Schedule B of Volume 2 shall take precedence over this Consent.

Type: Coastal Consent

Description: Occupation of CMA (Sector 1 and 2):

Occupation of the CMA by permanent structures in, on and over the seabed and foreshore for general state highway widening including piles and piers for new and widened structures including:

Sector 1 – Stormwater wetland pond

Sector 2 – Whau River Bridge, Whau River pedestrian/cycle facility

Duration: 35 years

Code:

RC = Standard Resource Consent Conditions
SW = Stormwater Conditions
C = Coastal Conditions
M = Marine Ecology Conditions

GENERAL CONDITIONS

1) RC.1 Except as modified by the conditions below, the works shall be undertaken in general accordance with the information provided by the New Zealand Transport Agency (NZTA), in the resource consent applications and the supporting documents (as detailed in Condition DC.1), and in the supplementary information provided in evidence by the NZTA.

2) RC.1A The NZTA shall implement the conditions of these consents in accordance with Schedule B, which sets out the Conditions that are to be applied to each consent including the duration of each consent.

3) RC.2 The Conditions of these consents may be reviewed by the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council, pursuant to Section 128 of the Resource Management Act 1991 (the Act), by the giving of notice pursuant to Section 129 of the Act, on the one year anniversary of the commencement of the consents and every year thereafter in order:

   (a) To deal with any adverse effect on the environment which may arise from the exercise of the consent and which it is appropriate to deal with at a later stage; or

   (b) To deal with any other adverse effect on the environment on which the exercise of the consent may have an influence.

4) RC.4 Any Management Plans submitted to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council for approval or certification may be submitted in stages to reflect any proposed staging of the physical works. Plans submitted shall clearly show the integration with adjacent
In the event of any dispute, disagreement or inaction arising as to any Auckland Council Manager certification/approvals required by the consent conditions, or as to the implementation of or monitoring required by the conditions, matters shall be referred in the first instance to the NZTA Regional State Highway Manager and to the Resource Consents Manager, Auckland Council to determine a process of resolution.

If a resolution cannot be agreed, then the matter may be referred to an independent appropriately qualified expert, agreeable to both parties, setting out the details of the matter to be referred for determination and the reasons the parties do not agree.

The independent appropriately qualified expert shall be appointed within 10 working days of the NZTA or Auckland Council giving notice of their intention to seek expert determination. The expert shall, as soon as possible, issue his or her decision on the matter. In making the decision, the expert shall be entitled to seek further information and hear from the parties as he or she sees fit.

Advice note: The dispute resolution process provided for in this condition does not prejudice any party’s right to take enforcement action in relation to the implementation of the designation conditions. However, the dispute resolution process will be applied before any formal enforcement action is taken by the Council except in urgent situations.

Pursuant to Section 36(1)(d) of the RMA, the requiring authority is required to pay to Auckland Council any administrative charge for the carrying out by the local authority of its functions in relation to the administration, monitoring, and supervision of designation conditions.

The servants of agents of Auckland Council shall be permitted to have access to relevant parts of the Project at all reasonable times for the purpose of carrying out inspections, investigations, tests, measurements and/or to take samples.

Within 3 months of the resource consents commencing for the Project (or at least 1 month prior to any Auckland Council approvals or certifications required by these Conditions, whichever is the earlier), the NZTA shall update and finalise to the satisfaction of the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council all drawings and Plans cited in Schedule A, together with a full set of the information and documentation referred to in Condition DC.1 and provide these to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council. At the same time the NZTA shall prepare to the satisfaction of Auckland Council, a document for each resource consent which sets out the resource consent and have attached to it in text format a comprehensive set of the conditions imposed by the Board of Inquiry in its Final Decision as summarised in Schedule B, inclusive of any standard conditions and advice notes.

In particular (but not limited to), the following Plans will need to be amended in light of the Final Conditions:

(a) F.2 Operational Scheme Plans (refer Schedule A, Row 3) require amendment detailing the amended location of the ventilation stacks and southern ventilation buildings;

(b) F.5 Construction Scheme Plans (refer Schedule A, Row 4) require amendment to detail changes to construction footprint for the amended location of ventilation stacks and southern ventilation buildings and reconfiguration of Construction Yard 1);

(c) F.6 Construction Yard Plans 101 and 107 (refer Schedule A, Row 7), detailing amendments to the Construction Yard 1 in light of the reconfiguration of this Yard and
(d) F.8 Plans of Structures and Architectural Features (refer Schedule A, Row 9), detailing the amended location of the Northern Ventilation Stack and the design and location of the Southern Ventilation Building and Stack;

(e) The CNVMP (including flow diagram and the supplementary evidence produced by Ms Wilkening) (refer Schedule A, Rows 36, 37 and 39);

(f) Update to the areas of the Open Space Restoration Plans (Schedule A, Row 30) to:
   (i) Extend these areas in geographic extent to provide for the works identified in the Management Plan notations identified in the OS Conditions (in particular OS.5 and OS.6), (e.g. these areas will (as relevant) include Eric Armishaw Park, Howlett Reserve and Waterview Esplanade Reserve); and
   (ii) Exclude the operational area of designation required for the northern ventilation stack (as identified through the OPW process (refer Condition DC.8); and

(g) Schedule A, Row 28 the Plan detailing proposed open space impacts and replacements needs to be updated to recolour the two land parcels on Hendon Avenue (which are excluded from the replacement calculations) to ‘brown’ to confirm they are part of the operational impact and will not be returned as open space.

9) SW.11 The NZTA shall inform the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council in writing at least 10 working days prior to the start date of the works authorised by this resource consent.

10) SW.12 The NZTA shall submit the final design of the operational stormwater system to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council for approval at least 20 working days prior to the commencement of construction works on the permanent stormwater system. The final design will incorporate the design philosophy contained in Technical Report G.27: Stormwater Design Philosophy Statement (including that it shall best practicably mimic the existing hydrologic regime and setting, to deliver outcome objectives that remedy or mitigate adverse environmental effects, while also considering any measures to improve current flood issues in the catchment.

For certification purposes, these designs shall include, but not be limited to:

(a) Design calculations for the following:
   (i) flow attenuation devices,
   (ii) stormwater treatment device sizing,
   (iii) bypass device design,
   (iv) stormwater treatment device efficiency;

(b) Design drawings, including all structures, outfalls, treatment devices, bypass devices, wetlands and ponds;

(c) Planting plans and schedules for all stormwater treatment devices;

(d) Catchment plans detailing the area draining to each device; and

(e) Outfall locations.

11) SW.13 Any subsequent amendments to the final design of the operational stormwater system shall be submitted for approval in writing by the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council at least 20 working days prior to implementation.

12) SW.14 The NZTA shall arrange and conduct pre-construction site meetings between the Auckland Council and all relevant parties, including the site stormwater engineer, for the installation of each of the operational stormwater management works. The Council shall be provided with
5 working days written notice of the date and time of each pre-construction site meeting prior to construction of the permanent stormwater devices. Any resulting amendments to the design of the works may be reviewed at that time and shall be approved in accordance with Condition SW.12.

13) C.1 The NZTA shall provide to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council plans and drawings (including dimensioned, cross sections, elevations and site plans of all areas of proposed reclamation (including associated permanent and temporary CMA occupation), permanent structures and temporary structures) at least 20 working days before the proposed date of commencement of the construction of the reclamation, bridge piers or temporary structure.

14) M.1 The NZTA shall finalise and implement through the CEMP, the ECOMP submitted with this application. The ECOMP shall be revised to accurately reflect the conditions of this consent and changes to the details of construction processes prior to construction commencing. The ECOMP shall include, but not be limited to, details of:
(a) Monitoring of marine habitats and ecological values;
(b) Trigger event criteria for undertaking additional monitoring;
(c) Procedures for responding to accidental discharges to the marine environment;
(d) Complaints investigation, monitoring and reporting; and
(e) The identification of staff and contractors’ responsibilities.
CONSTRUCTION CONDITIONS

15) SW.10 The permanent stormwater measures shall be installed and operated in accordance with the plans and information submitted with this application and the information contained within Technical Report G.15 Assessment of Stormwater and Streamworks Effects. In particular, this requires the construction and completion of stormwater management works to the treatment standards for the catchment areas detailed in Table 3. Stormwater treatment shall also be provided for adjunct activities associated with the Project including access roads and carparks for the tunnel ventilation buildings.

Table 3: Catchment areas and treatment standards for Operational Phase of the Waterview Connection Project by Sector.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sector</th>
<th>Existing Impervious</th>
<th>Additional Impervious</th>
<th>Total</th>
<th>Treatment</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Area (ha)</td>
<td>Percentage proposed treatment (%)</td>
<td>Area (ha)</td>
<td>Percentage proposed treatment (%)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>8.05</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>3.67</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>1.45</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>0.72</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>3.88</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>1.47</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>8.37</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>3.40</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>6.62</td>
<td>92.1</td>
<td>3.43</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>4.08</td>
<td>68.7</td>
<td>1.06</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>1.04</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>8.49</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total</td>
<td>33.49</td>
<td>94.5</td>
<td>22.25</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*1 TSS removal is on a long term average basis.
*2 Attenuation of the peak post-development runoff to the peak pre-development runoff for the 2, 10 and 100 year ARI rainfall events

16) SW.20 Any stormwater outfalls authorised by this Consent shall incorporate energy dissipation and/or erosion protection measures to minimise the occurrence of bed scour and bank erosion. The design of stormwater outfalls shall assess various rainfall events and tailwater levels (stream and sea levels) to ensure the critical storm event is considered in the design.

17) C.7 Removal or pruning of vegetation in the CMA shall be limited to the areas of permanent and temporary occupation as shown on the Waterview Connection Project Assessment of Environmental Effects Plan Set F.12 and F.13 submitted with the application (ref Schedule A, rows 13 and 14). Removal of mangroves shall be implemented in accordance with the

18) C.11  
(a) Provision for navigation of vessels beneath the Whau River Bridges during construction shall be maintained to the satisfaction of the Auckland Harbour Master;
(b) Following construction, provision for the navigation of vessels beneath the Whau River Bridges be provided by the navigation channels and headspace clearance identified on the Plan Whau River Motorway and Pedestrian Bridges Elevation Plan 221 in F.8 (refer Schedule A, Row 9);
(c) For purposes of safe navigation, the NZTA shall identify an appropriate pier to mark on the Whau River Bridges, in consultation with the Te Atatu Boating Club and to the satisfaction of the Auckland Harbour Master. This pier shall be surveyed and marked with height graduations advising available minimum headspace under the Bridges for different stages of the tide with an appropriate safety margin.

POST-CONSTRUCTION / OPERATION CONDITIONS

19) SW.15  Within 30 days of the practical completion of each part of the stormwater management system, “As Built” plans and documentation of the stormwater system which are certified as a true record of the stormwater management system by a suitably qualified Chartered Professional Engineer shall be supplied to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council.

20) SW.16  The NZTA shall submit to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council within three months of the completion of installation of the stormwater management system an updated and final version of the Operational Stormwater Management Plan (OSMP) submitted with the application, to certify it meets the performance standards specified in Technical Report G.15. The purpose of the OSMP is to set out operation and maintenance requirements for the long term operation of stormwater systems implemented as part of the Project.

The OSMP shall include a monitoring programme for tunnel water quality to be agreed with the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council. The monitoring programme shall have a duration of two years. The water quality report shall be submitted to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council at the end of each year. The OSMP shall be updated at the end of the monitoring programme to revise procedures for the treatment and disposal of tunnel water.

The OSMP shall include, but not be limited to:
(a) A programme for regular maintenance and inspection of works;
(b) A programme for the collection and disposal of debris and sediment collected by the stormwater management devices or practices;
(c) A programme for inspection and maintenance of outfall erosion;
(d) A programme for post-storm maintenance;
(e) General inspection checklists for all aspects of the stormwater management system;
(f) Details of the person or bodies that will hold responsibility for long-term maintenance of the stormwater management system and the organisational structure which will support this process.

21) SW.17  Any amendments to the OSMP shall be submitted for approval in writing by the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council at least 20 working days prior to implementation.

22) SW.18  The NZTA shall arrange and conduct a post construction site meeting within 30 days of completion of installation of each part of the stormwater management works between the
Auckland Council and all relevant parties, including the site stormwater engineer. The “As Built” plans and documentation required by condition SW.15 shall be made available at the site meeting.

23) SW.22 In the second year of operation of stormwater treatment wetlands, during the months of December to February, the NZTA shall arrange and conduct a site meeting between the Auckland Council and the NZTA, including the design stormwater engineer, in order to assess plant health of the stormwater treatment wetlands. Any resulting amendments to the wetland design may be reviewed at that time and shall be approved by the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council.

24) SW.23 Operational run-off and/or water collected from the tunnels that is not suitable for treatment within the Project, shall be collected by the NZTA and transferred for treatment and disposal off-site in accordance with any necessary council approvals or consents.

25) C.4 The NZTA shall notify the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council in writing within 10 working days of the completion of each discrete area of reclamation, structures and/or channel realignment works.

26) C.5 The NZTA shall supply to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council and LINZ Hydrographic Services and LINZ Topographic Services Land Information New Zealand, PO Box 5501, Wellington 6145), a complete set of “as built” plans, final topographic and bathymetric data, and appropriate certification confirming that the new reclamation, structures and channel realignment works have been built in accordance with sound engineering practice, within three months of the completion of the reclamation works.

MONITORING

27) M.2 The NZTA shall engage a suitably qualified ecologist to undertake a marine habitat monitoring programme, as described in Conditions M.3 to M.6.

28) M.3 The marine benthic habitat monitoring programme shall be undertaken every 6 months:
(a) At least 12 months prior to construction commencing, to allow for two baseline surveys to be undertaken;
(b) During construction; and
(c) For a maximum of 3 years following completion of the Project, or for a lesser time if the monitoring indicates no significant effects, as agreed with the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council.

29) M.4 The marine benthic habitat monitoring programme shall be undertaken in accordance with the details set out in the ECOMP and include:
(a) Sampling of the marine invertebrate community composition (collection of sediment cores to a depth of approximately 15cm);
(b) Sampling of the sediment surface (top 2cm) for sediment grain size; and
(c) Sampling of the sediment surface (top 2cm) for sediment quality (analysis of the concentration of copper, lead, zinc and polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons).

30) M.5 The marine benthic habitat monitoring shall be undertaken within sampling grids (50m x 30m) broadly established at the following locations:
(a) Two locations within Oakley Inlet;
(b) Four locations within Waterview Estuary; and
(c) Four locations north of the Causeway.
Specific locations and experimental design shall be detailed in the ECOMP, and the design
of the monitoring programme will be based on the *Estuarine Environmental Assessment and Monitoring: A National Protocol* (Cawthron 2002).

31) **M.6** The NZTA shall undertake additional marine habitat monitoring in the event of a 'trigger event' for marine ecology habitats. For the purposes of this consent, a 'trigger event' for marine ecology habitats is defined in the ECOMP.

32) **M.7** The NZTA shall review the marine habitat monitoring results (pursuant to Conditions M.3 to M.6) and in the event that potential adverse effects are identified, the NZTA shall develop and implement appropriate contingency plans and/or remedial measures.

33) **C.13** During preparation works in the CMA for ground improvement and reclamation works adjacent to the Rosebank Domain access road, mangroves required to be removed on the southern side of the existing drainage channel are to be extracted together with their root systems and removed from the CMA to facilitate the lateral migration of the channel to the south prior to infilling. The evolution of the channel shall be monitored by a baseline cross-section survey of the channel at two sites prior to construction, then monitoring the same sections every 2 months until 6 months after completion of the reclamation, together with photographs along the affected section, to confirm the natural migration of the channel is proceeding unimpeded by mangrove roots. The monitoring information shall be provided to the Auckland Council within 20 working days of completion of each phase of monitoring.

**REPORTING**

34) **M.8** The marine benthic habitat monitoring results shall be compiled by the NZTA, and a report provided to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council every 6 months.
This document has been prepared in compliance with conditions of the “Final Report and Decision of the Board of Inquiry into the New Zealand Transport Agency Waterview Connection Proposal, Volume 2, Conditions of Consent”. Schedule B of Volume 2 identifies the Conditions relevant to this Consent by the code and number as referenced throughout this document. In the event of dispute, Schedule B of Volume 2 shall take precedence over this Consent.

**Type:**
Coastal Consent

**Description:**
Occupation of CMA (Sector 1):
This consent relates to the occupation of the stormwater outfalls for – Sector 1 (Henderson Creek, CPA 2)

**Duration:**
35 years

**Code:**
RC = Standard Resource Consent Conditions
SW = Stormwater Conditions
C = Coastal Conditions
M = Marine Ecology Conditions

**GENERAL CONDITIONS**

1) **RC.1** Except as modified by the conditions below, the works shall be undertaken in general accordance with the information provided by the New Zealand Transport Agency (NZTA), in the resource consent applications and the supporting documents (as detailed in Condition DC.1), and in the supplementary information provided in evidence by the NZTA.

2) **RC.1A** The NZTA shall implement the conditions of these consents in accordance with Schedule B, which sets out the Conditions that are to be applied to each consent including the duration of each consent.

3) **RC.2** The Conditions of these consents may be reviewed by the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council, pursuant to Section 128 of the Resource Management Act 1991 (the Act), by the giving of notice pursuant to Section 129 of the Act, on the one year anniversary of the commencement of the consents and every year thereafter in order:
   (a) To deal with any adverse effect on the environment which may arise from the exercise of the consent and which it is appropriate to deal with at a later stage; or
   (b) To deal with any other adverse effect on the environment on which the exercise of the consent may have an influence.

4) **RC.4** Any Management Plans submitted to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council for approval or certification may be submitted in stages to reflect any proposed staging of the physical works. Plans submitted shall clearly show the integration with adjacent stages and interrelated activities.

5) **RC.5** In the event of any dispute, disagreement or inaction arising as to any Auckland Council Manager certification/ approvals required by the consent conditions, or as to the implementation of or monitoring required by the conditions, matters shall be referred in the
first instance to the NZTA Regional State Highway Manager and to the Resource Consents Manager, Auckland Council to determine a process of resolution.

If a resolution cannot be agreed, then the matter may be referred to an independent appropriately qualified expert, agreeable to both parties, setting out the details of the matter to be referred for determination and the reasons the parties do not agree.

The independent appropriately qualified expert shall be appointed within 10 working days of the NZTA or Auckland Council giving notice of their intention to seek expert determination. The expert shall, as soon as possible, issue his or her decision on the matter. In making the decision, the expert shall be entitled to seek further information and hear from the parties as he or she sees fit.

Advice note: The dispute resolution process provided for in this condition does not prejudice any party’s right to take enforcement action in relation to the implementation of the designation conditions. However, the dispute resolution process will be applied before any formal enforcement action is taken by the Council except in urgent situations.

6) RC.6 Pursuant to Section 36(1)(d) of the RMA, the requiring authority is required to pay to Auckland Council any administrative charge for the carrying out by the local authority of its functions in relation to the administration, monitoring, and supervision of designation conditions.

7) RC.7 The servants of agents of Auckland Council shall be permitted to have access to relevant parts of the Project at all reasonable times for the purpose of carrying out inspections, investigations, tests, measurements and/or to take samples.

PRE-CONSTRUCTION CONDITIONS

8) RC.3 Within 3 months of the resource consents commencing for the Project (or at least 1 month prior to any Auckland Council approvals or certifications required by these Conditions, whichever is the earlier), the NZTA shall update and finalise to the satisfaction of the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council all drawings and Plans cited in Schedule A, together with a full set of the information and documentation referred to in Condition DC.1 and provide these to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council. At the same time the NZTA shall prepare to the satisfaction of Auckland Council, a document for each resource consent which sets out the resource consent and have attached to it in text format a comprehensive set of the conditions imposed by the Board of Inquiry in its Final Decision as summarised in Schedule B, inclusive of any standard conditions and advice notes.

In particular (but not limited to), the following Plans will need to be amended in light of the Final Conditions:

(a) F.2 Operational Scheme Plans (refer Schedule A, Row 3) require amendment detailing the amended location of the ventilation stacks and southern ventilation buildings;

(b) F.5 Construction Scheme Plans (refer Schedule A, Row 4) require amendment to detail changes to construction footprint for the amended location of ventilation stacks and southern ventilation buildings and reconfiguration of Construction Yard 1);

(c) F.6 Construction Yard Plans 101 and 107 (refer Schedule A, Row 7), detailing amendments to the Construction Yard 1 in light of the reconfiguration of this Yard and for Construction Yard 7 in light of the relocation of the northern ventilation stack (refer Schedule A, Row 34);

(d) F.8 Plans of Structures and Architectural Features (refer Schedule A, Row 9), detailing the amended location of the Northern Ventilation Stack and the design and
The CNVMP (including flow diagram and the supplementary evidence produced by Ms Wilkening) (refer Schedule A, Rows 36, 37 and 39);

Update to the areas of the Open Space Restoration Plans (Schedule A, Row 30) to:

(i) Extend these areas in geographic extent to provide for the works identified in the Management Plan notations identified in the OS Conditions (in particular OS.5 and OS.6). (e.g. these areas will (as relevant) include Eric Armishaw Park, Howlett Reserve and Waterview Esplanade Reserve); and

(ii) Exclude the operational area of designation required for the northern ventilation stack (as identified through the OPW process (refer Condition DC.8); and

(g) Schedule A, Row 28 the Plan detailing proposed open space impacts and replacements needs to be updated to recolour the two land parcels on Hendon Avenue (which are excluded from the replacement calculations) to ‘brown’ to confirm they are part of the operational impact and will not be returned as open space.

9) SW.11 The NZTA shall inform the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council in writing at least 10 working days prior to the start date of the works authorised by this resource consent.

10) SW.12 The NZTA shall submit the final design of the operational stormwater system to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council for approval at least 20 working days prior to the commencement of construction works on the permanent stormwater system. The final design will incorporate the design philosophy contained in Technical Report G.27: Stormwater Design Philosophy Statement (including that it shall best practicably mimic the existing hydrologic regime and setting, to deliver outcome objectives that remedy or mitigate adverse environmental effects, while also considering any measures to improve current flood issues in the catchment.

For certification purposes, these designs shall include, but not be limited to:

(a) Design calculations for the following:

(i) flow attenuation devices,

(ii) stormwater treatment device sizing,

(iii) bypass device design,

(iv) stormwater treatment device efficiency;

(b) Design drawings, including all structures, outfalls, treatment devices, bypass devices, wetlands and ponds;

(c) Planting plans and schedules for all stormwater treatment devices;

(d) Catchment plans detailing the area draining to each device; and

(e) Outfall locations.

11) SW.13 Any subsequent amendments to the final design of the operational stormwater system shall be submitted for approval in writing by the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council at least 20 working days prior to implementation.

12) SW.14 The NZTA shall arrange and conduct pre-construction site meetings between the Auckland Council and all relevant parties, including the site stormwater engineer, for the installation of each of the operational stormwater management works. The Council shall be provided with 5 working days written notice of the date and time of each pre-construction site meeting prior to construction of the permanent stormwater devices. Any resulting amendments to the design of the works may be reviewed at that time and shall be approved in accordance with Condition SW.12.
13) C.1 The NZTA shall provide to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council plans and drawings (including dimensioned, cross sections, elevations and site plans of all areas of proposed reclamation (including associated permanent and temporary CMA occupation), permanent structures and temporary structures) at least 20 working days before the proposed date of commencement of the construction of the reclamation, bridge piers or temporary structure.

14) M.1 The NZTA shall finalise and implement through the CEMP, the ECOMP submitted with this application. The ECOMP shall be revised to accurately reflect the conditions of this consent and changes to the details of construction processes prior to construction commencing. The ECOMP shall include, but not be limited to, details of:
(a) Monitoring of marine habitats and ecological values;
(b) Trigger event criteria for undertaking additional monitoring;
(c) Procedures for responding to accidental discharges to the marine environment;
(d) Complaints investigation, monitoring and reporting; and
(e) The identification of staff and contractors’ responsibilities.
CONSTRUCTION CONDITIONS

15) SW.10 The permanent stormwater measures shall be installed and operated in accordance with the plans and information submitted with this application and the information contained within Technical Report G.15 Assessment of Stormwater and Streamworks Effects. In particular, this requires the construction and completion of stormwater management works to the treatment standards for the catchment areas detailed in Table 3. Stormwater treatment shall also be provided for adjunct activities associated with the Project including access roads and carparks for the tunnel ventilation buildings.

Table 3: Catchment areas and treatment standards for Operational Phase of the Waterview Connection Project by Sector.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sector</th>
<th>Existing Impervious</th>
<th>Additional Impervious</th>
<th>Total</th>
<th>Treatment</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Area (ha)</td>
<td>Percentage proposed treatment (%)</td>
<td>Area (ha)</td>
<td>Percentage proposed treatment (%)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>8.05</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>3.67</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>1.45</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>0.72</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>3.88</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>1.47</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>8.37</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>3.40</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>6.62</td>
<td>92.1</td>
<td>3.43</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>4.08</td>
<td>68.7</td>
<td>1.06</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>1.04</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>8.49</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total</td>
<td>33.49</td>
<td>94.5</td>
<td>22.25</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*1 TSS removal is on a long term average basis.
*2 Attenuation of the peak post-development runoff to the peak pre-development runoff for the 2, 10 and 100 year ARI rainfall events.
*3 Extended detention of the 34.5mm rainfall event for 24 hours in accordance with ARC TP10 (2003) guidelines.

16) SW.20 Any stormwater outfalls authorised by this Consent shall incorporate energy dissipation and/or erosion protection measures to minimise the occurrence of bed scour and bank erosion. The design of stormwater outfalls shall assess various rainfall events and tailwater levels (stream and sea levels) to ensure the critical storm event is considered in the design.

17) C.7 Removal or pruning of vegetation in the CMA shall be limited to the areas of permanent and temporary occupation as shown on the Waterview Connection Project Assessment of Environmental Effects Plan Set F.12 and F.13 submitted with the application (ref Schedule A, rows 13 and 14). Removal of mangroves shall be implemented in accordance with the

POST-CONSTRUCTION CONDITIONS

18) SW.15 Within 30 days of the practical completion of each part of the stormwater management system, "As Built" plans and documentation of the stormwater system which are certified as a true record of the stormwater management system by a suitably qualified Chartered Professional Engineer shall be supplied to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council.

19) SW.16 The NZTA shall submit to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council within three months of the completion of installation of the stormwater management system an updated and final version of the Operational Stormwater Management Plan (OSMP) submitted with the application, to certify it meets the performance standards specified in Technical Report G.15. The purpose of the OSMP is to set out operation and maintenance requirements for the long term operation of stormwater systems implemented as part of the Project.

The OSMP shall include a monitoring programme for tunnel water quality to be agreed with the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council. The monitoring programme shall have a duration of two years. The water quality report shall be submitted to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council at the end of each year. The OSMP shall be updated at the end of the monitoring programme to revise procedures for the treatment and disposal of tunnel water.

The OSMP shall include, but not be limited to:

(a) A programme for regular maintenance and inspection of works;
(b) A programme for the collection and disposal of debris and sediment collected by the stormwater management devices or practices;
(c) A programme for inspection and maintenance of outfall erosion;
(d) A programme for post-storm maintenance;
(e) General inspection checklists for all aspects of the stormwater management system;
(f) Details of the person or bodies that will hold responsibility for long-term maintenance of the stormwater management system and the organisational structure which will support this process.

20) SW.17 Any amendments to the OSMP shall be submitted for approval in writing by the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council at least 20 working days prior to implementation.

21) SW.18 The NZTA shall arrange and conduct a post construction site meeting within 30 days of completion of installation of each part of the stormwater management works between the Auckland Council and all relevant parties, including the site stormwater engineer. The "As Built" plans and documentation required by condition SW.15 shall be made available at the site meeting.

22) C.4 The NZTA shall notify the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council in writing within 10 working days of the completion of each discrete area of reclamations, structures and/or channel realignment works.

23) C.5 The NZTA shall supply to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council and LINZ Hydrographic Services and LINZ Topographic Services Land Information New Zealand, PO Box 5501, Wellington 6145), a complete set of "as built" plans, final topographic and bathymetric data, and appropriate certification confirming that the new reclamations, structures and channel realignment works have been built in accordance with
sound engineering practice, within three months of the completion of the reclamation works.

**MONITORING**

24) **M.2** The NZTA shall engage a suitably qualified ecologist to undertake a marine habitat monitoring programme, as described in Conditions M.3 to M.6.

25) **M.3** The marine benthic habitat monitoring programme shall be undertaken every 6 months:

(a) At least 12 months prior to construction commencing, to allow for two baseline surveys to be undertaken;

(b) During construction; and

(c) For a maximum of 3 years following completion of the Project, or for a lesser time if the monitoring indicates no significant effects, as agreed with the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council.

26) **M.4** The marine benthic habitat monitoring programme shall be undertaken in accordance with the details set out in the ECOMP and include:

(a) Sampling of the marine invertebrate community composition (collection of sediment cores to a depth of approximately 15cm);

(b) Sampling of the sediment surface (top 2cm) for sediment grain size; and

(c) Sampling of the sediment surface (top 2cm) for sediment quality (analysis of the concentration of copper, lead, zinc and polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons).

27) **M.5** The marine benthic habitat monitoring shall be undertaken within sampling grids (50m x 30m) broadly established at the following locations:

(a) Two locations within Oakley Inlet;

(b) Four locations within Waterview Estuary; and

(c) Four locations north of the Causeway.

Specific locations and experimental design shall be detailed in the ECOMP, and the design of the monitoring programme will be based on the *Estuarine Environmental Assessment and Monitoring: A National Protocol* (Cawthron 2002).

28) **M.6** The NZTA shall undertake additional marine habitat monitoring in the event of a 'trigger event' for marine ecology habitats. For the purposes of this consent, a 'trigger event' for marine ecology habitats is defined in the ECOMP.

29) **M.7** The NZTA shall review the marine habitat monitoring results (pursuant to Conditions M.3 to M.6) and in the event that potential adverse effects are identified, the NZTA shall develop and implement appropriate contingency plans and/or remedial measures.

**REPORTING**

30) **M.8** The marine benthic habitat monitoring results shall be compiled by the NZTA, and a report provided to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council every 6 months.
This document has been prepared in compliance with conditions of the "Final Report and Decision of the Board of Inquiry into the New Zealand Transport Agency Waterview Connection Proposal, Volume 2, Conditions of Consent". Schedule B of Volume 2 identifies the Conditions relevant to this Consent by the code and number as referenced throughout this document. In the event of dispute, Schedule B of Volume 2 shall take precedence over this Consent.

Type: Coastal Consent

Description: Occupation of CMA (Sector 2):
This consent relates to the occupation of the stormwater outfalls for – Sector 2 (Whau River, CPA 2 and Mooring Management Area)

Duration: 35 years

Code: RC = Standard Resource Consent Conditions
SW = Stormwater Conditions
C = Coastal Conditions
M = Marine Ecology Conditions

GENERAL CONDITIONS

1) RC.1 Except as modified by the conditions below, the works shall be undertaken in general accordance with the information provided by the New Zealand Transport Agency (NZTA), in the resource consent applications and the supporting documents (as detailed in Condition DC.1), and in the supplementary information provided in evidence by the NZTA.

2) RC.1A The NZTA shall implement the conditions of these consents in accordance with Schedule B, which sets out the Conditions that are to be applied to each consent including the duration of each consent.

3) RC.2 The Conditions of these consents may be reviewed by the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council, pursuant to Section 128 of the Resource Management Act 1991 (the Act), by the giving of notice pursuant to Section 129 of the Act, on the one year anniversary of the commencement of the consents and every year thereafter in order:
   (a) To deal with any adverse effect on the environment which may arise from the exercise of the consent and which it is appropriate to deal with at a later stage; or
   (b) To deal with any other adverse effect on the environment on which the exercise of the consent may have an influence.

4) RC.4 Any Management Plans submitted to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council for approval or certification may be submitted in stages to reflect any proposed staging of the physical works. Plans submitted shall clearly show the integration with adjacent stages and interrelated activities.

5) RC.5 In the event of any dispute, disagreement or inaction arising as to any Auckland Council Manager certification/ approvals required by the consent conditions, or as to the implementation of or monitoring required by the conditions, matters shall be referred in the
first instance to the NZTA Regional State Highway Manager and to the Resource Consents Manager, Auckland Council to determine a process of resolution.

If a resolution cannot be agreed, then the matter may be referred to an independent appropriately qualified expert, agreeable to both parties, setting out the details of the matter to be referred for determination and the reasons the parties do not agree.

The independent appropriately qualified expert shall be appointed within 10 working days of the NZTA or Auckland Council giving notice of their intention to seek expert determination. The expert shall, as soon as possible, issue his or her decision on the matter. In making the decision, the expert shall be entitled to seek further information and hear from the parties as he or she sees fit.

Advice note: The dispute resolution process provided for in this condition does not prejudice any party’s right to take enforcement action in relation to the implementation of the designation conditions. However, the dispute resolution process will be applied before any formal enforcement action is taken by the Council except in urgent situations.

6) RC.6 Pursuant to Section 36(1)(d) of the RMA, the requiring authority is required to pay to Auckland Council any administrative charge for the carrying out by the local authority of its functions in relation to the administration, monitoring, and supervision of designation conditions.

7) RC.7 The servants of agents of Auckland Council shall be permitted to have access to relevant parts of the Project at all reasonable times for the purpose of carrying out inspections, investigations, tests, measurements and/or to take samples.

PRE-CONSTRUCTION CONDITIONS

8) RC.3 Within 3 months of the resource consents commencing for the Project (or at least 1 month prior to any Auckland Council approvals or certifications required by these Conditions, whichever is the earlier), the NZTA shall update and finalise to the satisfaction of the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council all drawings and Plans cited in Schedule A, together with a full set of the information and documentation referred to in Condition DC.1 and provide these to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council. At the same time the NZTA shall prepare to the satisfaction of Auckland Council, a document for each resource consent which sets out the resource consent and have attached to it in text format a comprehensive set of the conditions imposed by the Board of Inquiry in its Final Decision as summarised in Schedule B, inclusive of any standard conditions and advice notes.

In particular (but not limited to), the following Plans will need to be amended in light of the Final Conditions:

(a) F.2 Operational Scheme Plans (refer Schedule A, Row 3) require amendment detailing the amended location of the ventilation stacks and southern ventilation buildings;

(b) F.5 Construction Scheme Plans (refer Schedule A, Row 4) require amendment to detail changes to construction footprint for the amended location of ventilation stacks and southern ventilation buildings and reconfiguration of Construction Yard 1);

(c) F.6 Construction Yard Plans 101 and 107 (refer Schedule A, Row 7), detailing amendments to the Construction Yard 1 in light of the reconfiguration of this Yard and for Construction Yard 7 in light of the relocation of the northern ventilation stack (refer Schedule A, Row 34);

(d) F.8 Plans of Structures and Architectural Features (refer Schedule A, Row 9), detailing the amended location of the Northern Ventilation Stack and the design and
(e) The CNVMP (including flow diagram and the supplementary evidence produced by Ms Wilkening) (refer Schedule A, Rows 36, 37 and 39);

(f) Update to the areas of the Open Space Restoration Plans (Schedule A, Row 30) to:
   (i) Extend these areas in geographic extent to provide for the works identified in the Management Plan notations identified in the OS Conditions (in particular OS.5 and OS.6), (e.g. these areas will (as relevant) include Eric Armishaw Park, Howlett Reserve and Waterview Esplanade Reserve); and
   (ii) Exclude the operational area of designation required for the northern ventilation stack (as identified through the OPW process (refer Condition DC.8); and

(g) Schedule A, Row 28 the Plan detailing proposed open space impacts and replacements needs to be updated to recolour the two land parcels on Hendon Avenue (which are excluded from the replacement calculations) to ‘brown’ to confirm they are part of the operational impact and will not be returned as open space.

9) SW.11 The NZTA shall inform the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council in writing at least 10 working days prior to the start date of the works authorised by this resource consent.

10) SW.12 The NZTA shall submit the final design of the operational stormwater system to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council for approval at least 20 working days prior to the commencement of construction works on the permanent stormwater system. The final design will incorporate the design philosophy contained in Technical Report G.27: Stormwater Design Philosophy Statement (including that it shall best practicably mimic the existing hydrologic regime and setting, to deliver outcome objectives that remedy or mitigate adverse environmental effects, while also considering any measures to improve current flood issues in the catchment.

For certification purposes, these designs shall include, but not be limited to:
   (a) Design calculations for the following:
      (i) flow attenuation devices,
      (ii) stormwater treatment device sizing,
      (iii) bypass device design,
      (iv) stormwater treatment device efficiency;
   (b) Design drawings, including all structures, outfalls, treatment devices, bypass devices, wetlands and ponds;
   (c) Planting plans and schedules for all stormwater treatment devices;
   (d) Catchment plans detailing the area draining to each device; and
   (e) Outfall locations.

11) SW.13 Any subsequent amendments to the final design of the operational stormwater system shall be submitted for approval in writing by the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council at least 20 working days prior to implementation.

12) SW.14 The NZTA shall arrange and conduct pre-construction site meetings between the Auckland Council and all relevant parties, including the site stormwater engineer, for the installation of each of the operational stormwater management works. The Council shall be provided with 5 working days written notice of the date and time of each pre-construction site meeting prior to construction of the permanent stormwater devices. Any resulting amendments to the design of the works may be reviewed at that time and shall be approved in accordance with Condition SW.12.
13) C.1 The NZTA shall provide to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council plans and drawings (including dimensioned, cross sections, elevations and site plans of all areas of proposed reclamation (including associated permanent and temporary CMA occupation), permanent structures and temporary structures) at least 20 working days before the proposed date of commencement of the construction of the reclamation, bridge piers or temporary structure.

14) M.1 The NZTA shall finalise and implement through the CEMP, the ECOMP submitted with this application. The ECOMP shall be revised to accurately reflect the conditions of this consent and changes to the details of construction processes prior to construction commencing. The ECOMP shall include, but not be limited to, details of:
(a) Monitoring of marine habitats and ecological values;
(b) Trigger event criteria for undertaking additional monitoring;
(c) Procedures for responding to accidental discharges to the marine environment;
(d) Complaints investigation, monitoring and reporting; and
(e) The identification of staff and contractors’ responsibilities.
CONSTRUCTION CONDITIONS

15) SW.10 The permanent stormwater measures shall be installed and operated in accordance with
the plans and information submitted with this application and the information contained
within Technical Report G.15 Assessment of Stormwater and Stormworks Effects. In
particular, this requires the construction and completion of stormwater management works
to the treatment standards for the catchment areas detailed in Table 3. Stormwater
treatment shall also be provided for adjunct activities associated with the Project including
access roads and carparks for the tunnel ventilation buildings.

Table 3: Catchment areas and treatment standards for Operational Phase of the Waterview
Connection Project by Sector.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sector</th>
<th>Existing Impervious</th>
<th>Additional Impervious</th>
<th>Total</th>
<th>Treatment</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Area (ha)</td>
<td>Percentage proposed treatment (%)</td>
<td>Area (ha)</td>
<td>Percentage proposed treatment (%)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>8.05</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>3.67</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>1.45</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>0.72</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>3.88</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>1.47</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>8.37</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>3.40</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>6.62</td>
<td>92.1</td>
<td>3.43</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>4.08</td>
<td>68.7</td>
<td>1.06</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>1.04</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>8.49</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total</td>
<td>33.49</td>
<td>94.5</td>
<td>22.25</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*1 TSS removal is on a long term average basis.

*2 Attenuation of the peak post-development runoff to the peak pre-development runoff for the 2, 10 and 100 year ARI rainfall events

*3 Extended detention of the 34.5mm rainfall event for 24 hours in accordance with ARC TP10 (2003) guidelines.

16) SW.20 Any stormwater outfalls authorised by this Consent shall incorporate energy dissipation
and/or erosion protection measures to minimise the occurrence of bed scour and bank
erosion. The design of stormwater outfalls shall assess various rainfall events and tailwater
levels (stream and sea levels) to ensure the critical storm event is considered in the design.

17) C.7 Removal or pruning of vegetation in the CMA shall be limited to the areas of permanent and
temporary occupation as shown on the Waterview Connection Project Assessment of
Environmental Effects Plan Set F.12 and F.13 submitted with the application (ref Schedule
A, rows 13 and 14). Removal of mangroves shall be implemented in accordance with the

18) C.11 (a) Provision for navigation of vessels beneath the Whau River Bridges during construction shall be maintained to the satisfaction of the Auckland Harbour Master;

(b) Following construction, provision for the navigation of vessels beneath the Whau River Bridges be provided by the navigation channels and headspace clearance identified on the Plan Whau River Motorway and Pedestrian Bridges Elevation Plan 221 in F.8 (refer Schedule A, Row 9);

(c) For purposes of safe navigation, the NZTA shall identify an appropriate pier to mark on the Whau River Bridges, in consultation with the Te Atatu Boating Club and to the satisfaction of the Auckland Harbour Master. This pier shall be surveyed and marked with height graduations advising available minimum headspace under the Bridges for different stages of the tide with an appropriate safety margin.

POST-CONSTRUCTION CONDITIONS

19) SW.15 Within 30 days of the practical completion of each part of the stormwater management system, "As Built" plans and documentation of the stormwater system which are certified as a true record of the stormwater management system by a suitably qualified Chartered Professional Engineer shall be supplied to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council.

20) SW.16 The NZTA shall submit to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council within three months of the completion of installation of the stormwater management system an updated and final version of the Operational Stormwater Management Plan (OSMP) submitted with the application, to certify it meets the performance standards specified in Technical Report G.15. The purpose of the OSMP is to set out operation and maintenance requirements for the long term operation of stormwater systems implemented as part of the Project.

The OSMP shall include a monitoring programme for tunnel water quality to be agreed with the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council. The monitoring programme shall have a duration of two years. The water quality report shall be submitted to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council at the end of each year. The OSMP shall be updated at the end of the monitoring programme to revise procedures for the treatment and disposal of tunnel water.

The OSMP shall include, but not be limited to:

(a) A programme for regular maintenance and inspection of works;

(b) A programme for the collection and disposal of debris and sediment collected by the stormwater management devices or practices;

(c) A programme for inspection and maintenance of outfall erosion;

(d) A programme for post-storm maintenance;

(e) General inspection checklists for all aspects of the stormwater management system;

(f) Details of the person or bodies that will hold responsibility for long-term maintenance of the stormwater management system and the organisational structure which will support this process.

21) SW.17 Any amendments to the OSMP shall be submitted for approval in writing by the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council at least 20 working days prior to implementation.

22) SW.18 The NZTA shall arrange and conduct a post construction site meeting within 30 days of completion of installation of each part of the stormwater management works between the
Auckland Council and all relevant parties, including the site stormwater engineer. The "As Built" plans and documentation required by condition SW.15 shall be made available at the site meeting.

23) C.4 The NZTA shall notify the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council in writing within 10 working days of the completion of each discrete area of reclamation, structures and/or channel realignment works.

24) C.5 The NZTA shall supply to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council and LINZ Hydrographic Services and LINZ Topographic Services Land Information New Zealand, PO Box 5501, Wellington 6145), a complete set of "as built" plans, final topographic and bathymetric data, and appropriate certification confirming that the new reclamation, structures and channel realignment works have been built in accordance with sound engineering practice, within three months of the completion of the reclamation works.

**MONITORING**

25) M.2 The NZTA shall engage a suitably qualified ecologist to undertake a marine habitat monitoring programme, as described in Conditions M.3 to M.6.

26) M.3 The marine benthic habitat monitoring programme shall be undertaken every 6 months:
   (a) At least 12 months prior to construction commencing, to allow for two baseline surveys to be undertaken;
   (b) During construction; and
   (c) For a maximum of 3 years following completion of the Project, or for a lesser time if the monitoring indicates no significant effects, as agreed with the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council.

27) M.4 The marine benthic habitat monitoring programme shall be undertaken in accordance with the details set out in the ECOMP and include:
   (a) Sampling of the marine invertebrate community composition (collection of sediment cores to a depth of approximately 15cm);
   (b) Sampling of the sediment surface (top 2cm) for sediment grain size; and
   (c) Sampling of the sediment surface (top 2cm) for sediment quality (analysis of the concentration of copper, lead, zinc and polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons).

28) M.5 The marine benthic habitat monitoring shall be undertaken within sampling grids (50m x 30m) broadly established at the following locations:
   (a) Two locations within Oakley Inlet;
   (b) Four locations within Waterview Estuary; and
   (c) Four locations north of the Causeway.

Specific locations and experimental design shall be detailed in the ECOMP, and the design of the monitoring programme will be based on the *Estuarine Environmental Assessment and Monitoring: A National Protocol* (Cawthron 2002).

29) M.6 The NZTA shall undertake additional marine habitat monitoring in the event of a 'trigger event' for marine ecology habitats. For the purposes of this consent, a 'trigger event' for marine ecology habitats is defined in the ECOMP.

30) M.7 The NZTA shall review the marine habitat monitoring results (pursuant to Conditions M.3 to M.6) and in the event that potential adverse effects are identified, the NZTA shall develop and implement appropriate contingency plans and/or remedial measures.
REPORTING

31) M.8 The marine benthic habitat monitoring results shall be compiled by the NZTA, and a report provided to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council every 6 months.
This document has been prepared in compliance with conditions of the "Final Report and Decision of the Board of Inquiry into the New Zealand Transport Agency Waterview Connection Proposal, Volume 2, Conditions of Consent". Schedule B of Volume 2 identifies the Conditions relevant to this Consent by the code and number as referenced throughout this document. In the event of dispute, Schedule B of Volume 2 shall take precedence over this Consent.

**Type:** Coastal Consent

**Description:** Occupation of CMA (Sector 4):

This consent relates to the occupation of the stormwater outfalls for – Sector 4 (Causeway Interchange, Waterview Inlet and surrounds, CPA1).

**Duration:** 35 years

**Code:**

- RC = Standard Resource Consent Conditions
- V = Vegetation Conditions
- SW = Stormwater Conditions
- C = Coastal Conditions
- M = Marine Ecology Conditions

**GENERAL CONDITIONS**

1) **RC.1** Except as modified by the conditions below, the works shall be undertaken in general accordance with the information provided by the New Zealand Transport Agency (NZTA), in the resource consent applications and the supporting documents (as detailed in Condition DC.1), and in the supplementary information provided in evidence by the NZTA.

2) **RC.1A** The NZTA shall implement the conditions of these consents in accordance with Schedule B, which sets out the Conditions that are to be applied to each consent including the duration of each consent.

3) **RC.2** The Conditions of these consents may be reviewed by the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council, pursuant to Section 128 of the Resource Management Act 1991 (the Act), by the giving of notice pursuant to Section 129 of the Act, on the one year anniversary of the commencement of the consents and every year thereafter in order:

   a) To deal with any adverse effect on the environment which may arise from the exercise of the consent and which it is appropriate to deal with at a later stage; or
   b) To deal with any other adverse effect on the environment on which the exercise of the consent may have an influence.

4) **RC.4** Any Management Plans submitted to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council for approval or certification may be submitted in stages to reflect any proposed staging of the physical works. Plans submitted shall clearly show the integration with adjacent stages and interrelated activities.

5) **RC.5** In the event of any dispute, disagreement or inaction arising as to any Auckland Council
Manager certification/ approvals required by the consent conditions, or as to the implementation of or monitoring required by the conditions, matters shall be referred in the first instance to the NZTA Regional State Highway Manager and to the Resource Consents Manager, Auckland Council to determine a process of resolution.

If a resolution cannot be agreed, then the matter may be referred to an independent appropriately qualified expert, agreeable to both parties, setting out the details of the matter to be referred for determination and the reasons the parties do not agree.

The independent appropriately qualified expert shall be appointed within 10 working days of the NZTA or Auckland Council giving notice of their intention to seek expert determination. The expert shall, as soon as possible, issue his or her decision on the matter. In making the decision, the expert shall be entitled to seek further information and hear from the parties as he or she sees fit.

Advice note: The dispute resolution process provided for in this condition does not prejudice any party’s right to take enforcement action in relation to the implementation of the designation conditions. However, the dispute resolution process will be applied before any formal enforcement action is taken by the Council except in urgent situations.

6) RC.6 Pursuant to Section 36(1)(d) of the RMA, the requiring authority is required to pay to Auckland Council any administrative charge for the carrying out by the local authority of its functions in relation to the administration, monitoring, and supervision of designation conditions.

7) RC.7 The servants of agents of Auckland Council shall be permitted to have access to relevant parts of the Project at all reasonable times for the purpose of carrying out inspections, investigations, tests, measurements and/or to take samples.

8) V.18 The NZTA shall implement the approved Traherne Island Weed and Pest Management Plan. Every 5 years, a suitably qualified and experienced ecologist engaged by NZTA shall review the plan in consultation with the Department of Conservation. The plan shall then be submitted to the Auckland Council for approval.

PRE-CONSTRUCTION CONDITIONS

9) RC.3 Within 3 months of the resource consents commencing for the Project (or at least 1 month prior to any Auckland Council approvals or certifications required by these Conditions, whichever is the earlier), the NZTA shall update and finalise to the satisfaction of the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council all drawings and Plans cited in Schedule A, together with a full set of the information and documentation referred to in Condition DC.1 and provide these to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council. At the same time the NZTA shall prepare to the satisfaction of Auckland Council, a document for each resource consent which sets out the resource consent and have attached to it in text format a comprehensive set of the conditions imposed by the Board of Inquiry in its Final Decision as summarised in Schedule B, inclusive of any standard conditions and advice notes.

In particular (but not limited to), the following Plans will need to be amended in light of the Final Conditions:

(a) F.2 Operational Scheme Plans (refer Schedule A, Row 3) require amendment detailing the amended location of the ventilation stacks and southern ventilation buildings;

(b) F.5 Construction Scheme Plans (refer Schedule A, Row 4) require amendment to detail changes to construction footprint for the amended location of ventilation stacks and southern ventilation buildings and reconfiguration of Construction Yard 1);
(c) F.6 Construction Yard Plans 101 and 107 (refer Schedule A, Row 7), detailing amendments to the Construction Yard 1 in light of the reconfiguration of this Yard and for Construction Yard 7 in light of the relocation of the northern ventilation stack (refer Schedule A, Row 34);

(d) F.8 Plans of Structures and Architectural Features (refer Schedule A, Row 9), detailing the amended location of the Northern Ventilation Stack and the design and location of the Southern Ventilation Building and Stack;

(e) The CNVMP (including flow diagram and the supplementary evidence produced by Ms Wilkening) (refer Schedule A, Rows 36, 37 and 39);

(f) Update to the areas of the Open Space Restoration Plans (Schedule A, Row 30) to:
   (i) Extend these areas in geographic extent to provide for the works identified in the Management Plan notations identified in the OS Conditions (in particular OS.5 and OS.6). (e.g. these areas will (as relevant) include Eric Armishaw Park, Howlett Reserve and Waterview Esplanade Reserve); and
   (ii) Exclude the operational area of designation required for the northern ventilation stack (as identified through the OPW process (refer Condition DC.8); and

(g) Schedule A, Row 28 the Plan detailing proposed open space impacts and replacements needs to be updated to recolour the two land parcels on Hendon Avenue (which are excluded from the replacement calculations) to ‘brown’ to confirm they are part of the operational impact and will not be returned as open space.

10) V.11 Prior to commencement of works adjacent to Traherne Island, the NZTA shall employ a suitably qualified and experienced plant translocation expert to uplift and protect all areas of *Mimulus repens* on Traherne Island that will be affected by the work. The *Mimulus repens* shall be relocated to suitable and safe habitat away from the works area, or otherwise held and protected for the duration of the works in the vicinity of their original location and be replanted back at that location (or in close proximity to it) upon completion of the works. The location of the recipient sites will be determined in consultation with the Department of Conservation and in general accordance with the Traherne Island Natural Heritage Restoration Plan (2009 – 2014). Trials shall be undertaken to identify appropriate recipient sites, with these trial sites being monitored for a period of no less than 5 years, or until their failure. Where possible, recipient sites shall be located in currently weed-free areas. Where recipient sites may potentially be affected by weeds, they shall be subject to an on-going weed management plan. Should translocation attempts fail at all trial sites then the NZTA, in consultation with DOC, shall determine an alternative appropriate form of mitigation.

11) V.17 Prior to commencement of works adjacent to or on Traherne Island, the NZTA shall employ a suitably qualified and experienced ecologist for the preparation of a Traherne Island Weed and Pest Management Plan. The Plan shall be prepared in consultation with the Department of Conservation and be submitted to the Auckland Council for approval at least 20 working days prior to construction commencing.

12) SW.11 The NZTA shall inform the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council in writing at least 10 working days prior to the start date of the works authorised by this resource consent.

13) SW.12 The NZTA shall submit the final design of the operational stormwater system to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council for approval at least 20 working days prior to the commencement of construction works on the permanent stormwater system. The final design will incorporate the design philosophy contained in Technical Report G.27: Stormwater Design Philosophy Statement (including that it shall best practicably mimic the existing hydrologic regime and setting, to deliver outcome objectives that remedy or mitigate adverse environmental effects , while also considering any measures to improve current
flood issues in the catchment.

For certification purposes, these designs shall include, but not be limited to:

(a) Design calculations for the following:
   (i) flow attenuation devices,
   (ii) stormwater treatment device sizing,
   (iii) bypass device design,
   (iv) stormwater treatment device efficiency;

(b) Design drawings, including all structures, outfalls, treatment devices, bypass devices, wetlands and ponds;

(c) Planting plans and schedules for all stormwater treatment devices;

(d) Catchment plans detailing the area draining to each device; and

(e) Outfall locations.

14) SW.13 Any subsequent amendments to the final design of the operational stormwater system shall be submitted for approval in writing by the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council at least 20 working days prior to implementation.

15) SW.14 The NZTA shall arrange and conduct pre-construction site meetings between the Auckland Council and all relevant parties, including the site stormwater engineer, for the installation of each of the operational stormwater management works. The Council shall be provided with 5 working days written notice of the date and time of each pre-construction site meeting prior to construction of the permanent stormwater devices. Any resulting amendments to the design of the works may be reviewed at that time and shall be approved in accordance with Condition SW.12.

16) C.1 The NZTA shall provide to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council plans and drawings (including dimensioned, cross sections, elevations and site plans of all areas of proposed reclamation (including associated permanent and temporary CMA occupation), permanent structures and temporary structures) at least 20 working days before the proposed date of commencement of the construction of the reclamation, bridge piers or temporary structure.

17) M.1 The NZTA shall finalise and implement through the CEMP, the ECOMP submitted with this application. The ECOMP shall be revised to accurately reflect the conditions of this consent and changes to the details of construction processes prior to construction commencing. The ECOMP shall include, but not be limited to, details of:

(a) Monitoring of marine habitats and ecological values;

(b) Trigger event criteria for undertaking additional monitoring;

(c) Procedures for responding to accidental discharges to the marine environment;

(d) Complaints investigation, monitoring and reporting; and

(e) The identification of staff and contractors’ responsibilities.
18) SW.10 The permanent stormwater measures shall be installed and operated in accordance with the plans and information submitted with this application and the information contained within Technical Report G.15 Assessment of Stormwater and Streamworks Effects. In particular, this requires the construction and completion of stormwater management works to the treatment standards for the catchment areas detailed in Table 3. Stormwater treatment shall also be provided for adjunct activities associated with the Project including access roads and carparks for the tunnel ventilation buildings.

Table 3: Catchment areas and treatment standards for Operational Phase of the Waterview Connection Project by Sector.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sector</th>
<th>Existing Impervious</th>
<th>Additional Impervious</th>
<th>Total</th>
<th>Treatment</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Area (ha)</td>
<td>Percentage proposed treatment (%)</td>
<td>Area (ha)</td>
<td>Percentage proposed treatment (%)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>8.05</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>3.67</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>1.45</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>0.72</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>3.88</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>1.47</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>8.37</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>3.40</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>6.62</td>
<td>92.1</td>
<td>3.43</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>4.08</td>
<td>68.7</td>
<td>1.06</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>1.04</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>8.49</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total</td>
<td>33.49</td>
<td>94.5</td>
<td>22.25</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*1 TSS removal is on a long term average basis.

*2 Attenuation of the peak post-development runoff to the peak pre-development runoff for the 2, 10 and 100 year ARI rainfall events

*3 Extended detention of the 34.5mm rainfall event for 24 hours in accordance with ARC TP10 (2003) guidelines.

19) SW.20 Any stormwater outfalls authorised by this Consent shall incorporate energy dissipation and/or erosion protection measures to minimise the occurrence of bed scour and bank erosion. The design of stormwater outfalls shall assess various rainfall events and tailwater levels (stream and sea levels) to ensure the critical storm event is considered in the design.
20) C.7 Removal or pruning of vegetation in the CMA shall be limited to the areas of permanent and temporary occupation as shown on the Waterview Connection Project Assessment of Environmental Effects Plan Set F.12 and F.13 submitted with the application (ref Schedule A, rows 13 and 14). Removal of mangroves shall be implemented in accordance with the principles detailed in the Ecological Management Plan.

POST-CONSTRUCTION CONDITIONS

21) SW.15 Within 30 days of the practical completion of each part of the stormwater management system, "As Built" plans and documentation of the stormwater system which are certified as a true record of the stormwater management system by a suitably qualified Chartered Professional Engineer shall be supplied to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council.

22) SW.16 The NZTA shall submit to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council within three months of the completion of installation of the stormwater management system an updated and final version of the Operational Stormwater Management Plan (OSMP) submitted with the application, to certify it meets the performance standards specified in Technical Report G.15. The purpose of the OSMP is to set out operation and maintenance requirements for the long term operation of stormwater systems implemented as part of the Project.

The OSMP shall include a monitoring programme for tunnel water quality to be agreed with the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council. The monitoring programme shall have a duration of two years. The water quality report shall be submitted to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council at the end of each year. The OSMP shall be updated at the end of the monitoring programme to revise procedures for the treatment and disposal of tunnel water.

The OSMP shall include, but not be limited to:
(a) A programme for regular maintenance and inspection of works;
(b) A programme for the collection and disposal of debris and sediment collected by the stormwater management devices or practices;
(c) A programme for inspection and maintenance of outfall erosion;
(d) A programme for post-storm maintenance;
(e) General inspection checklists for all aspects of the stormwater management system;
(f) Details of the person or bodies that will hold responsibility for long-term maintenance of the stormwater management system and the organisational structure which will support this process.

23) SW.17 Any amendments to the OSMP shall be submitted for approval in writing by the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council at least 20 working days prior to implementation.

24) SW.18 The NZTA shall arrange and conduct a post construction site meeting within 30 days of completion of installation of each part of the stormwater management works between the Auckland Council and all relevant parties, including the site stormwater engineer. The "As Built" plans and documentation required by condition SW.15 shall be made available at the site meeting.

25) C.4 The NZTA shall notify the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council in writing within 10 working days of the completion of each discrete area of reclamation, structures and/or channel realignment works.
26) C.5 The NZTA shall supply to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council and LINZ Hydrographic Services and LINZ Topographic Services Land Information New Zealand, PO Box 5501, Wellington 6145, a complete set of "as built" plans, final topographic and bathymetric data, and appropriate certification confirming that the new reclamation, structures and channel realignment works have been built in accordance with sound engineering practice, within three months of the completion of the reclamation works.

**MONITORING**

27) M.2 The NZTA shall engage a suitably qualified ecologist to undertake a marine habitat monitoring programme, as described in Conditions M.3 to M.6.

28) M.3 The marine benthic habitat monitoring programme shall be undertaken every 6 months:
   (a) At least 12 months prior to construction commencing, to allow for two baseline surveys to be undertaken;
   (b) During construction; and
   (c) For a maximum of 3 years following completion of the Project, or for a lesser time if the monitoring indicates no significant effects, as agreed with the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council.

29) M.4 The marine benthic habitat monitoring programme shall be undertaken in accordance with the details set out in the ECOMP and include:
   (a) Sampling of the marine invertebrate community composition (collection of sediment cores to a depth of approximately 15cm);
   (b) Sampling of the sediment surface (top 2cm) for sediment grain size; and
   (c) Sampling of the sediment surface (top 2cm) for sediment quality (analysis of the concentration of copper, lead, zinc and polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons).

30) M.5 The marine benthic habitat monitoring shall be undertaken within sampling grids (50m x 30m) broadly established at the following locations:
   (a) Two locations within Oakley Inlet;
   (b) Four locations within Waterview Estuary; and
   (c) Four locations north of the Causeway.

   Specific locations and experimental design shall be detailed in the ECOMP, and the design of the monitoring programme will be based on the *Estuarine Environmental Assessment and Monitoring: A National Protocol* (Cawthron 2002).

31) M.6 The NZTA shall undertake additional marine habitat monitoring in the event of a 'trigger event' for marine ecology habitats. For the purposes of this consent, a 'trigger event' for marine ecology habitats is defined in the ECOMP.

32) M.7 The NZTA shall review the marine habitat monitoring results (pursuant to Conditions M.3 to M.6) and in the event that potential adverse effects are identified, the NZTA shall develop and implement appropriate contingency plans and/or remedial measures.

**REPORTING**

33) M.8 The marine benthic habitat monitoring results shall be compiled by the NZTA, and a report provided to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council every 6 months.
This document has been prepared in compliance with conditions of the “Final Report and Decision of the Board of Inquiry into the New Zealand Transport Agency Waterview Connection Proposal, Volume 2, Conditions of Consent”. Schedule B of Volume 2 identifies the Conditions relevant to this Consent by the code and number as referenced throughout this document. In the event of dispute, Schedule B of Volume 2 shall take precedence over this Consent.

Type: Coastal Consent

Description: Occupation of CMA (Sectors 4 and 5):

Occupation of the CMA for construction works in, on and over the seabed and foreshore for Project works including stormwater outfall and ancillary works in General Management Area.

Duration: 10 years

Code:
- RC = Standard Resource Consent Conditions
- CEMP = Construction Environment Management Plan Conditions
- PI = Public Information Conditions
- CNV = Noise and Vibration Conditions – Construction
- V = Vegetation Conditions
- A = Avian Conditions
- SW = Stormwater Conditions
- C = Coastal Conditions
- M = Marine Ecology Conditions

GENERAL CONDITIONS

1) RC.1 Except as modified by the conditions below, the works shall be undertaken in general accordance with the information provided by the New Zealand Transport Agency (NZTA), in the resource consent applications and the supporting documents (as detailed in Condition DC.1), and in the supplementary information provided in evidence by the NZTA.

2) RC.1A The NZTA shall implement the conditions of these consents in accordance with Schedule B, which sets out the Conditions that are to be applied to each consent including the duration of each consent.

3) RC.2 The Conditions of these consents may be reviewed by the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council, pursuant to Section 128 of the Resource Management Act 1991 (the Act), by the giving of notice pursuant to Section 129 of the Act, on the one year anniversary of the commencement of the consents and every year thereafter in order:
   (a) To deal with any adverse effect on the environment which may arise from the exercise of the consent and which it is appropriate to deal with at a later stage; or
(b) To deal with any other adverse effect on the environment on which the exercise of the consent may have an influence.

4) RC.4 Any Management Plans submitted to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council for approval or certification may be submitted in stages to reflect any proposed staging of the physical works. Plans submitted shall clearly show the integration with adjacent stages and interrelated activities.

5) RC.5 In the event of any dispute, disagreement or inaction arising as to any Auckland Council Manager certification/ approvals required by the consent conditions, or as to the implementation of or monitoring required by the conditions, matters shall be referred in the first instance to the NZTA Regional State Highway Manager and to the Resource Consents Manager, Auckland Council to determine a process of resolution.

If a resolution cannot be agreed, then the matter may be referred to an independent appropriately qualified expert, agreeable to both parties, setting out the details of the matter to be referred for determination and the reasons the parties do not agree.

The independent appropriately qualified expert shall be appointed within 10 working days of the NZTA or Auckland Council giving notice of their intention to seek expert determination. The expert shall, as soon as possible, issue his or her decision on the matter. In making the decision, the expert shall be entitled to seek further information and hear from the parties as he or she sees fit.

Advice note: The dispute resolution process provided for in this condition does not prejudice any party’s right to take enforcement action in relation to the implementation of the designation conditions. However, the dispute resolution process will be applied before any formal enforcement action is taken by the Council except in urgent situations.

6) RC.6 Pursuant to Section 36(1)(d) of the RMA, the requiring authority is required to pay to Auckland Council any administrative charge for the carrying out by the local authority of its functions in relation to the administration, monitoring, and supervision of designation conditions.

7) RC.7 The servants of agents of Auckland Council shall be permitted to have access to relevant parts of the Project at all reasonable times for the purpose of carrying out inspections, investigations, tests, measurements and/or to take samples.

8) V.18 The NZTA shall implement the approved Traherne Island Weed and Pest Management Plan. Every 5 years, a suitably qualified and experienced ecologist engaged by NZTA shall review the plan in consultation with the Department of Conservation. The plan shall then be submitted to the Auckland Council for approval.

9) A.6 Animal pest control shall be undertaken by the NZTA on Traherne Island (northern and southern sides) and on the Coastal Marine Area (CMA) frontage of SH16 from Traherne Island North to Whau Creek, and on the southern side of SH16 from Traherne Island South to Whau River (in accordance with Condition V.17).

PRE-CONSTRUCTION CONDITIONS

10) RC.3 Within 3 months of the resource consents commencing for the Project (or at least 1 month prior to any Auckland Council approvals or certifications required by these Conditions, whichever is the earlier), the NZTA shall update and finalise to the satisfaction of the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council all drawings and Plans cited in Schedule A, together with a full set of the information and documentation referred to in Condition DC.1 and provide these to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council. At the same time the NZTA shall prepare to the satisfaction of Auckland Council, a document
for each resource consent which sets out the resource consent and have attached to it in text format a comprehensive set of the conditions imposed by the Board of Inquiry in its Final Decision as summarised in Schedule B, inclusive of any standard conditions and advice notes.

In particular (but not limited to), the following Plans will need to be amended in light of the Final Conditions:

(a) F.2 Operational Scheme Plans (refer Schedule A, Row 3) require amendment detailing the amended location of the ventilation stacks and southern ventilation buildings;

(b) F.5 Construction Scheme Plans (refer Schedule A, Row 4) require amendment to detail changes to construction footprint for the amended location of ventilation stacks and southern ventilation buildings and reconfiguration of Construction Yard 1);

(c) F.6 Construction Yard Plans 101 and 107 (refer Schedule A, Row 7), detailing amendments to the Construction Yard 1 in light of the reconfigurations of Construction Yard 1 and for Construction Yard 7 in light of the relocation of the northern ventilation stack (refer Schedule A, Row 34);

(d) F.8 Plans of Structures and Architectural Features (refer Schedule A, Row 9), detailing the amended location of the Northern Ventilation Stack and the design and location of the Southern Ventilation Building and Stack;

(e) The CNVMP (including flow diagram and the supplementary evidence produced by Ms Wilkening) (refer Schedule A, Rows 36, 37 and 39);

(f) Update to the areas of the Open Space Restoration Plans (Schedule A, Row 30) to:
   (i) Extend these areas in geographic extent to provide for the works identified in the Management Plan notations identified in the OS Conditions (in particular OS.5 and OS.6). (e.g. these areas will (as relevant) include Eric Armishaw Park, Howlett Reserve and Waterview Esplanade Reserve); and
   (ii) Exclude the operational area of designation required for the northern ventilation stack (as identified through the OPWW process (refer Condition DC.8); and

(g) Schedule A, Row 28 the Plan detailing proposed open space impacts and replacements needs to be updated to recolour the two land parcels on Hendon Avenue (which are excluded from the replacement calculations) to ‘brown’ to confirm they are part of the operational impact and will not be returned as open space.

11) CEMP.1

Except where provided for in Condition CEMP.1A below, the NZTA shall update and finalise the draft Construction Environmental Management Plan (CEMP) including all the Management Plans which form part of the CEMP and are included as appendices, submitted with this application to ensure compliance with the consent and designation conditions imposed by the Board of Inquiry. The CEMP shall be provided to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council for review at least 20 working days prior to the commencement of works to certify compliance and consistency with the conditions. Construction shall not commence until certification is obtained.

Advice note: For clarity the CEMP will be updated and finalised in accordance with the conditions. Any amendments will be limited to reflecting the requirements of the conditions, specifying personnel, and completing the Environmental Risk Register.

Advice Note: Particular care must be taken with development and operation of Construction Yard 7. When the CEMP is being updated and finalised, consideration must be given to the contents of the draft SSCEMP prepared for Construction Yard 7 (Row 41, Schedule A) recognising changes required by inclusion of the ventilation stack in this yard.
12) **CEMP.1A** In the case of the trial embankment, where works will commence well in advance of the main construction works for the Causeway, the NZTA will provide to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council, a site-specific CEMP for review and approval at least 20 working days prior to commencement of the trial embankment works.

13) **CEMP.1B** For the purposes of staging works, as some works may commence well in advance of others, the NZTA may provide staged or site specific CEMPs for those works to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council. The NZTA shall consult with the Team Manager about the need and timing for any other site-specific or staged CEMPs and shall provide any required site-specific or staged CEMPs to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council for review at least 20 working days prior to commencement of such the specific stage (including enabling) or site works.

14) **CEMP.2** The certification process of the CEMP (and its appendices) shall confirm that the CEMP gives effect to the relevant conditions, as well as those matters in CEMP.6, and that it includes details of:
   (a) Staff and contractors’ responsibilities;
   (b) Training requirements for employees, sub-contractors and visitors;
   (c) Environmental incident and emergency management;
   (d) Communication and interface procedures (in accordance with the Communication Plan required under Condition PI.2);
   (e) Environmental complaints management (including the procedures required under Condition PI.4);
   (f) Compliance monitoring;
   (g) Reporting (including detail on the frequency of reporting to the Auckland Council);
   (h) Environmental auditing; and
   (i) Corrective action.

15) **CEMP.3** The management of key environmental effects associated with the construction phase of the Project is detailed within environmental management plans that are included in the CEMP as appendices. This suite of management plans as shown on Figure CEMP.A comprises:
   (a) Construction Noise and Vibration Management Plan (CNVMP);
   (b) Construction Air Quality Management Plan (CAQMP);
   (c) Erosion and Sediment Control Plan (ESCP);
   (d) Temporary Stormwater Management Plan (TSMP);
   (e) Ecological Management Plan (ECOMP);
   (f) Groundwater Management Plan (GWMP);
   (g) Settlement Effects Management Plan (SEMP);
   (h) Contaminated Soils Management Plan (CSMP);
   (i) Hazardous Substances Management Plan (HSMP);
   (j) Archaeological Site Management Plan (ASMP);
   (k) Construction Traffic Management Plan (CTMP);
   (l) Concrete Batching and Crushing Plant Management Plan (CBCPMP);
   (m) Electrical Infrastructure Site Development and Construction Management Plan (EISDCMP) (to be prepared in accordance with Condition CEMP.15);
   (n) Waste Management Plan (to be prepared in accordance with Condition CEMP.10) ; and
(o) Temporary Construction Lighting Management Plan (to be prepared in accordance with Condition L.2).

16) CEMP.6 The finalised CEMP shall include specific details on demolition, construction and management of all works associated with the Project. The certification process of the CEMP shall confirm that the CEMP includes details of the following:

(a) Details of the site or Project manager and the community liaison person, including their contact details (phone, facsimile, postal address, email address);

(b) The location of large notice boards that clearly identify the NZTA and the Project name, together with the name, telephone, email address and address for service of the site or Project manager and the community liaison person;

(c) An outline construction programme of the work indicating in particular likely time periods for road closures and anticipated traffic diversion effects;

(d) The hours of work, which should reflect the need to ensure that residents enjoy reasonable freedom from noisy or intrusive construction activity in their neighbourhood at night, on Sundays and during public holidays;

(e) Measures to be adopted to maintain the land affected by the works in a tidy condition in terms of disposal/ storage of rubbish, storage and unloading of building materials and similar construction activities;

(f) Location of worker’s offices and conveniences (e.g. portaloos);

(g) Procedures of controlling sediment run-off, dust and the removal of soil, debris and demolition and construction materials from public roads or places. Dust mitigation measures should include use of water sprays to control dust nuisance on dry or windy days;

(h) Methods to stabilise ingress and egress points to construction sites, to the standard required by ARC Technical Publication 90 (Nov 2007);

(i) Procedures for ensuring that residents within 100m of construction areas or other people whose use of an area may be disrupted by construction works (for example the Te Atatu Boating Club for works on the Whau River) are given notice of the commencement of construction activities and are informed about the expected duration of the works, including potentially through the community liaison person;

(j) Procedures to be followed to ensure that those working in the vicinity of identified heritage and ecological features are aware of the heritage or ecological values of these features and the steps which need to be taken to meet the conditions applying to work on the site;

(k) Means of ensuring the safety of the general public;

(l) Procedures for the community liaison person to receive and respond to complaints about construction activities, including dust and odour from the works;

(m) Methods of mitigating the local and network wide effects of construction of individual elements of the Project, including measures to ensure that parking of staff vehicles on surrounding streets is restricted;

(n) All temporary boundary/ security fences shall be maintained in good order, with any graffiti removed as soon as possible;

(o) Confirmation of a Project Arborist and completion of a STEM assessment of the preliminary list of Amenity Trees in Schedule E.7 of the AEE to confirm the final Amenity Trees; and

(p) The process to minimise removal of Amenity Trees, maximise the protection of those retained, undertake relocation of Amenity Trees and replacement planting of specimen
17) CEMP.10 The NZTA shall finalise and implement the Hazardous Substances Management Plan (HSMP), through the CEMP (as per Condition CEMP.1), submitted with this application, prior to works commencing on site. The certification process of the CEMP shall confirm that the HSMP clearly identifies the requirements for proper storage, handling, transport and disposal of hazardous substances during the construction phase of the Project and confirm that there shall be no storage of explosives on the Project site.

18) CEMP.11 The NZTA shall develop and implement a Waste Management Plan in accordance with the waste management principles, controls and methods set out in the CEMP. The Plan shall be provided to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council and be implemented throughout the entire construction period.

19) CEMP.15 The NZTA will be responsible for all service relocations required for construction of the Project. The NZTA shall liaise with the providers of infrastructure service networks (including, but not limited to water, gas, stormwater, wastewater, power and telecommunications), and private property owners with on-site services to develop methodologies and timing for necessary services relocation required for the Project, with the objective of minimising disruption to the operation of these service networks and on-site services.

Advice note:
(a) It is noted that if separate consents are required for relocations for any services of network utility operators or landowners, such consents will be obtained before construction commences in the relevant area, and any effects of those relocations would be considered at that time. The same applies to any alteration of consents if required.

(b) Network infrastructure owned and operated by Watercare Services is located within the designations. An operating agreement will be developed by the NZTA and Watercare Services which will include appropriate notification and access protocols where works are to be undertaken by either network operator on or adjacent to Watercare Services infrastructure within the designations.

20) PI.1 A community liaison person shall be appointed by the NZTA for the duration of the construction phase of the Project to be the main and readily accessible point of contact for persons affected by the Project. The liaison person’s name and contact details shall be made available in the CEMP and on site signage by the NZTA. This person must be reasonably available for on-going consultation on all matters of concern to affected parties arising from the Project.

21) PI.2 The NZTA shall prepare and implement a Communications Plan that sets out procedures detailing how the public, Ministry of Social Development, Housing New Zealand Corporation and other organisations representing the particular demographic characteristics of the community (including but not limited to Primary Health Organisations, general practitioners, youth, education organisations, aged care groups and groups representing ethnic and migrant communities) will be communicated with throughout the construction and monitoring periods (as prescribed in the designation and consent conditions).

In preparing the Communications Plan, the NZTA will liaise with Auckland Council to access its community liaison databases. The Communications Plan will include details of:
(a) The site or Project manager and the community liaison person, including their contact...
In accordance with these Conditions, the database of the key construction activities and monitoring requirements that are the subject of the Communications Plan;

The database of stakeholders and residents who will be communicated with;

Communication methods, an assessment of how these methods reach the different audience/stakeholder groups (including those methods set out in Condition CEMP.6), and detail on when each of these methods will be used (e.g. regular communication or event specific methods);

The appointed specialist in Environmental and Occupational Medicine, including contact details (as per Condition SO.13);

Any stakeholder specific communication plans required; and

Monitoring and review procedures for the Communications Plan.

The Communications Plan shall be written in accordance with the external communication procedures set out in the CEMP and provided at least 20 working days prior to construction commencing, to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council, Working Liaison Group and the Community Liaison Group(s) established by Condition PI.5. The structure of the communication groups set out in these conditions is attached as Figure PI.A.

The NZTA shall establish Community Liaison Group(s) at least two months prior to construction commencing in each of the following key construction areas:

(a) Te Atatu (including the SH16 Causeway)
(b) Waterview (including works to St Lukes on SH16 and on the Waterview Estuary and Causeway Bridges)
(c) Owairaka

and hold regular meetings (at least three monthly) throughout the construction period and up to 24 months following construction completion relevant to these areas (or less if the members of the Group agree), so that on-going monitoring information can continue to be disseminated.

The Community Liaison Group(s) shall be open to all interested parties within the Project area including, but not limited to the following groups:

(a) Auckland Council and Auckland Transport;
(b) Educational facilities within the Project area (including schools, kindergartens, childcare facilities and Unitec Institute of Technology);
(c) Relevant community/ environmental groups (including but not limited to Friends of Oakley Creek, Star Mills Preservation Group, Cycle Action Auckland and representatives from those organisations identified in the Communications Plan (as required by Condition PI.2) and local residents;
(d) Department of Conservation;
(e) Local Boards;
(f) Iwi groups with Mana Whenua;
(g) Public transport providers; and
(h) Housing New Zealand Corporation.

Advice note: The purpose of the Community Liaison Group(s) is to provide a regular forum through which information about the Project can be provided to the community, and an opportunity for concerns or issues to be raised.
23) CNV.1 The NZTA shall finalise and implement through the CEMP, a Construction Noise and Vibration Management Plan (CNVMP) throughout the entire construction period of the Project.

The CNVMP shall describe the measures adopted to meet:

(a) the noise criteria set out in Conditions CNV.2 and 3 below;
(b) the vibration criteria set out in Condition CNV.4 below; or
(c) where (a) or (b) cannot be met, the process that will be followed to appropriately mitigate noise and vibration effects including methods that may be applied outside the designation.

The CNVMP shall be provided to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council at least 20 working days prior to construction activities being undertaken for review and certification that the CNVMP, as a minimum, addresses the following:

(i) Construction noise and vibration criteria (Conditions CNV.2, CNV.3, and CNV.4);
(ii) Hours of operation, including times and days when noisy and/or vibration inducing construction activities would occur;
(iii) Machinery and equipment to be used;
(iv) Vibration testing of equipment to confirm safe distances to buildings prior to construction;
(v) Preparation of building condition surveys of critical dwellings prior to, during and after completion of construction works;
(vi) Roles and responsibilities of personnel on site;
(vii) Construction operator training procedures;
(viii) Methods for monitoring and reporting on construction noise and vibration;
(ix) A hierarchy of mitigation options that will be assessed for the Project noise mitigation, including alternative strategies where full compliance with the relevant noise and/or vibration criteria cannot be achieved;
(x) Management schedules containing site specific information;
(xi) Measures for liaising with and notifying potentially affected receivers of proposed construction activities and the potential for noise and vibration effects, specifically:
   - PPFs located within a horizontal distance of 35 metres of underground excavation works, along the tunnel alignment shall receive prior notification not greater than 7 days (and not less than 24 hours) prior to the commencement of works.
   - Methods for ensuring residents affected by night works (within 100m of the construction site night works, as defined on the maps (refer Schedule A, Row 35) are notified of such works (i.e. any works during the hours of 20:00 to 06:30) at least 5 days prior to the commencement of any such work.
   - The maps showing PPFs to be notified of night works (refer Schedule A, Row 35, shall be reviewed and included within the CNVMP.
(xii) Methods for receiving and handling complaints about construction noise and vibration;
(xiii) Measures for preventing the occurrence of rogue fly rock, including management of charge weights and face loading procedures, stemming of charge holes and profiling of the face to maintain minimum burden (face cover);
(xiv) Investigations on the practicability of implementing permanent noise mitigation
(xv) Investigations of the practicability of implementing Building Modification mitigation, as required in accordance with Conditions ON.6 and ON.11, prior to commencement of construction within 100m of the relevant PPFs (including those on the Unitec site); and

(xvi) The process for developing Site Specific Noise Management Plans (SSNMP), in accordance with the SSNMP Flow Chart (refer Schedule A, Row 36), including templates and a certification process for the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council (in accordance with Condition CNV.13) to confirm the process of SSNMP review of noise mitigation options where the modelled/predicted levels or subsequent actual levels exceed the criteria in Conditions CNV.2 and/or CNV.4.

24) V.11 Prior to commencement of works adjacent to Traherne Island, the NZTA shall employ a suitably qualified and experienced plant translocation expert to uplift and protect all areas of *Mimulus repens* on Traherne Island that will be affected by the work. The *Mimulus repens* shall be relocated to suitable and safe habitat away from the works area, or otherwise held and protected for the duration of the works in the vicinity of their original location and be replanted back at that location (or in close proximity to it) upon completion of the works. The location of the recipient sites will be determined in consultation with the Department of Conservation and in general accordance with the Traherne Island Natural Heritage Restoration Plan (2009 – 2014). Trials shall be undertaken to identify appropriate recipient sites, with these trial sites being monitored for a period of no less than 5 years, or until their failure. Where possible, recipient sites shall be located in currently weed-free areas. Where recipient sites may potentially be affected by weeds, they shall be subject to an on-going weed management plan. Should translocation attempts fail at all trial sites then the NZTA, in consultation with DOC, shall determine an alternative appropriate form of mitigation.

25) V.17 Prior to commencement of works adjacent to or on Traherne Island, the NZTA shall employ a suitably qualified and experienced ecologist for the preparation of a Traherne Island Weed and Pest Management Plan. The Plan shall be prepared in consultation with the Department of Conservation and be submitted to the Auckland Council for approval at least 20 working days prior to construction commencing.

26) A.1 The NZTA shall finalise, and implement through the CEMP, ECOMP submitted with this application to include the matters set out in Conditions A.2 to A.6.

27) SW.2 The NZTA shall inform the Auckland Council in writing at least 10 working days prior to the start date of the works authorised by this consent.

28) SW.3 The NZTA shall submit the final design of the construction stormwater system for approval to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council at least 20 working days prior to the commencement of construction works. This certification shall confirm the final design meets Condition SW.1, including:

(a) Design calculations for the following:
   
   (i) flow attenuation devices,

   (ii) stormwater treatment device sizing,

   (iii) bypass device design,

   (iv) stormwater treatment device efficiency;

(b) Design drawings, including all structures, outfalls, treatment devices, bypass devices, wetlands and ponds, swales and overland flow paths;

(c) Catchment plans detailing the area draining to each device; and
29) SW.4 Any subsequent amendments to the final designs required by Condition SW.3 shall be submitted for approval in writing by the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council at least 20 working days prior to implementation.

30) SW.5 The NZTA shall arrange and conduct pre-construction site meetings between the Auckland Council and all relevant parties, including the site stormwater engineer, with regard to each component of the temporary stormwater management works. The Council shall be provided with 5 working days written notice of the date and time of each pre-construction site meeting, prior to construction of these works. Any resulting amendments to the design of the works may be reviewed at that time and shall be approved in accordance with Condition SW.3.

31) SW.6 The NZTA shall finalise and implement the Temporary Stormwater Management Plan (TSMP) submitted with this application, as part of the CEMP. The purpose of the TSMP is to ensure appropriate controls are in place to manage stormwater during construction.

32) C.1 The NZTA shall provide to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council plans and drawings (including dimensioned, cross sections, elevations and site plans of all areas of proposed reclamation (including associated permanent and temporary CMA occupation), permanent structures and temporary structures) at least 20 working days before the proposed date of commencement of the construction of the reclamation, bridge piers or temporary structure.

33) M.1 The NZTA shall finalise and implement through the CEMP, the ECOMP submitted with this application. The ECOMP shall be revised to accurately reflect the conditions of this consent and changes to the details of construction processes prior to construction commencing. The ECOMP shall include, but not be limited to, details of:
   (a) Monitoring of marine habitats and ecological values;
   (b) Trigger event criteria for undertaking additional monitoring;
   (c) Procedures for responding to accidental discharges to the marine environment;
   (d) Complaints investigation, monitoring and reporting; and
   (e) The identification of staff and contractors’ responsibilities.

CONSTRUCTION CONDITIONS

34) CEMP.4 The CEMP shall be implemented and maintained throughout the entire construction period.

35) CEMP.5 A copy of the CEMP shall be held on each construction site at all times and be available for inspection on request by the Auckland Council.

36) CEMP.8 All storage of material and equipment associated with the construction works shall take place within the boundaries of the designation.

37) CEMP.12 The CEMP shall be reviewed by the NZTA at least annually or as a result of a material change to the Project. The review shall take into consideration:
   (a) Compliance with designation and consent conditions;
   (b) Any changes to construction methods;
   (c) Key changes to roles and responsibilities within the Project;
   (d) Changes in industry best practice standards;
   (e) Changes in legal or other requirements;
   (f) Results of inspections, monitoring, incidents, corrective actions, internal or external
(g) Public complaints.

A summary of the review process undertaken shall be kept by the NZTA, provided annually to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council and made available (with any related data) to the Auckland Council upon request.

38) CEMP.13 Following the review process (as described in Condition CEMP.12), the CEMP may require updating. Any material change proposed to the CEMP (including appended Management Plans) shall be submitted for approval to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council at least 10 working days prior to the proposed changes taking effect.

Advice Note: Material change will include amendment to any base information informing the CEMP or any process, procedure or method of the CEMP (such as the environmental constraints map, compliance monitoring process, complaints procedure or mitigation / remedial methods identified) which has the potential to increase adverse effects on a particular value. For clarity changes to personnel and contact schedules do not constitute a material change.

39) PI.3 At least 15 working days prior to the commencement of construction, and at 15 working day intervals thereafter, or as required depending on the scale of works and effects on the community, advertisements will be placed in the relevant local newspapers and community noticeboards (as identified in Condition CEMP.6 (b)) detailing the nature of the forthcoming works, the location of the forthcoming works and hours of operation. All advertisements will include reference to a 24 hour toll free complaints telephone number. Where relevant, advertisements will also include but not be limited to details of:

(a) Any traffic disruptions or controls or changes to property access, pedestrian/ cycle routes and bus stops; and

(b) Any other construction activities, including night time works, blasting, and structure-borne noise, as identified in the conditions.

40) PI.4 The NZTA shall manage, investigate and resolve (as appropriate) all complaints for the duration of the construction works in accordance with the environmental complaints section of the CEMP. The implementation strategy for complaints includes:

(a) A 24 hour toll free telephone number and email address, which shall be provided to all potentially affected residents and businesses. The number shall be available and answered at all times during the entire duration of the works for the receipt and management of any complaints. A sign containing the contact details shall be located at each site specific work activity;

(b) The NZTA shall maintain a record of all complaints made to this number, email or any site office, including the full details of the complainant and the nature of the complaint;

(c) Upon receiving a complaint, within 10 days of complaint receipt, a formal written response will be provided to the complainant and Auckland Council;

(d) The NZTA shall undertake corrective action where necessary to resolve any problem identified. All action taken and relevant information shall be documented. For the avoidance of doubt, ‘where necessary’ refers to where the works are not being carried out in accordance with conditions of this designation;

(e) Where issues and complaints about effects cannot be resolved through the CEMP complaints management process, a meeting shall be held between the NZTA, the complainant and the Auckland Council representative(s) to discuss the complaint and ways in which the issue may be resolved. If parties cannot agree on a resolution, an independent qualified mediator will be appointed, agreeable to all parties and at the shared cost of all parties, to undertake mediation of the dispute or concerns; and
(f) All information collected in Conditions PI.4 (b), (c) and (d) shall be detailed in a Construction Compliance Report (including the means by which the complaint was addressed, whether resolution was reached and how the response was carried out) prepared by the NZTA. This Report shall be submitted to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council on a quarterly basis commencing at the beginning of the works and for the entire duration of construction.

41) PI.6 The Community Liaison Group(s) shall be provided opportunities to review and comment on the following (amongst other things):

(a) The Outline Plan of Works detailing designs for the northern and southern ventilation buildings and stacks (the outcomes of this consultation will be reported in accordance with the processes required in DC.8(n) and DC.9(k);

(b) The Open Space Restoration Plans (as required by Condition OS.3);

(c) Finalisation and amendment to Urban Design and Landscape Plans (UDL Plans) (as required by Condition LV.1);

(d) The Oakley Inlet Heritage Plan (as required by Conditions OS.5(b)(i) and ARCH.6);

(e) The detail of the Oakley Creek restoration (as required by Condition STW.20);

(f) Publicly available results of environmental monitoring as required by the designation and/or these Consents (e.g. air quality monitoring); and

(g) The finalisation of the STEM assessment required by CEMP.6(o) and a schedule of trees that are required to be removed for consideration of timber use in heritage projects as required by Condition SO.7.

Advice Note: Attention is drawn to the Vegetation conditions concerning identification and protection of Significant Vegetation and Valued Vegetation.

(h) Detailed design features of the Te Atatu underpass (e.g. lighting and architectural treatment).
42) **CNV.2**  
Except where certified by the Council through the SSNMP (in accordance with Condition CNV.13), construction noise (excluding noise from blasting Monday to Saturday inclusive) shall be measured and assessed in accordance with NZS 6803:1999 “Acoustics - Construction Noise” and shall comply with the following criteria:

Note: In Condition CNV.2 (T) means a duration between 15 minutes and 60 minutes, in accordance with NZS6803:1999.

(a) **Project Construction Noise Criteria: Residential Receivers**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Time of week</th>
<th>Time period</th>
<th>Project Construction Noise Criteria (Long Term Construction) dB</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Sectors 1 to 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>$L_{Aeq(T)}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Monday - Saturday</td>
<td>0630-0730</td>
<td>60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>0730-1800</td>
<td>70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1800-2000</td>
<td>65</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2000-0630</td>
<td>60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sundays and Public Holidays</td>
<td>0630-0730</td>
<td>45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>0730-1800</td>
<td>60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1800-2000</td>
<td>45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2000-0630</td>
<td>45</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(b) **Project Construction Noise Criteria: Commercial and Industrial Receivers**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Time period</th>
<th>Project Construction Noise Criteria (Long Term Construction) dB</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>$L_{Aeq(T)}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0730-1800</td>
<td>70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1800-0730</td>
<td>75</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(c) **Project Construction Noise Criteria: Internal Structure-borne Noise from tunnelling for Residential Receivers**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Time period</th>
<th>Project Construction Noise Criteria Inside</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0600-2200</td>
<td>35 dB $L_{Aeq(T)}$                                           All habitable rooms</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2200-0600</td>
<td>30 dB $L_{Aeq(T)}$                                           Bedrooms</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
(d) Project Construction Noise Criteria: Internal noise for Licensed Educational Facilities

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Time period (School Days)</th>
<th>Project Construction Noise Criteria Inside</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Teaching Hours</td>
<td>45 dB $L_{AEq(T)}$ or existing, whichever is the higher Classrooms, library, offices, teaching, laboratories, manual arts, workshops</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Teaching Hours</td>
<td>40 dB $L_{AEq (T)}$ or existing, whichever is the higher School hall, lecture theatres</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note: In Condition CNV2(d) “Teaching hours” means:
- Primary schools and Kindergartens: 9am to 3pm
- Unitec: 8am to 9pm

43) CNV.7 Where practicable, permanent (traffic) noise barriers, required in any Sector as Detailed Mitigation Options for operational noise following completion of the Project (in accordance with Conditions ON.3 to ON.5) shall be erected prior to noise generating construction works commencing. Where this is not practicable, temporary noise mitigation measures shall be implemented in accordance with the CNVMP, prior to noise generating construction works commencing.

44) CNV.8 Pile driving or pile removal shall not be undertaken at night (i.e. during the hours of 20:00 – 06:30).

45) CNV.9 The concrete batch plants, rock crushing plants and the loading bays and conveyors for such plants shall be fully enclosed.

46) CNV.13 SSNMPs (required by Condition CNV.1(xvi)) above, shall be submitted to Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council for review and certification at least 7 working days prior to the proposed works commencing. A decision will be provided by the Council within 5 working days of receipt of the SSNMP. Works will not commence until certification is received from the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council. The Council may, at its discretion, waive the requirement for SSNMPs to be submitted to the Council where an SSNMP is required.

If monitoring shows that levels specified in a SSNMP are being exceeded, work generating the exceedance will stop and not recommence until further mitigation is implemented in accordance with an amended SSNMP certified by Council.

Advice note: It is accepted that the criteria of CNV.2 and CNV.4 may not be met at all times, but that the NZTA will take all practical steps to achieve compliance, taking into account the hierarchy of mitigation options outlined in Condition CNV.1 (ix).

47) A.2 The NZTA shall provide temporary high tide roosting structure(s) adjacent to the Causeway during construction, in accordance with the ECOMP, to the satisfaction of the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council. The temporary bird roosts shall be sized in accordance with the ECOMP, and located within the Waterview Estuary adjacent to the southern side of the causeway and in the vicinity of the existing Causeway bridge.

48) A.5 Vegetation clearance at Traherne Island shall occur outside the bird breeding season of September to December. Elsewhere, vegetation clearance shall occur outside the bird breeding season of September to December where practicable.
Stormwater management during construction shall be undertaken in accordance with the plans and information submitted with this application and the information contained within Technical Report G.15 Assessment of Stormwater and Streamworks Effects. In particular this requires the construction and completion of stormwater management works to the treatment standards detailed in Tables 1 and 2 below:

Table 1: Motorway catchment areas and treatment standards for Construction Phase of the Waterview Connection Project.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sector</th>
<th>Existing Impervious</th>
<th>Additional Impervious</th>
<th>Total</th>
<th>Treatment</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Area (ha)</td>
<td>Percentage proposed treatment (%)</td>
<td>Area (ha)</td>
<td>Percentage proposed treatment (%)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>8.05</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>3.67</td>
<td>11.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>1.45</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0.72</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>3.88</td>
<td>13.6</td>
<td>1.47</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>8.37</td>
<td>18 − 70*4</td>
<td>3.40</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>6.62</td>
<td>30.3</td>
<td>3.43</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>4.08</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1.07</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>na</td>
<td>na</td>
<td>na</td>
<td>na</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>na</td>
<td>na</td>
<td>na</td>
<td>na</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>1.04</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>8.49</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total</td>
<td>33.49</td>
<td>22.25</td>
<td>55.74</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*1 TSS removal is on a long term average basis.

*2 Attenuation of the peak post-development runoff to the peak pre-development runoff for the 2, 10 and 20 year ARI rainfall events

*3 Extended detention of the 34.5mm rainfall event for 24 hours in accordance with ARC TP10 (2003) guidelines.

*4 Range depends on construction stage refer to Technical Report G.15 for details.
Table 2: Construction Yard Catchment Areas for Water Quality Treatment during Construction Phase of the Waterview Connection Project

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sector</th>
<th>Construction Yards</th>
<th>New Impervious Construction Working Catchments</th>
<th>Treatment</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Area (ha)</td>
<td>Percentage proposed treatment (%)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>4.20</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>na</td>
<td>na</td>
<td>75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>0.37</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>na</td>
<td>na</td>
<td>75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>3 &amp; 4</td>
<td>7.78</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>1.22</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>6 &amp; 7</td>
<td>1.90</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>na</td>
<td>na</td>
<td>Na</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>8, 9, 10, 11, 12</td>
<td>4.99</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Total</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>20.46</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*1 TSS removal is on a long term average basis.

*2 Attenuation of the peak post-development runoff to the peak pre-development runoff for the 2, 10 and 20 year ARI rainfall events.

*3 Extended detention of the 34.5mm rainfall event for 24 hours in accordance with ARC TP10 (2003) guidelines.

*4 Extended detention is to be provided for stormwater devices discharging to Oakley Creek (upstream of Great North Road), but is not required for stormwater devices discharging to Oakley Inlet (downstream of Great North Road).

50) SW.7 The NZTA shall undertake regular inspections of all stormwater treatment devices installed during construction to ensure they are operating in accordance with the consent conditions and TSMP. All records of these inspections shall be submitted to the Council on a monthly basis.

51) C.2 Construction shall be undertaken in accordance with the construction methodology detailed in the application, specifically Technical Report G.23 Coastal Works and Technical Report G.22 Erosion and Sediment Control Plan. The construction methodology shall include:

(a) The use of temporary coffer dams to create dry working areas;

(b) Realignment of sections of existing low-tide channels in Oakley inlet and Waterview Estuary that will be directly affected by the reclamation works;

(c) Removal of mangroves to provide construction and ground-treatment access,
placement of temporary coffer dams and to facilitate natural channel migration in the Whau River side drainage channel (east of Rosebank Domain);

(d) Installation or removal works to be undertaken at the best practicable time to minimise potential sediment disturbance.

52) C.3 The NZTA shall notify the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council in writing of the proposed commencement date of the reclamation, structures and/or channel realignment works at least 10 working days prior to the proposed start date.

53) C.6 The NZTA shall maintain the site in good order and shall remedy all damage and disturbance caused by vehicle traffic, plant and equipment to the foreshore during construction, to the satisfaction of the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council.

54) C.7 Removal or pruning of vegetation in the CMA shall be limited to the areas of permanent and temporary occupation as shown on the Waterview Connection Project Assessment of Environmental Effects Plan Set F.12 and F.13 submitted with the application (ref Schedule A, rows 13 and 14). Removal of mangroves shall be implemented in accordance with the principles detailed in the Ecological Management Plan.

55) M.10 The NZTA shall maintain the coastal marine area free of any gross litter, rubbish and debris during construction.

56) M.11 Prior to excavation of sediment from the marine habitat remediation zone (MHRZ), mangrove vegetation will be removed from the sediment and disposed of at an appropriate offsite facility. The excavated sediment shall be stockpiled within an adjacent dry working area. When the sediment is returned to the MHRZ it will be levelled out to tie in with the existing mudflat. Where a routine marine benthic habitat monitoring site is within an area of MHRZ, additional monitoring of the depth of sediment overlying the improved ground/mudcrete will also be undertaken.

57) M.12 The NZTA shall minimise the extent of the Causeway footprint to the greatest extent possible.

POST-CONSTRUCTION CONDITIONS

58) SW.8 The NZTA shall arrange and conduct a post construction site meeting within 30 days of completion of installation of the stormwater management works between Auckland Council and all relevant parties, including the site stormwater engineer.

59) C.4 The NZTA shall notify the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council in writing within 10 working days of the completion of each discrete area of reclamation, structures and/or channel realignment works.

60) C.5 The NZTA shall supply to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council and LINZ Hydrographic Services and LINZ Topographic Services Land Information New Zealand, PO Box 5501, Wellington 6145), a complete set of "as built" plans, final topographic and bathymetric data, and appropriate certification confirming that the new reclamations, structures and channel realignment works have been built in accordance with sound engineering practice, within three months of the completion of the reclamation works.

61) C.8 The NZTA shall ensure the removal of all equipment, erosion and sediment control measures, surplus sediment and construction materials from the CMA within 20 working days following the completion of the construction works, to the satisfaction of the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council.
62) A.3 The NZTA shall employ a suitably qualified ecologist to undertake monitoring of the roosting areas located at:

(a) The existing high tide roost in Harbourview-Orangihina Park; and

(b) The temporary construction roosting structure(s) pursuant to Condition A.2.

Monitoring shall be undertaken on a monthly basis, with a monitoring report prepared on a quarterly basis. The monitoring report shall be made available to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council and Department of Conservation upon request.

63) A.4 Should the monitoring results indicate that the roosting sites have been abandoned, consultation shall be undertaken with the Department of Conservation and the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council to determine the need for and type of further management strategies (if any) required.

64) C.12 On completion of the relevant stage of reclamation, the NZTA shall ensure that stockpiled chenier shell deposits from the northern side of the existing Causeway are reinstated to suitable locations along the northern side of the newly reclaimed Causeway in consultation with the Department of Conservation and the Auckland Council. The placement of the shell bank material shall be to the satisfaction of the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council. The movement of these reinstated shell deposits shall be monitored quarterly for the first year after placement to confirm they have been reworked by waves to form a contiguous shell bank by undertaking topographic survey transects at low tide and photographs to document the transition. The monitoring information shall be provided to the Auckland Council within 20 working days of completion of each phase of monitoring.

65) C.16 On the northern side of the Causeway, from just before the commencement of construction in the CMA for each section of works, until 6 months after completion of each section, the NZTA shall undertake every two (2) months or after a severe wave-storm, intertidal beach profile surveys down to the spring low-tide mark along offshore-directed transects (one off the centre of the construction section and one either side at 20 m away from the ends of the construction site) and photographs documenting the physical state of the seabed around the perimeter of the cofferdam. The monitoring information shall be made available to the Auckland Council. If the monitoring identifies that excessive erosion or accretion has occurred from corner or end effects of the construction section, as confirmed by a coastal processes expert, further seabed erosion control measures or a sediment by-passing method (for accretion) to reduce localised effects seaward of the temporary occupation or permanent occupation designation (whichever applies) shall be implemented as soon as practicable. Details of the proposed measures or methods shall be made available to Auckland Council prior to implementation.

66) M.2 The NZTA shall engage a suitably qualified ecologist to undertake a marine habitat monitoring programme, as described in Conditions M.3 to M.6.

67) M.3 The marine benthic habitat monitoring programme shall be undertaken every 6 months:

(a) At least 12 months prior to construction commencing, to allow for two baseline surveys to be undertaken;

(b) During construction; and

(c) For a maximum of 3 years following completion of the Project, or for a lesser time if the monitoring indicates no significant effects, as agreed with the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council.

68) M.4 The marine benthic habitat monitoring programme shall be undertaken in accordance with
the details set out in the ECOMP and include:

(a) Sampling of the marine invertebrate community composition (collection of sediment cores to a depth of approximately 15cm);
(b) Sampling of the sediment surface (top 2cm) for sediment grain size; and
(c) Sampling of the sediment surface (top 2cm) for sediment quality (analysis of the concentration of copper, lead, zinc and polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons).

69) M.5 The marine benthic habitat monitoring shall be undertaken within sampling grids (50m x 30m) broadly established at the following locations:

(a) Two locations within Oakley Inlet;
(b) Four locations within Waterview Estuary; and
(c) Four locations north of the Causeway.

Specific locations and experimental design shall be detailed in the ECOMP, and the design of the monitoring programme will be based on the *Estuarine Environmental Assessment and Monitoring: A National Protocol* (Cawthron 2002).

70) M.6 The NZTA shall undertake additional marine habitat monitoring in the event of a ‘trigger event’ for marine ecology habitats. For the purposes of this consent, a ‘trigger event’ for marine ecology habitats is defined in the ECOMP.

71) M.7 The NZTA shall review the marine habitat monitoring results (pursuant to Conditions M.3 to M.6) and in the event that potential adverse effects are identified, the NZTA shall develop and implement appropriate contingency plans and/or remedial measures.

**REPORTING**

72) M.8 The marine benthic habitat monitoring results shall be compiled by the NZTA, and a report provided to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council every 6 months.
This document has been prepared in compliance with conditions of the "Final Report and Decision of the Board of Inquiry into the New Zealand Transport Agency Waterview Connection Proposal, Volume 2, Conditions of Consent". Schedule B of Volume 2 identifies the Conditions relevant to this Consent by the code and number as referenced throughout this document. In the event of dispute, Schedule B of Volume 2 shall take precedence over this Consent.

Type: Coastal Consent

Description: Occupation of CMA (Sectors 1 and 2):

Occupation of the CMA for construction works in, on and over the seabed and foreshore for Project works including piles and piers construction, reclamation construction and ancillary works in CPA2.

Duration: 10 years

Code:

RC = Standard Resource Consent Conditions
CEMP = Construction Environment Management Plan Conditions
PI = Public Information Conditions
CNV = Noise and Vibration Conditions – Construction
V = Vegetation Conditions
SW = Stormwater Conditions
C = Coastal Conditions
M = Marine Ecology Conditions

GENERAL CONDITIONS

1) RC.1 Except as modified by the conditions below, the works shall be undertaken in general accordance with the information provided by the New Zealand Transport Agency (NZTA), in the resource consent applications and the supporting documents (as detailed in Condition DC.1), and in the supplementary information provided in evidence by the NZTA.

2) RC.1A The NZTA shall implement the conditions of these consents in accordance with Schedule B, which sets out the Conditions that are to be applied to each consent including the duration of each consent.

3) RC.2 The Conditions of these consents may be reviewed by the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council, pursuant to Section 128 of the Resource Management Act 1991 (the Act), by the giving of notice pursuant to Section 129 of the Act, on the one year anniversary of the commencement of the consents and every year thereafter in order:

(a) To deal with any adverse effect on the environment which may arise from the exercise of the consent and which it is appropriate to deal with at a later stage; or

(b) To deal with any other adverse effect on the environment on which the exercise of the consent may have an influence.
4) RC.4 Any Management Plans submitted to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council for approval or certification may be submitted in stages to reflect any proposed staging of the physical works. Plans submitted shall clearly show the integration with adjacent stages and interrelated activities.

5) RC.5 In the event of any dispute, disagreement or inaction arising as to any Auckland Council Manager certification/approvals required by the consent conditions, or as to the implementation of or monitoring required by the conditions, matters shall be referred in the first instance to the NZTA Regional State Highway Manager and to the Resource Consents Manager, Auckland Council to determine a process of resolution.

If a resolution cannot be agreed, then the matter may be referred to an independent appropriately qualified expert, agreeable to both parties, setting out the details of the matter to be referred for determination and the reasons the parties do not agree.

The independent appropriately qualified expert shall be appointed within 10 working days of the NZTA or Auckland Council giving notice of their intention to seek expert determination. The expert shall, as soon as possible, issue his or her decision on the matter. In making the decision, the expert shall be entitled to seek further information and hear from the parties as he or she sees fit.

Advice note: The dispute resolution process provided for in this condition does not prejudice any party’s right to take enforcement action in relation to the implementation of the designation conditions. However, the dispute resolution process will be applied before any formal enforcement action is taken by the Council except in urgent situations.

6) RC.6 Pursuant to Section 36(1)(d) of the RMA, the requiring authority is required to pay to Auckland Council any administrative charge for the carrying out by the local authority of its functions in relation to the administration, monitoring, and supervision of designation conditions.

7) RC.7 The servants of agents of Auckland Council shall be permitted to have access to relevant parts of the Project at all reasonable times for the purpose of carrying out inspections, investigations, tests, measurements and/or to take samples.

PRE-CONSTRUCTION CONDITIONS

8) RC.3 Within 3 months of the resource consents commencing for the Project (or at least 1 month prior to any Auckland Council approvals or certifications required by these Conditions, whichever is the earlier), the NZTA shall update and finalise to the satisfaction of the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council all drawings and Plans cited in Schedule A, together with a full set of the information and documentation referred to in Condition DC.1 and provide these to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council. At the same time the NZTA shall prepare to the satisfaction of Auckland Council, a document for each resource consent which sets out the resource consent and have attached to it in text format a comprehensive set of the conditions imposed by the Board of Inquiry in its Final Decision as summarised in Schedule B, inclusive of any standard conditions and advice notes.

In particular (but not limited to), the following Plans will need to be amended in light of the Final Conditions:

(a) F.2 Operational Scheme Plans (refer Schedule A, Row 3) require amendment detailing the amended location of the ventilation stacks and southern ventilation buildings;

(b) F.5 Construction Scheme Plans (refer Schedule A, Row 4) require amendment to detail changes to construction footprint for the amended location of ventilation stacks
(c) F.6 Construction Yard Plans 101 and 107 (refer Schedule A, Row 7), detailing amendments to the Construction Yard 1 in light of the reconfiguration of this Yard and for Construction Yard 7 in light of the relocation of the northern ventilation stack (refer Schedule A, Row 34);

(d) F.8 Plans of Structures and Architectural Features (refer Schedule A, Row 9), detailing the amended location of the Northern Ventilation Stack and the design and location of the Southern Ventilation Building and Stack;

(e) The CNVMP (including flow diagram and the supplementary evidence produced by Ms Wilkening) (refer Schedule A, Rows 36, 37 and 39);

(f) Update to the areas of the Open Space Restoration Plans (Schedule A, Row 30) to:
   (i) Extend these areas in geographic extent to provide for the works identified in the Management Plan notations identified in the OS Conditions (in particular OS.5 and OS.6). (e.g. these areas will (as relevant) include Eric Armishaw Park, Howlett Reserve and Waterview Esplanade Reserve); and
   (ii) Exclude the operational area of designation required for the northern ventilation stack (as identified through the OPW process (refer Condition DC.8); and

(g) Schedule A, Row 28 the Plan detailing proposed open space impacts and replacements needs to be updated to recolour the two land parcels on Hendon Avenue (which are excluded from the replacement calculations) to ‘brown’ to confirm they are part of the operational impact and will not be returned as open space.

9) CEMP.1 Except where provided for in Condition CEMP.1A below, the NZTA shall update and finalise the draft Construction Environmental Management Plan (CEMP) including all the Management Plans which form part of the CEMP and are included as appendices, submitted with this application to ensure compliance with the consent and designation conditions imposed by the Board of Inquiry. The CEMP shall be provided to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council for review at least 20 working days prior to the commencement of works to certify compliance and consistency with the conditions. Construction shall not commence until certification is obtained.

Advice note: For clarity the CEMP will be updated and finalised in accordance with the conditions. Any amendments will be limited to reflecting the requirements of the conditions, specifying personnel, and completing the Environmental Risk Register.

Advice Note: Particular care must be taken with development and operation of Construction Yard 7. When the CEMP is being updated and finalised, consideration must be given to the contents of the draft SSCEMP prepared for Construction Yard 7 (Row 41, Schedule A) recognising changes required by inclusion of the ventilation stack in this yard.

10) CEMP.1B For the purposes of staging works, as some works may commence well in advance of others, the NZTA may provide staged or site specific CEMPs for those works to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council. The NZTA shall consult with the Team Manager about the need and timing for any other site-specific or staged CEMPs and shall provide any required site-specific or staged CEMPs to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council for review at least 20 working days prior to commencement of such the specific stage (including enabling) or site works.

11) CEMP.2 The certification process of the CEMP (and its appendices) shall confirm that the CEMP gives effect to the relevant conditions, as well as those matters in CEMP.6, and that it includes details of:
   (a) Staff and contractors’ responsibilities;
   (b) Training requirements for employees, sub-contractors and visitors;
(c) Environmental incident and emergency management;
(d) Communication and interface procedures (in accordance with the Communication Plan required under Condition PI.2);
(e) Environmental complaints management (including the procedures required under Condition PI.4);
(f) Compliance monitoring;
(g) Reporting (including detail on the frequency of reporting to the Auckland Council);
(h) Environmental auditing; and
(i) Corrective action.

12) CEMP.3 The management of key environmental effects associated with the construction phase of the Project is detailed within environmental management plans that are included in the CEMP as appendices. This suite of management plans as shown on Figure CEMP.A comprises:

(a) Construction Noise and Vibration Management Plan (CNVMP);
(b) Construction Air Quality Management Plan (CAQMP);
(c) Erosion and Sediment Control Plan (ESCP);
(d) Temporary Stormwater Management Plan (TSMP);
(e) Ecological Management Plan (ECOMP);
(f) Groundwater Management Plan (GWMP);
(g) Settlement Effects Management Plan (SEMP);
(h) Contaminated Soils Management Plan (CSMP);
(i) Hazardous Substances Management Plan (HSMP);
(j) Archaeological Site Management Plan (ASMP);
(k) Construction Traffic Management Plan (CTMP);
(l) Concrete Batching and Crushing Plant Management Plan (CBCPMP);
(m) Electrical Infrastructure Site Development and Construction Management Plan (EISDCMP) (to be prepared in accordance with Condition CEMP.15);
(n) Waste Management Plan (to be prepared in accordance with Condition CEMP.10);

and

(o) Temporary Construction Lighting Management Plan (to be prepared in accordance with Condition L.2).

13) CEMP.6 The finalised CEMP shall include specific details on demolition, construction and management of all works associated with the Project. The certification process of the CEMP shall confirm that the CEMP includes details of the following:

(a) details of the site or Project manager and the community liaison person, including their contact details (phone, facsimile, postal address, email address);
(b) The location of large notice boards that clearly identify the NZTA and the Project name, together with the name, telephone, email address and address for service of the site or Project manager and the community liaison person;
(c) An outline construction programme of the work indicating in particular likely time periods for road closures and anticipated traffic diversion effects;
(d) The hours of work, which should reflect the need to ensure that residents enjoy reasonable freedom from noisy or intrusive construction activity in their neighbourhood at night, on Sundays and during public holidays;
(e) Measures to be adopted to maintain the land affected by the works in a tidy condition
(f) Location of worker's offices and conveniences (e.g. portaloos);

(g) Procedures of controlling sediment run-off, dust and the removal of soil, debris and demolition and construction materials from public roads or places. Dust mitigation measures should include use of water sprays to control dust nuisance on dry or windy days;

(h) Methods to stabilise ingress and egress points to construction sites, to the standard required by ARC Technical Publication 90 (Nov 2007);

(i) Procedures for ensuring that residents within 100m of construction areas or other people whose use of an area may be disrupted by construction works (for example the Te Atatu Boating Club for works on the Whau River) are given notice of the commencement of construction activities and are informed about the expected duration of the works, including potentially through the community liaison person;

(j) Procedures to be followed to ensure that those working in the vicinity of identified heritage and ecological features are aware of the heritage or ecological values of these features and the steps which need to be taken to meet the conditions applying to work on the site;

(k) Means of ensuring the safety of the general public;

(l) Procedures for the community liaison person to receive and respond to complaints about construction activities, including dust and odour from the works;

(m) Methods of mitigating the local and network wide effects of construction of individual elements of the Project, including measures to ensure that parking of staff vehicles on surrounding streets is restricted;

(n) All temporary boundary/ security fences shall be maintained in good order, with any graffiti removed as soon as possible;

(o) Confirmation of a Project Arborist and completion of a STEM assessment of the preliminary list of Amenity Trees in Schedule E.7 of the AEE to confirm the final Amenity Trees; and

(p) The process to minimise removal of Amenity Trees, maximise the protection of those retained, undertake relocation of Amenity Trees and replacement planting of specimen trees (in accordance with Conditions LV.10 and ARCH.9)).

(q) **Advice note:** For the purposes of CEMP.6(o) and (p), *Amenity Tree* is defined as a tree or trees that contribute significantly to amenity, taking into account its form, size, health, ecological or historical significance (a preliminary list of these trees is provided in Appendix E.7 of the AEE).

14) **CEMP.10** The NZTA shall finalise and implement the Hazardous Substances Management Plan (HSMP), through the CEMP (as per Condition CEMP.1), submitted with this application, prior to works commencing on site. The certification process of the CEMP shall confirm that the HSMP clearly identifies the requirements for proper storage, handling, transport and disposal of hazardous substances during the construction phase of the Project and confirm that there shall be no storage of explosives on the Project site.

15) **CEMP.11** The NZTA shall develop and implement a Waste Management Plan in accordance with the waste management principles, controls and methods set out in the CEMP. The Plan shall be provided to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council and be implemented throughout the entire construction period.

16) **CEMP.15** The NZTA will be responsible for all service relocations required for construction of the
Project. The NZTA shall liaise with the providers of infrastructure service networks (including, but not limited to water, gas, stormwater, wastewater, power and telecommunications), and private property owners with on-site services to develop methodologies and timing for necessary services relocation required for the Project, with the objective of minimising disruption to the operation of these service networks and on-site services.

Advice note:
(a) It is noted that if separate consents are required for relocations for any services of network utility operators or landowners, such consents will be obtained before construction commences in the relevant area, and any effects of those relocations would be considered at that time. The same applies to any alteration of consents if required.
(b) Network infrastructure owned and operated by Watercare Services is located within the designations. An operating agreement will be developed by the NZTA and Watercare Services which will include appropriate notification and access protocols where works are to be undertaken by either network operator on or adjacent to Watercare Services infrastructure within the designations.

17) PI.1 A community liaison person shall be appointed by the NZTA for the duration of the construction phase of the Project to be the main and readily accessible point of contact for persons affected by the Project. The liaison person’s name and contact details shall be made available in the CEMP and on site signage by the NZTA. This person must be reasonably available for on-going consultation on all matters of concern to affected parties arising from the Project.

18) PI.2 The NZTA shall prepare and implement a Communications Plan that sets out procedures detailing how the public, Ministry of Social Development, Housing New Zealand Corporation and other organisations representing the particular demographic characteristics of the community (including but not limited to Primary Health Organisations, general practitioners, youth, education organisations, aged care groups and groups representing ethnic and migrant communities) will be communicated with throughout the construction and monitoring periods (as prescribed in the designation and consent conditions).

In preparing the Communications Plan, the NZTA will liaise with Auckland Council to access its community liaison databases. The Communications Plan will includes details of:
(a) The site or Project manager and the community liaison person, including their contact details (phone, facsimile, postal address, email address);
(b) In accordance with these Conditions, the database of the key construction activities and monitoring requirements that are the subject of the Communications Plan;
(c) The database of stakeholders and residents who will be communicated with;
(d) Communication methods, an assessment of how these methods reach the different audience/stakeholder groups (including those methods set out in Condition CEMP.6), and detail on when each of these methods will be used (e.g. regular communication or event specific methods);
(e) The appointed specialist in Environmental and Occupational Medicine, including contact details (as per Condition SO.13);
(f) Any stakeholder specific communication plans required; and
(g) Monitoring and review procedures for the Communications Plan.

The Communications Plan shall be written in accordance with the external communication procedures set out in the CEMP and provided at least 20 working days prior to construction commencing, to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council, Working...
Liaison Group and the Community Liaison Group(s) established by Condition PI.5. The structure of the communication groups set out in these conditions is attached as Figure PI.A.

19) PI.5 The NZTA shall establish Community Liaison Group(s) at least two months prior to construction commencing in each of the following key construction areas:
(a) Te Atatu (including the SH16 Causeway)
(b) Waterview (including works to St Lukes on SH16 and on the Waterview Estuary and Causeway Bridges)
(c) Owairaka

and hold regular meetings (at least three monthly) throughout the construction period and up to 24 months following construction completion relevant to these areas (or less if the members of the Group agree), so that on-going monitoring information can continue to be disseminated.

The Community Liaison Group(s) shall be open to all interested parties within the Project area including, but not limited to the following groups:
(a) Auckland Council and Auckland Transport;
(b) Educational facilities within the Project area (including schools, kindergartens, childcare facilities and Unitec Institute of Technology);
(c) Relevant community/ environmental groups (including but not limited to Friends of Oakley Creek, Star Mills Preservation Group, Cycle Action Auckland and representatives from those organisations identified in the Communications Plan (as required by Condition PI.2) and local residents;
(d) Department of Conservation;
(e) Local Boards;
(f) Iwi groups with Mana Whenua;
(g) Public transport providers; and
(h) Housing New Zealand Corporation.

Advice note: The purpose of the Community Liaison Group(s) is to provide a regular forum through which information about the Project can be provided to the community, and an opportunity for concerns or issues to be raised.

20) CNV.1 The NZTA shall finalise and implement through the CEMP, a Construction Noise and Vibration Management Plan (CNVMP) throughout the entire construction period of the Project.

The CNVMP shall describe the measures adopted to meet:
(a) the noise criteria set out in Conditions CNV.2 and 3 below;
(b) the vibration criteria set out in Condition CNV.4 below; or
(c) where (a) or (b) cannot be met, the process that will be followed to appropriately mitigate noise and vibration effects including methods that may be applied outside the designation.

The CNVMP shall be provided to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council at least 20 working days prior to construction activities being undertaken for review and certification that the CNVMP, as a minimum, addresses the following:
(i) Construction noise and vibration criteria (Conditions CNV.2, CNV.3, and CNV.4);
(ii) Hours of operation, including times and days when noisy and/or vibration inducing construction activities would occur;
(iii) Machinery and equipment to be used;
(iv) Vibration testing of equipment to confirm safe distances to buildings prior to construction;
(v) Preparation of building condition surveys of critical dwellings prior to, during and after completion of construction works;
(vi) Roles and responsibilities of personnel on site;
(vii) Construction operator training procedures;
(viii) Methods for monitoring and reporting on construction noise and vibration;
(ix) A hierarchy of mitigation options that will be assessed for the Project noise mitigation, including alternative strategies where full compliance with the relevant noise and/or vibration criteria cannot be achieved;
(x) Management schedules containing site specific information;
(xi) Measures for liaising with and notifying potentially affected receivers of proposed construction activities and the potential for noise and vibration effects, specifically:
   - PPFs located within a horizontal distance of 35 metres of underground excavation works, along the tunnel alignment shall receive prior notification not greater than 7 days (and not less than 24 hours) prior to the commencement of works.
   - Methods for ensuring residents affected by night works (within 100m of the construction site night works, as defined on the maps (refer Schedule A, Row 35) are notified of such works (i.e. any works during the hours of 20:00 to 06:30) at least 5 days prior to the commencement of any such work.
   - The maps showing PPFs to be notified of night works (refer Schedule A, Row 35, shall be reviewed and included within the CNVMP.
(xii) Methods for receiving and handling complaints about construction noise and vibration;
(xiii) Measures for preventing the occurrence of rogue fly rock, including management of charge weights and face loading procedures, stemming of charge holes and profiling of the face to maintain minimum burden (face cover);
(xiv) Investigations on the practicability of implementing permanent noise mitigation works for construction mitigation (as per Condition CNV.7);
(xv) Investigations of the practicability of implementing Building Modification mitigation, as required in accordance with Conditions ON.6 and ON.11, prior to commencement of construction within 100m of the relevant PPFs (including those on the Unitec site); and
(xvi) The process for developing Site Specific Noise Management Plans (SSNMP), in accordance with the SSNMP Flow Chart (refer Schedule A, Row 36), including templates and a certification process for the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council (in accordance with Condition CNV.13) to confirm the process of SSNMP review of noise mitigation options where, the modelled/predicted levels or subsequent actual levels exceed the criteria in Conditions CNV.2 and/or CNV.4.

21) V.11 Prior to commencement of works adjacent to Traherne Island, the NZTA shall employ a suitably qualified and experienced plant translocation expert to uplift and protect all areas of *Mimulus repens* on Traherne Island that will be affected by the work. The *Mimulus repens* shall be relocated to suitable and safe habitat away from the works area, or otherwise held and protected for the duration of the works in the vicinity of their original location and be replanted back at that location (or in close proximity to it) upon completion of the works.
The location of the recipient sites will be determined in consultation with the Department of Conservation and in general accordance with the Traherne Island Natural Heritage Restoration Plan (2009 – 2014). Trials shall be undertaken to identify appropriate recipient sites, with these trial sites being monitored for a period of no less than 5 years, or until their failure. Where possible, recipient sites shall be located in currently weed-free areas. Where recipient sites may potentially be affected by weeds, they shall be subject to an ongoing weed management plan. Should translocation attempts fail at all trial sites then the NZTA, in consultation with DOC, shall determine an alternative appropriate form of mitigation.

22) SW.2 The NZTA shall inform the Auckland Council in writing at least 10 working days prior to the start date of the works authorised by this consent.

23) SW.3 The NZTA shall submit the final design of the construction stormwater system for approval to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council at least 20 working days prior to the commencement of construction works. This certification shall confirm the final design meets Condition SW.1, including:

(a) Design calculations for the following:

(i) flow attenuation devices,
(ii) stormwater treatment device sizing,
(iii) bypass device design,
(iv) stormwater treatment device efficiency;

(b) Design drawings, including all structures, outfalls, treatment devices, bypass devices, wetlands and ponds, swales and overland flow paths;

(c) Catchment plans detailing the area draining to each device; and

(d) Outfall locations.

24) SW.4 Any subsequent amendments to the final designs required by Condition SW.3 shall be submitted for approval in writing by the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council at least 20 working days prior to implementation.

25) SW.5 The NZTA shall arrange and conduct pre-construction site meetings between the Auckland Council and all relevant parties, including the site stormwater engineer, with regard to each component of the temporary stormwater management works. The Council shall be provided with 5 working days written notice of the date and time of each pre-construction site meeting, prior to construction of these works. Any resulting amendments to the design of the works may be reviewed at that time and shall be approved in accordance with Condition SW.3.

26) SW.6 The NZTA shall finalise and implement the Temporary Stormwater Management Plan (TSMP) submitted with this application, as part of the CEMP. The purpose of the TSMP is to ensure appropriate controls are in place to manage stormwater during construction.

27) C.1 The NZTA shall provide to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council plans and drawings (including dimensioned, cross sections, elevations and site plans of all areas of proposed reclamation (including associated permanent and temporary CMA occupation), permanent structures and temporary structures) at least 20 working days before the proposed date of commencement of the construction of the reclamation, bridge piers or temporary structure.

28) M.1 The NZTA shall finalise and implement through the CEMP, the ECOMP submitted with this application. The ECOMP shall be revised to accurately reflect the conditions of this consent and changes to the details of construction processes prior to construction commencing. The ECOMP shall include, but not be limited to, details of:
(a) Monitoring of marine habitats and ecological values;
(b) Trigger event criteria for undertaking additional monitoring;
(c) Procedures for responding to accidental discharges to the marine environment;
(d) Complaints investigation, monitoring and reporting; and
(e) The identification of staff and contractors’ responsibilities.

CONSTRUCTION CONDITIONS

29) CEMP.4 The CEMP shall be implemented and maintained throughout the entire construction period.

30) CEMP.5 A copy of the CEMP shall be held on each construction site at all times and be available for inspection on request by the Auckland Council.

31) CEMP.8 All storage of material and equipment associated with the construction works shall take place within the boundaries of the designation.

32) CEMP.12 The CEMP shall be reviewed by the NZTA at least annually or as a result of a material change to the Project. The review shall take into consideration:
   (a) Compliance with designation and consent conditions;
   (b) Any changes to construction methods;
   (c) Key changes to roles and responsibilities within the Project;
   (d) Changes in industry best practice standards;
   (e) Changes in legal or other requirements;
   (f) Results of inspections, monitoring, incidents, corrective actions, internal or external assessments; and
   (g) Public complaints.
   A summary of the review process undertaken shall be kept by the NZTA, provided annually to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council and made available (with any related data) to the Auckland Council upon request.

33) CEMP.13 Following the review process (as described in Condition CEMP.12), the CEMP may require updating. Any material change proposed to the CEMP (including appended Management Plans) shall be submitted for approval to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council at least 10 working days prior to the proposed changes taking effect.

   Advice Note: Material change will include amendment to any base information informing the CEMP or any process, procedure or method of the CEMP (such as the environmental constraints map, compliance monitoring process, complaints procedure or mitigation/remedial methods identified) which has the potential to increase adverse effects on a particular value. For clarity changes to personnel and contact schedules do not constitute a material change.

34) PI.3 At least 15 working days prior to the commencement of construction, and at 15 working day intervals thereafter, or as required depending on the scale of works and effects on the community, advertisements will be placed in the relevant local newspapers and community noticeboards (as identified in Condition CEMP.6(b)) detailing the nature of the forthcoming works, the location of the forthcoming works and hours of operation. All advertisements will include reference to a 24 hour toll free complaints telephone number. Where relevant, advertisements will also include but not be limited to details of:
   (a) Any traffic disruptions or controls or changes to property access, pedestrian/cycle routes and bus stops; and
   (b) Any other construction activities, including night time works, blasting, and structure-
35) PI.4 The NZTA shall manage, investigate and resolve (as appropriate) all complaints for the duration of the construction works in accordance with the environmental complaints section of the CEMP. The implementation strategy for complaints includes:

(a) A 24 hour toll free telephone number and email address, which shall be provided to all potentially affected residents and businesses. The number shall be available and answered at all times during the entire duration of the works for the receipt and management of any complaints. A sign containing the contact details shall be located at each site specific work activity;

(b) The NZTA shall maintain a record of all complaints made to this number, email or any site office, including the full details of the complainant and the nature of the complaint;

(c) Upon receiving a complaint, within 10 days of complaint receipt, a formal written response will be provided to the complainant and Auckland Council;

(d) The NZTA shall undertake corrective action where necessary to resolve any problem identified. All action taken and relevant information shall be documented. For the avoidance of doubt, ‘where necessary’ refers to where the works are not being carried out in accordance with conditions of this designation;

(e) Where issues and complaints about effects cannot be resolved through the CEMP complaints management process, a meeting shall be held between the NZTA, the complainant and the Auckland Council representative(s) to discuss the complaint and ways in which the issue may be resolved. If parties cannot agree on a resolution, an independent qualified mediator will be appointed, agreeable to all parties and at the shared cost of all parties, to undertake mediation of the dispute or concerns; and

(f) All information collected in Conditions PI.4 (b), (c) and (d) shall be detailed in a Construction Compliance Report (including the means by which the complaint was addressed, whether resolution was reached and how the response was carried out) prepared by the NZTA. This Report shall be submitted to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council on a quarterly basis commencing at the beginning of the works and for the entire duration of construction.

36) PI.6 The Community Liaison Group(s) shall be provided opportunities to review and comment on the following (amongst other things):

(a) The Outline Plan of Works detailing designs for the northern and southern ventilation buildings and stacks (the outcomes of this consultation will be reported in accordance with the processes required in DC.8(n) and DC.9(k);

(b) The Open Space Restoration Plans (as required by Condition OS.3);

(c) Finalisation and amendment to Urban Design and Landscape Plans (UDL Plans) (as required by Condition LV.1);

(d) The Oakley Inlet Heritage Plan (as required by Conditions OS.5(b)(i) and ARCH.6);

(e) The detail of the Oakley Creek restoration (as required by Condition STW.20);

(f) Publicly available results of environmental monitoring as required by the designation and/or these Consents (e.g. air quality monitoring); and

(g) The finalisation of the STEM assessment required by CEMP.6(o) and a schedule of trees that are required to be removed for consideration of timber use in heritage projects as required by Condition SO.7.

Advice Note: Attention is drawn to the Vegetation conditions concerning identification and protection of Significant Vegetation and Valued Vegetation.

(h) Detailed design features of the Te Atatu underpass (e.g. lighting and architectural
Except where certified by the Council through the SSNMP (in accordance with Condition CNV.13), construction noise (excluding noise from blasting Monday to Saturday inclusive) shall be measured and assessed in accordance with NZS 6803:1999 “Acoustics - Construction Noise” and shall comply with the following criteria:

Note: In Condition CNV.2 (T) means a duration between 15 minutes and 60 minutes, in accordance with NZS6803:1999.

(a) Project Construction Noise Criteria: Residential Receivers

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Time of week</th>
<th>Time period</th>
<th>Project Construction Noise Criteria (Long Term Construction) dB</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Sectors 1 to 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>$L_{Aeq(T)}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Monday - Saturday</td>
<td>0630-0730</td>
<td>60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>0730-1800</td>
<td>70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1800-2000</td>
<td>65</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2000-0630</td>
<td>60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sundays and Public Holidays</td>
<td>0630-0730</td>
<td>45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>0730-1800</td>
<td>60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1800-2000</td>
<td>45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2000-0630</td>
<td>45</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(b) Project Construction Noise Criteria: Commercial and Industrial Receivers

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Time period</th>
<th>Project Construction Noise Criteria (Long Term Construction) dB</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>$L_{Aeq(T)}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0730-1800</td>
<td>70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1800-0730</td>
<td>75</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
(c) Project Construction Noise Criteria: Internal Structure-borne Noise from tunnelling for Residential Receivers

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Time period</th>
<th>Project Construction Noise Criteria Inside</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0600-2200</td>
<td>35 dB LAeq(T)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>All habitable rooms</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2200-0600</td>
<td>30 dB LAeq(T)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Bedrooms</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(d) Project Construction Noise Criteria: Internal noise for Licensed Educational Facilities

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Time period (School Days)</th>
<th>Project Construction Noise Criteria Inside</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Teaching Hours</td>
<td>45 dB LAeq(T) or existing, whichever is the higher</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Classrooms, library, offices, teaching, laboratories, manual arts, workshops</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Teaching Hours</td>
<td>40 dB LAeq(T) or existing, whichever is the higher</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>School hall, lecture theatres</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note: In Condition CNV2(d) “Teaching hours” means:
- Primary schools and Kindergartens: 9am to 3pm
- Unitec: 8am to 9pm

38) CNV.7 Where practicable, permanent (traffic) noise barriers, required in any Sector as Detailed Mitigation Options for operational noise following completion of the Project (in accordance with Conditions ON.3 to ON.5) shall be erected prior to noise generating construction works commencing. Where this is not practicable, temporary noise mitigation measures shall be implemented in accordance with the CNVMP, prior to noise generating construction works commencing.

39) CNV.8 Pile driving or pile removal shall not be undertaken at night (i.e. during the hours of 20:00 – 06:30).

40) CNV.9 The concrete batch plants, rock crushing plants and the loading bays and conveyors for such plants shall be fully enclosed.

41) CNV.13 SSNMPs (required by Condition CNV.1(xvi)) above, shall be submitted to Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council for review and certification at least 7 working days prior to the proposed works commencing. A decision will be provided by the Council within 5 working days of receipt of the SSNMP.

Works will not commence until certification is received from the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council. The Council may, at its discretion, waive the requirement for SSNMPs to be submitted to the Council where an SSNMP is required.

If monitoring shows that levels specified in a SSNMP are being exceeded, work generating the exceedance will stop and not recommence until further mitigation is implemented in accordance with an amended SSNMP certified by Council.

Advice note: It is accepted that the criteria of CNV.2 and CNV.4 may not be met at all times, but that the NZTA will take all practical steps to achieve compliance, taking into account the hierarchy of mitigation options outlined in Condition CNV.1 (ix).
Stormwater management during construction shall be undertaken in accordance with the plans and information submitted with this application and the information contained within Technical Report G.15 Assessment of Stormwater and Streamworks Effects. In particular this requires the construction and completion of stormwater management works to the treatment standards detailed in Tables 1 and 2 below:

Table 1: Motorway catchment areas and treatment standards for Construction Phase of the Waterview Connection Project.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sector</th>
<th>Existing Impervious</th>
<th>Additional Impervious</th>
<th>Total</th>
<th>Treatment</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Area (ha)</td>
<td>Percentage proposed treatment (%)</td>
<td>Area (ha)</td>
<td>Percentage proposed treatment (%)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>8.05 0 3.67 11.3</td>
<td>11.72 4.4</td>
<td>75 No No</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>1.45 0 0.72 0</td>
<td>2.17 0</td>
<td>75 No No</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>3.88 13.6 1.47 0</td>
<td>5.35 9.9</td>
<td>75 No No</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>8.37 18 – 70*4 3.40</td>
<td>100 11.77 35 - 100</td>
<td>75 No No</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>6.62 30.3 3.43 100</td>
<td>10.05 54</td>
<td>75 No No</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>4.08 0 1.07 0</td>
<td>5.15 0</td>
<td>75 No Yes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>na na na na na na na na na na</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>na na na na na na na na na na</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>1.04 100 8.49 100</td>
<td>9.53 100</td>
<td>75 Yes Yes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total</td>
<td>33.49 22.25 55.74</td>
<td>55.74</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*1 TSS removal is on a long term average basis.

*2 Attenuation of the peak post-development runoff to the peak pre-development runoff for the 2, 10 and 20 year ARI rainfall events

*3 Extended detention of the 34.5mm rainfall event for 24 hours in accordance with ARC TP10 (2003) guidelines.

*4 Range depends on construction stage refer to Technical Report G.15 for details.
Table 2: Construction Yard Catchment Areas for Water Quality Treatment during Construction Phase of the Waterview Connection Project

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sector</th>
<th>Construction Yards</th>
<th>New Impervious Construction Working Catchments</th>
<th>Treatment</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Area (ha)</td>
<td>Percentage proposed treatment (%)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>4.20</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>na</td>
<td>na</td>
<td>na</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>0.37</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>na</td>
<td>na</td>
<td>na</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>3 &amp; 4</td>
<td>7.78</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>1.22</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>6 &amp; 7</td>
<td>1.90</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>na</td>
<td>na</td>
<td>Na</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>8, 9, 10, 11 &amp; 12</td>
<td>4.99</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total</td>
<td></td>
<td>20.46</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*1 TSS removal is on a long term average basis.

*2 Attenuation of the peak post-development runoff to the peak pre-development runoff for the 2, 10 and 20 year ARI rainfall events

*3 Extended detention of the 34.5mm rainfall event for 24 hours in accordance with ARC TP10 (2003) guidelines.

*4 Extended detention is to be provided for stormwater devices discharging to Oakley Creek (upstream of Great North Road), but is not required for stormwater devices discharging to Oakley Inlet (downstream of Great North Road).

43) SW.7 The NZTA shall undertake regular inspections of all stormwater treatment devices installed during construction to ensure they are operating in accordance with the consent conditions and TSMP. All records of these inspections shall be submitted to the Council on a monthly basis.

44) C.2 Construction shall be undertaken in accordance with the construction methodology detailed in the application, specifically Technical Report G.23 Coastal Works and Technical Report G.22 Erosion and Sediment Control Plan. The construction methodology shall include:

(a) The use of temporary coffer dams to create dry working areas;

(b) Realignment of sections of existing low-tide channels in Oakley inlet and Waterview Estuary that will be directly affected by the reclamation works;

(c) Removal of mangroves to provide construction and ground-treatment access,
Placement of temporary coffer dams and to facilitate natural channel migration in the Whau River side drainage channel (east of Rosebank Domain);

(d) Installation or removal works to be undertaken at the best practicable time to minimise potential sediment disturbance.

45) C.3 The NZTA shall notify the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council in writing of the proposed commencement date of the reclamation, structures and/or channel realignment works at least 10 working days prior to the proposed start date.

46) C.6 The NZTA shall maintain the site in good order and shall remedy all damage and disturbance caused by vehicle traffic, plant and equipment to the foreshore during construction, to the satisfaction of the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council.

47) C.7 Removal or pruning of vegetation in the CMA shall be limited to the areas of permanent and temporary occupation as shown on the Waterview Connection Project Assessment of Environmental Effects Plan Set F.12 and F.13 submitted with the application (ref Schedule A, rows 13 and 14). Removal of mangroves shall be implemented in accordance with the principles detailed in the Ecological Management Plan.

48) C.11 (a) Provision for navigation of vessels beneath the Whau River Bridges during construction shall be maintained to the satisfaction of the Auckland Harbour Master;

(b) Following construction, provision for the navigation of vessels beneath the Whau River Bridges be provided by the navigation channels and headspace clearance identified on the Plan Whau River Motorway and Pedestrian Bridges Elevation Plan 221 in F.8 (refer Schedule A, Row 9);

(c) For purposes of safe navigation, the NZTA shall identify an appropriate pier to mark on the Whau River Bridges, in consultation with the Te Atatu Boating Club and to the satisfaction of the Auckland Harbour Master. This pier shall be surveyed and marked with height graduations advising available minimum headspace under the Bridges for different stages of the tide with an appropriate safety margin.

49) M.10 The NZTA shall maintain the coastal marine area free of any gross litter, rubbish and debris during construction.

50) M.11 Prior to excavation of sediment from the marine habitat remediation zone (MHRZ), mangrove vegetation will be removed from the sediment and disposed of at an appropriate offsite facility. The excavated sediment shall be stockpiled within an adjacent dry working area. When the sediment is returned to the MHRZ it will be levelled out to tie in with the existing mudflat. Where a routine marine benthic habitat monitoring site is within an area of MHRZ, additional monitoring of the depth of sediment overlying the improved ground/mudcrete will also be undertaken.

POST-CONSTRUCTION CONDITIONS

51) SW.8 The NZTA shall arrange and conduct a post construction site meeting within 30 days of completion of installation of the stormwater management works between Auckland Council and all relevant parties, including the site stormwater engineer.

52) C.4 The NZTA shall notify the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council in writing within 10 working days of the completion of each discrete area of reclamation, structures and/or channel realignment works.

53) C.5 The NZTA shall supply to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council and LINZ Hydrographic Services and LINZ Topographic Services Land Information New
Zealand, PO Box 5501, Wellington 6145), a complete set of “as built” plans, final topographic and bathymetric data, and appropriate certification confirming that the new reclamations, structures and channel realignment works have been built in accordance with sound engineering practice, within three months of the completion of the reclamations works.

54) C.8 The NZTA shall ensure the removal of all equipment, erosion and sediment control measures, surplus sediment and construction materials from the CMA within 20 working days following the completion of the construction works, to the satisfaction of the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council.

MONITORING

55) C.12 On completion of the relevant stage of reclamation, the NZTA shall ensure that stockpiled chenier shell deposits from the northern side of the existing Causeway are reinstated to suitable locations along the northern side of the newly reclaimed Causeway in consultation with the Department of Conservation and the Auckland Council. The placement of the shell bank material shall be to the satisfaction of the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council. The movement of these reinstated shell deposits shall be monitored quarterly for the first year after placement to confirm they have been reworked by waves to form a contiguous shell bank by undertaking topographic survey transects at low tide and photographs to document the transition. The monitoring information shall be provided to the Auckland Council within 20 working days of completion of each phase of monitoring.

56) C.16 On the northern side of the Causeway, from just before the commencement of construction in the CMA for each section of works, until 6 months after completion of each section, the NZTA shall undertake every two (2) months or after a severe wave-storm, intertidal beach profile surveys down to the spring low-tide mark along offshore-directed transects (one off the centre of the construction section and one either side at 20 m away from the ends of the construction site) and photographs documenting the physical state of the seabed around the perimeter of the cofferdam. The monitoring information shall be made available to the Auckland Council. If the monitoring identifies that excessive erosion or accretion has occurred from corner or end effects of the construction section, as confirmed by a coastal processes expert, further seabed erosion control measures or a sediment by-passing method (for accretion) to reduce localised effects seaward of the temporary occupation or permanent occupation designation (whichever applies) shall be implemented as soon as practicable. Details of the proposed measures or methods shall be made available to Auckland Council prior to implementation.

57) M.2 The NZTA shall engage a suitably qualified ecologist to undertake a marine habitat monitoring programme, as described in Conditions M.3 to M.6.

58) M.3 The marine benthic habitat monitoring programme shall be undertaken every 6 months:

(a) At least 12 months prior to construction commencing, to allow for two baseline surveys to be undertaken;

(b) During construction; and

(c) For a maximum of 3 years following completion of the Project, or for a lesser time if the monitoring indicates no significant effects, as agreed with the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council.

59) M.4 The marine benthic habitat monitoring programme shall be undertaken in accordance with the details set out in the ECOMP and include:

(a) Sampling of the marine invertebrate community composition (collection of sediment cores to a depth of approximately 15cm);
(b) Sampling of the sediment surface (top 2cm) for sediment grain size; and
(c) Sampling of the sediment surface (top 2cm) for sediment quality (analysis of the concentration of copper, lead, zinc and polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons).

60) M.5 The marine benthic habitat monitoring shall be undertaken within sampling grids (50m x 30m) broadly established at the following locations:
(a) Two locations within Oakley Inlet;
(b) Four locations within Waterview Estuary; and
(c) Four locations north of the Causeway.
Specific locations and experimental design shall be detailed in the ECOMP, and the design of the monitoring programme will be based on the *Estuarine Environmental Assessment and Monitoring: A National Protocol* (Cawthron 2002).

61) M.6 The NZTA shall undertake additional marine habitat monitoring in the event of a ‘trigger event’ for marine ecology habitats. For the purposes of this consent, a ‘trigger event’ for marine ecology habitats is defined in the ECOMP.

62) M.7 The NZTA shall review the marine habitat monitoring results (pursuant to Conditions M.3 to M.6) and in the event that potential adverse effects are identified, the NZTA shall develop and implement appropriate contingency plans and/or remedial measures.

REPORTING

63) M.8 The marine benthic habitat monitoring results shall be compiled by the NZTA, and a report provided to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council every 6 months.
Type: Coastal Consent

Description: Occupation of CMA (Sectors 3 and 4):

Occupation of the CMA for construction works in, on and over the seabed and foreshore for Project works including piles and piers construction, reclamation construction and ancillary works in CPA1.

Duration: 10 years

Code:

RC = Standard Resource Consent Conditions
CEMP = Construction Environment Management Plan Conditions
PI = Public Information Conditions
CNV = Noise and Vibration Conditions – Construction
LV = Landscape and Visual Conditions
V = Vegetation Conditions
SW = Stormwater Conditions
C = Coastal Conditions
M = Marine Ecology Conditions

GENERAL CONDITIONS

1) RC.1 Except as modified by the conditions below, the works shall be undertaken in general accordance with the information provided by the New Zealand Transport Agency (NZTA), in the resource consent applications and the supporting documents (as detailed in Condition DC.1), and in the supplementary information provided in evidence by the NZTA.

2) RC.1A The NZTA shall implement the conditions of these consents in accordance with Schedule B, which sets out the Conditions that are to be applied to each consent including the duration of each consent.

3) RC.2 The Conditions of these consents may be reviewed by the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council, pursuant to Section 128 of the Resource Management Act 1991 (the Act), by the giving of notice pursuant to Section 129 of the Act, on the one year anniversary of the commencement of the consents and every year thereafter in order:

(a) To deal with any adverse effect on the environment which may arise from the exercise of the consent and which it is appropriate to deal with at a later stage; or
(b) To deal with any other adverse effect on the environment on which the exercise of the consent may have an influence.

4) RC.4 Any Management Plans submitted to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council for approval or certification may be submitted in stages to reflect any proposed staging of the physical works. Plans submitted shall clearly show the integration with adjacent stages and interrelated activities.

5) RC.5 In the event of any dispute, disagreement or inaction arising as to any Auckland Council Manager certification/ approvals required by the consent conditions, or as to the implementation of or monitoring required by the conditions, matters shall be referred in the first instance to the NZTA Regional State Highway Manager and to the Resource Consents Manager, Auckland Council to determine a process of resolution.

If a resolution cannot be agreed, then the matter may be referred to an independent appropriately qualified expert, agreeable to both parties, setting out the details of the matter to be referred for determination and the reasons the parties do not agree.

The independent appropriately qualified expert shall be appointed within 10 working days of the NZTA or Auckland Council giving notice of their intention to seek expert determination. The expert shall, as soon as possible, issue his or her decision on the matter. In making the decision, the expert shall be entitled to seek further information and hear from the parties as he or she sees fit.

Advice note: The dispute resolution process provided for in this condition does not prejudice any party’s right to take enforcement action in relation to the implementation of the designation conditions. However, the dispute resolution process will be applied before any formal enforcement action is taken by the Council except in urgent situations.

6) RC.6 Pursuant to Section 36(1)(d) of the RMA, the requiring authority is required to pay to Auckland Council any administrative charge for the carrying out by the local authority of its functions in relation to the administration, monitoring, and supervision of designation conditions.

7) RC.7 The servants of agents of Auckland Council shall be permitted to have access to relevant parts of the Project at all reasonable times for the purpose of carrying out inspections, investigations, tests, measurements and/or to take samples.

8) V.18 The NZTA shall implement the approved Traherne Island Weed and Pest Management Plan. Every 5 years, a suitably qualified and experienced ecologist engaged by NZTA shall review the plan in consultation with the Department of Conservation. The plan shall then be submitted to the Auckland Council for approval.

9) A.6 Animal pest control shall be undertaken by the NZTA on Traherne Island (northern and southern sides) and on the Coastal Marine Area (CMA) frontage of SH16 from Traherne Island North to Whau Creek, and on the southern side of SH16 from Traherne Island South to Whau River (in accordance with Condition V.17).
PRE-CONSTRUCTION CONDITIONS

10) **RC.3** Within 3 months of the resource consents commencing for the Project (or at least 1 month prior to any Auckland Council approvals or certifications required by these Conditions, whichever is the earlier), the NZTA shall update and finalise to the satisfaction of the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council all drawings and Plans cited in Schedule A, together with a full set of the information and documentation referred to in Condition DC.1 and provide these to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council. At the same time the NZTA shall prepare to the satisfaction of Auckland Council, a document for each resource consent which sets out the resource consent and have attached to it in text format a comprehensive set of the conditions imposed by the Board of Inquiry in its Final Decision as summarised in Schedule B, inclusive of any standard conditions and advice notes.

In particular (but not limited to), the following Plans will need to be amended in light of the Final Conditions:

(a) **F.2 Operational Scheme Plans** (refer Schedule A, Row 3) require amendment detailing the amended location of the ventilation stacks and southern ventilation buildings;

(b) **F.5 Construction Scheme Plans** (refer Schedule A, Row 4) require amendment to detail changes to construction footprint for the amended location of ventilation stacks and southern ventilation buildings and reconfiguration of Construction Yard 1);

(c) **F.6 Construction Yard Plans 101 and 107** (refer Schedule A, Row 7), detailing amendments to the Construction Yard 1 in light of the reconfiguration of this Yard and for Construction Yard 7 in light of the relocation of the northern ventilation stack (refer Schedule A, Row 34);

(d) **F.8 Plans of Structures and Architectural Features** (refer Schedule A, Row 9), detailing the amended location of the Northern Ventilation Stack and the design and location of the Southern Ventilation Building and Stack;

(e) The **CNVMP** (including flow diagram and the supplementary evidence produced by Ms Wilkening) (refer Schedule A, Rows 36, 37 and 39);

(f) Update to the areas of the Open Space Restoration Plans (Schedule A, Row 30) to:
   (i) Extend these areas in geographic extent to provide for the works identified in the Management Plan notations identified in the OS Conditions (in particular OS.5 and OS.6). (e.g. these areas will (as relevant) include Eric Armishaw Park, Howlett Reserve and Waterview Esplanade Reserve); and
   (ii) Exclude the operational area of designation required for the northern ventilation stack (as identified through the OPW process (refer Condition DC.8); and

(g) **Schedule A, Row 28** the Plan detailing proposed open space impacts and replacements needs to be updated to recolour the two land parcels on Hendon Avenue (which are excluded from the replacement calculations) to ‘brown’ to confirm they are part of the operational impact and will not be returned as open space.

11) **CEMP.1** Except where provided for in Condition CEMP.1A below, the NZTA shall update and finalise the draft Construction Environmental Management Plan (CEMP) including all the Management Plans which form part of the CEMP and are included as appendices, submitted with this application to ensure compliance with the consent and designation conditions imposed by the Board of Inquiry. The CEMP shall be provided to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council for review at least 20 working days prior to the commencement of works to certify compliance and consistency with the conditions.
Construction shall not commence until certification is obtained.

Advice note: For clarity the CEMP will be updated and finalised in accordance with the conditions. Any amendments will be limited to reflecting the requirements of the conditions, specifying personnel, and completing the Environmental Risk Register.

Advice Note: Particular care must be taken with development and operation of Construction Yard 7. When the CEMP is being updated and finalised, consideration must be given to the contents of the draft SSCEMP prepared for Construction Yard 7 (Row 41, Schedule A) recognising changes required by inclusion of the ventilation stack in this yard.

12) CEMP.1A In the case of the trial embankment, where works will commence well in advance of the main construction works for the Causeway, the NZTA will provide to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council, a site-specific CEMP for review and approval at least 20 working days prior to commencement of the trial embankment works.

13) CEMP.1B For the purposes of staging works, as some works may commence well in advance of others, the NZTA may provide staged or site specific CEMPs for those works to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council. The NZTA shall consult with the Team Manager about the need and timing for any other site-specific or staged CEMPs and shall provide any required site-specific or staged CEMPs to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council for review at least 20 working days prior to commencement of such the specific stage (including enabling) or site works.

14) CEMP.2 The certification process of the CEMP (and its appendices) shall confirm that the CEMP gives effect to the relevant conditions, as well as those matters in CEMP.6, and that it includes details of:
   (a) Staff and contractors’ responsibilities;
   (b) Training requirements for employees, sub-contractors and visitors;
   (c) Environmental incident and emergency management;
   (d) Communication and interface procedures (in accordance with the Communication Plan required under Condition PI.2);
   (e) Environmental complaints management (including the procedures required under Condition PI.4);
   (f) Compliance monitoring;
   (g) Reporting (including detail on the frequency of reporting to the Auckland Council);
   (h) Environmental auditing; and
   (i) Corrective action.

15) CEMP.3 The management of key environmental effects associated with the construction phase of the Project is detailed within environmental management plans that are included in the CEMP as appendices. This suite of management plans as shown on Figure CEMP.A comprises:
   (a) Construction Noise and Vibration Management Plan (CNVMP);
   (b) Construction Air Quality Management Plan (CAQMP);
   (c) Erosion and Sediment Control Plan (ESCP);
   (d) Temporary Stormwater Management Plan (TSMP);
   (e) Ecological Management Plan (ECOMP);
   (f) Groundwater Management Plan (GWMP);
   (g) Settlement Effects Management Plan (SEMP);
   (h) Contaminated Soils Management Plan (CSMP);
(i) Hazardous Substances Management Plan (HSMP);
(j) Archaeological Site Management Plan (ASMP);
(k) Construction Traffic Management Plan (CTMP);
(l) Concrete Batching and Crushing Plant Management Plan (CBCPMP);
(m) Electrical Infrastructure Site Development and Construction Management Plan (EISDCMP) (to be prepared in accordance with Condition CEMP.15);
(n) Waste Management Plan (to be prepared in accordance with Condition CEMP.10);
and
(o) Temporary Construction Lighting Management Plan (to be prepared in accordance with Condition L.2).

16) CEMP.6 The finalised CEMP shall include specific details on demolition, construction and management of all works associated with the Project. The certification process of the CEMP shall confirm that the CEMP includes details of the following:

(a) Details of the site or Project manager and the community liaison person, including their contact details (phone, facsimile, postal address, email address);
(b) The location of large notice boards that clearly identify the NZTA and the Project name, together with the name, telephone, email address and address for service of the site or Project manager and the community liaison person;
(c) An outline construction programme of the work indicating in particular likely time periods for road closures and anticipated traffic diversion effects;
(d) The hours of work, which should reflect the need to ensure that residents enjoy reasonable freedom from noisy or intrusive construction activity in their neighbourhood at night, on Sundays and during public holidays;
(e) Measures to be adopted to maintain the land affected by the works in a tidy condition in terms of disposal/storage of rubbish, storage and unloading of building materials and similar construction activities;
(f) Location of worker’s offices and conveniences (e.g. portaloos);
(g) Procedures of controlling sediment run-off, dust and the removal of soil, debris and demolition and construction materials from public roads or places. Dust mitigation measures should include use of water sprays to control dust nuisance on dry or windy days;
(h) Methods to stabilise ingress and egress points to construction sites, to the standard required by ARC Technical Publication 90 (Nov 2007);
(i) Procedures for ensuring that residents within 100m of construction areas or other people whose use of an area may be disrupted by construction works (for example the Te Atatu Boating Club for works on the Whau River) are given notice of the commencement of construction activities and are informed about the expected duration of the works, including potentially through the community liaison person;
(j) Procedures to be followed to ensure that those working in the vicinity of identified heritage and ecological features are aware of the heritage or ecological values of these features and the steps which need to be taken to meet the conditions applying to work on the site;
(k) Means of ensuring the safety of the general public;
(l) Procedures for the community liaison person to receive and respond to complaints about construction activities, including dust and odour from the works;
(m) Methods of mitigating the local and network wide effects of construction of individual elements of the Project, including measures to ensure that parking of staff vehicles on
(n) All temporary boundary/ security fences shall be maintained in good order, with any graffiti removed as soon as possible;

(o) Confirmation of a Project Arborist and completion of a STEM assessment of the preliminary list of Amenity Trees in Schedule E.7 of the AEE to confirm the final Amenity Trees; and

(p) The process to minimise removal of Amenity Trees, maximise the protection of those retained, undertake relocation of Amenity Trees and replacement planting of specimen trees (in accordance with Conditions LV.10 and ARCH.9)).

(q) Advice note: For the purposes of CEMP.6(o) and (p), Amenity Tree is defined as a tree or trees that contribute significantly to amenity, taking into account its form, size, health, ecological or historical significance (a preliminary list of these trees is provided in Appendix E.7 of the AEE).

17) CEMP.10 The NZTA shall finalise and implement the Hazardous Substances Management Plan (HSMP), through the CEMP (as per Condition CEMP.1), submitted with this application, prior to works commencing on site. The certification process of the CEMP shall confirm that the HSMP clearly identifies the requirements for proper storage, handling, transport and disposal of hazardous substances during the construction phase of the Project and confirm that there shall be no storage of explosives on the Project site.

18) CEMP.11 The NZTA shall develop and implement a Waste Management Plan in accordance with the waste management principles, controls and methods set out in the CEMP. The Plan shall be provided to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council and be implemented throughout the entire construction period.

19) CEMP.15 The NZTA will be responsible for all service relocations required for construction of the Project. The NZTA shall liaise with the providers of infrastructure service networks (including, but not limited to water, gas, stormwater, wastewater, power and telecommunications), and private property owners with on-site services to develop methodologies and timing for necessary services relocation required for the Project, with the objective of minimising disruption to the operation of these service networks and on-site services.

Advice note:

(a) It is noted that if separate consents are required for relocations for any services of network utility operators or landowners, such consents will be obtained before construction commences in the relevant area, and any effects of those relocations would be considered at that time. The same applies to any alteration of consents if required.

(b) Network infrastructure owned and operated by Watercare Services is located within the designations. An operating agreement will be developed by the NZTA and Watercare Services which will include appropriate notification and access protocols where works are to be undertaken by either network operator on or adjacent to Watercare Services infrastructure within the designations.

20) PI.1 A community liaison person shall be appointed by the NZTA for the duration of the construction phase of the Project to be the main and readily accessible point of contact for persons affected by the Project. The liaison person’s name and contact details shall be made available in the CEMP and on site signage by the NZTA. This person must be reasonably available for on-going consultation on all matters of concern to affected parties arising from the Project.

21) PI.2 The NZTA shall prepare and implement a Communications Plan that sets out procedures
detailing how the public, Ministry of Social Development, Housing New Zealand Corporation and other organisations representing the particular demographic characteristics of the community (including but not limited to Primary Health Organisations, general practitioners, youth, education organisations, aged care groups and groups representing ethnic and migrant communities) will be communicated with throughout the construction and monitoring periods (as prescribed in the designation and consent conditions).

In preparing the Communications Plan, the NZTA will liaise with Auckland Council to access its community liaison databases. The Communications Plan will include details of:

(a) The site or Project manager and the community liaison person, including their contact details (phone, facsimile, postal address, email address);

(b) In accordance with these Conditions, the database of the key construction activities and monitoring requirements that are the subject of the Communications Plan;

(c) The database of stakeholders and residents who will be communicated with;

(d) Communication methods, an assessment of how these methods reach the different audience/stakeholder groups (including those methods set out in Condition CEMP.6), and detail on when each of these methods will be used (e.g. regular communication or event specific methods);

(e) The appointed specialist in Environmental and Occupational Medicine, including contact details (as per Condition SO.13);

(f) Any stakeholder specific communication plans required; and

(g) Monitoring and review procedures for the Communications Plan.

The Communications Plan shall be written in accordance with the external communication procedures set out in the CEMP and provided at least 20 working days prior to construction commencing, to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council, Working Liaison Group and the Community Liaison Group(s) established by Condition PI.5. The structure of the communication groups set out in these conditions is attached as Figure PI.A.

22) PI.5 The NZTA shall establish Community Liaison Group(s) at least two months prior to construction commencing in each of the following key construction areas:

(a) Te Atatu (including the SH16 Causeway)

(b) Waterview (including works to St Lukes on SH16 and on the Waterview Estuary and Causeway Bridges)

(c) Owairaka

and hold regular meetings (at least three monthly) throughout the construction period and up to 24 months following construction completion relevant to these areas (or less if the members of the Group agree), so that on-going monitoring information can continue to be disseminated.

The Community Liaison Group(s) shall be open to all interested parties within the Project area including, but not limited to the following groups:

(a) Auckland Council and Auckland Transport;

(b) Educational facilities within the Project area (including schools, kindergartens, childcare facilities and Unitec Institute of Technology);

(c) Relevant community/environmental groups (including but not limited to Friends of Oakley Creek, Star Mills Preservation Group, Cycle Action Auckland and representatives from those organisations identified in the Communications Plan (as required by Condition PI.2) and local residents;

(d) Department of Conservation;
(e) Local Boards;
(f) Iwi groups with Mana Whenua;
(g) Public transport providers; and
(h) Housing New Zealand Corporation.

Advice note: The purpose of the Community Liaison Group(s) is to provide a regular forum through which information about the Project can be provided to the community, and an opportunity for concerns or issues to be raised.

23) LV.1 The Urban Design and Landscape Plans (UDL Plans) (Plan Set F.16, refer Schedule A, Row 17) shall be reviewed and revised in accordance with the conditions and submitted to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council for certification that they comply with the conditions of the consents/designation prior to construction of the relevant Project stage, at least 20 working days prior to the commencement of construction.

The UDL Plans shall be updated to:
(a) Reflect relevant details from the PT and Active Mode Transport Routes Plan Set (Schedule A, Row 23);
(b) Remove the playing field at Waterview Reserve;
(c) Confirm the reconfigured bund design at Alwyn Avenue (Schedule A, Row 42);
(d) Reflect landscaping required in relation to the northern vent stack in Waterview Glades pursuant to Conditions DC.8.

24) LV.2 In certifying the UDL Plans, prepared in accordance with Condition LV.1, the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council shall be satisfied the UDL plans includes:
(a) The visual mitigation of infrastructure as detailed in Section B of the UDLF (refer Schedule A, Row 38).
(b) Incorporation of art or art through design of structures, particularly as it relates to noise barriers and the Great North Road Interchange piers and ramps (Refer to clauses (g) and (i) below).
(c) Planting to screen houses and noise walls (including cross section details);
(d) Planting along the corridor on Traherne Island, in accordance with these conditions and the Ecological Management Plan;
(e) Specimen planting on the Great North Road Interchange and the Te Atatu Road Interchange;
(f) Specimen planting at the tunnel portals (except where this is within the OPW area);
(g) Finalisation of the noise barriers (as required by Condition ON.3(a)) in accordance with the design principles for noise walls (refer Schedule A, Row 32);
(h) Delineation of the final areas of the Open Space Restoration Plans in accordance with the Open Space Restoration Plans (Schedule A, Row 30), and reference that all works within the Open Space Restoration Plan Areas are subject to Conditions OS.1 to OS.8;
(i) Oakley Inlet Heritage Plan, prepared in accordance with Conditions OS.5, and in particular, consideration shall be given to the design treatment of the Great North Road Interchange piers and ramps to take into consideration the impact of the structures on the visual quality of the open space beneath;
(j) Ecological Management Plan, prepared in accordance with Conditions V.1, A.1, H.1, F.1 and M.1;
(k) Western Ring Route: Maioro Street Interchange and Waterview Connection - Oakley Creek Rehabilitation and Restoration Guidelines (Boffa Miskell, 2010); and
(l) Details of artworks or art through design of structures within the Project (e.g. design
25) **V.11** Prior to commencement of works adjacent to Traherne Island, the NZTA shall employ a suitably qualified and experienced plant translocation expert to uplift and protect all areas of *Mimulus repens* on Traherne Island that will be affected by the work. The *Mimulus repens* shall be relocated to suitable and safe habitat away from the works area, or otherwise held and protected for the duration of the works in the vicinity of their original location and be replanted back at that location (or in close proximity to it) upon completion of the works. The location of the recipient sites will be determined in consultation with the Department of Conservation and in general accordance with the Traherne Island Natural Heritage Restoration Plan (2009 – 2014). Trials shall be undertaken to identify appropriate recipient sites, with these trial sites being monitored for a period of no less than 5 years, or until their failure. Where possible, recipient sites shall be located in currently weed-free areas. Where recipient sites may potentially be affected by weeds, they shall be subject to an on-going weed management plan. Should translocation attempts fail at all trial sites then the NZTA, in consultation with DOC, shall determine an alternative appropriate form of mitigation.

26) **V.17** Prior to commencement of works adjacent to or on Traherne Island, the NZTA shall employ a suitably qualified and experienced ecologist for the preparation of a Traherne Island Weed and Pest Management Plan. The Plan shall be prepared in consultation with the Department of Conservation and be submitted to the Auckland Council for approval at least 20 working days prior to construction commencing.

27) **A.1** The NZTA shall finalise, and implement through the CEMP, ECOMP submitted with this application to include the matters set out in Conditions A.2 to A.6.

28) **SW.2** The NZTA shall inform the Auckland Council in writing at least 10 working days prior to the start date of the works authorised by this consent.

29) **SW.3** The NZTA shall submit the final design of the construction stormwater system for approval to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council at least 20 working days prior to the commencement of construction works. This certification shall confirm the final design meets Condition SW.1, including:

   (a) Design calculations for the following:
      (i) flow attenuation devices,
      (ii) stormwater treatment device sizing,
      (iii) bypass device design,
      (iv) stormwater treatment device efficiency;
   (b) Design drawings, including all structures, outfalls, treatment devices, bypass devices, wetlands and ponds, swales and overland flow paths;
   (c) Catchment plans detailing the area draining to each device; and
   (d) Outfall locations.

30) **SW.4** Any subsequent amendments to the final designs required by Condition SW.3 shall be submitted for approval in writing by the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council at least 20 working days prior to implementation.

31) **SW.5** The NZTA shall arrange and conduct pre-construction site meetings between the Auckland Council and all relevant parties, including the site stormwater engineer, with regard to each component of the temporary stormwater management works. The Council shall be provided
with 5 working days written notice of the date and time of each pre-construction site meeting, prior to construction of these works. Any resulting amendments to the design of the works may be reviewed at that time and shall be approved in accordance with Condition SW.3.

32) SW.6 The NZTA shall finalise and implement the Temporary Stormwater Management Plan (TSMP) submitted with this application, as part of the CEMP. The purpose of the TSMP is to ensure appropriate controls are in place to manage stormwater during construction.

33) C.1 The NZTA shall provide to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council plans and drawings (including dimensioned, cross sections, elevations and site plans of all areas of proposed reclamation (including associated permanent and temporary CMA occupation), permanent structures and temporary structures) at least 20 working days before the proposed date of commencement of the construction of the reclamation, bridge piers or temporary structure.

34) M.1 The NZTA shall finalise and implement through the CEMP, the ECOMP submitted with this application. The ECOMP shall be revised to accurately reflect the conditions of this consent and changes to the details of construction processes prior to construction commencing. The ECOMP shall include, but not be limited to, details of:
   (a) Monitoring of marine habitats and ecological values;
   (b) Trigger event criteria for undertaking additional monitoring;
   (c) Procedures for responding to accidental discharges to the marine environment;
   (d) Complaints investigation, monitoring and reporting; and
   (e) The identification of staff and contractors’ responsibilities.

CONSTRUCTION CONDITIONS

35) CEMP.4 The CEMP shall be implemented and maintained throughout the entire construction period.

36) CEMP.5 A copy of the CEMP shall be held on each construction site at all times and be available for inspection on request by the Auckland Council.

37) CEMP.8 All storage of material and equipment associated with the construction works shall take place within the boundaries of the designation.

38) CEMP.12 The CEMP shall be reviewed by the NZTA at least annually or as a result of a material change to the Project. The review shall take into consideration:
   (a) Compliance with designation and consent conditions;
   (b) Any changes to construction methods;
   (c) Key changes to roles and responsibilities within the Project;
   (d) Changes in industry best practice standards;
   (e) Changes in legal or other requirements;
   (f) Results of inspections, monitoring, incidents, corrective actions, internal or external assessments; and
   (g) Public complaints.

A summary of the review process undertaken shall be kept by the NZTA, provided annually to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council and made available (with any related data) to the Auckland Council upon request.

39) CEMP.13 Following the review process (as described in Condition CEMP.12), the CEMP may require updating. Any material change proposed to the CEMP (including appended Management
Plans) shall be submitted for approval to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council at least 10 working days prior to the proposed changes taking effect.’

Advice Note: Material change will include amendment to any base information informing the CEMP or any process, procedure or method of the CEMP (such as the environmental constraints map, compliance monitoring process, complaints procedure or mitigation / remedial methods identified) which has the potential to increase adverse effects on a particular value. For clarity changes to personnel and contact schedules do not constitute a material change.

40) PI.3 At least 15 working days prior to the commencement of construction, and at 15 working day intervals thereafter, or as required depending on the scale of works and effects on the community, advertisements will be placed in the relevant local newspapers and community noticeboards (as identified in Condition CEMP.6(b)) detailing the nature of the forthcoming works, the location of the forthcoming works and hours of operation. All advertisements will include reference to a 24 hour toll free complaints telephone number. Where relevant, advertisements will also include but not be limited to details of:

(a) Any traffic disruptions or controls or changes to property access, pedestrian/cycle routes and bus stops; and

(b) Any other construction activities, including night time works, blasting, and structure-borne noise, as identified in the conditions.

41) PI.4 The NZTA shall manage, investigate and resolve (as appropriate) all complaints for the duration of the construction works in accordance with the environmental complaints section of the CEMP. The implementation strategy for complaints includes:

(a) A 24 hour toll free telephone number and email address, which shall be provided to all potentially affected residents and businesses. The number shall be available and answered at all times during the entire duration of the works for the receipt and management of any complaints. A sign containing the contact details shall be located at each site specific work activity;

(b) The NZTA shall maintain a record of all complaints made to this number, email or any site office, including the full details of the complainant and the nature of the complaint;

(c) Upon receiving a complaint, within 10 days of complaint receipt, a formal written response will be provided to the complainant and Auckland Council;

(d) The NZTA shall undertake corrective action where necessary to resolve any problem identified. All action taken and relevant information shall be documented. For the avoidance of doubt, ‘where necessary’ refers to where the works are not being carried out in accordance with conditions of this designation;

(e) Where issues and complaints about effects cannot be resolved through the CEMP complaints management process, a meeting shall be held between the NZTA, the complainant and the Auckland Council representative(s) to discuss the complaint and ways in which the issue may be resolved. If parties cannot agree on a resolution, an independent qualified mediator will be appointed, agreeable to all parties and at the shared cost of all parties, to undertake mediation of the dispute or concerns; and

(f) All information collected in Conditions PI.4 (b), (c) and (d) shall be detailed in a Construction Compliance Report (including the means by which the complaint was addressed, whether resolution was reached and how the response was carried out) prepared by the NZTA. This Report shall be submitted to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council on a quarterly basis commencing at the beginning of the works and for the entire duration of construction.

42) PI.6 The Community Liaison Group(s) shall be provided opportunities to review and comment on
the following (amongst other things):

(a) The Outline Plan of Works detailing designs for the northern and southern ventilation buildings and stacks (the outcomes of this consultation will be reported in accordance with the processes required in DC.8(n) and DC.9(k);

(b) The Open Space Restoration Plans (as required by Condition OS.3);

(c) Finalisation and amendment to Urban Design and Landscape Plans (UDL Plans) (as required by Condition LV.1);

(d) The Oakley Inlet Heritage Plan (as required by Conditions OS.5(b)(i) and ARCH.6);

(e) The detail of the Oakley Creek restoration (as required by Condition STW.20);

(f) Publicly available results of environmental monitoring as required by the designation and/or these Consents (e.g. air quality monitoring); and

(g) The finalisation of the STEM assessment required by CEMP.6(o) and a schedule of trees that are required to be removed for consideration of timber use in heritage projects as required by Condition SO.7.

Advice Note: Attention is drawn to the Vegetation conditions concerning identification and protection of Significant Vegetation and Valued Vegetation.

(h) Detailed design features of the Te Atatu underpass (e.g. lighting and architectural treatment).

43) CNV.8 Pile driving or pile removal shall not be undertaken at night (i.e. during the hours of 20:00 – 06:30).

44) A.2 The NZTA shall provide temporary high tide roosting structure(s) adjacent to the Causeway during construction, in accordance with the ECOMP, to the satisfaction of the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council. The temporary bird roosts shall be sized in accordance with the ECOMP, and located within the Waterview Estuary adjacent to the southern side of the causeway and in the vicinity of the existing Causeway bridge.

45) A.5 Vegetation clearance at Traherne Island shall occur outside the bird breeding season of September to December. Elsewhere, vegetation clearance shall occur outside the bird breeding season of September to December where practicable.

46) SW.7 The NZTA shall undertake regular inspections of all stormwater treatment devices installed during construction to ensure they are operating in accordance with the consent conditions and TSMP. All records of these inspections shall be submitted to the Council on a monthly basis.

47) C.2 Construction shall be undertaken in accordance with the construction methodology detailed in the application, specifically Technical Report G.23 Coastal Works and Technical Report G.22 Erosion and Sediment Control Plan. The construction methodology shall include:

(a) The use of temporary coffer dams to create dry working areas;

(b) Realignment of sections of existing low-tide channels in Oakley inlet and Waterview Estuary that will be directly affected by the reclamation works;

(c) Removal of mangroves to provide construction and ground-treatment access, placement of temporary coffer dams and to facilitate natural channel migration in the Whau River side drainage channel (east of Rosebank Domain);

(d) Installation or removal works to be undertaken at the best practicable time to minimise potential sediment disturbance.

48) C.3 The NZTA shall notify the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council in writing of the proposed commencement date of the reclamation, structures and/or channel realignment works at least 10 working days prior to the proposed start date.
49) C.6 The NZTA shall maintain the site in good order and shall remedy all damage and disturbance caused by vehicle traffic, plant and equipment to the foreshore during construction, to the satisfaction of the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council.

50) C.7 Removal or pruning of vegetation in the CMA shall be limited to the areas of permanent and temporary occupation as shown on the Waterview Connection Project Assessment of Environmental Effects Plan Set F.12 and F.13 submitted with the application (ref Schedule A, rows 13 and 14). Removal of mangroves shall be implemented in accordance with the principles detailed in the Ecological Management Plan.

51) M.10 The NZTA shall maintain the coastal marine area free of any gross litter, rubbish and debris during construction.

52) M.11 Prior to excavation of sediment from the marine habitat remediation zone (MHRZ), mangrove vegetation will be removed from the sediment and disposed of at an appropriate offsite facility. The excavated sediment shall be stockpiled within an adjacent dry working area. When the sediment is returned to the MHRZ it will be levelled out to tie in with the existing mudflat. Where a routine marine benthic habitat monitoring site is within an area of MHRZ, additional monitoring of the depth of sediment overlying the improved ground/mudcrete will also be undertaken.

53) M.12 The NZTA shall minimise the extent of the Causeway footprint to the greatest extent possible.

POST-CONSTRUCTION / OPERATION CONDITIONS

54) LV.3 The NZTA shall have implemented the UDL Plans within 6 months of practical completion of construction of the Project.

55) LV.4 The landscaping shall be implemented in accordance with the UDL Plans within the first planting season following the completion of the construction works, provided that climatic conditions are suitable, otherwise at the first practicable opportunity thereafter, and shall be maintained for a period of 10 years thereafter. Should the landscaping be implemented in stages (depending on construction phases), landscaping shall be implemented in accordance with this Condition for each stage unless subsequent construction staging requires use of the proposed landscaping area.

Advice note: On-going control and management of the landscaping within the designation is the responsibility of the NZTA.

56) LV.5 The NZTA shall implement the UDL Plans taking into account the pest plant management guidelines detailed in the Ecological Management Plan (as required by Condition CEMP.3).

57) SW.8 The NZTA shall arrange and conduct a post construction site meeting within 30 days of completion of installation of the stormwater management works between Auckland Council and all relevant parties, including the site stormwater engineer.

58) C.4 The NZTA shall notify the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council in writing within 10 working days of the completion of each discrete area of reclamations, structures and/or channel realignment works.

59) C.5 The NZTA shall supply to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council and LINZ Hydrographic Services and LINZ Topographic Services Land Information New Zealand, PO Box 5501, Wellington 6145), a complete set of “as built” plans, final topographic and bathymetric data, and appropriate certification confirming that the new reclamations, structures and channel realignment works have been built in accordance with
sound engineering practice, within three months of the completion of the reclamation works.

60) C.8 The NZTA shall ensure the removal of all equipment, erosion and sediment control measures, surplus sediment and construction materials from the CMA within 20 working days following the completion of the construction works, to the satisfaction of the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council.

MONITORING

61) A.3 The NZTA shall employ a suitably qualified ecologist to undertake monitoring of the roosting areas located at:
(a) The existing high tide roost in Harbourview-Orangihina Park; and
(b) The temporary construction roosting structure(s) pursuant to Condition A.2.
Monitoring shall be undertaken on a monthly basis, with a monitoring report prepared on a quarterly basis. The monitoring report shall be made available to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council and Department of Conservation upon request.

62) A.4 Should the monitoring results indicate that the roosting sites have been abandoned, consultation shall be undertaken with the Department of Conservation and the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council to determine the need for and type of further management strategies (if any) required.

63) C.12 On completion of the relevant stage of reclamation, the NZTA shall ensure that stockpiled chenier shell deposits from the northern side of the existing Causeway are reinstated to suitable locations along the northern side of the newly reclaimed Causeway in consultation with the Department of Conservation and the Auckland Council. The placement of the shell bank material shall be to the satisfaction of the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council. The movement of these reinstated shell deposits shall be monitored quarterly for the first year after placement to confirm they have been reworked by waves to form a contiguous shell bank by undertaking topographic survey transects at low tide and photographs to document the transition. The monitoring information shall be provided to the Auckland Council within 20 working days of completion of each phase of monitoring.

64) C.16 On the northern side of the Causeway, from just before the commencement of construction in the CMA for each section of works, until 6 months after completion of each section, the NZTA shall undertake every two (2) months or after a severe wave-storm, intertidal beach profile surveys down to the spring low-tide mark along offshore-directed transects (one off the centre of the construction section and one either side at 20 m away from the ends of the construction site) and photographs documenting the physical state of the seabed around the perimeter of the cofferdam. The monitoring information shall be made available to the Auckland Council. If the monitoring identifies that excessive erosion or accretion has occurred from corner or end effects of the construction section, as confirmed by a coastal processes expert, further seabed erosion control measures or a sediment by-passing method (for accretion) to reduce localised effects seaward of the temporary occupation or permanent occupation designation (whichever applies) shall be implemented as soon as practicable. Details of the proposed measures or methods shall be made available to Auckland Council prior to implementation.

65) M.2 The NZTA shall engage a suitably qualified ecologist to undertake a marine habitat monitoring programme, as described in Conditions M.3 to M.6.

66) M.3 The marine benthic habitat monitoring programme shall be undertaken every 6 months:
(a) At least 12 months prior to construction commencing, to allow for two baseline surveys to be undertaken;
(b) During construction; and
(c) For a maximum of 3 years following completion of the Project, or for a lesser time if the monitoring indicates no significant effects, as agreed with the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council.

67) M.4 The marine benthic habitat monitoring programme shall be undertaken in accordance with the details set out in the ECOMP and include:
   (a) Sampling of the marine invertebrate community composition (collection of sediment cores to a depth of approximately 15cm);
   (b) Sampling of the sediment surface (top 2cm) for sediment grain size; and
   (c) Sampling of the sediment surface (top 2cm) for sediment quality (analysis of the concentration of copper, lead, zinc and polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons).

68) M.5 The marine benthic habitat monitoring shall be undertaken within sampling grids (50m x 30m) broadly established at the following locations:
   (a) Two locations within Oakley Inlet;
   (b) Four locations within Waterview Estuary; and
   (c) Four locations north of the Causeway.
   Specific locations and experimental design shall be detailed in the ECOMP, and the design of the monitoring programme will be based on the *Estuarine Environmental Assessment and Monitoring: A National Protocol* (Cawthron 2002).

69) M.6 The NZTA shall undertake additional marine habitat monitoring in the event of a ‘trigger event’ for marine ecology habitats. For the purposes of this consent, a ‘trigger event’ for marine ecology habitats is defined in the ECOMP.

70) M.7 The NZTA shall review the marine habitat monitoring results (pursuant to Conditions M.3 to M.6) and in the event that potential adverse effects are identified, the NZTA shall develop and implement appropriate contingency plans and/or remedial measures.

REPORTING

71) M.8 The marine benthic habitat monitoring results shall be compiled by the NZTA, and a report provided to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council every 6 months.
EPA 10/2.059 – (ARC: 38364)

This document has been prepared in compliance with conditions of the “Final Report and Decision of the Board of Inquiry into the New Zealand Transport Agency Waterview Connection Proposal, Volume 2, Conditions of Consent”. Schedule B of Volume 2 identifies the Conditions relevant to this Consent by the code and number as referenced throughout this document. In the event of dispute, Schedule B of Volume 2 shall take precedence over this Consent.

**Type:** Coastal Consent

**Description:** Occupation of CMA (Sectors 4 and 5):

Occupation of the CMA by permanent structures in, on and over the seabed and foreshore for general motorway widening including piles and piers for new and widened structures including:

- Sector 4 – Causeway Bridges; Causeway pedestrian/cycle facility; Stormwater outfalls
- Sector 5 – Great North Interchange Ramps; Heritage bridge (pedestrian); Stormwater outfalls

**Duration:** 35 years

**Code:**
- RC = Standard Resource Consent Conditions
- V = Vegetation Conditions
- C = Coastal Conditions
- M = Marine Ecology Conditions

**GENERAL CONDITIONS**

1) **RC.1** Except as modified by the conditions below, the works shall be undertaken in general accordance with the information provided by the New Zealand Transport Agency (NZTA), in the resource consent applications and the supporting documents (as detailed in Condition DC.1), and in the supplementary information provided in evidence by the NZTA.

2) **RC.1A** The NZTA shall implement the conditions of these consents in accordance with Schedule B, which sets out the Conditions that are to be applied to each consent including the duration of each consent.

3) **RC.2** The Conditions of these consents may be reviewed by the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council, pursuant to Section 128 of the Resource Management Act 1991 (the Act), by the giving of notice pursuant to Section 129 of the Act, on the one year anniversary of the commencement of the consents and every year thereafter in order:
   (a) To deal with any adverse effect on the environment which may arise from the exercise of the consent and which it is appropriate to deal with at a later stage; or
   (b) To deal with any other adverse effect on the environment on which the exercise of the consent may have an influence.

4) **RC.4** Any Management Plans submitted to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland
Council for approval or certification may be submitted in stages to reflect any proposed staging of the physical works. Plans submitted shall clearly show the integration with adjacent stages and interrelated activities.

5) RC.5 In the event of any dispute, disagreement or inaction arising as to any Auckland Council Manager certification/approvals required by the consent conditions, or as to the implementation of or monitoring required by the conditions, matters shall be referred in the first instance to the NZTA Regional State Highway Manager and to the Resource Consents Manager, Auckland Council to determine a process of resolution.

If a resolution cannot be agreed, then the matter may be referred to an independent appropriately qualified expert, agreeable to both parties, setting out the details of the matter to be referred for determination and the reasons the parties do not agree.

The independent appropriately qualified expert shall be appointed within 10 working days of the NZTA or Auckland Council giving notice of their intention to seek expert determination.

The expert shall, as soon as possible, issue his or her decision on the matter. In making the decision, the expert shall be entitled to seek further information and hear from the parties as he or she sees fit.

Advice note: The dispute resolution process provided for in this condition does not prejudice any party’s right to take enforcement action in relation to the implementation of the designation conditions. However, the dispute resolution process will be applied before any formal enforcement action is taken by the Council except in urgent situations.

6) RC.6 Pursuant to Section 36(1)(d) of the RMA, the requiring authority is required to pay to Auckland Council any administrative charge for the carrying out by the local authority of its functions in relation to the administration, monitoring, and supervision of designation conditions.

7) RC.7 The servants of agents of Auckland Council shall be permitted to have access to relevant parts of the Project at all reasonable times for the purpose of carrying out inspections, investigations, tests, measurements and/or to take samples.

8) V.18 The NZTA shall implement the approved Traherne Island Weed and Pest Management Plan. Every 5 years, a suitably qualified and experienced ecologist engaged by NZTA shall review the plan in consultation with the Department of Conservation. The plan shall then be submitted to the Auckland Council for approval.

PRE-CONSTRUCTION CONDITIONS

9) RC.3 Within 3 months of the resource consents commencing for the Project (or at least 1 month prior to any Auckland Council approvals or certifications required by these Conditions, whichever is the earlier), the NZTA shall update and finalise to the satisfaction of the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council all drawings and Plans cited in Schedule A, together with a full set of the information and documentation referred to in Condition DC.1 and provide these to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council. At the same time the NZTA shall prepare to the satisfaction of Auckland Council, a document for each resource consent which sets out the resource consent and have attached to it in text format a comprehensive set of the conditions imposed by the Board of Inquiry in its Final Decision as summarised in Schedule B, inclusive of any standard conditions and advice notes.

In particular (but not limited to), the following Plans will need to be amended in light of the Final Conditions:

(a) F.2 Operational Scheme Plans (refer Schedule A, Row 3) require amendment detailing the amended location of the ventilation stacks and southern ventilation
(b) F.5 Construction Scheme Plans (refer Schedule A, Row 4) require amendment to detail changes to construction footprint for the amended location of ventilation stacks and southern ventilation buildings and reconfiguration of Construction Yard 1;

(c) F.6 Construction Yard Plans 101 and 107 (refer Schedule A, Row 7), detailing amendments to the Construction Yard 1 in light of the reconfiguration of this Yard and for Construction Yard 7 in light of the relocation of the northern ventilation stack (refer Schedule A, Row 34);

(d) F.8 Plans of Structures and Architectural Features (refer Schedule A, Row 9), detailing the amended location of the Northern Ventilation Stack and the design and location of the Southern Ventilation Building and Stack;

(e) The CNVMP (including flow diagram and the supplementary evidence produced by Ms Wilkening) (refer Schedule A, Rows 36, 37 and 39);

(f) Update to the areas of the Open Space Restoration Plans (Schedule A, Row 30) to:

(i) Extend these areas in geographic extent to provide for the works identified in the Management Plan notations identified in the OS Conditions (in particular OS.5 and OS.6). (e.g. these areas will (as relevant) include Eric Amishaw Park, Howlett Reserve and Waterview Esplanade Reserve); and

(ii) Exclude the operational area of designation required for the northern ventilation stack (as identified through the OPW process (refer Condition DC.8); and

(g) Schedule A, Row 28 the Plan detailing proposed open space impacts and replacements needs to be updated to recolour the two land parcels on Hendon Avenue (which are excluded from the replacement calculations) to ‘brown’ to confirm they are part of the operational impact and will not be returned as open space.

10) V.11 Prior to commencement of works adjacent to Traherne Island, the NZTA shall employ a suitably qualified and experienced plant translocation expert to uplift and protect all areas of *Mimulus repens* on Traherne Island that will be affected by the work. The *Mimulus repens* shall be relocated to suitable and safe habitat away from the works area, or otherwise held and protected for the duration of the works in the vicinity of their original location and be replanted back at that location (or in close proximity to it) upon completion of the works. The location of the recipient sites will be determined in consultation with the Department of Conservation and in general accordance with the Traherne Island Natural Heritage Restoration Plan (2009 – 2014). Trials shall be undertaken to identify appropriate recipient sites, with these trial sites being monitored for a period of no less than 5 years, or until their failure. Where possible, recipient sites shall be located in currently weed-free areas. Where recipient sites may potentially be affected by weeds, they shall be subject to an on-going weed management plan. Should translocation attempts fail at all trial sites then the NZTA, in consultation with DOC, shall determine an alternative appropriate form of mitigation.

11) V.17 Prior to commencement of works adjacent to or on Traherne Island, the NZTA shall employ a suitably qualified and experienced ecologist for the preparation of a Traherne Island Weed and Pest Management Plan. The Plan shall be prepared in consultation with the Department of Conservation and be submitted to the Auckland Council for approval at least 20 working days prior to construction commencing.

12) C.1 The NZTA shall provide to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council plans and drawings (including dimensioned, cross sections, elevations and site plans of all areas of proposed reclamation (including associated permanent and temporary CMA occupation), permanent structures and temporary structures) at least 20 working days before the proposed date of commencement of the construction of the reclamation, bridge piers or
temporary structure.

13) M.1 The NZTA shall finalise and implement through the CEMP, the ECOMP submitted with this application. The ECOMP shall be revised to accurately reflect the conditions of this consent and changes to the details of construction processes prior to construction commencing. The ECOMP shall include, but not be limited to, details of:

(a) Monitoring of marine habitats and ecological values;
(b) Trigger event criteria for undertaking additional monitoring;
(c) Procedures for responding to accidental discharges to the marine environment;
(d) Complaints investigation, monitoring and reporting; and
(e) The identification of staff and contractors' responsibilities.

CONSTRUCTION CONDITIONS

14) C.3 The NZTA shall notify the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council in writing of the proposed commencement date of the reclamation, structures and/or channel realignment works at least 10 working days prior to the proposed start date.

15) C.6 The NZTA shall maintain the site in good order and shall remedy all damage and disturbance caused by vehicle traffic, plant and equipment to the foreshore during construction, to the satisfaction of the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council.

16) C.7 Removal or pruning of vegetation in the CMA shall be limited to the areas of permanent and temporary occupation as shown on the Waterview Connection Project Assessment of Environmental Effects Plan Set F.12 and F.13 submitted with the application (ref Schedule A, rows 13 and 14). Removal of mangroves shall be implemented in accordance with the principles detailed in the Ecological Management Plan.

POST-CONSTRUCTION CONDITIONS

17) C.4 The NZTA shall notify the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council in writing within 10 working days of the completion of each discrete area of reclamation, structures and/or channel realignment works.

18) C.5 The NZTA shall supply to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council and LINZ Hydrographic Services and LINZ Topographic Services Land Information New Zealand, PO Box 5501, Wellington 6145), a complete set of “as built” plans, final topographic and bathymetric data, and appropriate certification confirming that the new reclamations, structures and channel realignment works have been built in accordance with sound engineering practice, within three months of the completion of the reclamation works.

19) C.8 The NZTA shall ensure the removal of all equipment, erosion and sediment control measures, surplus sediment and construction materials from the CMA within 20 working days following the completion of the construction works, to the satisfaction of the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council.
MONITORING

20) M.2 The NZTA shall engage a suitably qualified ecologist to undertake a marine habitat monitoring programme, as described in Conditions M.3 to M.6.

21) M.3 The marine benthic habitat monitoring programme shall be undertaken every 6 months:
(a) At least 12 months prior to construction commencing, to allow for two baseline surveys to be undertaken;
(b) During construction; and
(c) For a maximum of 3 years following completion of the Project, or for a lesser time if the monitoring indicates no significant effects, as agreed with the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council.

22) M.4 The marine benthic habitat monitoring programme shall be undertaken in accordance with the details set out in the ECOMP and include:
(a) Sampling of the marine invertebrate community composition (collection of sediment cores to a depth of approximately 15cm);
(b) Sampling of the sediment surface (top 2cm) for sediment grain size; and
(c) Sampling of the sediment surface (top 2cm) for sediment quality (analysis of the concentration of copper, lead, zinc and polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons).

23) M.5 The marine benthic habitat monitoring shall be undertaken within sampling grids (50m x 30m) broadly established at the following locations:
(a) Two locations within Oakley Inlet;
(b) Four locations within Waterview Estuary; and
(c) Four locations north of the Causeway.
Specific locations and experimental design shall be detailed in the ECOMP, and the design of the monitoring programme will be based on the Estuarine Environmental Assessment and Monitoring: A National Protocol (Cawthron 2002).

24) M.6 The NZTA shall undertake additional marine habitat monitoring in the event of a 'trigger event' for marine ecology habitats. For the purposes of this consent, a 'trigger event' for marine ecology habitats is defined in the ECOMP.

25) M.7 The NZTA shall review the marine habitat monitoring results (pursuant to Conditions M.3 to M.6) and in the event that potential adverse effects are identified, the NZTA shall develop and implement appropriate contingency plans and/or remedial measures.

REPORTING

26) M.8 The marine benthic habitat monitoring results shall be compiled by the NZTA, and a report provided to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council every 6 months.
This document has been prepared in compliance with conditions of the "Final Report and Decision of the Board of Inquiry into the New Zealand Transport Agency Waterview Connection Proposal, Volume 2, Conditions of Consent". Schedule B of Volume 2 identifies the Conditions relevant to this Consent by the code and number as referenced throughout this document. In the event of dispute, Schedule B of Volume 2 shall take precedence over this Consent.

**Type:** Coastal Consent

**Description:** Activities within the CMA (Sectors 1, 2, 4, 5)

This consent relates to the on-going use, operation and maintenance of CMA by the State highway for transport purposes.

**Duration:** 35 years

**Code:**
- RC = Standard Resource Consent Conditions
- LV = Landscape and Visual Conditions
- V = Vegetation Conditions
- M = Marine Ecology Conditions

**GENERAL CONDITIONS**

1) **RC.1** Except as modified by the conditions below, the works shall be undertaken in general accordance with the information provided by the New Zealand Transport Agency (NZTA), in the resource consent applications and the supporting documents (as detailed in Condition DC.1), and in the supplementary information provided in evidence by the NZTA.

2) **RC.1A** The NZTA shall implement the conditions of these consents in accordance with Schedule B, which sets out the Conditions that are to be applied to each consent including the duration of each consent.

3) **RC.2** The Conditions of these consents may be reviewed by the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council, pursuant to Section 128 of the Resource Management Act 1991 (the Act), by the giving of notice pursuant to Section 129 of the Act, on the one year anniversary of the commencement of the consents and every year thereafter in order:
   (a) To deal with any adverse effect on the environment which may arise from the exercise of the consent and which it is appropriate to deal with at a later stage; or
   (b) To deal with any other adverse effect on the environment on which the exercise of the consent may have an influence.

4) **RC.4** Any Management Plans submitted to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council for approval or certification may be submitted in stages to reflect any proposed staging of the physical works. Plans submitted shall clearly show the integration with adjacent stages and interrelated activities.

5) **RC.5** In the event of any dispute, disagreement or inaction arising as to any Auckland Council Manager certification/ approvals required by the consent conditions, or as to the implementation of or monitoring required by the conditions, matters shall be referred in the
first instance to the NZTA Regional State Highway Manager and to the Resource Consents Manager, Auckland Council to determine a process of resolution.

If a resolution cannot be agreed, then the matter may be referred to an independent appropriately qualified expert, agreeable to both parties, setting out the details of the matter to be referred for determination and the reasons the parties do not agree.

The independent appropriately qualified expert shall be appointed within 10 working days of the NZTA or Auckland Council giving notice of their intention to seek expert determination. The expert shall, as soon as possible, issue his or her decision on the matter. In making the decision, the expert shall be entitled to seek further information and hear from the parties as he or she sees fit.

Advice note: The dispute resolution process provided for in this condition does not prejudice any party’s right to take enforcement action in relation to the implementation of the designation conditions. However, the dispute resolution process will be applied before any formal enforcement action is taken by the Council except in urgent situations.

6) RC.6 Pursuant to Section 36(1)(d) of the RMA, the requiring authority is required to pay to Auckland Council any administrative charge for the carrying out by the local authority of its functions in relation to the administration, monitoring, and supervision of designation conditions.

7) RC.7 The servants of agents of Auckland Council shall be permitted to have access to relevant parts of the Project at all reasonable times for the purpose of carrying out inspections, investigations, tests, measurements and/or to take samples.

8) V.18 The NZTA shall implement the approved Traherne Island Weed and Pest Management Plan. Every 5 years, a suitably qualified and experienced ecologist engaged by NZTA shall review the plan in consultation with the Department of Conservation. The plan shall then be submitted to the Auckland Council for approval.

PRE-CONSTRUCTION CONDITIONS

9) RC.3 Within 3 months of the resource consents commencing for the Project (or at least 1 month prior to any Auckland Council approvals or certifications required by these Conditions, whichever is the earlier), the NZTA shall update and finalise to the satisfaction of the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council all drawings and Plans cited in Schedule A, together with a full set of the information and documentation referred to in Condition DC.1 and provide these to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council. At the same time the NZTA shall prepare to the satisfaction of Auckland Council, a document for each resource consent which sets out the resource consent and have attached to it in text format a comprehensive set of the conditions imposed by the Board of Inquiry in its Final Decision as summarised in Schedule B, inclusive of any standard conditions and advice notes.

In particular (but not limited to), the following Plans will need to be amended in light of the Final Conditions:

(a) F.2 Operational Scheme Plans (refer Schedule A, Row 3) require amendment detailing the amended location of the ventilation stacks and southern ventilation buildings;

(b) F.5 Construction Scheme Plans (refer Schedule A, Row 4) require amendment to detail changes to construction footprint for the amended location of ventilation stacks and southern ventilation buildings and reconfiguration of Construction Yard 1);

(c) F.6 Construction Yard Plans 101 and 107 (refer Schedule A, Row 7), detailing amendments to the Construction Yard 1 in light of the reconfiguration of this Yard and for Construction Yard 7 in light of the relocation of the northern ventilation stack (refer Schedule A, Row 34);
(d) F.8 Plans of Structures and Architectural Features (refer Schedule A, Row 9), detailing the amended location of the Northern Ventilation Stack and the design and location of the Southern Ventilation Building and Stack;

(e) The CNVMP (including flow diagram and the supplementary evidence produced by Ms Wilkening) (refer Schedule A, Rows 36, 37 and 39);

(f) Update to the areas of the Open Space Restoration Plans (Schedule A, Row 30) to:
   (i) Extend these areas in geographic extent to provide for the works identified in the Management Plan notations identified in the OS Conditions (in particular OS.5 and OS.6). (e.g. these areas will (as relevant) include Eric Armishaw Park, Howlett Reserve and Waterview Esplanade Reserve); and
   (ii) Exclude the operational area of designation required for the northern ventilation stack (as identified through the OPW process (refer Condition DC.8); and

(g) Schedule A, Row 28 the Plan detailing proposed open space impacts and replacements needs to be updated to recolour the two land parcels on Hendon Avenue (which are excluded from the replacement calculations) to ‘brown’ to confirm they are part of the operational impact and will not be returned as open space.

10) LV.1 The Urban Design and Landscape Plans (UDL Plans) (Plan Set F.16, refer Schedule A, Row 17) shall be reviewed and revised in accordance with the conditions and submitted to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council for certification that they comply with the conditions of the consents/ designation prior to construction of the relevant Project stage, at least 20 working days prior to the commencement of construction.

   The UDL Plans shall be updated to:
   (a) Reflect relevant details from the PT and Active Mode Transport Routes Plan Set (Schedule A, Row 23);
   (b) Remove the playing field at Waterview Reserve;
   (c) Confirm the reconfigured bund design at Alwyn Avenue (Schedule A, Row 42);
   (d) Reflect landscaping required in relation to the northern vent stack in Waterview Glades pursuant to Conditions DC.8.

11) LV.2 In certifying the UDL Plans, prepared in accordance with Condition LV.1, the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council shall be satisfied the UDL plans includes:

   (a) The visual mitigation of infrastructure as detailed in Section B of the UDLF (refer Schedule A, Row 38).
   (b) Incorporation of art or art through design of structures, particularly as it relates to noise barriers and the Great North Road Interchange piers and ramps (Refer to clauses (g) and (i) below).
   (c) Planting to screen houses and noise walls (including cross section details);
   (d) Planting along the corridor on Traherne Island, in accordance with these conditions and the Ecological Management Plan;
   (e) Specimen planting on the Great North Road Interchange and the Te Atatu Road Interchange;
   (f) Specimen planting at the tunnel portals (except where this is within the OPW area);
   (g) Finalisation of the noise barriers (as required by Condition ON.3(a)) in accordance with the design principles for noise walls (refer Schedule A, Row 32);
   (h) Delineation of the final areas of the Open Space Restoration Plans in accordance with the Open Space Restoration Plans (Schedule A, Row 30), and reference that all works within the Open Space Restoration Plan Areas are subject to Conditions OS.1 to OS.8;
(i) Oakley Inlet Heritage Plan, prepared in accordance with Conditions OS.5, and in particular, consideration shall be given to the design treatment of the Great North Road Interchange piers and ramps to take into consideration the impact of the structures on the visual quality of the open space beneath;

(j) Ecological Management Plan, prepared in accordance with Conditions V.1, A.1, H.1, F.1 and M.1;

(k) Western Ring Route: Maioro Street Interchange and Waterview Connection - Oakley Creek Rehabilitation and Restoration Guidelines (Boffa Miskell, 2010); and

(l) Details of artworks or art through design of structures within the Project (e.g. design detailing of median barriers, bridge railings, safety barriers, piers, retaining walls and tunnel portals), in accordance with Section B of the Urban Landscape and Design Framework (UDLF June 2010) (refer Schedule A, Row 38) and F.8: Plans of Structures and Architectural Features, but excluding the north and south ventilation buildings, plans sections and elevations.

12) V.11 Prior to commencement of works adjacent to Traherne Island, the NZTA shall employ a suitably qualified and experienced plant translocation expert to uplift and protect all areas of *Mimulus repens* on Traherne Island that will be affected by the work. The *Mimulus repens* shall be relocated to suitable and safe habitat away from the works area, or otherwise held and protected for the duration of the works in the vicinity of their original location and be replanted back at that location (or in close proximity to it) upon completion of the works. The location of the recipient sites will be determined in consultation with the Department of Conservation and in general accordance with the Traherne Island Natural Heritage Restoration Plan (2009 – 2014). Trials shall be undertaken to identify appropriate recipient sites, with these trial sites being monitored for a period of no less than 5 years, or until their failure. Where possible, recipient sites shall be located in currently weed-free areas. Where recipient sites may potentially be affected by weeds, they shall be subject to an on-going weed management plan. Should translocation attempts fail at all trial sites then the NZTA, in consultation with DOC, shall determine an alternative appropriate form of mitigation.

13) V.17 Prior to commencement of works adjacent to or on Traherne Island, the NZTA shall employ a suitably qualified and experienced ecologist for the preparation of a Traherne Island Weed and Pest Management Plan. The Plan shall be prepared in consultation with the Department of Conservation and be submitted to the Auckland Council for approval at least 20 working days prior to construction commencing.

14) M.1 The NZTA shall finalise and implement through the CEMP, the ECOMP submitted with this application. The ECOMP shall be revised to accurately reflect the conditions of this consent and changes to the details of construction processes prior to construction commencing. The ECOMP shall include, but not be limited to, details of:

(a) Monitoring of marine habitats and ecological values;
(b) Trigger event criteria for undertaking additional monitoring;
(c) Procedures for responding to accidental discharges to the marine environment;
(d) Complaints investigation, monitoring and reporting; and
(e) The identification of staff and contractors’ responsibilities.
POST-CONSTRUCTION / OPERATION CONDITIONS

15) LV.3 The NZTA shall have implemented the UDL Plans within 6 months of practical completion of construction of the Project.

16) LV.4 The landscaping shall be implemented in accordance with the UDL Plans within the first planting season following the completion of the construction works, provided that climatic conditions are suitable, otherwise at the first practicable opportunity thereafter, and shall be maintained for a period of 10 years thereafter. Should the landscaping be implemented in stages (depending on construction phases), landscaping shall be implemented in accordance with this Condition for each stage unless subsequent construction staging requires use of the proposed landscaping area.

Advice note: On-going control and management of the landscaping within the designation is the responsibility of the NZTA.

17) LV.5 The NZTA shall implement the UDL Plans taking into account the pest plant management guidelines detailed in the Ecological Management Plan (as required by Condition CEMP.3).

MONITORING

18) M.2 The NZTA shall engage a suitably qualified ecologist to undertake a marine habitat monitoring programme, as described in Conditions M.3 to M.6.

19) M.3 The marine benthic habitat monitoring programme shall be undertaken every 6 months:
(a) At least 12 months prior to construction commencing, to allow for two baseline surveys to be undertaken;
(b) During construction; and
(c) For a maximum of 3 years following completion of the Project, or for a lesser time if the monitoring indicates no significant effects, as agreed with the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council.

20) M.4 The marine benthic habitat monitoring programme shall be undertaken in accordance with the details set out in the ECOMP and include:
(a) Sampling of the marine invertebrate community composition (collection of sediment cores to a depth of approximately 15cm);
(b) Sampling of the sediment surface (top 2cm) for sediment grain size; and
(c) Sampling of the sediment surface (top 2cm) for sediment quality (analysis of the concentration of copper, lead, zinc and polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons).

21) M.5 The marine benthic habitat monitoring shall be undertaken within sampling grids (50m x 30m) broadly established at the following locations:
(a) Two locations within Oakley Inlet;
(b) Four locations within Waterview Estuary; and
(c) Four locations north of the Causeway.

Specific locations and experimental design shall be detailed in the ECOMP, and the design of the monitoring programme will be based on the Estuarine Environmental Assessment and Monitoring: A National Protocol (Cawthron 2002).

22) M.6 The NZTA shall undertake additional marine habitat monitoring in the event of a ‘trigger event’ for marine ecology habitats. For the purposes of this consent, a ‘trigger event’ for marine ecology habitats is defined in the ECOMP.
23) M.7 The NZTA shall review the marine habitat monitoring results (pursuant to Conditions M.3 to M.6) and in the event that potential adverse effects are identified, the NZTA shall develop and implement appropriate contingency plans and/or remedial measures.

REPORTING

24) M.8 The marine benthic habitat monitoring results shall be compiled by the NZTA, and a report provided to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council every 6 months.
EPA 10/2.061 – (ARC: 38366)

This document has been prepared in compliance with conditions of the "Final Report and Decision of the Board of Inquiry into the New Zealand Transport Agency Waterview Connection Proposal, Volume 2, Conditions of Consent". Schedule B of Volume 2 identifies the Conditions relevant to this Consent by the code and number as referenced throughout this document. In the event of dispute, Schedule B of Volume 2 shall take precedence over this Consent.

Type: Coastal Consent

Description: Activities within the CMA (Sectors 1, 2, 4, 5)

This consent relates to the on-going use, operation and maintenance of CMA by the State highway for transport (as an activity not provided for as a permitted, controlled or restricted discretionary activity, and is not prohibited by the Plan).

Duration: 35 years

Code:
- RC = Standard Resource Consent Conditions
- LV = Landscape and Visual Conditions
- V = Vegetation Conditions
- M = Marine Ecology Conditions

GENERAL CONDITIONS

1) RC.1 Except as modified by the conditions below, the works shall be undertaken in general accordance with the information provided by the New Zealand Transport Agency (NZTA), in the resource consent applications and the supporting documents (as detailed in Condition DC.1), and in the supplementary information provided in evidence by the NZTA.

2) RC.1A The NZTA shall implement the conditions of these consents in accordance with Schedule B, which sets out the Conditions that are to be applied to each consent including the duration of each consent.

3) RC.2 The Conditions of these consents may be reviewed by the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council, pursuant to Section 128 of the Resource Management Act 1991 (the Act), by the giving of notice pursuant to Section 129 of the Act, on the one year anniversary of the commencement of the consents and every year thereafter in order:
   (a) To deal with any adverse effect on the environment which may arise from the exercise of the consent and which it is appropriate to deal with at a later stage; or
   (b) To deal with any other adverse effect on the environment on which the exercise of the consent may have an influence.

4) RC.4 Any Management Plans submitted to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council for approval or certification may be submitted in stages to reflect any proposed staging of the physical works. Plans submitted shall clearly show the integration with adjacent stages and interrelated activities.

5) RC.5 In the event of any dispute, disagreement or inaction arising as to any Auckland Council Manager certification/approvals required by the consent conditions, or as to the
implementation of or monitoring required by the conditions, matters shall be referred in the first instance to the NZTA Regional State Highway Manager and to the Resource Consents Manager, Auckland Council to determine a process of resolution.

If a resolution cannot be agreed, then the matter may be referred to an independent appropriately qualified expert, agreeable to both parties, setting out the details of the matter to be referred for determination and the reasons the parties do not agree.

The independent appropriately qualified expert shall be appointed within 10 working days of the NZTA or Auckland Council giving notice of their intention to seek expert determination. The expert shall, as soon as possible, issue his or her decision on the matter. In making the decision, the expert shall be entitled to seek further information and hear from the parties as he or she sees fit.

Advice note: The dispute resolution process provided for in this condition does not prejudice any party’s right to take enforcement action in relation to the implementation of the designation conditions. However, the dispute resolution process will be applied before any formal enforcement action is taken by the Council except in urgent situations.

6) RC.6 Pursuant to Section 36(1)(d) of the RMA, the requiring authority is required to pay to Auckland Council any administrative charge for the carrying out by the local authority of its functions in relation to the administration, monitoring, and supervision of designation conditions.

7) RC.7 The servants of agents of Auckland Council shall be permitted to have access to relevant parts of the Project at all reasonable times for the purpose of carrying out inspections, investigations, tests, measurements and/or to take samples.

8) V.18 The NZTA shall implement the approved Traherne Island Weed and Pest Management Plan. Every 5 years, a suitably qualified and experienced ecologist engaged by NZTA shall review the plan in consultation with the Department of Conservation. The plan shall then be submitted to the Auckland Council for approval.

PRE-CONSTRUCTION CONDITIONS

9) RC.3 Within 3 months of the resource consents commencing for the Project (or at least 1 month prior to any Auckland Council approvals or certifications required by these Conditions, whichever is the earlier), the NZTA shall update and finalise to the satisfaction of the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council all drawings and Plans cited in Schedule A, together with a full set of the information and documentation referred to in Condition DC.1 and provide these to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council. At the same time the NZTA shall prepare to the satisfaction of Auckland Council, a document for each resource consent which sets out the resource consent and have attached to it in text format a comprehensive set of the conditions imposed by the Board of Inquiry in its Final Decision as summarised in Schedule B, inclusive of any standard conditions and advice notes.

In particular (but not limited to), the following Plans will need to be amended in light of the Final Conditions:

(a) F.2 Operational Scheme Plans (refer Schedule A, Row 3) require amendment detailing the amended location of the ventilation stacks and southern ventilation buildings;

(b) F.5 Construction Scheme Plans (refer Schedule A, Row 4) require amendment to detail changes to construction footprint for the amended location of ventilation stacks and southern ventilation buildings and reconfiguration of Construction Yard 1);

(c) F.6 Construction Yard Plans 101 and 107 (refer Schedule A, Row 7), detailing amendments to the Construction Yard 1 in light of the reconfiguration of this Yard and for Construction Yard 7 in light of the relocation of the northern ventilation stack (refer
(d) F.8 Plans of Structures and Architectural Features (refer Schedule A, Row 9), detailing the amended location of the Northern Ventilation Stack and the design and location of the Southern Ventilation Building and Stack;

(e) The CNVMP (including flow diagram and the supplementary evidence produced by Ms Wilkening) (refer Schedule A, Rows 36, 37 and 39);

(f) Update to the areas of the Open Space Restoration Plans (Schedule A, Row 30) to:

(i) Extend these areas in geographic extent to provide for the works identified in the Management Plan notations identified in the OS Conditions (in particular OS.5 and OS.6). (e.g. these areas will (as relevant) include Eric Armishaw Park, Howlett Reserve and Waterview Esplanade Reserve); and

(ii) Exclude the operational area of designation required for the northern ventilation stack (as identified through the OPW process (refer Condition DC.8); and

(g) Schedule A, Row 28 the Plan detailing proposed open space impacts and replacements needs to be updated to recolour the two land parcels on Hendon Avenue (which are excluded from the replacement calculations) to ‘brown’ to confirm they are part of the operational impact and will not be returned as open space.

10) LV.1 The Urban Design and Landscape Plans (UDL Plans) (Plan Set F.16, refer Schedule A, Row 17) shall be reviewed and revised in accordance with the conditions and submitted to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council for certification that they comply with the conditions of the consents/ designation prior to construction of the relevant Project stage, at least 20 working days prior to the commencement of construction.

The UDL Plans shall be updated to:

(a) Reflect relevant details from the PT and Active Mode Transport Routes Plan Set (Schedule A, Row 23);

(b) Remove the playing field at Waterview Reserve;

(c) Confirm the reconfigured bund design at Alwyn Avenue (Schedule A, Row 42);

(d) Reflect landscaping required in relation to the northern vent stack in Waterview Glades pursuant to Conditions DC.8.

11) LV.2 In certifying the UDL Plans, prepared in accordance with Condition LV.1, the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council shall be satisfied the UDL plans includes:

(a) The visual mitigation of infrastructure as detailed in Section B of the UDLF (refer Schedule A, Row 38).

(b) Incorporation of art or art through design of structures, particularly as it relates to noise barriers and the Great North Road Interchange piers and ramps (Refer to clauses (g) and (i) below).

(c) Planting to screen houses and noise walls (including cross section details);

(d) Planting along the corridor on Traherne Island, in accordance with these conditions and the Ecological Management Plan;

(e) Specimen planting on the Great North Road Interchange and the Te Atatu Road Interchange;

(f) Specimen planting at the tunnel portals (except where this is within the OPW area);

(g) Finalisation of the noise barriers (as required by Condition ON.3(a)) in accordance with the design principles for noise walls (refer Schedule A, Row 32);

(h) Delineation of the final areas of the Open Space Restoration Plans in accordance with the Open Space Restoration Plans (Schedule A, Row 30), and reference that all works
(i) Oakley Inlet Heritage Plan, prepared in accordance with Conditions OS.5, and in particular, consideration shall be given to the design treatment of the Great North Road Interchange piers and ramps to take into consideration the impact of the structures on the visual quality of the open space beneath;

(j) Ecological Management Plan, prepared in accordance with Conditions V.1, A.1, H.1, F.1 and M.1;

(k) Western Ring Route: Maioro Street Interchange and Waterview Connection - Oakley Creek Rehabilitation and Restoration Guidelines (Boffa Miskell, 2010); and

(l) Details of artworks or art through design of structures within the Project (e.g. design detailing of median barriers, bridge railings, safety barriers, piers, retaining walls and tunnel portals), in accordance with Section B of the Urban Landscape and Design Framework (UDLF June 2010) (refer Schedule A, Row 38) and F.8: Plans of Structures and Architectural Features, but excluding the north and south ventilation buildings, plans sections and elevations.

12) V.11 Prior to commencement of works adjacent to Traherne Island, the NZTA shall employ a suitably qualified and experienced plant translocation expert to uplift and protect all areas of *Mimulus repens* on Traherne Island that will be affected by the work. The *Mimulus repens* shall be relocated to suitable and safe habitat away from the works area, or otherwise held and protected for the duration of the works in the vicinity of their original location and be replanted back at that location (or in close proximity to it) upon completion of the works. The location of the recipient sites will be determined in consultation with the Department of Conservation and in general accordance with the Traherne Island Natural Heritage Restoration Plan (2009 – 2014). Trials shall be undertaken to identify appropriate recipient sites, with these trial sites being monitored for a period of no less than 5 years, or until their failure. Where possible, recipient sites shall be located in currently weed-free areas. Where recipient sites may potentially be affected by weeds, they shall be subject to an ongoing weed management plan. Should translocation attempts fail at all trial sites then the NZTA, in consultation with DOC, shall determine an alternative appropriate form of mitigation.

13) V.17 Prior to commencement of works adjacent to or on Traherne Island, the NZTA shall employ a suitably qualified and experienced ecologist for the preparation of a Traherne Island Weed and Pest Management Plan. The Plan shall be prepared in consultation with the Department of Conservation and be submitted to the Auckland Council for approval at least 20 working days prior to construction commencing.

14) M.1 The NZTA shall finalise and implement through the CEMP, the ECOMP submitted with this application. The ECOMP shall be revised to accurately reflect the conditions of this consent and changes to the details of construction processes prior to construction commencing. The ECOMP shall include, but not be limited to, details of:

(a) Monitoring of marine habitats and ecological values;

(b) Trigger event criteria for undertaking additional monitoring;

(c) Procedures for responding to accidental discharges to the marine environment;

(d) Complaints investigation, monitoring and reporting; and

(e) The identification of staff and contractors’ responsibilities.
POST-CONSTRUCTION / OPERATIONS CONDITIONS

15) LV.3 The NZTA shall have implemented the UDL Plans within 6 months of practical completion of construction of the Project.

16) LV.4 The landscaping shall be implemented in accordance with the UDL Plans within the first planting season following the completion of the construction works, provided that climatic conditions are suitable, otherwise at the first practicable opportunity thereafter, and shall be maintained for a period of 10 years thereafter. Should the landscaping be implemented in stages (depending on construction phases), landscaping shall be implemented in accordance with this Condition for each stage unless subsequent construction staging requires use of the proposed landscaping area.

Advice note: On-going control and management of the landscaping within the designation is the responsibility of the NZTA.

17) LV.5 The NZTA shall implement the UDL Plans taking into account the pest plant management guidelines detailed in the Ecological Management Plan (as required by Condition CEMP.3).

MONITORING

18) M.2 The NZTA shall engage a suitably qualified ecologist to undertake a marine habitat monitoring programme, as described in Conditions M.3 to M.6.

19) M.3 The marine benthic habitat monitoring programme shall be undertaken every 6 months:
   (a) At least 12 months prior to construction commencing, to allow for two baseline surveys to be undertaken;
   (b) During construction; and
   (c) For a maximum of 3 years following completion of the Project, or for a lesser time if the monitoring indicates no significant effects, as agreed with the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council.

20) M.4 The marine benthic habitat monitoring programme shall be undertaken in accordance with the details set out in the ECOMP and include:
   (a) Sampling of the marine invertebrate community composition (collection of sediment cores to a depth of approximately 15cm);
   (b) Sampling of the sediment surface (top 2cm) for sediment grain size; and
   (c) Sampling of the sediment surface (top 2cm) for sediment quality (analysis of the concentration of copper, lead, zinc and polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons).

21) M.5 The marine benthic habitat monitoring shall be undertaken within sampling grids (50m x 30m) broadly established at the following locations:
   (a) Two locations within Oakley Inlet;
   (b) Four locations within Waterview Estuary; and
   (c) Four locations north of the Causeway.

Specific locations and experimental design shall be detailed in the ECOMP, and the design of the monitoring programme will be based on the Estuarine Environmental Assessment and Monitoring: A National Protocol (Cawthron 2002).

22) M.6 The NZTA shall undertake additional marine habitat monitoring in the event of a ‘trigger event’ for marine ecology habitats. For the purposes of this consent, a ‘trigger event’ for marine ecology habitats is defined in the ECOMP.
23) M.7 The NZTA shall review the marine habitat monitoring results (pursuant to Conditions M.3 to M.6) and in the event that potential adverse effects are identified, the NZTA shall develop and implement appropriate contingency plans and/or remedial measures.

REPORTING

24) M.8 The marine benthic habitat monitoring results shall be compiled by the NZTA, and a report provided to the Major Infrastructure Team Manager, Auckland Council every 6 months.